# CONTINUED FASCINATION – A TRIBUTE TO A GIANT IN IMMUNOLOGY, DR. WILLIAM E. PAUL

EDITED BY: Jinfang Zhu and Joshua D. Milner
PUBLISHED IN: Frontiers in Immunology

frontiers Research Topics

# frontiers



ISSN 1664-8714
ISBN 978-2-88945-876-9
DOI 10.3389/978-2-88945-876-9

## About Frontiers

Frontiers is more than just an open-access publisher of scholarly articles: it is a pioneering approach to the world of academia, radically improving the way scholarly research is managed. The grand vision of Frontiers is a world where all people have an equal opportunity to seek, share and generate knowledge. Frontiers provides immediate and permanent online open access to all its publications, but this alone is not enough to realize our grand goals.

## Frontiers Journal Series

The Frontiers Journal Series is a multi-tier and interdisciplinary set of open-access, online journals, promising a paradigm shift from the current review, selection and dissemination processes in academic publishing. All Frontiers journals are driven by researchers for researchers; therefore, they constitute a service to the scholarly community. At the same time, the Frontiers Journal Series operates on a revolutionary invention, the tiered publishing system, initially addressing specific communities of scholars, and gradually climbing up to broader public understanding, thus serving the interests of the lay society, too.

## Dedication to Quality

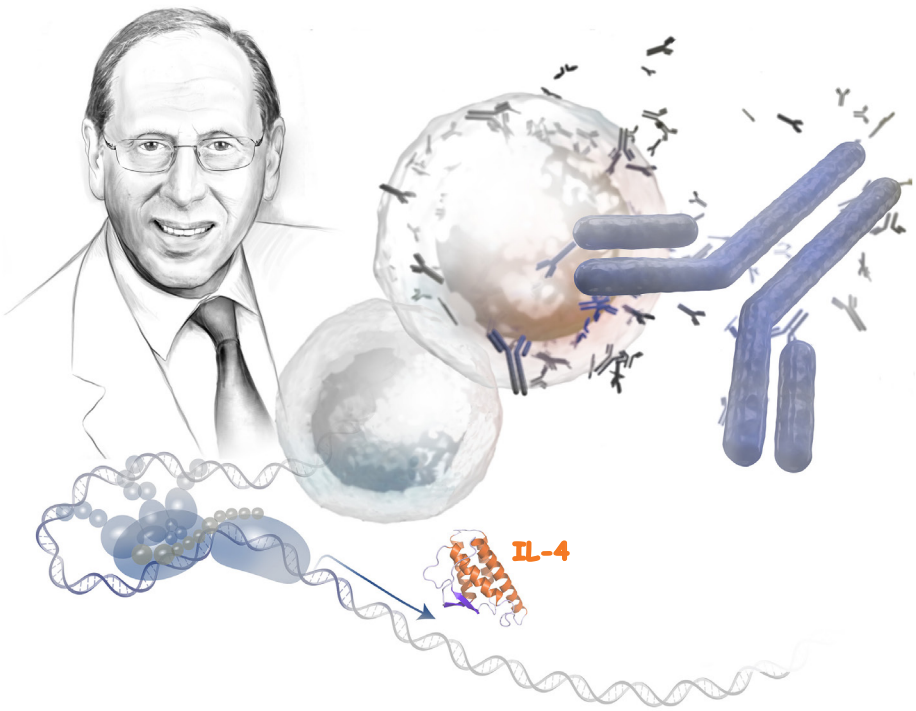
Each Frontiers article is a landmark of the highest quality, thanks to genuinely collaborative interactions between authors and review editors, who include some of the world's best academicians. Research must be certified by peers before entering a stream of knowledge that may eventually reach the public - and shape society; therefore, Frontiers only applies the most rigorous and unbiased reviews.
Frontiers revolutionizes research publishing by freely delivering the most outstanding research, evaluated with no bias from both the academic and social point of view. By applying the most advanced information technologies, Frontiers is catapulting scholarly publishing into a new generation.

## What are Frontiers Research Topics?

Frontiers Research Topics are very popular trademarks of the Frontiers Journals Series: they are collections of at least ten articles, all centered on a particular subject. With their unique mix of varied contributions from Original Research to Review Articles, Frontiers Research Topics unify the most influential researchers, the latest key findings and historical advances in a hot research area! Find out more on how to host your own Frontiers Research Topic or contribute to one as an author by contacting the Frontiers Editorial Office: researchtopics@frontiersin.org

# CONTINUED FASCINATION – A TRIBUTE TO A GIANT IN IMMUNOLOGY, DR. WILLIAM E. PAUL

Topic Editors:
**Jinfang Zhu,** National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, United States
**Joshua D. Milner,** National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, United States




A portrait of Dr. Paul and his fascination; courtesy of Julia Fekecs and Darryl Leja of NHGRI.

Cover image: Jezper/Shutterstock.com

Dr. William E. Paul (1936–2015) was the leader of the National Institutes of Health (NIH) immunology community and his career is without parallel in the field of immunology. He was the Chief of the Laboratory of Immunology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), from 1970 at the age of 34 until his death. His groundbreaking contributions to the field of immunology, including the discovery of interleukin (IL)-4, led to more than 600 publications over half a century. He also played an important role in the establishment of the NIH Vaccine Research Center while he was the Director of the NIH Office of AIDS Research. Furthermore, Dr. Paul was a shining icon and an international giant of contemporary immunology. He was a genius and a living encyclopedia of immunology: the author of the textbook *Fundamental Immunology* since its inception to the 7th edition in 2013; and the editor of the *Annual Review of Immunology* from its inaugural issue in 1983 until 2011. In his last book *Immunity*, he discussed the three laws of immunology: universality, tolerance and appropriateness. These capture the essence of Dr. Paul

as well as the field. Dr. Paul had an enormous impact on the research career of his trainees, many of whom became leaders in the field of immunology, including Drs. Charles Janeway, Ronald Schwartz, Laurie Glimcher and Mark Davis. Dr. Paul was an intelligent, generous, humble but optimistic man. He was also an inspirational and thoughtful leader, colleague and friend; he inspired and encouraged people around him in every possible way. As his trainees and/or colleagues, we miss him greatly and dedicate this special Research Topic to his memory. We thank all the authors who participated in this collection as well as other colleagues and friends of Dr. Paul's who have supported us in a series of events after Dr. Paul's passing. Finally, we would like to thank the *Frontiers in Immunology* for providing such a wonderful platform for remembering Dr. Paul's remarkable life.

**Citation:** Zhu, J., Milner, J. D., eds. (2019). Continued Fascination – A Tribute to a Giant in Immunology, Dr. William E. Paul. Lausanne: Frontiers Media.
doi: 10.3389/978-2-88945-876-9

# Table of Contents


06 ***Editorial: Continued Fascination—A Tribute to a Giant in Immunology, Dr. William E. Paul***
Joshua D. Milner, Jinfang Zhu and Marilyn Paul

08 ***IL-4 is a Key Requirement for IL-4- and IL-4/IL-13-Expressing CD4 Th2 Subsets in Lung and Skin***
Melanie Sarah Prout, Ryan L. Kyle, Franca Ronchese and Graham Le Gros

19 ***IL-4 and IL-13 Receptor Signaling From 4PS to Insulin Receptor Substrate 2: There and Back Again, a Historical View***
Achsah D. Keegan, Jose Zamorano, Aleksander Keselman and Nicola M. Heller

32 ***The Hunt for the Source of Primary Interleukin-4: How we Discovered That Natural Killer T Cells and Basophils Determine T Helper Type 2 Cell Differentiation* In Vivo**
Tomohiro Yoshimoto

40 ***Tuning the Cytokine Responses: An Update on Interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-13 Receptor Complexes***
Ilkka S. Junttila

46 ***Seventeen-Year Journey Working With a Master***
Jinfang Zhu

53 ***TCR Signaling Abnormalities in Human Th2-Associated Atopic Disease***
Joshua D. Milner

58 ***Spontaneous T Cell Proliferation: A Physiologic Process to Create and Maintain Homeostatic Balance and Diversity of the Immune System***
Booki Min

66 ***Studies of Mast Cells: Adventures in Serendipity***
Melissa A. Brown

75 ***Controlling Mast Cell Activation and Homeostasis: Work Influenced by Bill Paul That Continues Today***
Heather L. Caslin, Kasalina N. Kiwanuka, Tamara T. Haque, Marcela T. Taruselli, H. Patrick MacKnight, Anuya Paranjape and John J. Ryan

91 ***Molecular Regulation of Histamine Synthesis***
Hua Huang, Yapeng Li, Jinyi Liang and Fred D. Finkelman

98 ***Multilayer Control of B Cell Activation by the B Cell Antigen Receptor: Following Themes Initiated With Bill Paul***
Anthony L. DeFranco

106 ***Unique Action of Interleukin-18 on T Cells and Other Immune Cells***
Kenji Nakanishi

113 ***Distinct Immunologic Properties of Soluble Versus Particulate Antigens***
Clifford M. Snapper

119 ***Foxp3$^{+}$ T Regulatory Cells: Still Many Unanswered Questions—A Perspective After 20 Years of Study***
Ethan M. Shevach

128 ***Posttranscriptional (Re)programming of Cell Fate: Examples in Stem Cells, Progenitor, and Differentiated Cells***
Chrysi Kanellopoulou and Stefan A. Muljo

133 ***The Role of Molecular Flexibility in Antigen Presentation and T Cell Receptor-Mediated Signaling***
Kannan Natarajan, Jiansheng Jiang, Nathan A. May, Michael G. Mage, Lisa F. Boyd, Andrew C. McShan, Nikolaos G. Sgourakis, Ad Bax and David H. Margulies

frontiers in Immunology

EDITORIAL
published: 08 March 2019
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00354

# Editorial: Continued Fascination–A Tribute to a Giant in Immunology, Dr. William E. Paul

*Joshua D. Milner*[1]*, *Jinfang Zhu*[2]* and *Marilyn Paul*[3]*

[1] Laboratory of Allergic Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States, [2] Laboratory of Immune System Biology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States, [3] Independent Researcher, Washington DC, United States

**Keywords: T cell differentiation, interleukin, William Paul, T cell, B cell**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Michael Loran Dustin,*
*University of Oxford, United Kingdom*

***Reviewed by:***
*Melissa Ann Brown,*
*Northwestern University,*
*United States*
*Andrew McKenzie,*
*University of Cambridge,*
*United Kingdom*

****Correspondence:***
*Joshua D. Milner*
*joshua.milner@nih.gov*
*Jinfang Zhu*
*jfzhu@niaid.nih.gov*
*Marilyn Paul*
*marilyn.paul.58@gmail.com*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *19 July 2018*
***Accepted:*** *11 February 2019*
***Published:*** *08 March 2019*

***Citation:***
*Milner JD, Zhu J and Paul M (2019) Editorial: Continued Fascination–A Tribute to a Giant in Immunology, Dr. William E. Paul. Front. Immunol. 10:354. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2019.00354*

## Editorial on the Research Topic

## Continued Fascination–A Tribute to a Giant in Immunology, Dr. William E. Paul

This issue honors the memory of Dr. William E. Paul, a towering figure in immunology for decades (1). Working at the Laboratory of Immunology within the NIH-NIAID for over 45 years, Bill's scientific legacy was extraordinary, matched only by the legacy of mentoring prowess (2, 3). In these pages are a series of 16 articles (15 reviews and 1 research article), most of which are authored by Bill's former trainees. It is noteworthy that Bill would often refer to those in his lab as colleagues, no matter how junior the lab member was. While this title may have felt not fitting to the trainee, there is little doubt that Bill had both a respect for those who worked for him and an expectation that one day they would have achievements worthy of making them his colleague. This gesture may well have served as one of many motivating factors which led to the extraordinary array of individuals who are Bill's legacy.

The articles in this issue cover the vast interests and expertise that germinated within Bill's lab and in the Laboratory of Immunology, and now flower throughout the scientific and medical world—validation of Bill's prescience in the title he chose for his trainees. They include the gamut of basic, translational and clinical findings covering topics which were close to home for Bill, such as the effects and regulation of IL-4 and IL-13 in various cell types (Prout et al.; Keegan et al.; Yoshimoto; Junttila), the regulation of T-cell differentiation (Zhu; Milner), T cell homeostasis (Min), mast cell biology (Brown; Caslin et al.; Huang et al.), and B cell activation (DeFranco), to those that go beyond as individual trainees followed their own unique paths (Nakanishi; Snapper). This issue also contains many important research topics that are the focuses of some independent groups (Zhu; Shevach; Kanellopoulou and Muljo; Natarajan et al.) within the Laboratory of Immunology, where Bill had served as the Lab Chief.

Below, we also include an introduction to this issue by Bill's beloved wife Marilyn, which provides all of us a more complete memory of Bill, whose endless fascination with, and contributions to the world went well-beyond science. Hopefully these articles and Mrs. Paul's personal reflections will be enlightening to the reader as the state of the art in immunology and beyond, but also provide a reminder of the enormous impact Bill has had in shaping the art, and the artists and whose work is presented here. There is no doubt that Bill's endless fascination continues.

Bill was lucky. He knew from childhood that he wanted to be a scientist. No ambivalence, no doubts. His parents wanted him to be a doctor but he wanted to be a scientist so he became both. He was lucky that he lived in Brooklyn, New York where Brooklyn College was free. His college sport was fencing. After college, he attended medical school at SUNY Downstate Medical School, also in Brooklyn. As a student, Bill lived at home with his parents. He and I married during his third year of medical school and created the home that we would share for the next 57 years. I felt so lucky that he chose me.

Although he always studied hard, he found joy in learning. He loved learning and was learned and well-read in many subjects, humanities as well as science.

Once he discovered immunology, he became devoted to it and excited by its power and potential. Immunology became his scientific home. He was proud to be a member of the generation of scientists that opened the doors of immunology to the scientific and medical academic world.

Bill loved working at the National Institutes of Health. Over the years, he had many attractive opportunities to move elsewhere. We talked it over and he stayed at NIH. He thought NIH was the best place to do basic science. He thought NIH was the best place to mentor the next generation of scientists. Bill was ever concerned that the scientific *enterprise*, his word not mine, continue.

He reveled in scientific success, his own and the achievements of others. He would come home excited and try to explain to me the importance of a recent discovery whether it was from his laboratory or elsewhere. He took special satisfaction in seeing his post docs and fellows succeed, make contributions and find jobs heading influential medical research institutions.

He was sought after as a consultant by many scientific research organizations and he thought it was important to offer his expertise to guide their programs. He wanted them to spend their money wisely. They were always surprised that he did so much work for them without being able to accept compensation. I can still picture in my mind the reams of paper he brought home to read each night until digital computer technology literally lightened the load.

In 1994, at the peak of the AIDS epidemic he took on the responsibility of becoming the Director of the Office of AIDS Research. We both understood that this was a scary time for AIDS patients and AIDS workers as well. There was a huge very ill population out there. They were scared, felt threatened and wanted a drug fast. They were angry and impatient. While working in this crisis Bill realized that more rigorous attention should be paid to vaccine research. He proposed the development of a vaccine research center for the NIH and was part of the delegation of scientists who went to the White House to convince President Bill Clinton of its importance. Clinton was persuaded. The Vaccine Research Center (VRC) opened for business in 2001. One could think of Bill as the Father of the VRC as it was his idea. I was told recently that the Building 40 of VRC went up faster than most other structures on the campus, when I attended the ceremony of dedicating the Conference Room at the VRC to Bill's memory.

Every day that he went to work was a joyful day. Every evening that he worked at home was a joyful evening. At the end of the day, he told me he quit only when he realized that he had to read something three times. He took that as a signal he was tired and should stop and have some ice cream, well-deserved ice cream.

As I stated in the beginning, Bill was lucky to find a gratifying career interest early in his life. Our sons and I were lucky too. We had the pleasure of living with a man who was so happy in his life's work. I can only hope that his life will serve as a role model for our young grandchildren. Wouldn't that be wonderful?

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

JM and JZ wrote the first part. MP wrote the second part.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This work was supported by the Intramural Research Program of the NIAID.

## REFERENCES

1. Paul WE. Endless fascination. *Ann Rev Immunol.* (2014) 32:1–24. doi: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-032713-120247
2. Davis MM, Glimcher LH. William Erwin Paul (1936-2015). *Cell.* (2015) 163:529–30. doi: 10.1016/j.cell.2015.10.024
3. Germain RN, Fowlkes BJ, Samelson LE, Leonard WJ. William E. Paul, MD. (1936-2015). *Immunity*. (2015) 43:617–9. doi: 10.1016/j.immuni.2015.10.006

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

ORIGINAL RESEARCH
published: 01 June 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01211

# IL-4 Is a Key Requirement for IL-4- and IL-4/IL-13-Expressing CD4 Th2 Subsets in Lung and Skin

*Melanie Sarah Prout, Ryan L. Kyle†, Franca Ronchese and Graham Le Gros**

*Malaghan Institute of Medical Research, Wellington, New Zealand*

Although IL-4 is long associated with CD4 Th2 immune responses, its role in Th2 subset development in non-lymphoid tissues is less clear. We sought to better define IL-4's role in CD4 Th2 responses by using transgenic mice that express a dual IL-4 AmCyan/IL-13 DsRed (IL-4AC/IL-13DR) fluorescent reporter on an IL-4-sufficient or IL-4-deficient background. Using primary Th2 immune response models against house dust mite or *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis* (*Nb*) allergens, we examined the requirement for IL-4 by each of the defined Th2 subsets in the antigen draining lymph node, skin, and lung tissues. In the lymph node, a CXCR5$^{+}$PD-1$^{+}$ T follicular helper (Tfh) and a CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{lo}$ Th2 subset could be detected that expressed only IL-4AC but no IL-13DR. The number of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Tfh cells was not affected by IL-4 deficiency whereas the number of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 cells was significantly reduced. In the non-lymphoid dermal or lung tissues of allergen primed or *Nb*-infected mice, three strikingly distinct T cell subsets could be detected that were IL-4AC, or IL-4AC/IL-13DR, or IL-13DR CD4. The IL-4- and IL-4/IL-13-expressing subsets were significantly reduced in IL-4-deficient mice, while the numbers of IL-13-expressing CD4 T cells were not affected by IL-4 deficiency indicating that other factors can play a role in directing the development of this Th2 subtype. Taken together, these data indicate that the appearance of IL-4-expressing Tfh cells in the lymph node is not dependent on IL-4 while the appearance of IL-4-expressing Th2 subsets in the lymph node and IL-4, IL-4/IL-13-expressing Th2 subsets in skin and lung tissues of antigen primed mice is significantly IL-4 dependent.

**Keywords: Th2, IL-4, IL-13, skin, lymph node, lung, non-lymphoid tissues**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu,*
*National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Carla Rothlin,*
*Yale University, United States*
*Yisong Wan,*
*University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, United States*

****Correspondence:***
*Graham Le Gros*
*glegros@malaghan.org.nz*

***†Present address:***
*Ryan L. Kyle,*
*Department of Immunometabolism, Max Planck Institute of Immunobiology and Epigenetics, Freiburg, Germany*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *24 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *15 May 2018*
***Published:*** *01 June 2018*

***Citation:***
*Prout MS, Kyle RL, Ronchese F and Le Gros G (2018) IL-4 Is a Key Requirement for IL-4- and IL-4/IL-13-Expressing CD4 Th2 Subsets in Lung and Skin. Front. Immunol. 9:1211. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01211*

## INTRODUCTION

The cytokine IL-4 is understood to be key to the development of type 2 immune responses that underlie allergic disease pathologies and immunity to parasites; however, the specific role IL-4 plays in CD4 T cell differentiation is less clear. Early investigations using *in vitro* culture systems revealed the dominant role that IL-4 plays in driving and shaping CD4 Th2 subset differentiation toward expression of the canonical type 2 cytokines IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 (1, 2). Although *in vivo* studies have indicated a role for IL-4 directing Th2 development in the lymph node (3, 4), further studies revealed a more subtle role for IL-4 with IL-4-expressing Th2 cells appearing in the draining lymph nodes of immunized mice seemingly independent of IL-4 or STAT6 signaling (5, 6). Other studies have shown that the level of TCR activation can play a role in Th2 differentiation (7), while recent studies even support the view that Th2 development occurs in the tissues and is fully regulated by tissue-specific

checkpoints (8). In addition, TSLP elicited basophils have been shown to promote epicutaneous sensitization to food antigens and subsequent IgE mediated food allergy through IL-4 (9).

We took the opportunity to clarify the role of IL-4 in *in vivo* CD4 Th2 subset differentiation by asking whether certain specific Th2 subsets are more sensitive to the influence of IL-4 and whether IL-4-is required for Th2 subset development at non-lymphoid tissue sites such as the skin and lung. For the *in vivo* immune response studies, we used our recently developed antigen priming ear model (10) to quantitatively analyze the character, kinetics and magnitude of the IL-4- and IL-13-producing Th2 subsets that appear in the ear and ear draining lymph node following allergen priming (11, 12). To examine the appearance Th2 subsets in the lung, we used *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis* infection model which involves a lung migration stage in its infection cycle (13). In following the appearance of IL-4- and IL-13-expressing Th2 subsets, we were concerned to reduce artifact and bias inherent in restimulation and intracellular cytokine staining techniques and previously reported reporter IL-4 knockout mice (14–16). Therefore, we used the validated sensitivity of the recently developed *Il4* and *Il13* transcriptional reporter 4C13R mice (17) to investigate the appearance of IL-4-AmCyan (IL-4AC)- and IL-13-DsRed (IL-13DR)-expressing $CD4^+$ T cells arising in both the lymphoid and non-lymphoid tissues responding to house dust mite (HDM) or *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis* (*Nb*) allergens in either an IL-4-sufficient or -deficient environment. The *Il4*AC/*Il13*DR reporter BAC transgene construct is independent of the endogenous *Il4*/*Il13* locus in the mouse and appears able to faithfully report the commitment of CD4 T cells to the expression of the canonical type 2 cytokine gene expression pattern (17–19) under the appropriate tissue culture and relevant *in vivo* immunization protocols without affecting normal type 2 immune effector functions (20). We were able to detect both IL-4-expressing Tfh and Th2 cells in the draining lymph nodes of HDM challenged mice and while the small number of IL-4AC Th2 cells was significantly reduced by removal of IL-4, the Tfh cells were independent of the need for IL-4. Strikingly, analysis of the CD4 T cells that migrated to the skin 7 days after the allergen challenge revealed three functionally distinct Th2 subsets that could be defined by their cytokine expression patterns, IL-4AC, IL-4AC/IL-13DR, and IL-13DR only. The appearance of the IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-expressing Th2 cell subsets was highly dependent on IL-4 while the IL-13DR Th2 subset was not affected by the IL-4-deficient background. Taken together, our findings reveal the fundamental role that IL-4 plays in the development of functionally diverse effector Th2 subsets in tissues and lymph node. We also identify a novel IL-13-producing $CD4^+$ Th2 subset that appears in the skin following allergen challenge and does not require IL-4 for expression of IL-13.

# MATERIALS AND METHODS

## Mice

4C13R (17) reporter mice were bred and maintained on a C57BL/6 background in the Malaghan Institute of Medical Research Biomedical Research Unit. The *Il4*AmCyan/*Il13*DsRed construct does not interfere with normal immune function with similar levels of T cells, B cell, immunoglobulin, and inflammatory cells being induced by immunization compared with wild-type C57BL/6 mice. To generate IL-4-deficient reporter strains, 4C13R mice were crossed with IL-$4^{G4/G4}$ mice (6) to generate 4C13R × IL-$4^{G4/+}$ (IL-$4^{+/-}$) mice and 4C13R × IL-$4^{G4/+}$ mice were crossed with IL-$4^{G4/G4}$ mice to generate 4C13R × IL-$4^{G4/G4}$ (IL-$4^{-/-}$) mice. All animal procedures were approved by the Victoria University of Wellington Animal Ethics committee and performed in accordance with institutional guidelines.

## Ear Immunizations

Mice were anesthetized using xylazine and ketamine (Phoenix, New Zealand). 30 µl of a solution containing 200 µg HDM (Greer Laboratories, Lenoir, NC, USA) or 600 dead L3 *Nb* was injected into the ear pinnae as described (10).

## *Nb* Infection

Mice were inoculated with 550 L3 *Nb* larvae by s.c. injection.

## Cell Isolation

All tissues were isolated 7 days posttreatment. Auricular draining lymph nodes were pressed through 70-µm cell strainers into complete media [IMDM (GIBCO) supplemented with 5% FBS (Sigma), 100 U/ml penicillin/100 µg/ml streptomycin (Invitrogen), and 55 µM β-mercaptoethanol (Invitrogen)] to make a single-cell suspension. Dorsal and ventral ear sheets were separated and minced into very fine pieces using scissors. Each ear was digested by incubating for 30 min at 37°C with shaking, in ear digestion mix [IMDM (GIBCO) containing 1.2 mg/ml Collagenase IV (Sigma) and 120 µg/ml DNAse I (Roche)]. Solution was pipetted up and down and passed through 70-µm cell strainers into Ear wash buffer [PBS containing 1% BSA (Sigma), 5 mM EDTA (Invitrogen), and 120 µg/ml DNAse I (Roche)]. Cells were washed once more in Ear wash buffer before resuspension in cIMDM. Bronchoalveolar lavage (BAL) was performed by cannulation of mice and washing airways three times with PBS. Lungs were finely minced and digested in lung digestion mix [IMDM (GIBCO) containing 2.4 mg/ml Collagenase I (GIBCO) and 120 µg/ml DNAse I (Roche)] for 1 h at 37°C. Live cell counts performed using a hemocytometer and trypan blue (Invitrogen) exclusion.

## *In Vitro* Restimulation

Day 7 ear lymph node cells ($1 \times 10^6$/well) were cultured for 19 h on plates coated with 1 µg/ml anti-CD3 (145-2C11) with cIMDM, 100 U/ml rIL-2, and 1/50 dilution of anti-CD28 (37.51) supernatant corresponding to 5 µg/ml.

## FACS Analysis

Cells were resuspended in a buffer containing 0.01% $NaN_3$ (Sigma), 2% FBS, and 2 mM EDTA (Life Technologies) in PBS then incubated with anti-CD16/32 antibody (clone 2.4G2) before staining with fluorophore-conjugated antibodies. Cells were stained with antibodies against the following molecules (clone, conjugate; source): CD45 (30-F11, APC-Cy7, BD), CD3 (145-2C11, BV786; BD), CD3 (145-2C11, BUV395; BD), CD4 (RM4-5, BV605; BD), CD4 (GK1.5, APC-Cy7; BD), CD8 (53-6.7, AF700; BioLegend),

TCRγδ (GL3, PE-Cy7; BioLegend), CD44 (IM7, APC; BD), CXCR5 (2G8, Biotin; BD), and PD-1 (RMP1-30, PerCP-ef710; eBioscience). Streptavidin-BV605 (BD) was also used. Stained cells were resuspended in viability dye DAPI to exclude dead cells. IL-4 and IL-13 were detected by the IL-4AC and IL-13DR reporters in 4C13R mice. Data were acquired on a BD LSRFortessa SORP flow cytometer (Becton Dickinson, San Jose, CA, USA). Flow data were analyzed using FlowJo software (Treestar).

## Statistical Analysis and Graphics

Statistical analyses were performed using GraphPad Prism software (GraphPad Software Inc., San Diego, CA, USA). Statistical comparisons used are specified in figure legends.

# RESULTS

## Priming With HDM Allergen Induces the Development of Th2 Subsets Producing Only IL-4AC in the Lymph Node and Distinct IL-4AC$^+$, IL-4AC$^+$IL-13DR$^+$, or IL-13DR$^+$ Expression Profiles in the Ear Tissue

To follow the activation, differentiation, and migration patterns of allergen-induced Th2 subsets, 4C13R mice were primed intradermally (i.d.) in the ear pinnae with HDM. The kinetic studies showed IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 T cells to be maximally elevated in the ear draining lymph node on days 5–9 after priming (Figures S1A,B in Supplementary Material), therefore ear lymph nodes and ear tissue were examined on day 7 for the appearance of IL-4AC- and IL-13DR-expressing CD4 T cells. CD4 T cells were defined as CD45$^+$CD3$^+$CD4$^+$CD8$^-$TCRγδ$^-$ cells (Figures S2A,B in Supplementary Material), thus excluding any TCRγδ$^+$ intraepithelial lymphocytes found in the ear tissue. HDM priming resulted in significant infiltration of CD4 T cells into these sites over the 7-day period, with a sixfold increase in the lymph node to $2.6 \times 10^6$ CD4 cells, while immunized ears had $2.9 \times 10^4$ CD4 cells compared with very few in naive mice (**Figures 1A,C**). The lymph node and ear tissue CD4$^+$ T cells displayed distinctly different Th2 cytokine profiles, which we could observe using the *Il4* and *Il13* gene locus directed expression of the AmCyan and DsRed fluorescent reporters, respectively (**Figures 1B,D–F**). In the ear draining lymph node, only IL-4AC-expressing CD4 Th2 cells could be detected, whereas in the ear tissue three distinct CD4 T cell subpopulations were found; IL-4AC single positives, IL-4AC/IL-13DR double positives and IL-13DR single positives. Comparison of the reporter median fluorescent intensities (MFIs) for each of these ear tissue-derived CD4 T cell subsets reveals that the double-positive CD4 Th2 cells have a higher MFI for both IL-4AC and IL-13DR reporters than do the single positives (**Figure 1G**), reflecting a higher degree of activation and the potential for producing a greater amount of cytokine on a per cell basis. As reported previously (6) *in vivo* generated IL-4 reporter positive cells expressed high levels of CD44, interestingly the IL-13DR single-positive CD4 T cells demonstrated the highest MFI level for CD44 expression (**Figure 1H**), indicating they

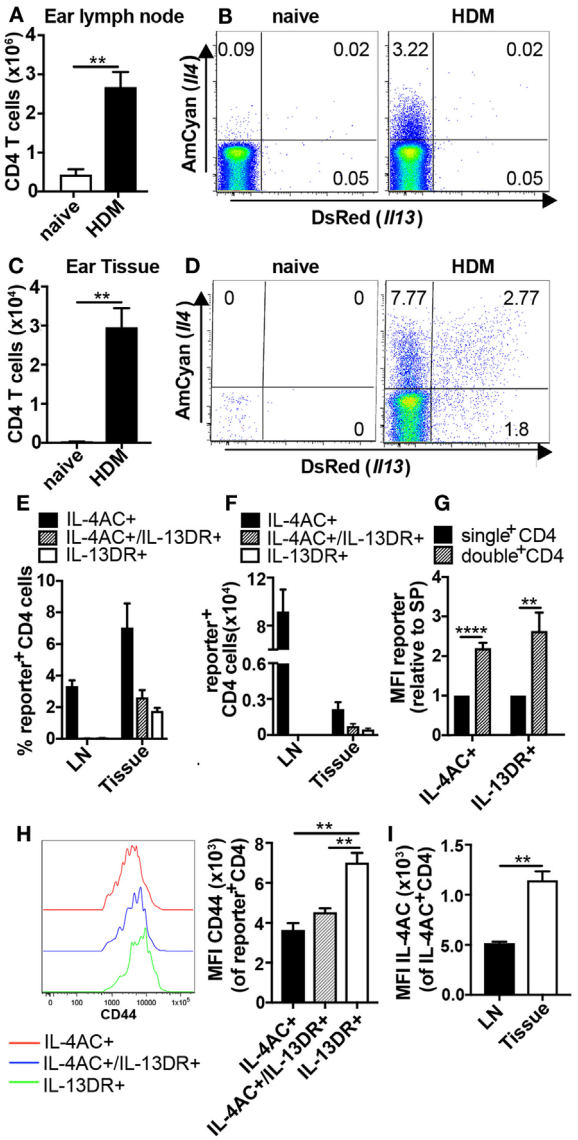



**FIGURE 1** | Priming with house dust mite (HDM) allergen induces the development of Th2 subsets producing only IL-4AC in the lymph node and distinct IL-4AC, IL-4AC/IL-13DR, or IL-13DR expression profiles in the ear tissue. 4C13R transgenic mice were challenged with 200 μg HDM i.d. in the ear. Ear draining lymph nodes and ear tissue were harvested 7 days later, and the presence of IL-4AC- and IL-13DR-expressing CD4 Th2 cells examined by flow cytometry. **(A,C)** Number of CD4 T cells in ear lymph node and ear tissue. **(B,D)** Concatenated FACS plots of CD4 T cells from naïve and HDM primed 4C13R transgenic mice showing IL-4AC$^+$ and IL-13DR$^+$ cells. **(E)** Proportions and **(F)** numbers of IL-4AC$^+$, IL-4AC$^+$/IL-13DR$^+$, and IL-13DR$^+$ subsets in the ear lymph node and ear tissue. **(G)** Median fluorescent intensity (MFI) of IL-4AC and IL-13DR reporters expressed in single reporter$^+$ vs double reporter$^+$ CD4 Th2 cells in the ear tissue (relative to MFI of single-positive cells). **(H)** MFI of CD44 expression on IL-4AC$^+$, IL-4AC$^+$/IL-13DR$^+$, and IL-13DR$^+$CD4$^+$ Th2 cells in the ear tissue. 96–98% of the reporter positive Th2 cells were CD44$^+$ **(I)** MFI of IL-4AC expression in IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 cells from ear lymph node and ear tissue. **(A–G,I)** Data from an experiment ($n$ = 3–5) representative of nine lymph node experiments and seven ear tissue experiments. **(H)** Results from a single experiment ($n$ = 3), representative of three experiments. Data show mean + SEM (**$p \leq 0.01$ and ****$p \leq 0.0001$ two-tailed $t$-test).

had a greater degree of activation than the IL-4AC- or IL-4AC/IL-13DR-expressing cells. Interestingly the tissue sourced IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 cells have a greater MFI of IL-4AC potentially reflecting their potential for higher levels of gene expression from the *Il4* locus than those CD4 T cells sourced from the lymph node (**Figure 1I**). Priming of mice with dead L3 *Nb* larvae in the ear stimulated a similar pattern of IL-4AC and IL-13DR expression by CD4 T cells in lymph node and tissues to that seen in HDM primed mice (Figures S3A–G in Supplementary Material).

To determine if the IL-4AC-expressing Th2 cells in the ear lymph node have the potential to produce IL-13DR upon *in vitro* restimulation, ear lymph node cells were harvested 7 days post HDM priming, and the whole lymph node cell population was cultured on anti-CD3 for 19 h. Stimulated CD4 cells expressed a similar proportion of IL-4AC as they did *ex vivo* (2.7%), while the percentage of CD4 T cells expressing IL-4AC cultured without anti-CD3 reduced over the time of culture (1.5%). Restimulation of the CD4 T cell subsets did not induce any further IL-13DR expression above background levels, indicating that the failure to detect IL-13DR expression in the lymph node was not due to lack of activation but rather the level of differentiation of the IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 T cells (Figures S4A–C in Supplementary Material).

These data demonstrate that following allergen priming in the ear tissue, distinct Th2 subsets develop in the draining lymph node and tissues. Specifically, CD4 T cells become committed to IL-4AC expression in both lymph node and tissues while the commitment of CD4 T cells to IL-13DR expression only occurs in the tissue.

## Both Tfh Cells and Th2 Cells Contribute to IL-4 Expression in the Lymph Node After HDM Challenge

As many studies have shown T follicular helper (Tfh) cells to be a dominant source of IL-4 in the lymph node (21–23), we sought to clarify the identity of the IL-4-expressing CD4 T cells observed in the ear lymph nodes of HDM primed mice. In analyzing the lymph node-derived IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 T cells, we identified both CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^+$CD4$^+$ (Tfh) and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{lo}$, CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^{lo}$, and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^+$CD4$^+$ (Th2) populations (**Figure 2A**). Approximately 40% of the IL-4AC$^+$ cells were Tfh cells as defined by PD-1 and CXCR5 expression while the remaining were Th2 cells (**Figure 2B**). Gating on IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells as shown in **Figure 2C** allowed us to compare these two populations, showing the IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh cells to have a higher level of IL-4AC expression compared with the IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells (**Figure 2D**). In addition, the IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh cells showed a higher level of CD44 expression than the IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells (**Figure 2E**). The biological impact of this statistically significant difference is unclear.

Thus, it would appear from these data that following HDM introduction to the skin, CD4 T cells in the draining lymph node become committed to activated Tfh and Th2 phenotypes some of which express IL-4 and contribute to IL-4 production in the ear draining lymph node. Interestingly, Tfh cells also expressed higher levels of the IL-4AC reporter, perhaps suggesting a higher capacity to secrete IL-4.

## IL-4 Plays a Role in the Development of IL-4AC-Expressing Lymph Node Th2 Cells but Not IL-4AC-Expressing Tfh Cells

We next sought to investigate the role of IL-4 in the development of IL-4AC-expressing CD4 T cell populations in the draining lymph nodes of mice primed i.d. with HDM allergen. CD4 T cells from HDM primed IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice had a reduced proportion of IL-4AC-expressing CD4 cells compared with IL-4$^{+/+}$ mice (**Figure 3A**). Distinguishing Tfh and Th2 populations within the IL-4AC$^+$ cell subset reveals a shift in the proportion of these two subsets in the absence of IL-4, with a decrease of IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells and a corresponding increase in IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh cells (**Figure 3B**). Analysis of overall numbers shows that while the numbers of IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh cells are not compromised by the lack of IL-4, the development of IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells was inhibited by 50% in IL-4-deficient mice, illustrating partial dependence of this subset on IL-4 (**Figure 3C**). The MFI of IL-4AC expression was reduced in both IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh and Th2 subsets from the IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice (**Figure 3D**), suggesting that IL-4 positively regulates *Il4* expression in CD4$^+$ T cells. By contrast, the IL-4AC$^-$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^-$ non-Tfh populations survived better in IL-4-deficient conditions (Figures S5A,B in Supplementary Material).

Thus, it appears that the number of IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh cells in the lymph node is independent of IL-4, while Th2 CD4 cells in the ear lymph node are partially dependent on IL-4 for their development.

## IL-4 Is Required for the Development of IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-Expressing Th2 Subsets, but Not IL-13DR-Expressing CD4$^+$ T Cell Subset, in Ear Tissue

We next studied the role of IL-4 in the development of Th2 subsets in the ear tissue following priming with either HDM or *Nb* allergens. As observed in **Figure 1**, three subsets of IL-4AC- or IL-13DR-expressing Th2 cells were identified in the ear after priming with HDM (**Figures 4A,B**) or dead *Nb* (**Figures 4F,G**). In both primary immunization models, the number of IL-13DR single-positive Th2 cells was not affected by the absence of IL-4 (**Figures 4C,H**), nor was there a reduction in the amount of IL-13DR they expressed as determined by MFI (**Figures 4E,J**). Although the proportion of IL-13DR Th2 cells was higher in IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice primed with non-viable Nb compared with IL-4-sufficient controls (**Figure 4G**), analysis of the total cell numbers revealed no difference (**Figure 4H**), due to the reduced overall numbers of CD4$^+$ T cells present in the IL-4$^{-/-}$ mouse (data not shown), suggesting that the higher proportion was simply due to the lack of other cell subsets in the IL-4$^{-/-}$ ear tissue. By contrast, the number of IL-4AC single-positive CD4 cells that appeared in the allergen primed ear tissue was reduced 8-fold in HDM immunized and an even greater 16-fold in *Nb* immunized 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice (**Figures 4C,H**). The IL-4AC/IL-13DR double reporter-expressing Th2 subset was also dependent on IL-4, with a threefold reduction in their levels observed in 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice in both models. Even though similar proportions of these cells were found in dead *Nb* immunized IL-4$^{+/+}$ and IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice (**Figure 4G**), their numbers were reduced in the IL-4-deficient

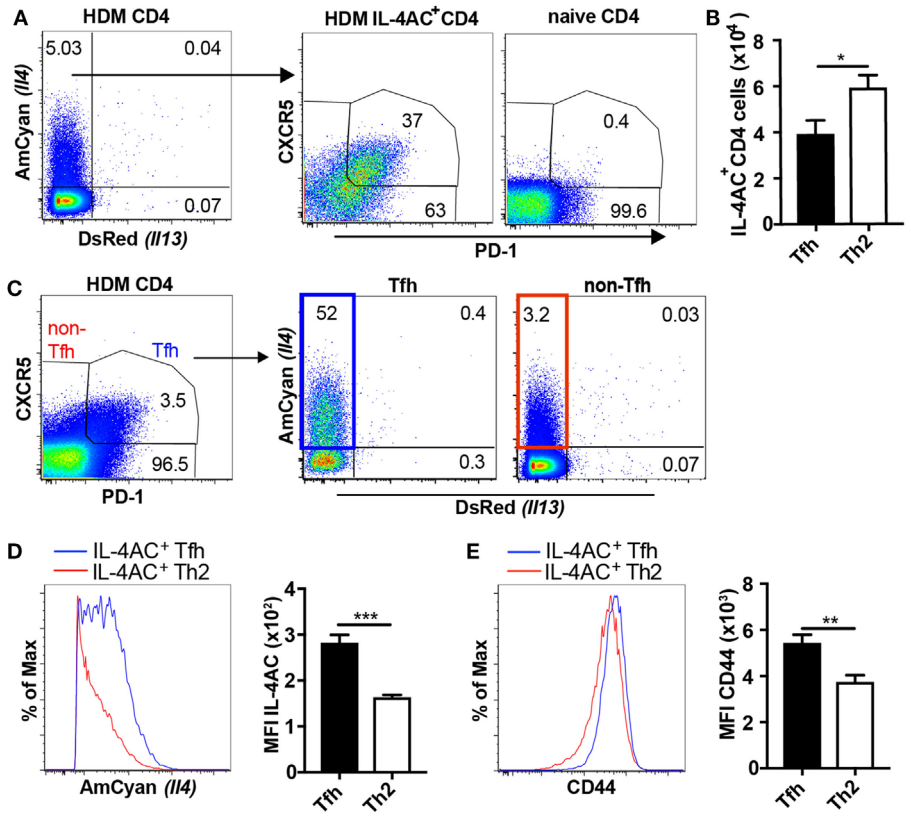



**FIGURE 2** | Both T follicular helper (Tfh) cells and Th2 cells contribute to IL-4AC expression in the lymph node after house dust mite (HDM) challenge. 4C13R transgenic mice were treated with 200 μg HDM i.d. in the ear. The ear draining lymph nodes were harvested 7 days posttreatment and analyzed by flow cytometry. **(A)** FACS plots showing the proportion of IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 T cells and then the proportion of CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^+$ Tfh and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{lo}$, CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^{lo}$, and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^+$ Th2 cells within this population. **(B)** Numbers of IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 CD4 T cells. **(C)** FACS plots showing the proportion of CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^+$ Tfh and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{lo}$, CXCR5$^+$PD-1$^{lo}$, and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^+$ non-Tfh CD4 T cells and then the proportion of IL-4AC$^+$ CD4 T cells within these populations. Median fluorescent intensity (MFI) of IL-4AC **(D)** and CD44 **(E)** expression on IL-4AC$^+$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 CD4 T cells. **(A,C–E)** Data from a representative experiment ($n = 6$) of four experiments. **(B)** Data pooled from four experiments ($n = 23$). Data show mean + SEM (*$p \leq 0.05$, **$p \leq 0.01$, and ***$p \leq 0.001$ two-tailed $t$-test).

mice due to the reduced level of CD4 T cells in these mice as mentioned earlier. Furthermore, the MFI of IL-4AC in the IL-4AC$^+$ and IL-4AC$^+$/IL-13DR$^+$ Th2 cells was reduced by twofold in IL-4-deficient reporter mice (**Figures 4D,I**). Thus, as well as a significant reduction in the numbers of IL-4AC-expressing Th2 cells being detected in IL-4-deficient 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice, the gene expression from the *Il4* locus, as determined by examining reporter expression, was also reduced. As previously noted with IL-4-sufficient mice (**Figure 1G**), dual reporter IL-4AC$^+$/IL-13DR$^+$ Th2 cells from 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice also expressed greater levels of IL-4AC and IL-13DR reporters than the single reporter positive cells (**Figures 4D,E,I,J**).

To determine whether the distinct IL-4AC- and IL-13DR-expressing Th2 subsets could also develop at other tissue sites following antigen priming, we examined the Th2 subsets generated in the lung and BAL of mice responding to a live primary *Nb* infection, in which larvae infect the lung before migrating to the gut. We observed in both lung tissue and airways (BAL) the same three CD4$^+$ IL-4AC-, IL-4AC/IL-13DR-, and IL-13DR-expressing Th2 subsets (Figures S6A,C in Supplementary Material). The appearance of the IL-4AC CD4$^+$ Th2 subset was found to be significantly reduced in IL-4-deficient mice compared with IL-4-sufficient controls, the IL-4AC/IL-13DR and the IL-13DR CD4$^+$ Th2 subset were not significantly affected by IL-4 deficiency (Figures S6B,D in Supplementary Material).

In summary, The IL-4AC- and IL-13DR-expressing Th2 subsets that appear in ear tissues following antigen priming show differential requirements for IL-4, with IL-4AC$^+$ and IL-4AC$^+$/IL-13DR$^+$ Th2 cells being IL-4 dependent while the IL-13DR-expressing CD4 Th2 subset was not affected by the absence of IL-4.

## Reduction in IL-4 Availability Through *Il4* Gene Hemizygosity Has a Partial Effect on Development of IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-Producing T Cell Subsets

The profound effect of complete IL-4 deficiency on the development of IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-expressing Th2 subsets in the skin tissue and lung, led us to wonder what would be the effect

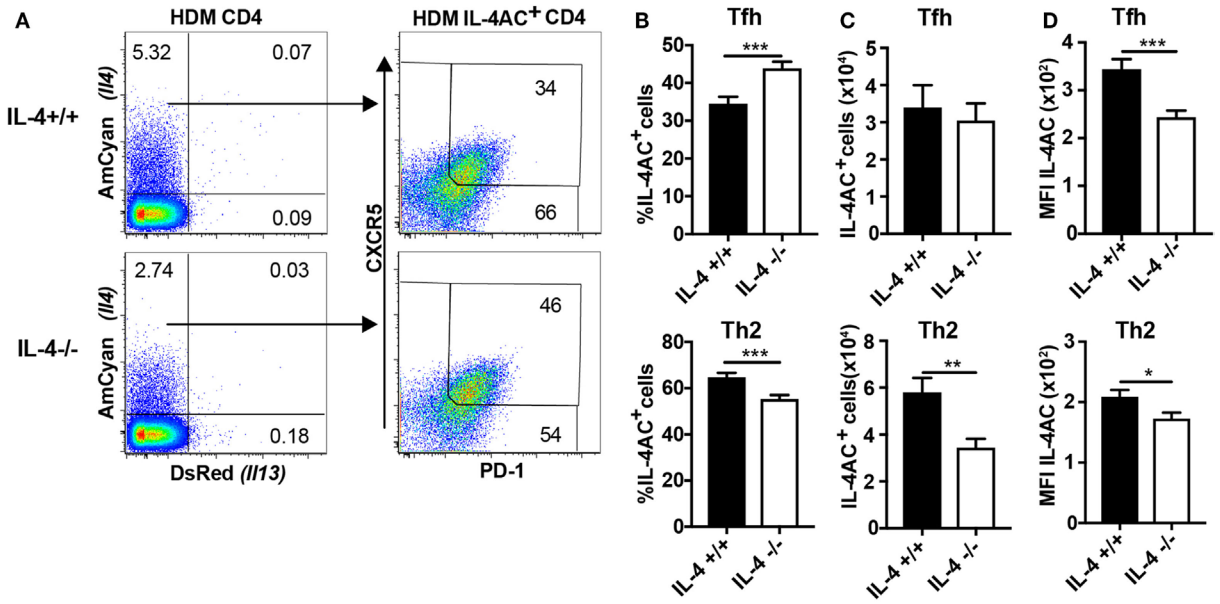



**FIGURE 3** | IL-4 plays a role in the development of IL-4AC-expressing lymph node Th2 cells but not IL-4AC-expressing T follicular helper (Tfh) cells. 4C13R-IL-4$^{+/+}$ and 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice were treated with 200 μg house dust mite (HDM) i.d. in the ear. The ear draining lymph nodes were harvested from mice 7 days posttreatment, and lymph nodes were analyzed by flow cytometry. **(A)** FACS plots showing the proportion of IL-4AC$^{+}$ CD4 T cells and then the proportion of CXCR5$^{+}$PD-1$^{+}$ Tfh and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{lo}$, CXCR5$^{+}$PD-1$^{lo}$, and CXCR5$^{lo}$PD-1$^{+}$ Th2 cells within this population. **(B)** Proportion of IL-4AC$^{+}$CD4 T cells that are Tfh or Th2 cells. **(C)** Numbers of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 CD4 T cells and **(D)** median fluorescent intensity (MFI) of IL-4AC of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Tfh and IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 CD4 T cells. **(A)** FACS plots from a representative experiment ($n = 6$). **(B,C)** Data pooled from three experiments ($n = 18$). **(D)** Data from a representative experiment ($n = 6$). Data show mean + SEM (*$p \leq 0.05$, **$p \leq 0.01$, and ***$p \leq 0.001$ two-tailed $t$-test).

of a partial *Il4* gene deletion such as that seen in IL-4 hemizygous mice. IL-4-sufficient (4C13R-IL-4$^{+/+}$), IL-4 hemizygous (4C13R-IL-4$^{+/-}$), and IL-4-deficient (4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$) mice were primed with HDM and their ear draining lymph nodes and ear tissue examined after 7 days. As reported in **Figure 3**, IL-4AC$^{+}$ Tfh cells in the lymph node were not dependent on IL-4, whereas levels of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 cells were halved when IL-4 was not available (**Figure 5A**). Contrary to the IL-4-deficient system, the number of IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 cells in the hemizygous lymph nodes were the same as those in IL-4 wild-type mice indicating that even with reduced IL-4 availability the IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 cell response to HDM in the draining lymph node is capable of full development. In the tissue, however, the hemizygous *Il4* condition had a far more striking effect on the development of the IL-4AC$^{+}$ Th2 subset, with a five-fold reduction in cell numbers to levels only twofold greater than in the absence of IL-4 (**Figure 5B**). The reduction of the IL-4AC$^{+}$/IL-13DR$^{+}$ Th2 subset in the ear was less pronounced and, as was seen in **Figure 4**, the IL-13DR$^{+}$ Th2 cells were independent of IL-4 for their appearance in ear tissue. The disproportionate effect that the loss of half the wild-type IL-4 has on the IL-4AC$^{+}$ and the IL-4AC$^{+}$/IL-13DR$^{+}$ Th2 subsets in the ear reinforces the importance of IL-4 in the development of this distinct CD4 Th2 effector subset in the tissue microenvironment of the skin.

## DISCUSSION

We sought to clarify the role of IL-4 in the differentiation, migration, and accumulation of CD4$^{+}$ T cells following a primary response to allergen. We followed the number of IL-4- and IL-13-expressing CD4 T cells that appear in the draining lymph node and subsequent type 2 inflammatory response in the skin or lung following intradermal priming with allergen or parasite infection, respectively. We confirm that during the 7-day priming period the appearance of IL-4-expressing Tfh cells in the lymph node is not dependent on IL-4, while the appearance of IL-4-expressing Th2 cells in the lymph node is partially affected by the absence of IL-4. We describe for the first time the profound requirement for IL-4 in regulating the appearance of IL-4- and IL-4/IL-13-expressing Th2 subsets in the skin tissue 7 days following allergen priming. A similar IL-4 response profile was found for IL-4-producing Th2 cells in the lungs of *Nb* challenged mice. Surprisingly, we identified a unique CD4 T cell subset in the skin that was induced by both allergen priming in the skin and parasite infection in the lung that was committed solely to IL-13 expression and was completely independent of IL-4. Although normally IL-13 expression in CD4 T cells is linked to IL-4 expression and it is viewed as one of the canonical Th2 cytokines which is regulated by IL-4, a previous study using IL-4/IL-13 reporter mice identified that IL-13 expression occurs in lung tissue but not lymph nodes and that IL-4 and IL-13 expression is not always linked (23). Here, using our HDM skin priming model, we complement this data with confirmation in the ear skin tissue and its draining lymph node of the confinement of IL-13-expressing Th2 cells to the tissue compartment, while IL-4-expressing Th2 subsets reside in both lymphoid and non-lymphoid tissues. Furthermore, our finding that *in vitro* restimulation did not elicit IL-13 expression

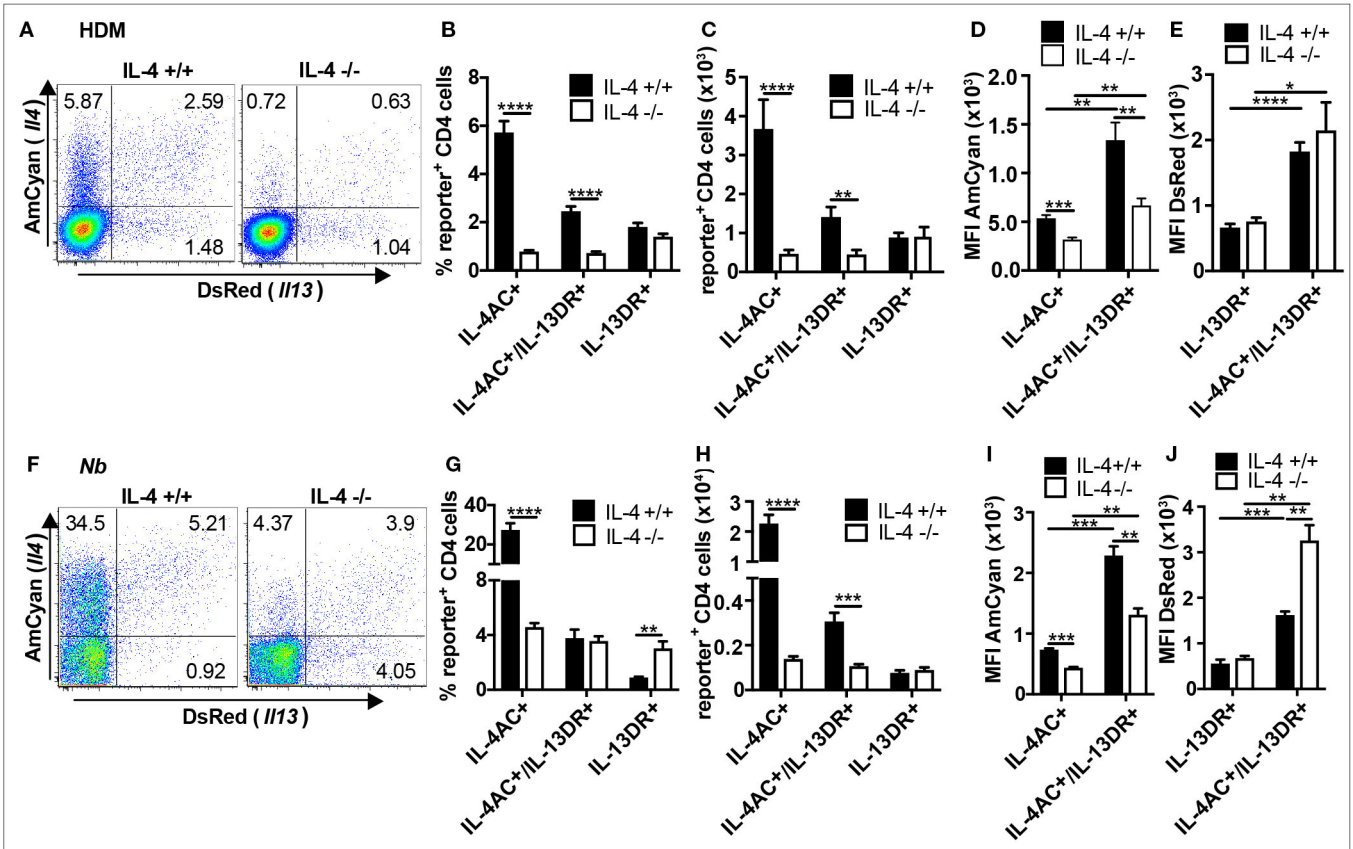



**FIGURE 4** | IL-4 is required for the development of IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-expressing Th2 subsets but not the IL-13DR-expressing CD4+ T cell subset in ear tissue. 4C13R-IL-4$^{+/+}$ and 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice were treated with either **(A–E)** 200 μg house dust mite (HDM) or **(F–J)** 600 dead L3 *Nippostrongylus braziliensis* (*Nb*) i.d. in the ear pinnae. Ear tissue was harvested 7 days posttreatment. Tissues were analyzed to determine **(A,B,F,G)** proportion of IL-4AC+ and IL-13DR+ CD4 T cells, **(C,H)** number of IL-4AC+ and IL-13DR+ CD4 T cells, and **(D,E,I,J)** median fluorescent intensity (MFI) of IL-4AC and IL-13DR for each of the Th2 cell subsets. Data representative of seven experiments ($n$ = 35–37) for HDM and two experiments ($n$ = 6) for dead *Nb*. **(A)** FACS plots concatenated from a single representative experiment ($n$ = 6). **(B,C)** Data pooled from seven experiments ($n$ = 37). **(D,E)** Data from a single representative experiment ($n$ = 6). **(F)** FACS plots concatenated from a single representative experiment ($n$ = 3). **(G,H)** Data pooled from two experiments ($n$ = 6). **(I,J)** Data from a single representative experiment ($n$ = 3). Data show mean + SEM (*$p \leq 0.05$, **$p \leq 0.01$, ***$p \leq 0.001$, and ****$p \leq 0.0001$ two-tailed $t$-test).

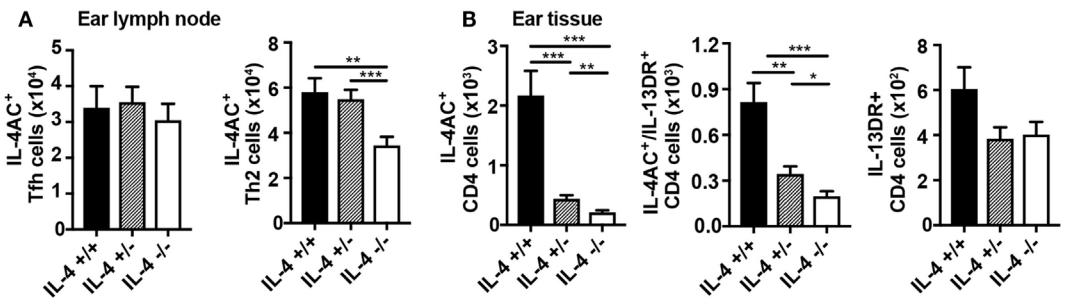



**FIGURE 5** | Reduction in IL-4 availability by *Il4* gene hemizygosity has a partial effect on the development of IL-4AC- and IL-4AC/IL-13DR-producing T cell subsets. 4C13R-IL-4$^{+/+}$, 4C13R-IL-4$^{+/-}$, and 4C13R-IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice were treated with 200 μg house dust mite i.d. in the ear pinnae. Ear draining lymph nodes and ear tissue were harvested from the mice 7 days posttreatment. **(A)** Lymph nodes were analyzed to determine the number of IL-4AC+ T follicular helper (Tfh) and IL-4AC+ Th2 CD4 T cells. **(B)** Ear tissue was analyzed to determine the number of reporter+ Th2 CD4+ T cells. **(A)** Data pooled from three experiments ($n$ = 18) for ear lymph node and **(B)** three experiments ($n$ = 15) for ear tissue. Data show mean + SEM (*$p \leq 0.05$, **$p \leq 0.01$, and ***$p \leq 0.001$ two-tailed $t$-test).

in CD4 T cells derived from the draining lymph node of HDM ear immunized mice confirms that the failure to detect IL-13 is not a sensitivity issue of the reporter system but rather whether the CD4 T cells have received the appropriate signals for activation of the *Il13* gene. The identification in the tissues of primed mice of a unique subset of CD4 T cells that only expressed IL-13 and

whose appearance was independent of IL-4 was surprising. When viewed in the context of recent work by others (8, 24) and our recent data showing that TSLP can regulate the development of an IL-13-producing CD4 Th2 subset (25), it becomes clear that other factors such as tissue alarmins are likely able to regulate or act as a tissue checkpoint for a IL-13-producing Th2 subset in the tissues.

T follicular helper cells have been shown to be a significant source of IL-4 in the lymph nodes during the Th2 response (21). In our studies following HDM priming of the ear skin, we find that both Tfh and Th2 cells contribute to IL-4 expression in the ear lymph node, although the Tfh cells had a greater degree of activation and made a greater amount of IL-4 than their Th2 counterparts, perhaps to aid their role helping B cells to class switch to IgE and IgG1 production. Tfh cells are traditionally thought to reside in the B cell follicle of the lymph nodes, but recent research has suggested that additionally Tfh cells may be precursors of Th2 cells subsequently found in the tissues (26, 27). Using a multiple prime and challenge lung model, Ballesteros et al. showed that HDM sensitization induced IL-4-committed Tfh cells in the lymph node which developed into IL-4- and IL-13-producing effector Th2 cells in the lung upon HDM challenge (26). Other research has identified a subset of Th2 promoting IL-21-expressing Tfh cells, distinct from Th2 cells, found in both the lymph node and lung tissue (27). Whether or not the Tfh cells seen in the ear lymph node in our ear HDM priming model are distinct from the ear tissue Th2 subsets remains to be determined. In addition, the link between the IL-4$^+$ Th2 subset seen in the lymph node and those Th2 subsets in the ear is unclear and subject to further research. It is probable that IL-4-expressing Th2 cells migrate from the lymph node to the ear tissue where they produce additional Th2 cytokines such as IL-5 and IL-13 for Th2 effector functions, perhaps under response to local damage elicited tissue signals (8). Of the IL-4-producing CD4$^+$ subsets in the lymph node, the Th2 subset is more likely than the Tfh cells to be the precursors of the tissue Th2 subsets, as both the Th2 subsets, but not Tfh cells demonstrate a dependence on IL-4 for their development. It should be noted though that the MFIs of the IL-4AC reporter were significantly reduced in both the Tfh and Th2 lymph node CD4 T cells subsets indicating that the levels of IL-4 may be regulated through indirect means such as signaling by B cells or dendritic cells.

That the development of IL-4-expressing Tfh cells is independent of IL-4 adds to current recognition of Tfh cells being a unique subset distinct from traditional Th2 cells. Development of Tfh cells instead depends on IL-6, IL-21, STAT3, and BCL6 and not on other cytokine or transcription factors necessary for formation of other T helper subsets (28–30), and it has been reported that the Tfh cell transcription factor BCL6 can limit the activities of Th2 cells (31). However, it should be noted that studies by others show that the IL-4-producing Th2 subset in the lymph node is not affected by BCL6 deletion indicating that the Tfh subset may not be a precursor for lymph node Th2 (32). Our studies identify a second IL-4-expressing CD4 T cell subset in the lymph node that does not express Tfh markers but whose expression of IL-4 appears to be partially IL-4 dependent. In support of our finding, recent studies have shown that IL-4Rα knockout mice exhibited a significantly compromised IL-4-expressing Th2 response in the gut draining mesenteric lymph node of *H. polygyrus*-infected mice (33) As IL-4Rα is a component of the receptors *via* which both IL-4 and IL-13 act, this could be attributed to the inability of IL-4 (or IL-13) to act *via* its receptor. In our studies, generation of IL-4AC-expressing lymph node Th2 cells was not effected in mice lacking one IL-4 allele and was only reduced by half in the complete absence of IL-4, thus showing only a partial requirement for IL-4. This suggests that although IL-4 contributes to Th2 differentiation in the lymph node other factors are likely involved, such as the quality of the TCR signal and co-stimulation, Th2 promoting miRNAs, signaling pathways that promote GATA3 expression, and other Th2 promoting cytokines like TSLP, IL-33, and IL-25 (34–39). In contrast to our present findings, previous research using G4 reporter mice has indicated that IL-4 was not required to generate IL-4-expressing Th2 cells in the lymph nodes of *Nb*-infected mice (6). However, in these studies only G4/IL4 heterozygous mice in which IL-4 was produced from only one allele could be compared with IL-4-deficient G4/G4 mice in the various allergen and parasitic models and no difference in numbers of GFP-expressing Th2 cells was seen. The use of our dual IL-4, IL-13 4C13R reporter mice in this study, where the reporters are inserted into a bacterial artificial chromosome leaving the endogenous cytokines intact, has enabled a fuller comparison of the effect of the IL-4-sufficient, IL-4 heterozygous, and the IL-4-deficient states on IL-4-expressing CD4 T cell development. In agreement with the previous work, no significant difference was seen between numbers of Th2-differentiated cells in IL-4$^{+/-}$ and IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice in the lymph node, but the additional comparison with the IL-4$^{+/+}$ mice enabled the conclusion that differentiation of Th2 cells is in fact partially dependent on IL-4. Other research comparing NP-OVA/Alum ear immunized IL4$^{+/+}$, IL4$^{+/-}$, and IL-4$^{-/-}$ 4C13R mice also showed IL-4-expressing Th2 cells in the lymph node to not be dependent on IL-4 (20). In another study investigating IL-4- and IL-13-expressing cells arising in response to a model of OVA-induced lung allergy (40), dual reporter *Il4*$^{+/eGFP}$ *Il13*$^{+/Tom}$ mice were used, which due to the insertion of the reporter constructs, are hemizygous for the IL-4 and IL-13 cytokines. They found that IL-4eGFP-expressing CD4$^+$ T cells were largely absent from the lung while in the mediastinal lymph node they were present and major contributors to IL-4 production. This replicates what we have seen in IL-4 hemizygous mice in our current study (**Figure 5**), where IL-4AC$^+$ Th2 cells are not sensitive to the partial loss of IL-4 in the lymph node but in the ear tissue are sensitive to even the hemizygous IL-4 state, with severely decreased numbers. The reliance on IL-4-knockin reporter mice fails to achieve an accurate representation of cytokine expression in a fully IL-4-sufficient environment, while the 4C13R reporter mice overcome this limitation. However, it should be noted that studies using gene expression reporter constructs do not necessarily give any indication of the protein levels that are produced by these Th2 cells and further studies would be required to determine whether the gene expression findings reported here translate into protein expression.

In addition to the IL-4-expressing Tfh subset, we have identified using IL-4AC and IL-13DR expression three subsets of CD4$^+$ T cells that would fall under the definition of a Th2 effector cell that is primed by allergen (or parasite antigens) in the draining lymph node and then migrate and expresses functional cytokines at the original antigen challenged tissue site. The IL-4- and IL-4/

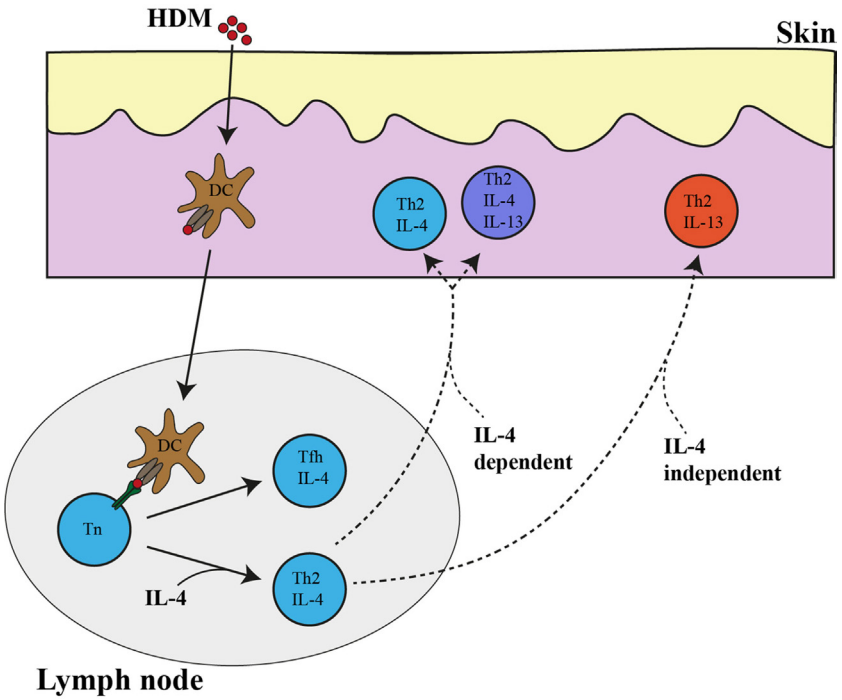



**FIGURE 6** | IL-4- and IL-13-expressing Th2 subsets in the lymph node and ear tissue after allergen priming. Following house dust mite (HDM) priming in the ear skin, dendritic cells take up allergen and transport it to the ear draining lymph node where they present it to naïve CD4 T cells. Naïve CD4 T cells differentiate into either (i) IL-4-expressing Th2 cells in a process that is partially dependent on IL-4 or (ii) IL-4 independent IL-4-expressing T follicular helper (Tfh) cells. IL-4 single-positive CD4 T cell and IL-4/IL-13 double-positive-expressing CD4 T cell subsets in the skin tissue are very dependent on IL-4 while IL-13 single-positive-expressing Th2 cells are independent of IL-4. The broken line represent the as of yet unproven but potential link between the lymph node Th2 cells and those in the tissue.

IL-13-expressing Th2 subsets are very dependent on IL-4 for their appearance in the tissues. Although outside the scope of this study, the requirement for IL-4 may be either to (i) allow differentiation/survival of differentiating Th2 subsets to *Il4* and *Il13* gene expression, (ii) regulate migration and extravasation of CD4 Th2 subsets to antigen challenged tissue sites or (iii) its continued presence is required when reactivated with antigen at the tissue site for full differentiation to a IL-4- or IL-4/IL-13-expressing Th2 effector to occur. Also, our observation that a distinct IL-13-expressing CD4 T cell subset appears in tissues following antigen challenge that is not regulated by IL-4 may reflect the ability of specific tissue-derived alarmins to program specific cytokine expression patterns. Taken together, a picture emerges whereby the differentiating Th2 cell appears to be regulated by multiple checkpoints at distinct tissue sites (**Figure 6**). The lymph node appears to be a place for antigen priming and activation of naïve T cells to Th2 precursors, some of which sequester to the B cell areas of the lymph node to drive B cell differentiation and the others to quickly circulate throughout the body and home to the tissue sites challenged with priming antigens. IL-4 and specific tissue-derived alarmins and factors appear able at this point to direct the further differentiation of the Th2 precursors to distinct subsets of IL-4-, IL-4/IL-13-, and IL-13-expressing subsets. The value or relevance of each Th2 effector subset to the process of antigen/pathogen neutralization, clearance, and repair needs to be elucidated by further studies.

The development of reagents which can selectively interfere with the actions of Th2 cytokines is a potential therapeutic approach in the treatment of allergic disorders, and antibodies targeting the individual cytokines and their receptors have met with variable results [reviewed in Ref (41)]. Dupilumab that blocks IL4Rα, a subunit of both the IL-4 and IL-13 receptors, interferes with the action of both these cytokines and to date has had success in treating asthma and atopic dermatitis (42, 43). The ability of this drug to simultaneously target and block the functions of the lymph node and tissue Th2 cells, thus inhibiting humoral and cellular aspects of type 2-driven pathology is likely key to its success. Further insights into the nature of IL-4- and IL-13-producing Th2 subsets generated in response to allergic stimuli will beneficially further the understanding of the anti-allergic effects of these agents and contribute to their ongoing development.

## ETHICS STATEMENT

All animal procedures were approved by the Victoria University of Wellington Animal Ethics committee and performed in accordance with institutional guidelines.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

MP carried out the experiments, analyzed the data, and wrote the manuscript. GG, FR, and RK provided conceptual insights

and editing of the manuscript and GLG supervised the project. All authors provided feedback on the manuscript.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The work described in this manuscript has been an ongoing collaboration supported by Dr. William E. Paul for over 30 years. His enthusiasm for exploring and bringing to light the fascinating biological processes surrounding IL-4, Th2 differentiation, and type 2 immunity in its many forms for the benefit of humanity is an inspiration to us all.

## FUNDING

This work was funded by Independent Research Organization funding from the Health Research Council of New Zealand and the Marjorie Barclay Trust.

## SUPPLEMENTARY MATERIAL

The Supplementary Material for this article can be found online at https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fimmu.2018.01211/full#supplementary-material.

## REFERENCES

1. Le Gros G, Ben-Sasson SZ, Seder R, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. Generation of interleukin 4 (IL-4)-producing cells in vivo and in vitro: IL-2 and IL-4 are required for in vitro generation of IL-4-producing cells. *J Exp Med* (1990) 172:921–9. doi:10.1084/jem.172.3.921
2. Zhu J, Paul WE. CD4 T cells: fates, functions, and faults. *Blood* (2008) 112:1557–69. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-05-078154
3. Kopf M, Le Gros G, Bachmann M, Lamers MC, Bluethmann H, Köhler G. Disruption of the murine IL-4 gene blocks Th2 cytokine responses. *Nature* (1993) 362:245–8. doi:10.1038/362245a0
4. Kim S, Karasuyama H, Lopez AF, Ouyang W, Li X, Le Gros G, et al. IL-4 derived from non-T cells induces basophil- and IL-3-independent Th2 immune responses. *Immune Netw* (2013) 13:249–56. doi:10.4110/in.2013.13.6.249
5. Jankovic D, Kullberg MC, Noben-Trauth N, Caspar P, Paul WE, Sher A. Single cell analysis reveals that IL-4 receptor/Stat6 signaling is not required for the in vivo or in vitro development of CD4+ lymphocytes with a Th2 cytokine profile. *J Immunol* (2000) 164:3047–55. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.164.6.3047
6. van Panhuys N, Tang S-C, Prout M, Camberis M, Scarlett D, Roberts J, et al. In vivo studies fail to reveal a role for IL-4 or STAT6 signaling in Th2 lymphocyte differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) 105:12423–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0806372105
7. van Panhuys N. TCR signal strength alters T-DC activation and interaction times and directs the outcome of differentiation. *Front Immunol* (2016) 7:6. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2016.00006
8. Van Dyken SJ, Nussbaum JC, Lee J, Molofsky AB, Liang H-E, Pollack JL, et al. A tissue checkpoint regulates type 2 immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:1381–7. doi:10.1038/ni.3582
9. Hussain M, Borcard L, Walsh KP, Pena Rodriguez M, Mueller C, Kim BS, et al. Basophil-derived IL-4 promotes epicutaneous antigen sensitization concomitant with the development of food allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2018) 141:223–34.e5. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.02.035
10. Camberis M, Prout M, Tang S-C, Forbes-Blom E, Robinson M, Kyle R, et al. Evaluating the in vivo Th2 priming potential among common allergens. *J Immunol Methods* (2013) 394:62–72. doi:10.1016/j.jim.2013.05.004
11. Connor LM, Tang S-C, Camberis M, Le Gros G, Ronchese F. Helminth-conditioned dendritic cells prime CD4+ T cells to IL-4 production in vivo. *J Immunol* (2014) 193:2709–17. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1400374
12. Connor LM, Tang S-C, Cognard E, Ochiai S, Hilligan KL, Old SI, et al. Th2 responses are primed by skin dendritic cells with distinct transcriptional profiles. *J Exp Med* (2017) 214:125–42. doi:10.1084/jem.20160470
13. Harvie M, Camberis M, Tang S-C, Delahunt B, Paul W, Le Gros G. The lung is an important site for priming CD4 T-cell-mediated protective immunity against gastrointestinal helminth parasites. *Infect Immun* (2010) 78:3753–62. doi:10.1128/IAI.00502-09
14. Hu-Li J, Pannetier C, Guo L, Löhning M, Gu H, Watson C, et al. Regulation of expression of IL-4 alleles: analysis using a chimeric GFP/IL-4 gene. *Immunity* (2001) 14:1–11. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(01)00084-X
15. Mohrs M, Shinkai K, Mohrs K, Locksley RM. Analysis of type 2 immunity in vivo with a bicistronic IL-4 reporter. *Immunity* (2001) 15:303–11. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(01)00186-8
16. Mohrs K, Wakil AE, Killeen N, Locksley RM, Mohrs M. A two-step process for cytokine production revealed by IL-4 dual-reporter mice. *Immunity* (2005) 23:419–29. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.006
17. Roediger B, Kyle R, Yip KH, Sumaria N, Guy TV, Kim BS, et al. Cutaneous immunosurveillance and regulation of inflammation by group 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:564–73. doi:10.1038/ni.2584
18. Guo L, Huang Y, Chen X, Hu-Li J, Urban JF, Paul WE. Innate immunological function of TH2 cells in vivo. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:1051–9. doi:10.1038/ni.3244
19. Hachem CE, Hener P, Kirstetter P, Li J, Chan S, Li M. Treatment of MCPT8DTR mice with high- or low-dose diphtheria toxin leads to differential depletion of basophils and granulocyte-macrophage progenitors. *Eur J Immunol* (2018) 48:861–873. doi:10.1002/eji.201747351
20. Robinson MJ, Prout M, Mearns H, Kyle R, Camberis M, Forbes-Blom EE, et al. IL-4 haploinsufficiency specifically impairs IgE responses against allergens in mice. *J Immunol* (2017) 198:1815–22. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601434
21. King IL, Mohrs M. IL-4-producing CD4+ T cells in reactive lymph nodes during helminth infection are T follicular helper cells. *J Exp Med* (2009) 206:1001–7. doi:10.1084/jem.20090313
22. Reinhardt RL, Liang H-E, Locksley RM. Cytokine-secreting follicular T cells shape the antibody repertoire. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:385–93. doi:10.1038/ni.1715
23. Liang H-E, Reinhardt RL, Bando JK, Sullivan BM, Ho I-C, Locksley RM. Divergent expression patterns of IL-4 and IL-13 define unique functions in allergic immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 13:58–66. doi:10.1038/ni.2182
24. Minutti CM, Drube S, Blair N, Schwartz C, McCrae JC, McKenzie AN, et al. Epidermal growth factor receptor expression licenses type-2 helper T cells to function in a T cell receptor-independent fashion. *Immunity* (2017) 47:710–22.e6. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2017.09.013
25. Ochiai S, Jagot F, Kyle RL, Hyde E, White RF, Prout M, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin drives the development of IL-13+ Th2 cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2018) 115(5):1033–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.1714348115
26. Ballesteros-Tato A, Randall TD, Lund FE, Spolski R, Leonard WJ, León B. T follicular helper cell plasticity shapes pathogenic T helper 2 cell-mediated immunity to inhaled house dust mite. *Immunity* (2016) 44:259–73. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.11.017
27. Coquet JM, Schuijs MJ, Smyth MJ, Deswarte K, Beyaert R, Braun H, et al. Interleukin-21-producing CD4(+) T cells promote type 2 immunity to house dust mites. *Immunity* (2015) 43:318–30. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.07.015
28. Nurieva RI, Chung Y, Hwang D, Yang XO, Kang HS, Ma L, et al. Generation of T follicular helper cells is mediated by interleukin-21 but independent of T helper 1, 2, or 17 cell lineages. *Immunity* (2008) 29:138–49. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2008.05.009
29. Nurieva RI, Chung Y, Martinez GJ, Yang XO, Tanaka S, Matskevitch TD, et al. Bcl6 mediates the development of T follicular helper cells. *Science* (2009) 325:1001–5. doi:10.1126/science.1176676
30. Choi YS, Eto D, Yang JA, Lao C, Crotty S. Cutting edge: STAT1 is required for IL-6-mediated Bcl6 induction for early follicular helper cell differentiation. *J Immunol* (2013) 190:3049–53. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1203032
31. Kusam S, Toney LM, Sato H, Dent AL. Inhibition of Th2 differentiation and GATA-3 expression by BCL-6. *J Immunol* (2003) 170:2435–41. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.170.5.2435

32. Meli AP, Fontés G, Leung Soo C, King IL. T follicular helper cell-derived IL-4 is required for IgE production during intestinal helminth infection. *J Immunol* (2017) 199(1):244–52. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1700141
33. King IL, Mohrs K, Meli AP, Downey J, Lanthier P, Tzelepis F, et al. Intestinal helminth infection impacts the systemic distribution and function of the naive lymphocyte pool. *Mucosal Immunol* (2017) 10:1160–8. doi:10.1038/mi.2016.127
34. van Panhuys N, Klauschen F, Germain RN. T-cell-receptor-dependent signal intensity dominantly controls CD4+ T cell polarization in vivo. *Immunity* (2014) 41:63–74. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.003
35. Simpson LJ, Patel S, Bhakta NR, Choy DF, Brightbill HD, Ren X, et al. A microRNA upregulated in asthma airway T cells promotes TH2 cytokine production. *Nat Immunol* (2014) 15:1162–70. doi:10.1038/ni.3026
36. Malmhäll C, Alawieh S, Lu Y, Sjöstrand M, Bossios A, Eldh M, et al. MicroRNA-155 is essential for T(H)2-mediated allergen-induced eosinophilic inflammation in the lung. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2014) 133:1429–38, 1438.e1–7. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.11.008
37. Fort MM, Cheung J, Yen D, Li J, Zurawski SM, Lo S, et al. IL-25 induces IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 and Th2-associated pathologies in vivo. *Immunity* (2001) 15:985–95. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(01)00243-6
38. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E, Song Y, Murphy E, McClanahan TK, et al. IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. *Immunity* (2005) 23:479–90. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.015
39. Ziegler SF, Roan F, Bell BD, Stoklasek TA, Kitajima M, Han H. The biology of thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP). *Adv Pharmacol* (2013) 66:129–55. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12-404717-4.00004-4
40. Barlow JL, Bellosi A, Hardman CS, Drynan LF, Wong SH, Cruickshank JP, et al. Innate IL-13-producing nuocytes arise during allergic lung inflammation and contribute to airways hyperreactivity. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2012) 129:191–8.e1–4. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2011.09.041
41. Walker JA, McKenzie ANJ. TH2 cell development and function. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2017) 18(2):121–33. doi:10.1038/nri.2017.118
42. Wenzel S, Castro M, Corren J, Maspero J, Wang L, Zhang B, et al. Dupilumab efficacy and safety in adults with uncontrolled persistent asthma despite use of medium-to-high-dose inhaled corticosteroids plus a long-acting β2 agonist: a randomised double-blind placebo-controlled pivotal phase 2b dose-ranging trial. *Lancet* (2016) 388:31–44. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(16)30307-5
43. Simpson EL, Bieber T, Guttman-Yassky E, Beck LA, Blauvelt A, Cork MJ, et al. Two phase 3 trials of dupilumab versus placebo in atopic dermatitis. *N Engl J Med* (2016) 375:2335–48. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1610020


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 15 May 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01037

# IL-4 and IL-13 Receptor Signaling From 4PS to Insulin Receptor Substrate 2: There and Back Again, a Historical View

*Achsah D. Keegan[1,2]*, Jose Zamorano[3], Aleksander Keselman[4] and Nicola M. Heller[4]*

[1] Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Center for Vascular and Inflammatory Diseases, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States, [2] Baltimore VA Medical Center, Baltimore, MD, United States, [3] Unidad Investigacion, Complejo Hospitalario Universitario, Caceres, Spain, [4] Department of Anesthesiology and Critical Care Medicine, Division of Allergy and Clinical Immunology, Johns Hopkins University School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD, United States

In this historical perspective, written in honor of Dr. William E. Paul, we describe the initial discovery of one of the dominant substrates for tyrosine phosphorylation stimulated by IL-4. We further describe how this "IL-4-induced phosphorylated substrate" (4PS) was characterized as a member of the insulin receptor substrate (IRS) family of large adaptor proteins that link IL-4 and insulin receptors to activation of the phosphatidylinositol 3′ kinase pathway as well as other downstream signaling pathways. The relative contribution of the 4PS/IRS pathway to the early models of IL-4-induced proliferation and suppression of apoptosis are compared to our more recent understanding of the complex interplay between positive and negative regulatory pathways emanating from members of the IRS family that impact allergic responses.

**Keywords: interleukin-4, interleukin-13, interleukin-4 receptor α, interleukin-13 receptor alpha1 subunit, insulin receptor substrate, IL-4-induced phosphorylated substrate, allergy, macrophage activation**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Jose Alberola-ila, Oklahoma Medical Research Foundation, United States*
*Hyun Park, National Cancer Institute (NCI), United States*

****Correspondence:***
*Achsah D. Keegan*
*akeegan@som.umaryland.edu*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to Cytokines and Soluble Mediators in Immunity, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *17 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *25 April 2018*
***Published:*** *15 May 2018*

***Citation:***
*Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Keselman A and Heller NM (2018) IL-4 and IL-13 Receptor Signaling From 4PS to Insulin Receptor Substrate 2: There and Back Again, a Historical View. Front. Immunol. 9:1037. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01037*

## FORWARD BY ACHSAH D. KEEGAN

Working with Dr. William E. Paul, known to all as "Bill," was an honor and a privilege. It was also a lot of fun. In the early 1990s his laboratory was energized by studies of Th2 differentiation, the composition of the receptor for IL-4 (and later IL-13), and mechanisms of signal transduction. These studies included the identification and initial characterization of a major target for tyrosine phosphorylation in cells treated with IL-4, the focus of this perspective. As fellows, working with (not for) Bill was like being a kid in the proverbial candy shop; we were only limited by our imagination and ability to work hard. Bill's enthusiasm for each project was infectious; he challenged all of us to think creatively and ask important questions. His scientific legacy is profound and timeless. Fascination with IL-4 signaling, starting with work in Bill's lab, continues today; co-authors Dr. Zamorano and Dr. Heller trained as postdoctoral fellows in my laboratory before starting their own programs, and Dr. Keselman is currently a fellow in Dr. Heller's lab. The latest research is leading to new and increasingly complex paradigms on pathway regulation with implications for the treatment of allergic diseases. And so on it goes.

## AN INTRODUCTION TO 4PS AND THE INSULIN RECEPTOR SUBSTRATE (IRS)

With the development of monoclonal antibodies capable of recognizing proteins phosphorylated on tyrosine (Y) residues, scientists were able to efficiently and consistently analyze patterns of tyrosine

phosphorylation induced by a variety of growth factors and cytokines (**Figure 1**) (1–4). Early studies performed in collaboration with Dr. Jacalyn Pierce and Dr. Ling-Mei Wang showed that IL-4 treatment of the mouse myeloid factor-dependent cell line (FDC)-P2 stimulated the highly robust tyrosine phosphorylation of a large molecular weight protein (~180,000 Da), visible in anti-phosphotyrosine western blots of anti-phosphotyrosine precipitates, while stimulation with IL-3 failed to do so (5). We initially termed this protein IL-4-induced phosphorylated substrate or "4PS." This phospho-protein was shown to associate with the p85 regulatory subunit of phosphatidyl-inositol (PI) 3′ kinase and with PI 3′ kinase enzyme activity.

Groups interested in the signaling pathways activated by insulin, including Dr. Kahn and Dr. White, had reported that insulin treatment of responsive cells led to the robust tyrosine phosphorylation of a large molecular weight protein (~185,000 Da) they termed insulin receptor substrate or "IRS" (6, 7). Intrigued by the similarity to 4PS, we directly compared the effects of IL-4 and insulin on tyrosine phosphorylation in FDC-P2 cells (8). Both induced the tyrosine phosphorylation of a protein with similar mobility on SDS-PAGE gels that was capable of interacting with the p85 regulatory subunit of PI 3′ kinase. Subsequent analysis of the phosphoproteins by V8 protease digestion revealed that the IL-4-induced tyrosine-phosphorylated substrate was similar to that phosphorylated in response to insulin and IGF-I suggesting that 4PS was related to IRS (8).

Dr. White's group cloned the cDNA for IRS from rat liver, and it was termed IRS1 (9). The IL-3-dependent murine cell line, 32D, expressing IRS1 as a result of transfection, was generated in Dr. Pierce's lab and used to show unequivocally that both IL-4 and insulin stimulated the tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS1 (10). This pathway was essential for the ability of IL-4 to stimulate 32D cell proliferation, and thus the concept that the 4PS/IRS pathway is required for proliferative responses was initiated. In later studies, it was observed that IL-13 also induced the tyrosine phosphorylation of 4PS (11) (**Figure 2A**); the potency of 4PS phosphorylation correlated with the proliferative response in human TF-1 cells (**Figure 2B**).

With the molecular characterization of IRS1 and development of IRS1-specific antibodies, it became clear that the 4PS protein observed in FDC-P2 cells was not IRS1 (8, 9). Polyclonal anti-IRS1 anti-serum weakly recognized 4PS in FDC lines, while two highly specific anti-IRS1 peptide antibodies were unable to precipitate 4PS. Thus, protein sequence for 4PS was obtained from anti-p85 precipitates of insulin-treated FDC-P2 cells (12). The sequence was used to generate probes to screen a cDNA library generated from FDC-P2 cells and obtain sequence for 4PS in 1995. 4PS was renamed IRS2 due to its similarity to IRS1 (12).

It is now known that IRS1 and IRS2 are members of a family of large adaptor proteins that participate in insulin, IGF-1, and IL-4 and IL-13 signaling (13). A variety of other growth factors and cytokines have also been shown to stimulate the phosphorylation

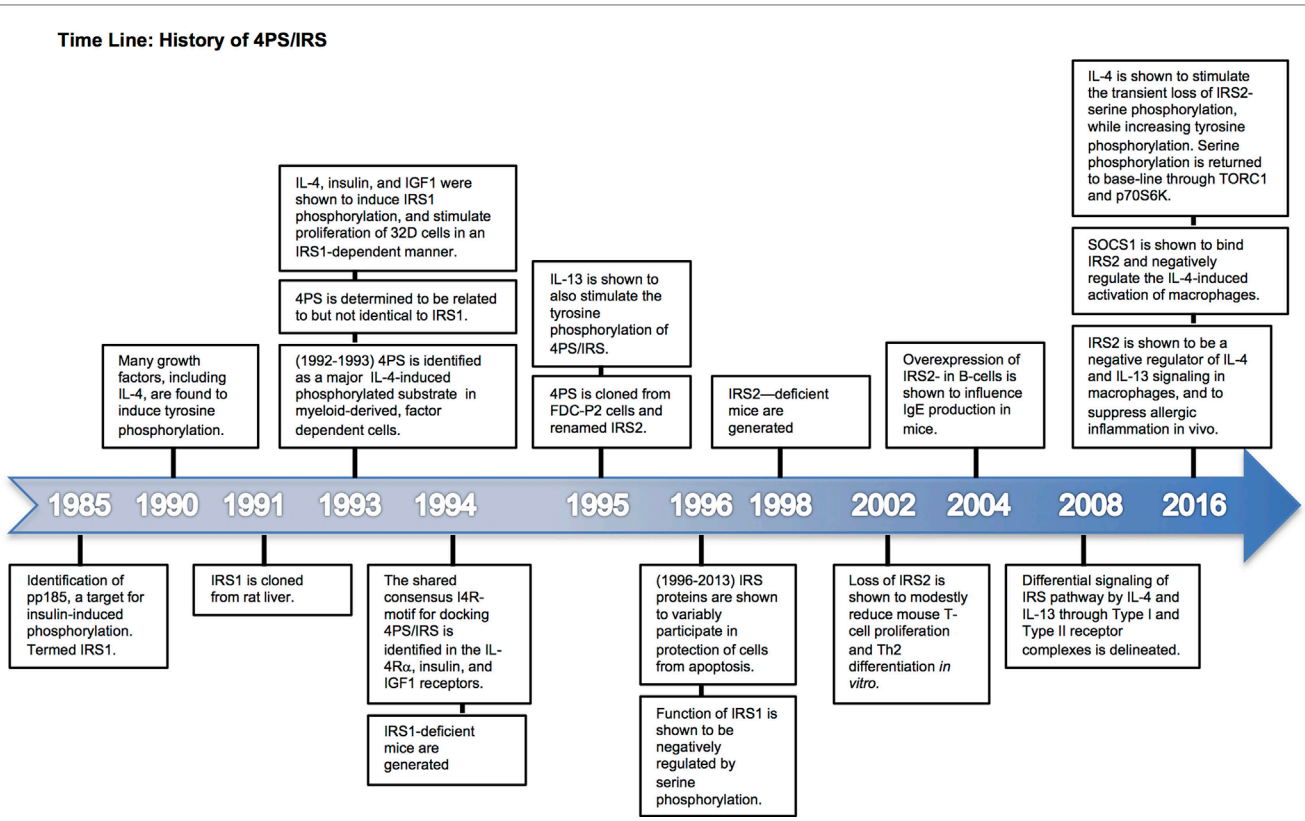



**FIGURE 1** | Time line of 4PS discovery and characterization. Major milestone discoveries are ordered and summarized based on the year(s) of their publication.

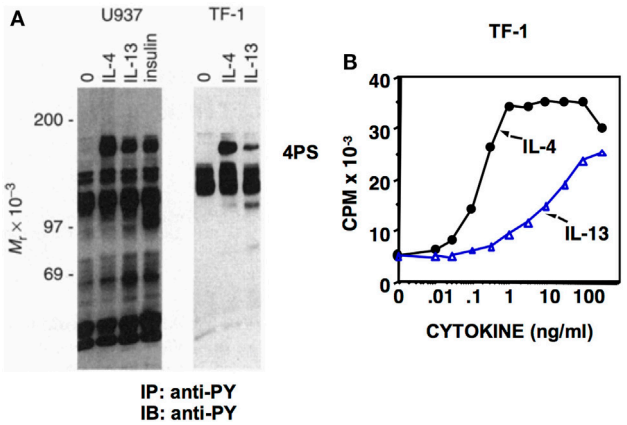



**FIGURE 2** | Induction of 4PS and cell proliferation by IL-4 and IL-13. **(A)** Human U937 and TF-1 cells were deprived of serum and growth factors for 2 h before treatment with human IL-4 (10 ng/ml), human IL-13 (250 ng/ml), or insulin (40 μg/ml) as indicated. Cell lysates were prepared and immunoprecipitated with the anti-phosphotyrosine antibody 4G10 followed by immunoblotting with 4G10. **(B)** TF-1 cells were incubated with the indicated doses of human IL-4 and human IL-13 for a total of 48 h. Cells were treated for the last 4 h of culture with [$^3$H]thymidine. Reprinted under copyright (1995) National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A. Keegan et al. (11).

of these signaling substrates (14). Both IRS1 and IRS2 can be tyrosine phosphorylated in response to IL-4 while other family members (including IRS3 or IRS4) do not appear to participate. Whether IRS1 or IRS2 or both are tyrosine phosphorylated after IL-4 stimulation depends on the cellular expression of each protein (15). Studies in 32D cells, which express neither IRS protein, revealed a positive contribution of either IRS1 or IRS2 to the IL-4-induced proliferative response (10). It was initially thought that IRS1 was predominantly expressed in non-hematopoietic cells, while IRS2 was highly expressed in cells of hematopoietic origin. However, there are exceptions to this paradigm, especially in epithelial cancers such as breast cancer (16). Furthermore, myeloid cells can express IRS1 with important functional activity as we discuss below (17). It is now appreciated that many cell types can express both family members, with differences in relative abundance that may be regulated (18).

Both IRS1 and IRS2 contain conserved amino terminal plexin homology domains and protein tyrosine binding (PTB) domains that bring these adaptors to the inner leaflet of the plasma membrane (19, 20) and interact with tyrosine-based target motifs (21), respectively. Both adaptors contain multiple tyrosines that have the potential to become phosphorylated, explaining their dominant representation in anti-phosphotyrosine immunoprecipitates. Three groups demonstrated that the Janus kinase (JAK) interacting with the cytoplasmic tail of the IL-4Rα chain, JAK1, is required for IL-4-induced tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS proteins (22–24). In collaboration with John O'Shea, we showed that IL-4 treatment lead to the activation of JAK3, while IL-13 treatment did not (11). IL-13 was shown to activate Tyk2 or in some cases JAK2 (25, 26). Both stimulated tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS2 (11).

Once phosphorylated, the tyrosine residues provide docking sites for SH2-domain-containing signaling molecules, such as the p85 subunit of PI 3′ kinase and the small protein adapter Grb2 (27). There are three tyrosines that act as p85 binding sites in IRS1 and two in IRS2 in the classic YXXM motif (13, 28). Binding of p85 to IRS proteins leads to activation of PI 3′ kinase activity and the subsequent activation of downstream signaling cascades such as the Akt pathway. The functional importance of the recruitment of the Grb2 adaptor is still unknown (27). Many other adaptor proteins have also been shown to associate with IRS1 or IRS2 including SHP-2 (also known as Syp, SH-PTP2) (29), PLC-γ (30), and SOCS proteins (31, 32), negative regulators of IL-4 signaling.

In addition to sites for tyrosine phosphorylation, both IRS1 and IRS2 have numerous potential sites for serine and threonine phosphorylation; several of these sites are unique to IRS1 and act as important modulators of functions as will be discussed in more detail in a later section (33). While well known as cytoplasmic adaptor proteins, IRS1 and IRS2 are not confined to the cytoplasm. Both can also translocate to the nucleus under certain conditions (viral/cellular transformation) and contribute to transcriptional activation or inhibition of particular genes (34–37).

## RECRUITMENT TO THE IL-4 RECEPTOR COMPLEX: WELCOME TO THE INSULIN/IL-4 RECEPTOR (I4R) MOTIF

In order to understand the mechanism by which IL-4 stimulated the tyrosine phosphorylation of 4PS/IRS and cellular proliferation, a series of deletion, mutagenesis, and pull-down studies were performed in Bill's lab in collaboration with Dr. Keats Nelms (38). The amino acids in the cytoplasmic tail of the IL-4Rα chain responsible for 4PS/IRS binding to the human IL-4 receptor were identified between amino acids 437 and 557. Furthermore, this sequence interval was necessary for IL-4 to stimulate proliferation of 32D-IRS1 cells. Within this interval, we identified a sequence motif homologous to sites within the insulin and IGF-I receptors previously shown to bind IRS1. We named this consensus motif [$^{488}$PL-$(X)_4$-NPXYXSXSD$^{502}$] the insulin and IL-4 Receptor (I4R) motif. The central tyrosine is critical for association of IRS proteins with the I4R motif of the IL-4Rα and for proliferation of transfected 32D-IRS1 cells (38, 39). The PTB domains of IRS1/2 recognize the core NPXY sequence when phosphorylated with influence of the amino acid residues in the −9, −8, and −7 (relative to the Y residue) positions (21, 39).

The importance of the I4R motif in dictating IL-4 receptor signaling was confirmed using domain transplant approaches (40). We generated chimeric receptors using a truncated IL-2 receptor β chain fused to the IL-4Rα domain containing the I4R motif (aa437–557) in wild type form or with the central Y residue mutated to F. Only chimeric receptors containing a wild-type I4R motif were able to mediate the tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS1 in response to IL-2.

As the IRS pathway was being characterized, contemporaneous work from several groups were on the trail of another protein tyrosine phosphorylated in response to IL-4 (41–44). This protein was identified as a member of the new (at the time) family of signal transducers and activators of transcription (STAT), and termed STAT6. The tyrosine phosphorylation of STAT6 induced

by IL-4 leads to its ability to bind to STAT-palindrome sequences found in the promoters of IL-4 responsive genes such as CD23 and regulate gene transcription. While working in Bill's lab, John Ryan showed that STAT6 was recruited to the IL-4Rα by any one of the three distinct amino acid motifs with the consensus sequence of GYKxF (45). Indeed, mutating the Y in these IL-4Rα sequences to F substantially diminished STAT6 phosphorylation in response to IL-4 and suppressed the majority of IL-4-induced responses. These STAT6 docking motifs were independent of the I4R motif. Thus, at the initial steps of signaling transduction, activation of the IRS and STAT6 pathways are independent of each other. Taken together, the published studies of the 1990s led to the conclusion that there were two major signal transduction pathways activated by IL-4. Models of the day showed that the STAT6 pathway regulated gene expression while the IRS pathway regulated cell proliferation (46–51). Later studies called this dichotomy into question as most IL-4-induced functions are greatly diminished or abrogated in STAT6-deficient mice (52–57).

## CONTRIBUTION OF IRS PROTEINS TO CELL SURVIVAL

The ability of IL-4 to regulate the survival of cells is one of the important and most investigated activity of this cytokine. Soon after its characterization, IL-4 was found to exert potent anti-apoptotic activity, preventing the apoptosis of multiple cell types under different pro-apoptotic signals (58). The molecular mechanisms that signal regulation of apoptosis by IL-4 have been widely studied. These studies established that IL-4 can signal various intracellular pathways able to regulate apoptosis. Among, the molecular machinery involved in this process, the IRS proteins were found to play an important active role in the regulation of apoptosis by IL-4 (59).

As noted above, early studies performed in cell lines lacking IRS proteins demonstrated that the IL-4-induced cell proliferation was dependent on these proteins (10). Similarly, later studies performed in these cells also demonstrated a principal role of IRS proteins in the protection of apoptosis by IL-4. Thus, we showed that expression of IRS1 in 32D cells enhanced the ability of IL-4 to protect them from apoptosis after IL-3 withdrawal (59). This observation was further supported by the fact that IL-4 was not able to prevent cell death in cells expressing the Y497F mutation within the I4R motif of the IL-4Rα. This mutation abrogated the ability of IL-4 to induce IRS proteins phosphorylation. The importance of the I4R motif in regulating apoptosis was also observed in chimeric receptors consisting of a truncated form of the IL-2 receptor, unable to signal protection from apoptosis, and different fragments of the IL-4Rα (60). Transplantation of the IL-4Rα domain containing the I4R motif to the truncated IL-2 receptor transferred the ability to activate IRS proteins and to signal protection from apoptosis. This was abrogated again by the mutation Y497F within the I4R motif. These studies demonstrated the importance of the I4R motif of the IL-4Rα and the IRS proteins in the regulation of apoptosis by IL-4. In spite of these observations, the regulation of apoptosis by IL-4 seems to be more complex. IL-4 can activate IRS-independent pathways, including STAT6, to prevent cell death since IL-4 could protect from apoptosis cells lacking IRS proteins, though less effectively that in cells expressing them (59–63).

The IL-13 receptor complex also contains the IL-4Rα (**Figure 3**), sharing, therefore, intracellular molecular pathways and biological functions with IL-4 including protection from apoptosis. However, the role of IRS proteins in IL-13 signaling protection from apoptosis has not been extensively investigated. Like IL-4, IL-13 is also able to signal IRS phosphorylation (11). However, the phosphorylation of IRS2 induced by IL-13 is much weaker than by IL-4 (64). This observation could help to explain the differential described effect of IL-4 and IL-13 in apoptosis. Thus, IL-13 could reduce apoptosis in peripheral B cells although it was less potent than IL-4 (65). Both cytokines appear to activate common pathways since their effect was not additive. It may be possible that they converge on IRS2 as it has been proposed that IL-13 prevents pancreatic beta cells from apoptosis through IRS2 signaling (66).

The ability of IRS proteins to signal protection from apoptosis is not restricted to IL-4. A number of studies have shown that insulin and IGF-1 promoted pancreatic beta cell development and survival through IRS2 signaling (67). It was observed that disruption of IRS2 produced diabetes in mice by affecting development and survival of beta cells (68). By contrast, overexpression of IRS2 could improve beta cell function by protecting them from apoptosis induced by D-glucose (69). Disruption of IRS2 has been demonstrated to impair peripheral insulin signaling promoting insulin resistance in liver and skeletal muscle (68).

The effects of the IRS adaptors in preventing cell death can be extended to other cell types including hepatic, muscular, or neuronal cells. IRS2 is the main effector of insulin in the liver. IRS2 signaling has been found necessary to mediate the survival effect of insulin in neonatal hepatocytes. In this case, insulin rescue of hepatocytes from apoptosis was aborted in cells lacking IRS2 (70). The introduction of IRS2 in these cells reconstituted the ability of insulin to prevent cell death. IRS2 is overexpressed in human and murine hepatocellular carcinoma, resulting in protection from apoptosis. In these cells, downregulation of IRS2 increased apoptosis (70, 71).

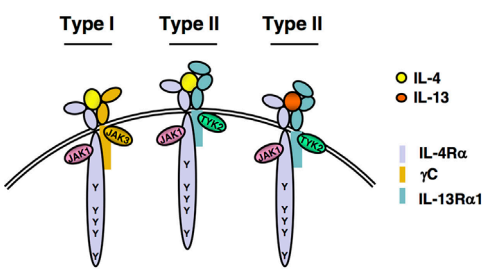



**FIGURE 3** | IL-4 and IL-13 receptors. A functional IL-4 receptor is composed of two transmembrane proteins. The IL-4Rα chain binds IL-4 with high affinity, leading to dimerization with the common gamma chain (γc) to form the Type I, IL-4 exclusive receptor complex or with the IL-13Rα1, to form the Type II IL-4 receptor complex. IL-13 binds to IL-13Rα1 with lower affinity, followed by heterodimerization with IL-4Rα to form the IL-13 Type II receptor complex. Following ligand binding and subunit heterodimerization, receptor-associated Janus Kinases (JAKs) become activated and phosphorylate any of the five highly conserved tyrosine residues found in the cytoplasmic tail of the IL-4Rα chain.

Given their ability to signal protection from apoptosis, it is not surprising that IRS proteins contribute to cancer development and progression. Numerous studies have implicated IRS proteins in the progression of several tumors including breast, colorectal, prostatic, hepatic, or gastric cancers (37, 72–80). It has been proposed that IRS proteins may play an important role in breast cancer by differentially regulating cell survival, proliferation, and motility (75, 81). Increased IRS1 abundance has been associated with breast cancer cell proliferation (16). Increased IRS1 expression has been reported in primary estrogen receptor α (ERα) + breast tumors and localized breast ductal carcinoma *in situ* (37, 82). Interestingly, IRS1 interacts with ERα, and in the nucleus regulates ERα transcription (34, 36, 83–85). Furthermore, estrogen regulates expression of IRS1, thus providing a positive regulatory pathway between estrogen and the IRS1 adaptor (86). In keeping with this relationship, low IRS1 expression was observed in poorly differentiated ERα-tumors (37). On the other hand, IRS2 expression is regulated by progesterone and is associated with metastasis (81, 87, 88). The expression of IRS2 was low in ductal carcinoma *in situ* but much increased in high grade invasive human breast tumors (37). Using mouse models of breast cancer, it was shown that overexpressing IRS2 lead to mammary hyperplasia, tumorigenesis, and metastasis (74). By contrast, IRS2-deficient mammary tumor cells were less invasive and more apoptotic than cells expressing IRS2 (89, 90). Interestingly, increased expression of IRS1, but not IRS2, may favor anticancer therapies. IRS1 expression sensitized MCF-7 cells to breast cancer chemotherapeutic agents, likely by affecting Annexin-2 cellular distribution (37). Similar findings were also observed in 32D myeloid cells (91). In these cells, overexpression of IRS1, but not IRS2, also enhanced their sensitivity to chemotherapy by enhancing Annexin-A2 expression. Surprisingly, coexpression of IRS2 suppressed sensitization of chemotherapy by IRS1, and altered the subcellular localization of IRS1 and Annexin-A2 from primarily cytoplasmic to primarily nuclear. These findings suggest that analysis of the relative expression of IRS proteins may be used to predict breast cancer progression and response to chemotherapy. In this regard, other authors have proposed that IRS-specific gene expression profiles could predict the response to anti-IGF therapy in breast cancer (76).

A recent meta-analysis indicates that the IRS2 rs1805097 polymorphism can be associated with the risk of developing colorectal cancer (77). The same polymorphism has been associated with susceptibility to gastric cancer (78). In prostate, it has been reported that the IRS2/IRS1 ratio was higher in malignant compared with benign prostate tissues (79). IRS2 was also found overexpressed in human and mouse hepatocellular carcinoma cells, and down regulation of IRS2 expression increased apoptosis in these cells, suggesting that IRS2 can contribute to liver tumors (71). Furthermore, it was shown that IRS2 contributes to increased viability and reduced apoptosis in myeloid cancers harboring the activating mutation of JAK2 (JAK2V61F) by interacting with the mutant JAK2, suggesting that IRS2 can be a target to control this disease (80). These authors proposed that pharmacological inhibition of IRS2 may be useful to complement anticancer therapies by increasing apoptosis in tumor cells.

The phosphorylation of IRS proteins leads to the interaction with several signaling proteins. Among them, the PI-3′ kinase has been shown to play an important role in transmitting anti-apoptotic signals downstream of IRS2. The p85 subunit of the PI-3′ kinase coprecipitates with IRS2 and specific inhibitors of PI-3′ kinase blocked the protection from apoptosis by IL-4 on B cells (61). Similarly, the expression of dominant inhibitory forms of PI-3′ kinase abrogated the anti-apoptotic effect of IL-4 on B cells (92). Other intracellular proteins including Akt and p70S6K have been found to act downstream of IRS proteins/PI-3′ kinase in signaling protection from apoptosis (70, 93). It has also been found that insulin and IGF-1 can prevent apoptosis by an IRS2-dependent pathway that requires PI-3′ kinase and Akt (70). IRS proteins have also been reported to signal protection from apoptosis by PI-3′ kinase-independent pathways (94). Thus, the expression of IRS1, but not IRS2, protected a T cell hybridoma from activation-induced cell death (AICD) by a mechanism independent of PI-3′ kinase (94). In this case, pharmacologic inhibition of PI-3′ kinase did not abrogate the resistance of cells expressing IRS1 to AICD. In fact, the protection from apoptosis was independent of tyrosine phosphorylation and association of IRS1 with PI-3′ kinase. The authors suggested that the protection was mediated through serine residues present in IRS1 but not in IRS2. The molecular pathways activated through IRS proteins can lead to the inhibition of caspase activity (72, 73). Thus, the overexpression of IRS1 and IRS2 in neuroblastoma cells can prevent the insulin-dependent activation of caspase-3 by a PI-3′ kinase-dependent pathway (73). In the absence of IRS2, hepatocytes experience high rate of apoptosis after serum withdrawal by a mechanism involving capasase-3. Restoration of IRS2 in these cells reduced apoptosis by decreasing caspase-3 activity through a PI-3-K/Akt signaling pathway (70). In T cell hybridomas, IRS1 expression protected from apoptosis by delaying and decreasing functional FAS ligand expression after TCR engagement (94).

The fact that the IRS proteins, especially IRS2, play an important role in protection from apoptosis by several cytokines and growth factors make them potential therapeutic targets to treat several diseases. This can be useful in designing treatment strategies for certain cancers as mentioned above but also for inflammatory diseases and diabetes in which IL-4 and insulin play an important role. Several strategies to increase expression of IRS2 with pharmacologic agents are being explored to enhance pancreatic β-cell and endothelial cell survival in the context of Type II diabetes (18, 95). However, our current understanding of the relative roles of IRS1 and IRS2 in mediating and modulating allergic diseases is quite limited.

## DIFFERENTIAL ROLES OF IRS2 IN IL-4- VERSUS IL-13-INDUCED ALLERGIC RESPONSES

### IL-4 Versus IL-13—Why?

In early days, it was thought that IL-4 and IL-13 elicited identical signaling pathways (51), since they share receptor complexes (**Figure 3**). The Type I and Type II receptors consist of IL-4Rα/gamma chain ($\gamma_c$) and IL-4Rα/IL-13Rα1 heterodimers,

respectively (96). IL-4 binds with high affinity to the IL-4Rα inducing interaction with the γc to form a ternary complex termed the Type I receptor (**Figure 3**). Alternatively, the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex can interact with the IL-13Rα1 to form the Type II receptor complex. IL-13 does not bind directly to the IL-4Rα; however, its binding to the IL-13Rα1 stimulates interaction with the IL-4Rα to form a Type II receptor complex containing IL-13 instead of IL-4 (**Figure 3**). It is now appreciated that these three different ternary complexes activate signaling pathways that are similar but not identical to each other.

Since IL-4 has a higher affinity for initial binding to its cognate binding chain, IL-4Rα, than IL-13 has for binding to IL-13Rα1, IL-4 tends to elicit STAT6 phosphorylation at lower concentrations than IL-13 (96). However, comparisons of IL-4- and IL-13-elicited responses *in vitro* demonstrated differential biological activity on dendritic cells and macrophages (97–100). Furthermore, examination of effector functions during allergic responses in mice suggested that each cytokine controlled a different aspect of the inflammatory response. Several groups reported differences in Th2 inflammatory responses in allergic lung inflammation and worm infection models using the IL-4 and IL-13 knockout and transgenic mice (101–105). IL-4 and IL-13 were ascribed different roles in the initiation and effector phases, respectively, of allergic lung inflammation in mouse models. Only IL-4 was able to polarize T-cells to the Th2-phenotype as demonstrated by studies in IL-4-deficient (57, 101, 106) and in IL-13Rα1-deficient mice (107). This inability of IL-13 to induce Th2 polarization is easily explained by a lack of surface IL-13Rα1 expression on mouse T-cells (108, 109). The result of much research concluded that IL-4/Type I signaling elicits some of the characteristic features of allergic lung inflammation, such as eosinophilia, but that IL-13/IL-13Rα1 is required for the effector responses in the airways including airway hyperreactivity and mucus production (103–105, 107, 110).

The expression of genes characteristic of alternatively activated "M2" macrophages also demonstrated differential dependence on Type I versus Type II signaling *in vivo*. The M2 genes, *ArgI* and *Chia*, required IL-13Rα1 (Type II receptor signaling) in response to OVA challenge and intratracheal instillation of IL-13 (110). When IL-4 was intratracheally instilled into the IL-13Rα1-deficient animals, induction of *ArgI*, *Retnla*, and *MglI* was maintained, demonstrating that M2 responses are independent of Type II signaling *in vivo*. We also showed that M2 responses are maintained in mice lacking γc, when Th2 effectors are provided exogenously, establishing that either the Type I or Type II receptors expressed on macrophages are sufficient to drive M2 responses during allergic responses *in vivo* (111). Interestingly, Rothenberg et al. also showed that IL-13Rα1 was required for TGF-β production in response to aeroallergen challenge with *Aspergillus* or house dust mite (112). In a model of *N. brasiliensis* infection, the production of Th2 cytokines was measured in leukocytes elicited by allergic inflammation (113). Th2 cells produced both IL-4 and IL-13 in the lungs but only produced IL-4 in the lymph nodes of infected mice. Furthermore, ILC2s and basophils were major sources of IL-13, but not IL-4, in the infected lung. Although these papers described the differential production of and dependence on IL-4 and IL-13 in many of the phenotypic endpoints of Th2-mediated inflammation to allergen challenge or worm infection, few if any described the upstream signaling differences elicited by the two cytokines.

These complex modes of IL-4 and IL-13 action have great implications in the design of effective allergy therapies (114). Early attempts to suppress allergic responses in humans using a soluble form of IL-4Rα to specifically inhibit IL-4 action (it does not inhibit IL-13) did not meet clinical endpoints likely because IL-13-induced responses were not suppressed, and in addition to positive signaling pathways, IL-4 also stimulates regulatory responses that could limit inflammation, such as the suppression of TNFα production (115). Thus, it is necessary to understand the different signaling responses and downstream effects of these two cytokines to rationally design inhibitors of the IL-4- and/or IL-13-induced responses that could be used as therapeutics for asthma and allergies.

The regulation of the IRS2 pathway downstream of IL-4 signaling was described using RNAi-mediated knockdown of regulators of the TORC pathway (116). Warren et al. demonstrated that p70S6K and GRB10 were TORC1-activated negative feedback regulators of IRS2 activity (**Figure 4**). P70S6K regulated IL-4-induced IRS2 tyrosine phosphorylation by serine phosphorylating IRS-2. GRB10 interacted with IRS2 and with NEDD4.2 and reduced the amount of phosphorylated IRS2, likely by targeting it to the proteasome for degradation. Mice lacking TSC1/2, and the TORC1- and 2-specific proteins, Raptor and Rictor, have also been instrumental in revealing the TORC-mediated negative regulation of the IRS2 pathway (117, 118). Macrophages from Tsc1 knockout mice have increased TORC1 activity, leading to diminished Akt phosphorylation of Ser473, as might be expected when removing a negative regulator. The decrease in this surrogate measure of Akt activity resulted in decreased polarization to the M2 program in the macrophages. In terms of the role of the two TORC complexes in regulating the IL-4/IRS/Akt pathway and M2 macrophage polarization, macrophages from Rictor-deficient animals showed diminished Akt Ser 473, NDRG, and FoxO phosphorylation (117, 119, 120). Downstream, M2 polarization was either decreased (119, 120) or unchanged (117). When the TORC1 complex is inhibited with rapamycin, human monocyte-derived macrophages that are polarized to the M2 phenotype undergo apoptosis but not cells polarized to the M1 phenotype (121). Expression of M2 surface markers and other genes was reduced. We also observed a reduction in some but not all IL-4-stimulated M2 genes in a human monocytic cell line following rapamycin treatment (116).

## IL-4 Versus IL-13 Signaling Differences: IRS2

The signaling events initiated by IL-4 or IL-13 binding to their cognate receptors have largely been identified through the use of genetically altered cell lines. As discussed above, the differences in signaling between the IL-4 and IL-13 begin with the activation of different Janus family kinases (11, 24, 49, 122). The IL-4Rα associates with JAK1. The $\gamma_c$ subunit associates with JAK3, and the IL-13Rα1 subunit associates with Tyk2 or in some cases JAK2 (**Figure 3**). Both receptor complexes activate STAT6 through

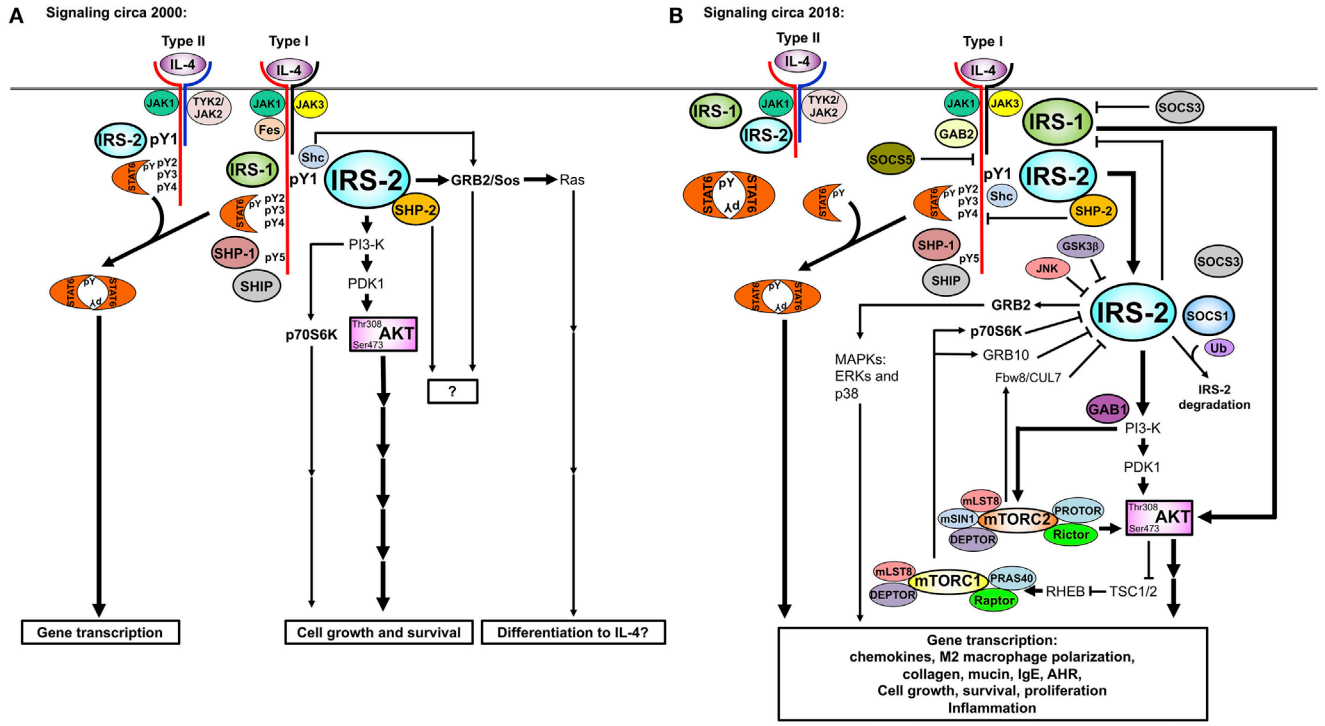



**FIGURE 4** | Historic **(A)** versus updated model **(B)** of IRS signaling. Our understanding of the IL-4-activated IRS signaling pathway has increased substantially between **(A)** 2000 and **(B)** 2018. The involvement of the TOR complexes, SOCS proteins, small adaptor proteins (GRBs and GABs), and other regulatory proteins in negative and positive regulation of IRS2 signaling has been uncovered. The differences in signaling triggered by IL-4 and IL-13 were determined, with IL-4 being a more potent activator of tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS2 than IL-13. Recently, IRS2 has been described as a negative regulator of IRS1, yet many interactions and roles of this pathway remain to be fully understood.

recruitment to the IL-4Rα docking sites and tyrosine phosphorylation by the JAKs (45). Comparisons of IL-4- or IL-13-induced STAT6 phosphorylation in Ramos and A459 cells, which express either only the Type I or Type II receptor complexes, respectively, have revealed interesting differences in potency and kinetics (96). IL-4 stimulated the tyrosine phosphorylation of STAT6 faster and at lower concentrations than IL-13 in all cases, even in the absence of $\gamma_c$ where IL-4-Type II and IL-13-Type II complexes could be compared head-to-head. Furthermore, consistent with historic studies on the exquisite sensitivity of B-cells to IL-4 (123–125), Ramos cells, expressing Type I receptors, exhibited rapid and robust STAT6 phosphorylation at low concentrations of IL-4 that was far superior to responses elicited in A549 cells (Type II receptor complex) (96). This differential responsiveness could be influenced by the relative density of the receptor chains (IL-4Rα, γc, and IL-13Rα1) and by site-directed mutagenesis of the cytokines themselves (126).

While we identified differences in potency and kinetics of STAT6 activation among the three ternary complexes, the degree of STAT6 phosphorylation could ultimately reach equality (64). However, we observed differences in activation of the IRS2 pathway that are more persistent. Comparing two monocytic cell lines, Type I and II receptor expressing U937s and Type II receptor expressing THP-1 cells, Heller et al. showed that robust tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS2 was dependent on the $\gamma_c$ (64). Furthermore, bone marrow-derived macrophages (BMMs) lacking the γc exhibited diminished phosphorylation of IRS2 when stimulated with IL-4 while STAT6 phosphorylation was unaffected. Consistently, the Type II receptor is much less efficient at activating the IRS2 pathway even at high concentrations of cytokines that stimulate equivalent phosphorylation of STAT6.

To understand why IL-4 activates the IRS2 pathway more potently than IL-13, we dissected the role of the Type I and Type II IL-4 receptor complexes in triggering signaling. Since the IL-4Rα chain is shared between both complexes, we used human cells deficient in the γc subunit or macrophages from γc-deficient mice, as well as transfected cells expressing chimeric receptor subunits, to determine the role of the γc and IL-13Rα1 in initiating IRS2 signaling (64, 127). The presence of the γc subunit was critical for full activation of IRS2 signaling in response to IL-4 (64). However, to our surprise, it was the extracellular and transmembrane portions of the γc subunit that determined activation of the IRS2 pathway, rather than the cytoplasmic region of the γc subunit (127). We speculate that the extracellular and transmembrane regions assumed an IL-4-specific conformation that is transmitted to the associated JAKs, resulting in optimal IRS2 activation. Further research is needed to completely understand this aspect of IL-4 versus IL-13 signaling.

Once phosphorylated, IRS2 is able to associate with Grb2 and the p85 subunit of PI 3′ kinase and thereby initiates additional signaling pathways (27). We found that IL-4-activated IRS2 coprecipitates with Grb2 *via* a Type I receptor-dependent pathway (64).

IL-13, while able to induce the tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS2, albeit reduced, did not stimulate the coprecipitation of IRS2 with Grb2. These results suggest that the Type I and Type II receptor complexes differentially stimulate the IRS2/Grb2 pathway. The significance of this difference is still unclear. To date, binding partners of the IRS2/Grb2 complex in the setting of IL-4 signaling have not been identified. Classical pathways downstream of Grb2 in the setting of insulin or IGF treatment such as the RAS-MAPK pathway are typically not activated by IL-4 (27, 64). Characterization of this arm of the IL-4 activated IRS2 pathway and it biological significance will require further investigation.

Activation of PI 3′ kinase through the IRS2 adaptor triggers the Akt pathway, independently of STAT6. This signal then activates the TORC1 pathway and increases the activity of downstream serine threonine kinases. Akt activation leads to the progressive degradation of TSC1/2, molecules which inhibit TORC1 and TORC2 activity (117). Enhanced TORC1 then activates GRB10 and p70 S6K. In addition to stimulating positive pathways, TORC1 induces a negative feedback loop which in the insulin signaling pathway leads to serine phosphorylation of IRS1 and reduced insulin receptor signaling (33, 128). In studies by Warren et al., it was shown that the IL-4-activated Akt/TORC1 pathway induced the serine phosphorylation of IRS2, with a decline in tyrosine-phosphorylated IRS2, indicating a reciprocal relationship between the two posttranslational modifications. Serine phosphorylation of IRS2 by p70S6K and association with GRB10 and NEDD4.2 negatively regulated IRS activity likely by targeting it for proteosomal degradation (116). Macrophages lacking TSC1 have low expression of IRS2 and fail to activate the Akt pathway when stimulated with IL-4 (117, 118). This supports the finding that TORC1 activity downmodulates IRS2 expression. SOCS1, induced during IL-4 signaling, also facilitates the ubiquitination and degradation of tyrosine-phosphorylated IRS2 to negatively regulate IRS2 signaling (32). Interestingly, a defect in SOCS1 induction was observed in allergic asthmatics, suggesting that inhibiting IRS2 signaling is protective against asthma. The proteosomal degradation of IRS1 and IRS2 is blocked by interactions with the ERα in a breast cancer cell line (36). Estrogen also enhances the expression and tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS1 in a variety of breast cancer lines (129). Whether such regulation of IRS proteins by estrogen is in some way responsible for the enhanced M2 macrophage polarization and allergic inflammatory response observed in females is not known (130, 131).

## Differential Responses on Allergic Inflammatory Cells

The difference in signaling pathways elicited by IL-4 compared to IL-13 has distinct effects on responses of cells increased in numbers during allergic responses, including M2 macrophages and eosinophils. The ability of IL-4 or IL-13 to increase expression of genes characteristic of M2 macrophage polarization correlated with the amount of tyrosine-phosphorylated IRS2 (64). On average, M2 macrophage gene expression was approximately 30–50% less in IL-13-stimulated cells compared to IL-4-stimulated cells. Even when activation of the STAT6 pathway was maximal in response to either IL-13 or IL-4, the difference in the activation of IRS2 in IL-13-stimulated compared to IL-4-stimulated BMMs resulted in less mRNA and/or protein encoding *Arg1* (Arginase 1), *Retnla* (Found in inflammatory zone 1, FIZZ1), and *Chi3l3* (YM1). Taken together, these data demonstrated that the IRS2 pathway was poorly activated in response to IL-13 and that IL-4 was a more potent inducer of the M2 macrophage polarization program than IL-13. These findings are important *in vivo* in diseases where M2 macrophages and their secreted proteins play a role in pathology or immunity, such as asthma, allergies, worm infection, or cancer. The relative presence of IL-4 or IL-13 in the microenvironment may shape the magnitude of macrophage polarization.

IL-4 and IL-13 also have distinct effects on other immune cells. IL-4 has been shown to act as a chemoattractant for human eosinophils as well as to enhance chemokine-induced movement (132). We showed that IL-4 enhanced eotaxin-1-induced chemotaxis but IL-13 did not (133). This occurred in an IL-4 concentration-dependent manner and enhancement was dependent on expression of the γc subunit and therefore Type I IL-4 receptor signaling. There were signaling differences in mouse eosinophil responses to IL-4 and IL-13. Activation of STAT6 was greater in response to IL-4 compared to IL-13. This is similar to IL-4 responses in macrophages, airway epithelial cells (A549 cell line), and other cell types. Phosphorylation of IRS2 was also greater following IL-4 stimulation but it was not statistically significant. We speculated that STAT6 signaling might synergize with eotaxin-1-/CCR3-induced PI 3′ kinaseγ activation to enhance chemotaxis through cytoskeletal rearrangement, although this remains to be elucidated. Targeting this pathway would be useful in treating $Th2^{hi}$ allergic asthmatics, where eosinophils and Th2 cytokines play a dominant role in this asthma endotype.

# CONTRIBUTION OF IRS PROTEINS TO ALLERGIC RESPONSES

While the STAT6 pathway has been clearly shown to be an important mediator of the majority of allergic responses *in vivo*, the contribution of the IRS pathway to immune responses is not well understood. We found that transgenic overexpression of IRS2 in lymphocytes enhanced IgE production *in vivo*, and increased the amount of IL-5 produced by *in vitro* differentiated $CD4^+$ Th2 cells (134). Consistent with these findings, *in vitro* studies of T-cells isolated from $IRS2^{-/-}$ mice found modestly reduced T-cell proliferation and production of IL-5 by Th2 cells as compared to T-cells from $IRS2^{+/+}$ mice (62).

Mice expressing a mutation in the I4R-motif (IRS-docking site) of the murine IL-4Rα (Y500F) were developed and studied for allergic responses (135). This mutation impaired T cell proliferation but did not affect Th2 cytokine secretion *in vitro*. Surprisingly, it was found that mice expressing the Y500F form of IL-4Rα demonstrated enhanced parameters of allergic inflammation, including IgE production, airway hyperresponsiveness, eosinophilic inflammation, and mucus production, suggesting a significant contribution of this region of the IL-4Rα to inflammation control *in vivo*. While this mutation abrogated activation of the IRS2 pathway, this region of the IL-4Rα is known to act as a docking site for other signaling molecules including IRS1, Shc, FRIP1, p62DOK, and p85β (49, 136).

As discussed above, we showed that IL-4 elicited robust phosphorylation of IRS2 and M2 gene expression in macrophages *in vitro*, while IL-13 induced significantly weaker responses (64). Moreover, IL-4-mediated signaling and gene induction were reduced in macrophages lacking the γc chain and the Type I receptor. Since the PI 3′ kinase and Akt pathways downstream of IRS2 were reported to be important for M2 differentiation (137), we expected that IL-4-mediated M2 activation would be reduced in the absence of IRS2.

Contrary to expectations, stimulation of IRS2$^{-/-}$ macrophages with either IL-4 or IL-13 enhanced expression of *Retnla*, *Chi3l3*, and *Arg1* mRNA, when compared to WT macrophages (17). Moreover, the differential potency of IL-4 and IL-13 for M2 gene expression was still observed in IRS2-deficient cells. Thus, the reduced quantities of M2 transcripts seen in IL-13-stimulated macrophages are not explained by reduced IRS2 phosphorylation. Another surprising finding was that loss of IRS2, an adaptor that links to PI 3′ kinase, led to increased phosphorylation of Akt and S6 under basal or IL-4-treated conditions. It is likely that this enhanced signaling proceeds *via* IRS1, as knockdown of IRS1 in the IRS2-deficient macrophages abrogated the elevated basal and IL-4-induced responses *in vitro*. These studies reveal a previously unappreciated negative feedback loop downstream of IRS2 during IL-4 signaling and suggest that the IRS1 adaptor positively regulates the M2 phenotype, although a definitive role for IRS1 remains to be established. These results are at odds with our previous work showing robust positive relationships between the IL-4-induced tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS2 and enhanced M2 macrophage differentiation (64). It is possible that compensatory mechanisms in the IRS2-deficient mice lead to enhanced involvement of the IRS1 adaptor that does not normally occur. Alternatively, it is possible that without careful analyses of the serine/threonine and tyrosine phosphorylation status of IRS1, the correlations with tyrosine-phosphorylated IRS2 are misleading (33).

Since M2 macrophages have been shown to enhance allergic responses (138–140), we further evaluated the contribution of IRS2 to allergic lung inflammation *in vivo* (17). IRS2$^{+/-}$ and IRS2$^{-/-}$ mice developed enhanced allergic lung inflammation and increased airway and vascular remodeling in comparison to IRS2$^{+/+}$ mice. In the absence of IRS2, there were increased numbers of eosinophils in the airways and lungs of mice in an acute allergen sensitization/challenge model. There was also a striking increase in muscularization of small vessels that was accompanied by increased production of the M2 macrophage protein FIZZ1 by cells surrounding the blood vessels. However, there was no difference in IgE production, Th2 cytokine levels in the bronchoalveolar lavage fluid, or mucus production by airway epithelial cells. These results suggest a novel, critical role for IRS2 in limiting allergic inflammation and pulmonary arterial remodeling induced by a Th2 immune response. A potential contribution of IRS1 in allergic responses has not yet been explored in animal models or humans (141, 142).

Macrophage adoptive transfer experiments demonstrated that the negative regulation of eosinophilic inflammation and pulmonary arterial muscularization by IRS2 was at least in part intrinsic to the macrophage (17). The potential contribution of IRS1 to these *in vivo* responses is not yet known and remains an important area of investigation. These results suggest novel roles for IRS1 and IRS2 in the regulation of allergic lung disease, and present potential therapeutic strategies.

## FUTURE STUDIES

The most recent work advances our understanding of the complex signaling pathways controlling allergic inflammation and paves the way for targeted manipulation of the IL-4/IL-13 pathway in the quest for additional therapeutic interventions against allergic diseases. Since the early characterization of the contribution of 4PS to cell proliferation and survival (**Figure 4A**), many more layers of regulation have been discovered (**Figure 4B**). However, the full impact of these regulatory pathways on the control of biological responses elicited by IL-4 or IL-13 are unclear. The level of complexity of potential positive and negative regulatory circuits calls for a systems engineering approach to fully understand the integration of these pathways.

Substantial progress has been made over the past 28 years in understanding the contribution of 4PS (IRS1 or IRS2) to IL-4- and IL-13-stimulated responses in the context of allergic diseases, however, as noted throughout, there is still much work to be done. Whether IRS2 is mostly a positive or a negative regulator of IL-4- or IL-13-induced responses represents a fascinating paradox. Should therapeutic strategies strive to increase or inhibit IRS2 *via* manipulation of protein expression or serine/threonine or tyrosine phosphorylation? What about IRS1? Targeting strategies are just beginning to be explored and developed in the context of epithelial cancers and Type II diabetes (18, 80, 95). What about allergic disease? On a broad and philosophical note, why does the IL-4/IL-13 system tap into the signaling pathway so critical for insulin signaling and metabolism? Do the IRS proteins play a role in the reported IL-4-induced control of adaptive thermogenesis (120, 143–145)? The search for the answers to these questions will likely engage the imagination and energy of young investigators and lead to the discovery of new and unexpected pathways controlling IL-4- and IL-13-induced responses. Bill would be delighted.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

ADK developed the topic and theme of the perspective, prepared figures, wrote and edited the manuscript. JZ contributed to the writing and editing of the manuscript. NH and AK wrote and edited the manuscript and prepared **Figure 4**.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

First and foremost, we acknowledge the many contributions of Bill Paul to the initial discovery and characterization of 4PS and IRS control of IL-4-induced responses, and for providing mentoring and guidance for studies spanning the past 28 years. We further acknowledge the many NIH colleagues including Jacalyn H. Pierce, Ling-Mei Wang, Keats Nelms, John J. Ryan, Cyndy Watson, Jane Hu-Li, Carol Adler, Warren Leonard, and John J. O'Shea who provided expertise and critical input to the effort. We also acknowledge members of our laboratories who contributed

directly to 4PS/IRS projects including Helen Wang, Li Li, Ann Kelly-Welch, Greg Carey, Holly Porter, Preeta Dasgupta, Nicolas Dorsey, Xiulan Qi, Sarah McCormick, and Kristi Warren. Finally, we acknowledge the many other investigators in the field whose work continues to illuminate the complex role of IRS family members in the regulation of allergic disease.

## FUNDING

This work was supported by the National Institutes of Health awards R56AI122631 (ADK) and R01HL124477 (NH), the United States Veteran's Administration Merit Award I01 BX001850 (ADK), and the Junta de Extremadura (Spain) GR15115 (JZ).

## REFERENCES

1. Frackelton AR Jr, Ross AH, Eisen HN. Characterization and use of monoclonal antibodies for isolation of phosphotyrosyl proteins from retrovirus-transformed cells and growth factor-stimulated cells. *Mol Cell Biol* (1983) 3:1343–52. doi:10.1128/MCB.3.8.1343
2. Wang JY. Antibodies for phosphotyrosine: analytical and preparative tool for tyrosyl-phosphorylated proteins. *Anal Biochem* (1988) 172:1–7. doi:10.1016/0003-2697(88)90403-4
3. White MF, Backer JM. Preparation and use of anti-phosphotyrosine antibodies to study structure and function of insulin receptor. *Methods Enzymol* (1991) 201:65–79. doi:10.1016/0076-6879(91)01009-Q
4. Isfort RJ, Ihle JN. Multiple hematopoietic growth factors signal through tyrosine phosphorylation. *Growth Factors* (1990) 2:213–20. doi:10.3109/08977199009071507
5. Wang L-M, Keegan AD, Paul WE, Heidaran MA, Gutkind JS, Pierce JH. IL-4 activates a distinct signal transduction cascade from IL-3 in factor-dependent myeloid cells. *EMBO J* (1992) 12:4899–908.
6. White MF, Maron R, Kahn CR. Insulin rapidly stimulates tyrosine phosphorylation of a Mr-185,000 protein in intact cells. *Nature* (1985) 318:183–6. doi:10.1038/318183a0
7. White MF, Stegmann EW, Dull TJ, Ullrich A, Kahn CR. Characterization of an endogenous substrate of the insulin receptor in cultured cells. *J Biol Chem* (1987) 262:9769–77.
8. Wang LM, Keegan AD, Li W, Lienhard GE, Pacini S, Gutkind S, et al. Common elements in IL-4 and insulin signaling pathways in factor-dependent hematopoietic cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1993) 90:4032–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.90.9.4032
9. Sun XJ, Rothenberg P, Kahn CR, Backer JM, Araki E, Wilden PA, et al. Structure of the insulin receptor substrate IRS-1 defines a unique signaling transduction protein. *Nature* (1991) 352:73–7. doi:10.1038/352073a0
10. Wang LM, Myers MG Jr, Sun XJ, Aaronson SA, White M, Pierce JH. IRS-1: essential for insulin- and IL-4-stimulated mitogenesis in hematopoietic cells. *Science* (1993) 261:1591–4. doi:10.1126/science.8372354
11. Keegan AD, Johnston J, Tortolani J, McReynolds LJ, Kinzer CA, O'Shea J, et al. Similarities and differences in signal transduction by IL-4 and IL-13: analysis of Janus kinase activation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1995) 92:7681–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.92.17.7681
12. Sun XJ, Wang LM, Zhang Y, Yenush L, Myers MG Jr, Glasheen E, et al. Role of IRS-2 in insulin and cytokine signalling. *Nature* (1995) 377(6545):173–7. doi:10.1038/377173a0
13. White MF. The IRS-signaling system: a network of docking proteins that mediate insulin and cytokine action. *Recent Prog Horm Res* (1998) 53:119–38.
14. Johnston JA, Wang LM, Hanson EP, Sun XJ, White MF, Oakes SA, et al. Interleukins 2, 4, 7, and 15 stimulate tyrosine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2 in T cells. Potential role of JAK kinases. *J Biol Chem* (1995) 270(48):28527–30. doi:10.1074/jbc.270.48.28527
15. Sun XJ, Pons S, Wang LM, Zhang Y, Yenush L, Burks D, et al. The IRS-2 gene on murine chromosome 8 encodes a unique signaling adapter for insulin and cytokine action. *Mol Endocrinol* (1997) 11(2):251–62. doi:10.1210/mend.11.2.9885
16. Byron SA, Horwitz KB, Richer JK, Lange CA, Zhang X, Yee D. Insulin receptor substrates mediate distinct biological responses to insulin-like growth factor receptor activation in breast cancer cells. *Br J Cancer* (2006) 95:1220–8. doi:10.1038/sj.bjc.6603354
17. Dasgupta P, Dorsey NJ, Li J, Qi X, Smith EP, Keegan AD. Insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-2 negatively regulates alternative macrophage activation and allergic lung inflammation. *Sci Signal* (2016) 9(433):ra63. doi:10.1126/scisignal.aad6724
18. Lavan DP, White MF, Brazil DP. IRS proteins and diabetic complications. *Diabetologia* (2016) 59:2280–91. doi:10.1007/s00125-016-4072-7
19. Touhara K, Inglese J, Pitcher JA, Shaw G, Lefkowitz RJ. Binding of G protein beta gamma-subunits to pleckstrin homology domains. *J Biol Chem* (1994) 269(14):10217–20.
20. Pitcher JA, Touhara K, Payne ES, Lefkowitz RJ. Pleckstrin homology domain-mediated membrane association and activation of the beta-adrenergic receptor kinase requires coordinate interaction with G beta gamma subunits and lipid. *J Biol Chem* (1995) 270(20):11707–10. doi:10.1074/jbc.270.20.11707
21. Zhou MM, Huang B, Olejniczak ET, Meadows RP, Shuker SB, Miyazaki M, et al. Structural basis for IL-4 receptor phosphopeptide recognition by the IRS-1 PTB domain. *Nat Struct Biol* (1996) 3(4):388–93. doi:10.1038/nsb0496-388
22. Wang HY, Zamorano J, Yoerkie J, Paul WE, Keegan AD. IL-4-induced tyrosine phosphorylation of IRS is dependent upon expression of JAK-1 in human fibrosarcoma cells. *J Immunol* (1997) 158:1037–40.
23. Burfoot MS, Rogers NC, Watling D, Smith JM, Pons S, Paonessaw G, et al. Janus kinase-dependent activation of insulin receptor substrate 1 in response to interleukin-4, oncostatin M, and the interferons. *J Biol Chem* (1997) 272(39):24183–90. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.39.24183
24. Chen XH, Patel BK, Wang LM, Frankel M, Ellmore N, Flavell RA, et al. Jak1 expression is required for mediating interleukin-4-induced tyrosine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate and Stat6 signaling molecules. *J Biol Chem* (1997) 272(10):6556–60. doi:10.1074/jbc.272.10.6556
25. Murata T, Puri RK. Comparison of IL-13- and IL-4-induced signaling in EBV-immortalized human B cells. *Cell Immunol* (1997) 175(1):33–40. doi:10.1006/cimm.1996.1051
26. Murata T, Taguchi J, Puri RK, Mohri H. Sharing of receptor subunits and signal transduction pathway between the IL-4 and IL-13 receptor system. *Int J Hematol* (1999) 69(1):13–20.
27. Pruett W, Yuan Y, Rose E, Batzer AG, Harada N, Skolnik EY. Association between GRB2/Sos and insulin receptor substrate 1 is not sufficient for activation of extracellular signal-regulated kinases by interleukin-4: implications for Ras activation by insulin. *Mol Cell Biol* (1995) 15(3):1778–85. doi:10.1128/MCB.15.3.1778
28. Sun XJ, Crimmins DL, Myers MG Jr, Miralpeix M, White MF. Pleiotropic insulin signals are engaged by multisite phosphorylation of IRS-1. *Mol Cell Biol* (1993) 13(12):7418–28. doi:10.1128/MCB.13.12.7418
29. Xiao H, Yin T, Wang XY, Uchida T, Chung J, White MF, et al. Specificity of interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain superfamily cytokines is mediated by insulin receptor substrate-dependent pathway. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277(10):8091–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.M106650200
30. Sozzani P, Hasan L, Séguélas MH, Caput D, Ferrara P, Pipy B, et al. IL-13 induces tyrosine phosphorylation of phospholipase C gamma-1 following IRS-2 association in human monocytes: relationship with the inhibitory effect of IL-13 on ROI production. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (1998) 244(3):665–70. doi:10.1006/bbrc.1998.8314
31. Rui L, Yuan M, Frantz D, Shoelson S, White MF. SOCS-1 and SOCS-3 block insulin signaling by ubiquitin-mediated degradation of IRS1 and IRS2. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277(44):42394–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.C200444200
32. McCormick SM, Gowda N, Fang JX, Heller NM. Suppressor of cytokine signaling (SOCS)1 regulates interleukin-4 (IL-4)-activated insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-2 tyrosine phosphorylation in monocytes and macrophages via the proteasome. *J Biol Chem* (2016) 291(39):20574–87. doi:10.1074/jbc.M116.746164
33. Copps KD, White MF. Regulation of insulin sensitivity by serine/threonine phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate proteins IRS1 and IRS2. *Diabetologia* (2012) 55(10):2565–82. doi:10.1007/s00125-012-2644-8
34. Sun H, Tu X, Prisco M, Wu A, Casiburi I, Baserga R. Insulin-like growth factor I receptor signaling and nuclear translocation of insulin receptor substrates 1 and 2. *Mol Endocrinol* (2003) 17(3):472–86. doi:10.1210/me.2002-0276

35. Lassak A, Del Valle L, Peruzzi F, Wang JY, Enam S, Croul S, et al. Insulin receptor substrate 1 translocation to the nucleus by the human JC virus T-antigen. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277(19):17231–8. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110885200
36. Morelli C, Garofalo C, Sisci D, del Rincon S, Cascio S, Tu X, et al. Nuclear insulin receptor substrate 1 interacts with estrogen receptor alpha at ERE promoters. *Oncogene* (2004) 23(45):7517–26. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1208014
37. Porter HA, Perry A, Kingsley C, Tran NL, Keegan AD. IRS-1 is highly expressed in localized breast tumors and regulates the sensitivity of breast cancer cells to chemotherapy, while IRS-2 is expressed in high grade, invasive breast tumors. *Cancer Lett* (2013) 338(2):239–48. doi:10.1016/j.canlet.2013.03.030
38. Keegan AD, Nelms K, White M, Wang L-M, Pierce JH, Paul WE. An IL-4 receptor region containing an insulin receptor motif is important for IL-4 mediated IRS-1 phosphorylation and proliferation. *Cell* (1994) 76:811–20. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(94)90356-5
39. Wang HY, Zamorano J, Keegan AD. A role for the I4R-motif of the IL-4Rα in regulating activation of the IRS2 and STAT6 pathways: analysis by mutagenesis. *J Biol Chem* (1998) 273:9898–905. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.16.9898
40. Wang HY, Paul WE, Keegan AD. IL-4 function can be transferred to the IL-2 receptor by tyrosine containing sequences found in the IL-4 receptor-alpha chain. *Immunity* (1996) 4:113–21. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80676-7
41. Kotanides H, Reich NC. Requirement of tyrosine phosphorylation for rapid activation of a DNA binding factor by IL-4. *Science* (1993) 262:1265–7. doi:10.1126/science.7694370
42. Hou J, Schindler U, Henzel WJ, Ho TC, Brasseur M, McKnight SL. An interleukin-4-induced transcription factor: IL-4 Stat. *Science* (1994) 265(5179):1701–6. doi:10.1126/science.8085155
43. Schindler C, Kashleva H, Pernis A, Rothman P. STF-IL-4: a novel IL-4-induced signal transducing factor. *EMBO J* (1994) 13:1350–6.
44. Quelle FW, Shimoda K, Thierfelder W, Fischer C, Kim A, Ruben SM, et al. Cloning of murine and human Stat6 (IL4-Stat): a novel stat tyrosine phosphorylated in the responses to IL-4 and IL-3 that is not required for mitogenesis. *Mol Cell Biol* (1995) 15:3336–43. doi:10.1128/MCB.15.6.3336
45. Ryan JJ, McReynolds LJ, Wang LH, Keegan AD, Garfein E, Rothman P, et al. IL-4-induced growth and gene expression are predominantly controlled by distinct regions of the human IL-4 receptor. *Immunity* (1996) 4:123–32. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80677-9
46. Keegan AD, Wang LM, Paul WE, Pierce JH. Characterization of the interleukin 4 receptor. Structure and signal transduction pathways. *Res Immunol* (1993) 144(8):590–6. doi:10.1016/S0923-2494(05)80008-2
47. Pernis A, Witthuhn B, Keegan AD, Nelms K, Garfein E, Ihle JN, et al. Interleukin-4 signals through two related pathways. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1995) 92:7971–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.92.17.7971
48. Keegan AD, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. IL-4 regulates growth and differentiation by distinct mechanisms. *Immunologist* (1996) 4:194–8.
49. Nelms K, Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. The IL-4 receptor: signaling mechanisms and biologic functions. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1999) 17:701–38. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.17.1.701
50. Jian H, Harris MB, Rothman P. IL-4/IL13 signaling beyond JAK/STAT. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2000) 105:1063–70. doi:10.1067/mai.2000.107604
51. Kelly-Welch AE, Hanson EM, Boothby MR, Keegan AD. Interleukin-4 and interleukin-13 signaling connections maps. *Science* (2003) 300(5625):1527–8. doi:10.1126/science.1085458
52. Kaplan MH, Schindler U, Smiley ST, Grusby MJ. Stat6 is required for mediating responses to IL-4 and for development of Th2 cells. *Immunity* (1996) 4(3):313–9. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80439-2
53. Takeda K, Tanaka T, Shi W, Matsumoto M, Minami M, Kashiwamura S, et al. Essential role of Stat6 in IL-4 signalling. *Nature* (1996) 380(6575):627–30. doi:10.1038/380627a0
54. Shimoda K, van Deursen J, Sangster MY, Sarawar SR, Carson RT, Tripp RA, et al. Lack of IL-4-induced Th2 response and IgE class switching in mice with disrupted Stat6 gene. *Nature* (1996) 380(6575):630–3. doi:10.1038/380630a0
55. Kuperman D, Schofield B, Wills-Karp M, Grusby MJ. Signal transducer and activator of transcription factor 6 (Stat6)-deficient mice are protected from antigen-induced airway hyperresponsiveness and mucus production. *J Exp Med* (1998) 187(6):939–48. doi:10.1084/jem.187.6.939
56. Chapoval SP, Dasgupta P, Smith EP, DeTolla LJ, Lipsky MM, Kelly-Welch AE, et al. STAT6 expression in multiple cell types mediates the cooperative development of allergic airway disease. *J Immunol* (2011) 186(4):2571–83. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1002567
57. Dasgupta P, Chapoval SP, Smith EP, Keegan AD. Transfer of in vivo primed transgenic T cells supports allergic lung inflammation and FIZZ1 and Ym1 production in an IL-4Rα and STAT6 dependent manner. *BMC Immunol* (2011) 20(12):60. doi:10.1186/1471-2172-12-60
58. Paul WE. Interleukin-4: a prototypic immunoregulatory lymphokine. *Blood* (1991) 77:1859–70.
59. Zamorano J, Wang HY, Wang LM, Pierce JH, Keegan AD. IL-4 protects cells from apoptosis via the insulin receptor substrate pathway and a second independent signaling pathway. *J Immunol* (1996) 157:4926–34.
60. Zamorano J, Keegan AD. Regulation of apoptosis by tyrosine-containing domains of the IL-4Rα: Y497 and Y713, but not the STAT6-docking tyrosines, signal protection from apoptosis. *J Immunol* (1998) 161:859–67.
61. Zamorano J, Kelly AE, Austrian J, Wang HY, Keegan AD. Costimulation of resting B lymphocytes alters the IL-4-activated IRS-2 signaling pathway in a STAT6 independent manner: implications for cell survival and proliferation. *Cell Res* (2001) 11:44–54. doi:10.1038/sj.cr.7290065
62. Wurster AL, Withers DJ, Uchida T, White MF, Grusby MJ. Stat6 and IRS-2 cooperate in interleukin 4 (IL-4)-induced proliferation and differentiation but are dispensable for IL-4-dependent rescue from apoptosis. *Mol Cell Biol* (2002) 22:117–26. doi:10.1128/MCB.22.1.117-126.2002
63. Wurster AL, Rodgers VL, White MF, Rothstein TL, Grusby MJ. Interleukin-4-mediated protection of primary B cells from apoptosis through Stat6-dependent up-regulation of Bcl-xL. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277(30):27169–75. doi:10.1074/jbc.M201207200
64. Heller NM, Qi X, Juntilla I, Shirey KA, Vogel SN, Paul WE, et al. Type I IL-4 receptors selectively activate IRS-2 to induce target gene expression in macrophages. *Sci Signal* (2008) 1(51):ra17. doi:10.1126/scisignal.1164795
65. Lømo J, Blomhoff HK, Jacobsen SE, Krajewski S, Reed JC, Smeland EB. Interleukin-13 in combination with CD40 ligand potently inhibits apoptosis in human B lymphocytes: upregulation of Bcl-xL and Mcl-1. *Blood* (1997) 89:4415–24.
66. Rütti S, Howald C, Arous C, Dermitzakis E, Halban PA, Bouzakri K. IL-13 improves beta-cell survival and protects against IL-1beta-induced beta-cell death. *Mol Metab* (2015) 5:122–31. doi:10.1016/j.molmet.2015.11.003
67. Withers DJ, Burks DJ, Towery HH, Altamuro SL, Flint CL, White MF. IRS-2 coordinates IGF-1 receptor-mediated beta-cell development and peripheral insulin signalling. *Nat Genet* (1999) 23:32–40. doi:10.1038/12631
68. Withers DJ, Gutierrez JS, Towery H, Burks DJ, Ren JM, Previs S, et al. Disruption of IRS-2 causes type 2 diabetes in mice. *Nature* (1998) 391:900–4. doi:10.1038/36116
69. Mohanty S, Spinas GA, Maedler K, Zuellig RA, Lehmann R, Donath MY, et al. Overexpression of IRS2 in isolated pancreatic islets causes proliferation and protects human beta-cells from hyperglycemia-induced apoptosis. *Exp Cell Res* (2005) 303:68–78. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2004.09.011
70. Valverde AM, Fabregat I, Burks DJ, White MF, Benito M. IRS-2 mediates the antiapoptotic effect of insulin in neonatal hepatocytes. *Hepatology* (2004) 40:1285–94. doi:10.1002/hep.20485
71. Boissan M, Beurel E, Wendum D, Rey C, Lécluse Y, Housset C, et al. Overexpression of insulin receptor substrate-2 in human and murine hepatocellular carcinoma. *Am J Pathol* (2005) 167:869–77. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)62058-5
72. Kim B, Feldman EL. Insulin receptor substrate (IRS)-2, not IRS-1, protects human neuroblastoma cells against apoptosis. *Apoptosis* (2009) 14:665–73. doi:10.1007/s10495-009-0331-0
73. Stöhr O, Hahn J, Moll L, Leeser U, Freude S, Bernard C, et al. Insulin receptor substrate-1 and -2 mediate resistance to glucose-induced caspase-3 activation in human neuroblastoma cells. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2011) 1812:573–80. doi:10.1016/j.bbadis.2011.02.006
74. Dearth RK, Cui X, Kim HJ, Kuiatse I, Lawrence NA, Zhang X, et al. Mammary tumorigenesis and metastasis caused by overexpression of insulin receptor substrate 1 (IRS-1) or IRS-2. *Mol Cell Biol* (2006) 26:9302–14. doi:10.1128/MCB.00260-06
75. Nagle JA, Ma Z, Byrne MA, White MF, Shaw LM. Involvement of insulin receptor substrate 2 in mammary tumor metastasis. *Mol Cell Biol* (2004) 24:9726–35. doi:10.1128/MCB.24.22.9726-9735.2004
76. Becker MA, Ibrahim YH, Oh AS, Fagan DH, Byron SA, Sarver AL, et al. Insulin receptor substrate adaptor proteins mediate prognostic gene expression

profiles in breast cancer. *PLoS One* (2016) 11:e0150564. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0150564
77. Yin J, Zhang Z, Zheng H, Xu L. IRS-2 rs1805097 polymorphism is associated with the decreased risk of colorectal cancer. *Oncotarget* (2017) 8:25107–14. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.15342
78. Zhao XM, Chen J, Yang L, Luo X, Xu LL, Liu DX, et al. Association between IRS-2 G1057D polymorphism and risk of gastric cancer. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* (2012) 4:9–15. doi:10.4251/wjgo.v4.i1.9
79. Heni M, Hennenlotter J, Scharpf M, Lutz SZ, Schwentner C, Todenhöfer T, et al. Insulin receptor isoforms A and B as well as insulin receptor substrates-1 and -2 are differentially expressed in prostate cancer. *PLoS One* (2012) 7:e50953. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0050953
80. de Melo Campos P, Machado-Neto JA, Eide CA, Savage SL, Scopim-Ribeiro R, da Silva Souza Duarte A, et al. IRS2 silencing increases apoptosis and potentiates the effects of ruxolitinib in JAK2V617F-positive myeloproliferative neoplasms. *Oncotarget* (2016) 7:6948–59. doi:10.18632/oncotarget.6851
81. Gibson SL, Ma Z, Shaw LM. Divergent roles for IRS-1 and IRS-2 in breast cancer metastasis. *Cell Cycle* (2007) 6:631–7. doi:10.4161/cc.6.6.3987
82. Sisci D, Morelli C, Garofalo C, Romeo F, Morabito L, Casaburi F, et al. Expression of nuclear insulin receptor substrate 1 in breast cancer. *J Clin Pathol* (2007) 60:633–41. doi:10.1136/jcp.2006.039107
83. Jackson JG, White MF, Yee D. Insulin receptor substrate-1 is the predominant signaling molecule activated by insulin-like growth factor-I, insulin, and interleukin-4 in estrogen receptor-positive human breast cancer cells. *J Biol Chem* (1998) 273:9994–10003. doi:10.1074/jbc.273.16.9994
84. Chen J, Wu A, Sun H, Drakas R, Garofalo C, Cascio S, et al. Functional significance of type 1 insulin-like growth factor-mediated nuclear translocation of the insulin receptor substrate-1 and beta-catenin. *J Biol Chem* (2005) 280:29912–20. doi:10.1074/jbc.M504516200
85. Tu X, Batta P, Innocent N, Prisco M, Casaburi I, Belletti B, et al. Nuclear translocation of insulin receptor substrate-1 by oncogenes and Igf-I. Effect on ribosomal RNA synthesis. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277:44357–65. doi:10.1074/jbc.M208001200
86. Molloy CA, May FE, Westley BR. Insulin receptor substrate-1 expression is regulated by estrogen in the MCF-7 human breast cancer cell line. *J Biol Chem* (2000) 275:12565–71. doi:10.1074/jbc.275.17.12565
87. Cui X, Lazard Z, Zhang P, Hopp TA, Lee AV. Progesterone crosstalks with insulin-like growth factor signaling in breast cancer cells via induction of insulin receptor substrate-2. *Oncogene* (2003) 22:6937–41. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1206803
88. Vassen L, Wegrzyn W, Klein-Hitpass L. Human insulin receptor substrate-2 (IRS-2) is a primary progesterone response gene. *Mol Endocrinol* (1999) 13:485–94. doi:10.1210/me.13.3.485
89. Jackson JG, Zhang X, Yoneda T, Yee D. Regulation of breast cancer cell motility by insulin receptor substrate-2 (IRS-2) in metastatic variants of human breast cancer cell lines. *Oncogene* (2001) 20:7318–25. doi:10.1038/sj.onc.1204920
90. Ma Z, Gibson SL, Byrne MA, Zhang J, White MF, Shaw LM. Suppression of insulin receptor substrate 1 (IRS-1) promotes mammary tumor metastasis. *Mol Cell Biol* (2006) 26:9338–51. doi:10.1128/MCB.01032-06
91. Porter HA, Carey GC, Keegan AD. Insulin receptor substrate (IRS) 1 expression enhances the sensitivity of 32D cells to chemotherapy-induced cell death. *Exp Cell Res* (2012) 318(14):1745–58. doi:10.1016/j.yexcr.2012.04.020
92. Carey GB, Semenova E, Qi X, Keegan AD. IL-4 protects the B-cell lymphoma cell line CH31 from anti-IgM-induced growth arrest and apoptosis: contribution of the PI-3'kinase/Akt pathway. *Cell Res* (2007) 17:942–55. doi:10.1038/sj.cr.2007.90
93. Lin SJ, Chang C, Ng AK, Wang SH, Li JJ, Hu CP. Prevention of TGF-beta-induced apoptosis by interlukin-4 through Akt activation and p70S6K survival signaling pathways. *Apoptosis* (2007) 12:1659–70. doi:10.1007/s10495-007-0085-5
94. Li L, Qi X, Williams M, Shi Y, Keegan AD. Overexpression of IRS1, but not IRS2, protects a T-cell hybridoma from activation-induced cell death (AICD). *J Immunol* (2002) 168:6215–23. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.168.12.6215
95. Kuznetsova A, Yu Y, Hollister-Lock J, Apare-Addo L, Rozzo A, Sadagurski M, et al. Trimeprazine increases IRS2 in human islets and promotes pancreatic β cell growth and function in mice. *JCI Insight* (2016) 1(3):e80749. doi:10.1172/jci.insight.80749
96. LaPorte SL, Juo JS, Vaclavikova J, Colf L, Qi X, Heller NM, et al. Molecular basis of cytokine receptor pleiotropy in the Interleukin-4/13 system. *Cell* (2008) 132:259–72. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.12.030
97. Zhang MZ, Wang X, Wang Y, Niu A, Wang S, Zou C, et al. IL-4/IL-13-mediated polarization of renal macrophages/dendritic cells to an M2a phenotype is essential for recovery from acute kidney injury. *Kidney Int* (2017) 91(2):375–86. doi:10.1016/j.kint.2016.08.020
98. Jones LH, Cook PC, Ivens AC, Thomas GD, Phythian-Adams AT, Allen JE, et al. Modulation of dendritic cell alternative activation and function by the vitamin A metabolite retinoic acid. *Int Immunol* (2015) 27(11):589–96. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxv020
99. Bhattacharjee A, Shukla M, Yakubenko VP, Mulya A, Kundu S, Cathcart MK. IL-4 and IL-13 employ discrete signaling pathways for target gene expression in alternatively activated monocytes/macrophages. *Free Radic Biol Med* (2013) 54:1–16. doi:10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2012.10.553
100. Cook PC, Jones LH, Jenkins SJ, Wynn TA, Allen JE, MacDonald AS. Alternatively activated dendritic cells regulate CD4+ T-cell polarization in vitro and in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2012) 109(25):9977–82. doi:10.1073/pnas.1121231109
101. Coyle AJ, Le Gros G, Bertrand C, Tsuyuki S, Heusser CH, Kopf M, et al. Interleukin-4 is required for the induction of lung Th2 mucosal immunity. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* (1995) 13(1):54–9. doi:10.1165/ajrcmb.13.1.7598937
102. Rankin JA, Picarella DE, Geba GP, Temann UA, Prasad B, DiCosmo B, et al. Phenotypic and physiologic characterization of transgenic mice expressing interleukin 4 in the lung: lymphocytic and eosinophilic inflammation without airway hyperreactivity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1996) 93(15):7821–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.15.7821
103. Wills-Karp M, Luyimbazi J, Xu X, Schofield B, Neben TY, Karp CL, et al. Interleukin-13: central mediator of allergic asthma. *Science* (1998) 282(5397):2258–61. doi:10.1126/science.282.5397.2258
104. Grunig G, Warnock M, Wakil AE, Venkayya R, Brombacher F, Rennick DM, et al. Requirement for IL-13 independently of IL-4 in experimental asthma. *Science* (1998) 282(5397):2261–3. doi:10.1126/science.282.5397.2261
105. Zhu Z, Homer RJ, Wang Z, Chen Q, Geba GP, Wang J, et al. Pulmonary expression of interleukin-13 causes inflammation, mucus hypersecretion, subepithelial fibrosis, physiologic abnormalities, and eotaxin production. *J Clin Invest* (1999) 103(6):779–88. doi:10.1172/JCI5909
106. Gavett SH, O'Hearn DJ, Karp CL, Patel EA, Schofield BH, Finkelman FD, et al. Interleukin-4 receptor blockade prevents airway responses induced by antigen challenge in mice. *Am J Physiol* (1997) 272(2 Pt 1):L253–61.
107. Munitz A, Brandt EB, Mingler M, Finkelman FD, Rothenberg ME. Distinct roles for IL-13 and IL-4 via IL-13 receptor alpha1 and the type II IL-4 receptor in asthma pathogenesis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) 105(20):7240–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.0802465105
108. Walter DM, McIntire JJ, Berry G, McKenzie AN, Donaldson DD, DeKruyff RH, et al. Critical role for IL-13 in the development of allergen-induced airway hyperreactivity. *J Immunol* (2001) 167(8):4668–75. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.167.8.4668
109. Nono JK, Ndlovu H, Abdel Aziz N, Mpotje T, Hlaka L, Brombacher F. Interleukin-4 receptor alpha is still required after Th2 polarization for the maintenance and the recall of protective immunity to Nematode infection. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* (2017) 11(6):e0005675. doi:10.1371/journal.pntd.0005675
110. Ramalingam TR, Pesce JT, Sheikh F, Cheever AW, Mentink-Kane MM, Wilson MS, et al. Unique functions of the type II interleukin 4 receptor identified in mice lacking the interleukin 13 receptor alpha1 chain. *Nat Immunol* (2008) 9(1):25–33. doi:10.1038/ni1544
111. Dasgupta P, Qi X, Smith EP, Keegan AD. Absence of the common gamma chain (γC), a critical component of the type I IL-4 receptor, increases the severity of allergic lung inflammation driven by adoptively transferred TH2 cells. *PLoS One* (2013) 8(8):e71344. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0071344
112. Rothenberg ME, Wen T, Shik D, Cole ET, Mingler MM, Munitz A. IL-13 receptor {alpha}1 differentially regulates aeroallergen-induced lung responses. *J Immunol* (2011) 187(9):4873–80. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1004159
113. Liang HE, Reinhardt RL, Bando JK, Sullivan BM, Ho IC, Locksley RM. Divergent expression patterns of IL-4 and IL-13 define unique functions in allergic immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 13(1):58–66. doi:10.1038/ni.2182
114. Sheridan C. Drugmakers cling to dual IL-13/4 blockbuster hopes. *Nat Biotechnol* (2018) 36:3–5. doi:10.1038/nbt0118-3

115. Steinke JW, Negri J, Enelow R, Baramki DF, Borish L. Proinflammatory effects of IL-4 antagonism. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2006) 118(3):756–8. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2006.05.002
116. Warren KJ, Fang X, Gowda NM, Thompson JJ, Heller NM. The TORC1-activated proteins, p70S6K and GRB10, regulate IL-4 signaling and M2 macrophage polarization by modulating phosphorylation of insulin receptor substrate-2. *J Biol Chem* (2016) 291(48):24922–30. doi:10.1074/jbc.M116.756791
117. Byles V, Covarrubias AJ, Ben-Sahra I, Lamming DW, Sabatini DM, Manning BD, et al. The TSC-mTOR pathway regulates macrophage polarization. *Nat Commun* (2013) 4:2834. doi:10.1038/ncomms3834
118. Zhu L, Yang T, Li L, Sun L, Hou Y, Hum X, et al. TSC1 controls macrophage polarization to prevent inflammatory disease. *Nat Commun* (2014) 5:4696. doi:10.1038/ncomms5696
119. Festuccia WT, Pouliot P, Bakan I, Sabatini DM, Laplante M. Myeloid-specific Rictor deletion induces M1 macrophage polarization and potentiates in vivo pro-inflammatory response to lipopolysaccharide. *PLoS One* (2014) 9(4):e95432. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0095432
120. Hallowell RW, Collins SL, Craig JM, Zhang Y, Oh M, Illei PB, et al. mTORC2 signalling regulates M2 macrophage differentiation in response to helminth infection and adaptive thermogenesis. *Nat Commun* (2017) 8:14208. doi:10.1038/ncomms14208
121. Mercalli A, Calavita I, Dugnani E, Citro A, Cantarelli E, Nano R, et al. Rapamycin unbalances the polarization of human macrophages to M1. *Immunology* (2013) 140(2):179–90. doi:10.1111/imm.12126
122. Oakes SA, Candotti F, Johnston JA, Chen YQ, Ryan JJ, Taylor N, et al. Signaling via IL-2 and IL-4 in JAK3-deficient severe combined immunodeficiency lymphocytes: JAK3-dependent and independent pathways. *Immunity* (1996) 5(6):605–15. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80274-5
123. Howard M, Farrar J, Hilfiker M, Johnson B, Takatsu K, Hamaoka T, et al. Identification of a T cell-derived B cell growth factor distinct from interleukin 2. *J Exp Med* (1982) 155:914–23. doi:10.1084/jem.155.3.914
124. Farrar JJ, Howard M, Fuller-Farrar J, Paul WE. Biochemical and physicochemical characterization of mouse B cell growth factor: a lymphokine distinct from interleukin 2. *J Immunol* (1983) 131(4):1838–42.
125. Howard M, Paul WE. Interleukins for B lymphocytes. *Lymphokine Res* (1982) 1(1):1–4.
126. Junttila IS, Creusot RJ, Moraga I, Bates DL, Wong MT, Alonso MN, et al. Redirecting cell-type specific cytokine responses with engineered interleukin-4 superkines. *Nat Chem Biol* (2012) 8(12):990–8. doi:10.1038/nchembio.1096
127. Heller NM, Qi X, Gesbert F, Keegan AD. The extracellular and transmembrane domains of the γc and IL-13Rα1 chains, not their cytoplasmic domains, dictate the nature of signaling responses to IL-4 and IL-13. *J Biol Chem* (2012) 287(38):31948–61. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.348896
128. Carlson CJ, White MF, Rondinone CM. Mammalian target of rapamycin regulates IRS-1 serine 307 phosphorylation. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2004) 316(2):533–9. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2004.02.082
129. Lee AV, Jackson JG, Gooch JL, Hilsenbeck SG, Coronado-Heinsohn E, Osborne CK, et al. Enhancement of insulin-like growth factor signaling in human breast cancer: estrogen regulation of insulin receptor substrate-1 expression in vitro and in vivo. *Mol Endocrinol* (1999) 13(5):787–96. doi:10.1210/mend.13.5.0274
130. Melgert BN, Postma DS. All men are created equal? New leads in explaining sex differences in adult asthma. *Proc Am Thorac Soc* (2009) 6(8):724–7. doi:10.1513/pats.200906-054DP
131. Keselman A, Fang X, White PB, Heller NM. Estrogen signaling contributes to sex differences in macrophage polarization during asthma. *J Immunol* (2017) 199:1573–83. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601975
132. Dubois GR, Schweizer RC, Versluis C, Bruijnzeel-Koomen CA, Bruijnzeel PL. Human eosinophils constitutively express a functional interleukin-4 receptor: interleukin-4-induced priming of chemotactic responses and induction of PI-3 kinase activity. *Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol* (1998) 9(4):691–9. doi:10.1165/ajrcmb.19.4.3208
133. Heller NM, Gwinn WM, Constant SL, Keegan AD. IL-4 engagement of the type I IL-4 receptor complex enhances murine eosinophil migration to eotaxin-1 in vitro. *PLoS One* (2012) 7(6):e39673. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0039673
134. Kelly-Welch AE, Wang HY, Wang L-M, Pierce JH, Jay G, Finkelman F, et al. Transgenic expression of IRS2 in murine B-cells alters the cell-density dependence of IgE production in vitro and enhances IgE production in vivo. *J Immunol* (2004) 172:2803–10. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.172.5.2803
135. Blaeser F, Bryce PJ, Ho N, Raman V, Dedeoglu F, Donaldson DD, et al. Targeted inactivation of the IL-4 receptor alpha chain I4R motif promotes allergic airway inflammation. *J Exp Med* (2003) 198(8):1189–200. doi:10.1084/jem.20030471
136. Nelms K, Snow AL, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. FRIP, a hematopoietic cell-specific rasGAP-interacting protein phosphorylated in response to cytokine stimulation. *Immunity* (1998) 9(1):13–24. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80584-1
137. Weisser SB, McLarren KW, Voglmaier N, van Netten-Thomas CJ, Antov A, Flavell RA, et al. Alternative activation of macrophages by IL-4 requires SHIP degradation. *Eur J Immunol* (2011) 41(6):1742–53. doi:10.1002/eji.201041105
138. Kim EY, Battaile JT, Patel AC, You Y, Agapov E, Grayson MH, et al. Persistent activation of an innate immune response translates respiratory viral infection into chronic lung disease. *Nat Med* (2008) 14(6):633–40. doi:10.1038/nm1770
139. Ford AQ, Dasgupta P, Mikhailenko I, Smith EP, Noben-Trauth N, Keegan AD. Adoptive transfer of IL-4Rα$^+$ macrophages is sufficient to support Th2-driven alternative macrophage activation and to enhance eosinophilic inflammation in a mouse model of allergic lung inflammation. *BMC Immunol* (2012) 13:6. doi:10.1186/1471-2172-13-6
140. Dasgupta P, Keegan AD. Contribution of alternatively activated macrophages to allergic lung inflammation: a tale of mice and men. *J Innate Immun* (2012) 4(5–6):478–88. doi:10.1159/000336025
141. Tamemoto H, Kadowaki T, Tobe K, Yagi T, Sakura H, Hayakawa T, et al. Insulin resistance and growth retardation in mice lacking insulin receptor substrate-1. *Nature* (1994) 372:182–6. doi:10.1038/372182a0
142. Araki E, Lipes MA, Patti ME, Bruning JC, Haag B III, Johnson RS, et al. Alternative pathway of insulin signaling in mice with targeted disruption of the IRS-1 gene. *Nature* (1994) 372:186–90. doi:10.1038/372710b0
143. Wu D, Molofsky AB, Liang HE, Ricardo-Gonzalez RR, Jouihan HA, Bando JK, et al. Eosinophils sustain adipose alternatively activated macrophages associated with glucose homeostasis. *Science* (2011) 332(6026):243–7. doi:10.1126/science.1201475
144. Qiu Y, Nguyen KD, Odegaard JI, Cui X, Tian X, Locksley RM, et al. Eosinophils and type 2 cytokine signaling in macrophages orchestrate development of functional beige fat. *Cell* (2014) 157:1292–308. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.03.066
145. Rao RR, Long JZ, White JP, Svensson KJ, Lou J, Lokurkar I, et al. Meteorin-like is a hormone that regulates immune-adipose interactions to increase beige fat thermogenesis. *Cell* (2014) 157(6):1279–91. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.03.065


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The reviewer HP and handling Editor declared their shared affiliation.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 23 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00716

# The Hunt for the Source of Primary Interleukin-4: How We Discovered That Natural Killer T Cells and Basophils Determine T Helper Type 2 Cell Differentiation *In Vivo*

*Tomohiro Yoshimoto*[1,2]*

[1] Department of Immunology, Hyogo College of Medicine, Nishinomiya, Japan, [2] Laboratory of Allergic Diseases, Institute for Advanced Medical Sciences, Hyogo College of Medicine, Nishinomiya, Japan

Interleukin (IL)-4 plays a central role in determining the phenotype of naïve CD4$^+$ T cells by promoting their differentiation into IL-4-producing T helper type 2 (Th2) cells, which are crucial for the induction of allergic inflammation. However, to date, the potential sources of "primary IL-4" *in vivo*, as distinguished from IL-4 produced by Th2 cells, remain unclear. Here, I describe the research I carried out in collaboration with Dr. William E. Paul to identify "primary IL-4"-producing cells and Th2 cell differentiation *in vivo*.

**Keywords: Dr. William E. Paul, T helper type 2 cell differentiation, interleukin-4, interleukin-18, natural killer T cell**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Laurent Gapin, University of Colorado Denver, United States*
*Masato Kubo, RIKEN Brain Science Institute (BSI), Japan*

***Correspondence:**
*Tomohiro Yoshimoto*
*cytokine.il4@gmail.com*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *29 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *22 March 2018*
***Published:*** *23 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*Yoshimoto T (2018) The Hunt for the Source of Primary Interleukin-4: How We Discovered That Natural Killer T Cells and Basophils Determine T Helper Type 2 Cell Differentiation In Vivo. Front. Immunol. 9:716. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00716*

## INTRODUCTION

In 1986, Coffman and Mosmann proposed the T helper (Th) dichotomy, in which they showed the presence of two different cell subsets, consisting of Th1 and Th2 CD4$^+$ T cell lineages each expressing a definite cytokine profile (1). CD4$^+$ T cells are differentiated into Th1 cells in the presence of interleukin (IL)-12, which primarily produce IFN-γ and IL-2 and are concerned in cell-mediated immune responses. IFN-γ activates macrophages and is extremely efficient in the elimination of intracellular pathogens. While CD4$^+$ T cells are differentiated into Th2 cells in the presence of IL-4 and produce IL-4, IL-5, IL-9, and IL-13 (2, 3), these Th2 cytokines are critical for the development of allergic diseases and the elimination of helminth infections by the induction of IgE synthesis, the activation of basophils and mast cells, and the recruitment of eosinophils. The theory of a Th1/Th2 balance presented the base for understanding the mechanisms of immune responses and has been generally established as a paradigm of the immune system for over 30 years.

It is well established that the differentiation of naïve CD4$^+$ T cells into Th1 or Th2 cells requires three signals: (1) T cell receptor (TCR) triggering through antigen recognition by MHC class II molecules; (2) augmentation of TCR signaling *via* co-stimulatory molecules, such as CD80 and/or CD86 and CD28; and (3) an appropriate cytokine, e.g., IL-12 for Th1 cell (4, 5) and IL-4 for Th2 cell differentiation (6, 7). In the early 1990s, the *in vivo* source of IL-12, essential for Th1 cell differentiation, was revealed as macrophages or dendritic cells (DCs) in response to pathogens (4, 8). By contrast, potential *in vivo* sources of IL-4, essential for Th2 cell differentiation, remained unclear. Therefore, Dr. Paul gave me a mission to identify sources of IL-4 that promote the differentiation of naïve CD4$^+$ T cells into IL-4 producers. This type of IL-4 was designated as "primary IL-4" to distinguish it from Th2 cell-producing IL-4 (**Figure 1**).

We first discovered a specific subpopulation of helper T cells, CD4$^+$NK1.1$^+$ T cells, which promptly produce significant amounts of IL-4 upon stimulation *in vivo* (9). Next, we showed the property

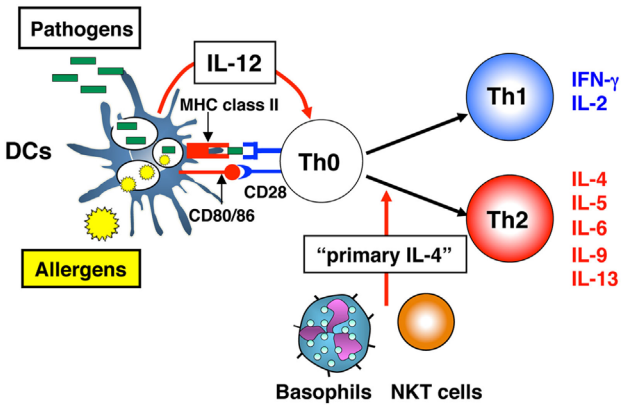



**FIGURE 1** | Differentiation of naïve CD4+ T cells into T helper (Th)1 or Th2 cells. Differentiation of naïve CD4+ T cells into Th1 or Th2 cells requires three signals: (1) T cell receptor (TCR) triggering through peptide-antigen recognition in the context of MHC class II molecules; (2) augmentation of TCR signaling *via* CD80 and/or CD86 and CD28 co-stimulatory molecules; and (3) an appropriate cytokine, interleukin (IL)-12 for Th1 cell differentiation and IL-4 for Th2 cell differentiation. For Th1 cell differentiation, which develops in response to viral and bacterial pathogens, dendritic cells (DCs) function as antigen-presenting cells and provide all three signals. For Th2 cell differentiation, which develops in response to an allergen, DCs cannot provide all three required signals, because of the lack of "primary IL-4," the cytokine essential for Th2 cell differentiation. Cells, such as natural killer T (NKT) cells or basophils are candidate "primary IL-4"-producing cells.

of basophils as "primary IL-4"-producing cells (10). Finally, we revealed that basophils have dual functions as "primary IL-4"-producing cells and as antigen-presenting cells (APCs) which preferentially induce Th2 cells *in vivo* and *in vitro* (11). In this review, I describe the story of research to identify "primary IL-4"-producing cells and Th2 cell differentiation in collaboration with Dr. William E. Paul.

## CD4+NK1.1+ T CELLS ARE A SOURCE OF IL-4 THAT PROMOTES THE DIFFERENTIATION OF NAÏVE CD4+ T CELLS INTO Th2 CELLS

In 1994, Dr. Paul and I showed that almost all amounts of IL-4 produced within 30–90 min after an injection of antibody against anti-CD3 into mice were from an unexpected population of CD4+ T cells that express receptors of the NK lineage, NK1.1, on their surface (9). These CD4+NK1.1+ T cells are somewhat small in the spleen (~1% of splenic cells) and have a specific TCR expression of Vα14 and Vβ8.2, which are specific for MHC class I-like molecules CD1. Today, these cells are termed natural killer T (NKT) cells (12, 13).

Interestingly, the development of NKT cells was markedly impaired in β2-microglobulin deficient ($\beta2M^{-/-}$) mice (14). This is in keeping with the association of β2-microglobulin with CD1. Indeed, splenic cells from $\beta2M^{-/-}$ mice produced little or no IL-4 in response to *in vivo* treatment with anti-CD3 antibody (15). Furthermore, $\beta2M^{-/-}$ mice impaired the presence of IL-4-producing cells 5 days after an injection of goat anti-mouse IgD antibody and produced minimal or no IgE in response to this stimulation. Furthermore, the ability of irradiated $\beta2M^{-/-}$ mice to produce IgE in response to an *in vivo* challenge with anti-IgD antibody can be restored by transferring purified populations of CD4+NK1.1+ thymocytes and T cell-depleted splenic cells from normal mice (15). These results show that the production of IgE depends upon NKT cells, probably because NKT cells can rapidly produce "primary IL-4," which sequentially prime naïve CD4+ T cells to differentiate into IL-4-producing Th2 cells.

SJL mice have a defect in IgE production to a variety of stimulants (16, 17). To reveal the possibility that their defect might be due to a lack of splenic NKT cells, SJL mice were *in vivo* challenged with anti-IgD antibody. As a result, SJL mice had defects in IgE production and IL-4-producing cells in response to this treatment. By contrast, similarly, anti-IgD-treated BALB/c and C57BL/6 mice made substantial amounts of IgE and induced IL-4-producing Th2 cells. In addition, *in vivo* treatment of SJL mice with anti-CD3 antibody also failed to produce "primary IL-4" (18).

These results suggest that the defect in IL-4 and IgE production in two strains of mice—$\beta2M^{-/-}$ mice and SJL mice—was associated with, and might be caused by, an absence of the NKT cells. However, we observed that in response to certain stimulant, $\beta2M^{-/-}$ mice produced IgE. These mice immunized with ovalbumin (OVA) and alum-induced IgE production and IL-4-producing cells (TY and WEP, unpublished work). This may be explained by the production of "primary IL-4" by cell types other than NKT cells.

When Dr. Paul and I published these attractive data, we considered several possibilities when answering the question, "How do NKT cells contribute to Th2 cell differentiation *in vivo*?" as described below. First, peptides derived from allergens or Th2-inducing pathogens, such as helminths, may connect to CD1 molecule and form epitopes recognized by NKT cell receptors. The second possibility is that APCs that interrelate with allergens or Th2-inducing pathogens may regulate the expression level of CD1 or co-stimulatory molecules on their surface. The third possibility is that NKT cells may receive a robust stimulus through the interaction of their receptors with CD1 expressed on the organs such as skin, respiratory tract, and gut. If naïve CD4+ T cells encounter antigens in these organs, they are initiated by "primary IL-4" and differentiated into Th2 cells.

## NKT CELLS RESPOND TO IL-18 TO PRODUCE IL-4 THAT PROMOTES NAÏVE CD4+ T CELLS TO DIFFERENTIATE INTO Th2 CELLS

### IL-18 Induction of IgE: Dependence on CD4+ T Cells and IL-4

In 1995, when I returned to Japan, a new cytokine IL-18 was discovered and cloned at Hyogo College of Medicine (19). IL-18, an IL-1-like cytokine that requires cleavage by caspase-1 to become active form, was originally recognized as a factor that enhanced

IFN-γ production by Th1 cells in the presence of antigen plus IL-12 (19, 20). However, our later studies and those of others revealed that without IL-12 stimulation, IL-18 promotes Th2 cytokine production by $CD4^+$ T cells, basophils, and mast cells (21–25). With IL-3, IL-18 stimulates basophils and mast cells to induce IL-4, IL-9, and IL-13 production even without cross-linkage of FcεRI (21). Naïve $CD4^+$ T cells cultured with IL-2 and IL-18 without engagement of TCR for 4 days produced moderate and significant amounts of IL-4 and IL-13, respectively (23). Additional stimulation with antibodies against CD3 and CD28 increased their capacity to produce IL-4 and IL-13. Moreover, these activated T cells were differentiated into Th2 cells *in vitro*, while naïve $CD4^+$ T cells cultured with the same protocol, but with additional neutralizing antibody to IL-4, were differentiated into Th1 cells, not Th2 cells. These results suggested that IL-18 has the potential to develop Th2 cells in an IL-4-dependent manner (23).

We also demonstrated that in addition to IL-4 production, naïve $CD4^+$ T cells stimulated with IL-2 and IL-18 for 4 days upregulated CD40 ligand (CD40L) and induced B cells to secrete IgE *in vitro* (23). Consistent with these findings, the daily injection of IL-18 into mice induced a significant, dose-dependent increase in serum IgE levels *in vivo* in an IL-4-dependent fashion (23, 24). In addition, transgenic mice overexpressing human caspase-1 in keratinocytes, which have significant increased serum levels of mature IL-18, spontaneously develop atopic dermatitis with high serum levels of IgE. This IgE response disappeared in caspase-1 Tg mice lacking IL-18 or STAT6, a crucial intracellular element for IL-4-signaling pathway, indicating that IL-18- and IL-4-mediated signaling pathways are contributed to their IgE response (23). These results taken together indicate that IL-18 has the potential to induce Th2 cell differentiation. In these experiments, Dr. Paul and Dr. Nancy Noben-Trauth collaborated with us in the evaluation of IL-18-induced IgE response *in vivo* and showed that it was IL-4-dependent using BALB/c IL-4Rα$^{-/-}$ mice (23).

## IL-18-Stimulated NKT Cells Are the Major Source of IL-4

Although it was clearly demonstrated that $CD4^+$ T cells can respond to IL-18 to produce IL-4 *in vivo* and *in vitro* (23, 24), the subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that responded to IL-18 stimulation *in vivo* by inducing the expression of IL-4 and CD40L remained unidentified. Collaborating with Dr. Paul and Dr. Booki Min, we revealed that NKT cells are the target cells for IL-18 as described below (26). The daily injection of IL-18 resulted in increased serum levels of IgE, IL-4, and IL-13 in normal mice but not in CD1$^{-/-}$ mice lacking NKT cells, because NKT cells are positively selected by MHC class I-like molecules CD1 (12). In addition, compared with conventional $CD4^+$ T cells, NKT cells, strongly positive for the IL-18Rα chain, produced large amounts of Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-9, and IL-13) and increased their CD40L expression in response to IL-18 plus IL-2 *in vitro* without TCR engagement. Moreover, IL-18- and IL-2-stimulated NKT cells induced *in vitro* IgE isotype switching in B cells. By contrast, MHC class II$^{-/-}$ mice, which lack conventional $CD4^+$ T cells but have NKT cells, failed to produce IgE in response to IL-18 treatment, indicating that conventional $CD4^+$ T cells are important for IL-18-induced IgE production. Actually, these mice, reconstituted with conventional $CD4^+$ T cells from wild type but not from IL-4$^{-/-}$ mice, produced IgE. Thus, these results demonstrated that NKT cells are an essential subset of $CD4^+$ T cells responding to IL-18 by inducing IL-4 production and CD40L expression *in vivo*, and IL-4-producing conventional $CD4^+$ T cells are required for IgE production by B cells together with NKT cells (**Figure 2**).

Natural killer T cells rapidly produce IL-4 after stimulation of the TCR with anti-CD3 antibody (9). Furthermore, without TCR engagement, NKT cells produce a variety of Th2 cytokines including IL-4 in response to IL-18, which has the potential to initiate Th2 cell development and IgE production (26). Therefore, our original work with Dr. Paul on the roles of NKT cells in Th2 cell development at the National Institutes of Health in the USA (9) connected to the discovery of the contribution of NKT cells for IL-18-driven Th2 cell development in Japan (23, 26). Throughout these experiments, Dr. Paul gave us a great deal of support and engaged with us in helpful discussions.

## RECENT STUDIES OF NKT CELLS AS IL-4-PRODUCING CELLS

NK1.1 has been considered to be a marker of NKT cell; however, it is neither expressed in BALB/c mice. Thus, instead of surface markers, recent study performed intracellular staining for transcription factors recognized consistently in different mouse strains. According to the combination of transcription factor (T-bet, GATA-3, and ROR-γt), NKT cells are separated into three distinctive subsets: NKT1, NKT2, and NKT17 cell, analogous to the nomenclature of Th lineage (Th1/Th2/Th17) (27). Lee et al. demonstrated that NKT2 cells highly expressed Th2-specific transcription factor GATA-3, while NKT1 cells expressed a high level of T-bet with low GATA-3. Notably, upon stimulation with PMA plus ionomycin, thymic NKT1, NKT2, and NKT17 cells produced IFN-γ, IL-4, and IL-17, respectively.

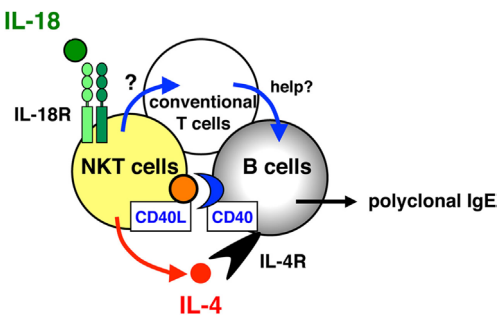



**FIGURE 2** | Role of natural killer T (NKT) cells and conventional T cells for interleukin (IL)-18-induced IgE production *in vivo*. NKT cells, strongly positive for the IL-18Rα chain, are a critical subset of $CD4^+$ T cells that respond to IL-18 by the expression of IL-4 and CD40 ligand (CD40L) *in vivo*, and conventional $CD4^+$ T cells act as helper T cells together with NKT cells in IL-18-induced IgE responses.

Compared with C57BL/6 mice, BALB/c mice have the greater abundance of NKT2 cells and secrete large amounts of IL-4 at a steady state. It is well known that C57BL/6 and BALB/c mice are the prototypes of strains dominating Th1 and Th2 responses, respectively. BALB/c mice have higher serum IgE levels than C57BL/6 mice, while BALB/c background CD1d$^{-/-}$ mice lacking NKT cells significantly reduced serum IgE at a steady state (27). Thus, NKT2 cell-derived IL-4 might modify immune responses under normal steady-state conditions, conceivably contributing to Th2 dominance in BALB/c mice.

Very recently, it has been reported that NKT cells might represent the early source of IL-4 for the initiation of antiviral B cell immunity (28). B cells are essential for the defense against pathogenic infections through the production of pathogen-specific antibodies in germinal centers. In this process, follicular helper T (TfH) cells are known to regulate the initiation of antiviral B cell immunity *via* co-stimulatory molecules and cytokines, such as IFN-γ, IL-4, and IL-21 (29). However, the mechanism by which B cells initially seed germinal center reactions remains unclear. Gaya et al. demonstrated that during influenza infection, there are two waves of IL-4 production: an early wave, mainly produced by NKT cells and restricted to the periphery of B cell follicles, and a late wave, produced by germinal center-resident TfH cells. Furthermore, close interactions between NKT cells and resident macrophages at the follicular through CD1d are necessary to induce early IL-4 production by NKT cells by 3 days after infection. Interestingly, this early IL-4 production by NKT cells was significantly reduced in IL-18R$^{-/-}$ mice, suggesting that IL-18 enhances IL-4 secretion by NKT cells as we reported previously (26). Indeed, they detected a strong accumulation of IL-18 in both subcapsular sinus and medullar macrophages on day 2 of influenza infection, suggesting that these resident macrophages are a source of IL-18. Therefore, early IL-4 production by IL-18-stimulated NKT cells might contribute to the initiation of antiviral B cell immunity.

## BASOPHILS ARE "PRIMARY IL-4"-PRODUCING CELLS

Before serial experiments with NKT cells for Th2 cell development *in vivo*, Dr. Paul had an idea that "primary IL-4"-producing cells might be activated T cells themselves or FcεRI$^{+}$ cells, cells with the morphology of basophils (30, 31). However, neither of these cells appeared ideally suitable to be a physiological source of "primary IL-4" for Th2 cell differentiation. Specifically, the main problem with the theory that basophils might be "primary IL-4"-producing cells is that the only established physiological pathway through which these cells are stimulated to produce IL-4 is by the cross-linkage of FcεRI. In other words, basophil-IL-4 production is dependent upon established Th2 responses of IgE production. However, several studies revealed that basophils might be "primary IL-4"-producing cells for Th2 cell differentiation as described below.

We revealed that without FcεRI cross-linkage, IL-18 stimulated basophils and mast cells to produce Th2 cytokines (21). Murine bone-marrow-derived basophils and mast cells express IL-18Rα chain and produce Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-6, IL-9, and IL-13) and histamine in response to IL-3 plus IL-18 stimulation (21). In addition, murine basophils and mast cells express ST2, the receptor for IL-33, a member of the IL-1 family (10). Like IL-18, IL-33 stimulates basophils and mast cells to produce Th2 cytokines without FcεRI cross-linkage. Notably, basophils but not mast cells produce IL-4 in response to IL-3 plus IL-18 or IL-3 plus IL-33 (10).

Proteases secreted from helminths and protease allergens from house dust mites can also induce Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13) from human basophils purified from peripheral blood. Protease inhibitors blocked the production of these Th2 cytokines, suggesting that proteolytic antigens can directly activate basophils (32). Moreover, a cysteine protease allergen papain significantly induced the expression of Th2 cytokines and TSLP in murine basophils (33). Although the receptor or sensors that recognize proteases from allergens and helminths on basophils remain unknown, the downstream signaling pathway activated by papain in basophils was recently characterized (34).

Human basophils express Toll-like receptor (TLR) 2 and produce Th2 cytokines when stimulated with several TLR2-specific ligands (35). We reported that murine basophils selectively express TLR1, 2, 4, and 6 and produce Th2 cytokines in response to IL-3 plus peptidoglycan or IL-3 plus lipopolysaccharide *via* TLR2 or TLR4, respectively (11). It is well known that some infectious conditions induce allergic inflammatory responses. Thus, pathogen-induced Th2 cytokine production from basophils *via* TLRs may contribute to the onset of allergic diseases.

Basophils produce IL-4 significantly and promptly in response to various stimuli, such as IL-18, IL-33, proteases, and TLR ligands, making them a potential candidate for the source of "primary IL-4." Indeed, Min and colleagues reported that in the presence of DCs and antigen, basophils initiated Th2 cell differentiation *in vitro* (36). They showed that naïve CD4$^{+}$ T cells could be differentiated into Th2 cells if they were stimulated with antigen in the presence of basophils and DCs without additional IL-4 (36). Basophil-mediated Th2 cell differentiation was mainly mediated by the IL-4 produced by basophils, because Th2 cell differentiation was not detected when IL-4-deficient basophils were used. In addition, Min and colleagues showed that, at least *in vitro*, the Th2-promoting capacity of basophils was in part due to a direct cell–cell contact with CD4$^{+}$ T cells (36). This led to the later finding that MHC class II expressing basophils functions as APCs, as described below. Nevertheless, their studies clearly provided a proof of principle that basophils can promote Th2 cell differentiation in the presence of DCs and antigen *via* basophil-derived "primary IL-4."

Sokol et al. revealed that basophils are crucial for Th2 cell differentiation in response to papain *in vivo* (33). The immunization of mice with papain alone induced significant Th2 responses, Th2 cytokine production in lymph nodes, and serum papain-specific IgE. Most extraordinarily, basophils quickly migrated into T cell zones of the draining lymph nodes and produced IL-4, 3 days after the *in vivo* injection of papain (33). Taken together,

these results show that "primary IL-4" produced by basophils is essential for Th2 cell differentiation. In this setting, it was initially considered that DCs functioned as APCs and induced Th2 cell differentiation in collaboration with basophil-derived "primary IL-4."

## BASOPHILS HAVE DUAL FUNCTIONS AS "PRIMARY IL-4"-PRODUCING CELLS AND AS APCs THAT PREFERENTIALLY INDUCE Th2 CELL DIFFERENTIATION

In 2009, three independent groups, including ours, published studies showing that besides the function of basophils as "primary IL-4"-producing cells, basophils have the function of APCs to preferentially induce Th2 cell differentiation both *in vitro* and *in vivo* (11, 37, 38). Murine basophils express MHC class II and co-stimulatory molecules (CD80 and CD86). Thus, basophils store all three characters required of Th2-promoting APCs, that is, the expression of MHC class II and co-stimulatory molecules, and the production of "primary IL-4" (**Figure 3**). We showed that basophils also expressed the lymph node-homing molecule CD62L, indicating their potential to migrate to lymph nodes to initiate T cell responses *in vivo* (11). Importantly, human cord blood-derived immature basophils ($CD203c^+c\text{-}Kit^-$) expressed human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-DR (~19%). Furthermore, human peripheral blood-derived mature basophils expressed HLA-DR after *in vitro* culture with IL-3 for 24 h (11). Thus, the expression of MHC class II on basophils is not specific for mouse.

Splenic basophils from gastrointestinal helminth (*Strongyloides venezuelensis*)-infected mice significantly induced naïve $CD4^+$ T cells to develop into Th2 cells without exogenous IL-4. Furthermore, in the absence of DCs, bone-marrow-derived basophils strongly induced naïve OVA-specific $CD4^+$ T cells to differentiate into Th2 cells *in vitro* in the presence of OVA peptide ($OVA_{323-339}$) without additional IL-4. By contrast, splenic DCs induced Th2 cell differentiation only in the presence of IL-4. Additional IL-4 stimulation moderately increased the capability of basophils to induce Th2 cells, whereas basophils from $IL\text{-}4^{-/-}$ mice failed to induce Th2 cells without additional IL-4 (11). From these results, we conclude that endogenous IL-4 from basophils is indispensable for the differentiation of naïve $CD4^+$ T cells toward Th2 cells.

Other groups also demonstrated that basophils expressed MHC class II and promoted the MHC class II-dependent Th2 cell differentiation *in vitro* without additional IL-4 (37, 38). Sokol et al. showed that Th2 cell differentiation was increased in the presence of papain, which stimulated basophils to increase the expression of MHC class II and the production of IL-4 (37), indicating that protease allergen activated basophils to augment their presentation of allergen to $CD4^+$ T cells.

Do basophils increase their potential to act as APCs when stimulated with antigen and antigen-specific IgE? Basophils pulsed with a low dose (6.2 μg/ml) or a high dose (100 μg/ml) of 2,4-dinitrophenyl (DNP)-conjugated OVA protein induced Th2 cells moderately or strongly, respectively. The addition of anti-DNP IgE to this culture, representative IgE–FcεRI cross-linkage, significantly increased Th2 cell differentiation even with a low dose (6.2 μg/ml) of OVA protein (11). These results indicated that $FcεRI^+$ basophils might catch up low doses of antigen that are sufficient to augment antigen-specific Th2 cell differentiation in an IgE-dependent manner (**Figure 3**).

To reveal how basophils contribute to the development and the augmentation of *in vivo* Th2 cell–IgE responses, naïve mice or basophil-depleted mice were intravenously injected with the complex of DNP–OVA and anti-DNP IgE. This treatment preferentially induced OVA-specific Th2 cell differentiation in the spleens and OVA-specific serum IgG1 in naïve mice, whereas

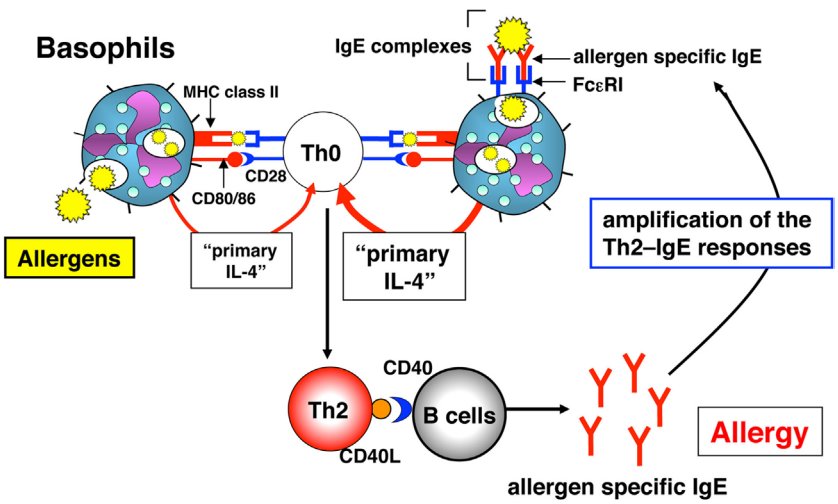



**FIGURE 3** | The role of basophils in the induction and amplification of T helper (Th)2 cell responses. Basophils initially induce Th2 cells *in vivo via* "primary interleukin (IL)-4" production and the presentation of complexes of allergen peptide plus MHC class II to $CD4^+$ T cells. These activated Th2 cells produce IL-4 and express CD40 ligand (CD40L), which, in combination, induce B cells to proliferate and produce allergen-specific IgE *in vivo*. Immune complexes of allergen and allergen-specific IgE "preferentially" augment the development of allergen-specific Th2 responses in an endogenous basophil-dependent manner.

these Th2 responses were significantly diminished in basophil-depleted mice (11). These results clearly demonstrated that basophils contribute to the development and the augmentation of antigen-specific Th2 cells *in vivo* by taking up the complex of antigen and antigen-specific IgE, presenting antigen peptide along with MHC class II and producing large amounts of IL-4 (**Figure 3**).

## CONTROVERSIES IN THIS FIELD OF BASOPHILS

It was clearly demonstrated that basophils are "primary IL-4"-producing cells and that basophils have the function as APCs to promote Th2 responses both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. This paradigm shift was greeted with great enthusiasm, but also with objection (3, 39–42).

In 2009, researchers including our group used basophil-depleted mouse models based on antibody-mediated depletion strategies using FcεRIα-specific antibody (MAR-1). Some controversial evidences demonstrated that basophiles were not essential for Th2 differentiation and IgE production *in vivo* analysis using a basophil-specific deletion system. Ohnmacht et al. generated transgenic mice that express the Cre recombinase under control of regulatory elements for the mast cell protease 8 (*Mcpt8*) gene, which is expressed in basophils (43). More than 90% of basophils were constitutively deleted in *Mcpt8Cre* mice. They clearly demonstrated that papain-induced Th2 cell differentiation depended on DCs and not on basophils. Furthermore, they showed that basophils were not required for gastrointestinal helminth (*Nippostrongylus brasiliensis*)-induced type 2 immunity (43). Sawaguchi et al. established diphtheria toxin-based conditional basophil deletion mice, Bas-TRECK mice (44). OVA in alum-immunized Bas-TRECK mice showed equivalent serum OVA-specific IgE levels as control mice, indicating that basophils are dispensable for the development of a systemic IgE response (44).

Some groups have demonstrated that basophils had no functions as APCs and that DCs were essential APCs to promote Th2 responses in mouse models of inhaled house dust mite allergen (45) or helminthic infection (46). In addition, we and others demonstrated that basophils contribute to the cutaneously induced Th2 cell differentiation (47–50). Otsuka et al. reported a possible explanation for the controversial functions of basophils as APCs (48). In their model, basophils functioned as APCs and sufficiently initiated Th2 responses if the antigen was a hapten or a peptide. Other groups demonstrated the collaboration between basophils and DCs, where basophils promoted Th2 cell differentiation in combination with DCs as "primary IL-4"-producing cells (47, 49). The epicutaneous application of a vitamin D analog (49) or the subcutaneous injection of papain (47) induced the local production of TSLP in skin, which activated DCs to upregulate OX40L and migrate into the draining lymph node. Our group demonstrated that both basophils and TSLP had crucial roles in the development of cutaneously sensitized food allergy by the induction of Th2 responses (50). In that study, basophil-depleted or TSLP receptor-deficient mice were completely defective for Th2 responses against sensitized antigen. Basophils in the regional lymph nodes from mice epicutaneously sensitized with OVA produced more IL-4 than those from naïve mice. As a result, in the case of epicutaneously sensitized protein antigens, basophils were essential for the development of Th2 responses, as they are indispensable producers of "primary IL-4." Therefore, skin is an exceptional organ where basophils have essential roles in the initiation and the development of Th2 responses. Furthermore, we demonstrated that basophil–TSLP pathways in skin were indispensable for the production of antigen-specific IgE and the development of gastrointestinal food allergy (50). Taken together, these reports demonstrated that basophils might contribute to Th2 responses in an organ-dependent manner, and skin could be a unique organ that needs basophils to induce most favorable Th2 responses. Nevertheless, the function of basophils as APCs in the development of Th2 responses is still highly controversial.

Recently, Miyake et al. revealed the functional relevance of basophils in Th2 cell differentiation (51). They demonstrated that basophils acquired complexes of peptide and MHC class II from DCs *via* trogocytosis in a cell-contact-dependent manner both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. That these peptide–MHC class II containing basophils might function as APCs and induce the differentiation of naïve $CD4^+$ T cells into Th2 cells is very interesting. However, without any other APCs including DCs, we demonstrated that basophils strongly induced the differentiation of naïve OVA-specific $CD4^+$ T into OVA-specific Th2 cells *in vitro* in the presence of OVA protein instead of OVA peptide ($OVA_{323–339}$) without exogenous IL-4 (11). Thus, basophils can process OVA protein into $OVA_{323–339}$ peptide and display peptide fragments together with MHC class II and to produce "primary IL-4."

From the beginning of our basophil-APC experiments in 2006, Dr. Paul gave us critical suggestions and a great deal of support. After our publication (11), Dr. Paul mentioned in his review article (3) as described below "Basophils have important roles in the initiation of Th2 cell responses by producing Th2-associated cytokines in response to allergen or helminth-derived products. Basophils are also involved in the initiation of some Th2 cell responses by serving as APCs. However, the differential requirements for basophils or DCs as APCs for the induction of Th2 cell responses seem to depend on the nature of the antigens or helminths and/or the particular adjuvant used."

## CONCLUDING REMARKS

Although IL-4 is essential for both *in vitro* and *in vivo* Th2 cell differentiation, the IL-4/IL-4R/STAT6-signaling pathway is not crucial in some instances of *in vivo* Th2 cell differentiation (52, 53). In addition to IL-4, other pathways such as GATA-3 and GATA5 (54, 55), and cytokines such as TSLP, IL-25, and IL-33 (3, 56, 57) have crucial roles in the induction of Th2 cell differentiation *in vivo*. A recent study suggested that IL-33 plays an important role in the induction and the augmentation of Th2 responses. Halim et al. demonstrated the role of group 2 innate lymphoid cells (ILC2s) in the differentiation of naïve $CD4^+$ T cells into Th2 cells in the lung in response to the protease

allergen papain (57). ILC2s, innate counterparts of adaptive Th2 cells, are activated by IL-33 from allergen-stimulated lung epithelial cells and produce large amounts of IL-13 (58). They showed that although IL-4 was dispensable for papain-induced Th2 cell differentiation, IL-13 derived from ILC2 was crucial since it induced the recruitment of activated CD40$^+$ lung DCs into the draining lymph nodes where they promoted naïve CD4$^+$ T cells to differentiate into Th2 cells (57).

In this review, I have described the long search for "primary IL-4"-producing cells and Th2 cell differentiation carried out in collaboration with Dr. Paul. We identified the key cells (NKT cells and basophils) and molecule (IL-18) involved in priming and developing *in vivo* Th2 responses. However, we will face a major challenge in trying to understand the detailed relations that shape "the nature of the immune response."

In 1997, when we established a new Institute at the Hyogo College of Medicine in commemoration of the discovery of IL-18 (19), Dr. Paul named it the "Institute for Advanced Medical Sciences" and provided a good acronym "IAMS." The phrase for the celebration of the initiation of the Institute: "Organizing scientists to reveal the secrets of nature for the good of man" reminds us that each of us has the responsibility to reveal "the secrets of nature for the good of man" by following Dr. Paul's spirit.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

TY performed the experiments and wrote the manuscript.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author thanks all those who have contributed to the work that he described here. The author especially thanks Dr. Kenji Nakanishi—one of Dr. Paul's postdocs—for giving him a chance to work with Dr. Paul, supporting him for over 30 years at the Hyogo College of Medicine. The author particularly thanks Dr. William E. Paul for his unfailing support and encouragement and most of all for his excellent advice and judgment, often putting the author on the right track when his own approach would probably have led nowhere. The research described here was supported in part by the Strategic Program Grant for Research Institute Development in Private Institute from the Ministry of Education, Culture, Sports, Science and Technology (MEXT) in Japan, and a Grant-in-Aid for Scientific Research from the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science (JSPS). We thank J. Ludovic Croxford, PhD, from Edanz Group (www.edanzediting.com/ac), for editing the English text of a draft of this manuscript.

## REFERENCES

1. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol* (1986) 136:2348–57.
2. Murphy KM, Reiner SL. The lineage decisions of helper T cells. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2002) 2:933–44. doi:10.1038/nri954
3. Paul WE, Zhu J. How are TH2-type immune responses initiated and amplified? *Nat Rev Immunol* (2010) 10:225–35. doi:10.1038/nri2735
4. Hsieh CS, Macatonia SE, Tripp CS, Wolf SF, O'Garra A, Murphy KM. Development of TH1 CD4$^+$ T cells through IL12 produced by *Listeria*-induced macrophages. *Science* (1993) 260:547–9. doi:10.1126/science.8097338
5. Seder RA, Gazzinelli R, Sher A, Paul WE. IL-12 acts directly on CD4$^+$ T cells to enhance priming for IFN-γ production and diminishes IL-4 inhibition of such priming. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1993) 90:10188–92. doi:10.1073/pnas.90.21.10188
6. Seder RA, Paul WE, Davis MM, Fazekas de St. Groth B. The presence of interleukin 4 during *in vitro* priming determines the lymphokine-producing potential of CD4$^+$ T cells from T cell receptor transgenic mice. *J Exp Med* (1992) 176:1091–8. doi:10.1084/jem.176.4.1091
7. Hsieh CS, Heimberger AB, Gold JS, O'Garra A, Murphy KM. Differential regulation of T helper phenotype development by interleukins 4 and 10 in an alpha beta T-cell receptor transgenic system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1992) 89:6065–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.13.6065
8. Sypek JP, Chung CL, Mayor SEH, Subramanyam JM, Goldman SL, Sieburth DS, et al. Resolution of cutaneous leishmaniasis: interleukin 12 initiates a protective T helper type 1 immune response. *J Exp Med* (1993) 177:1797–802. doi:10.1084/jem.177.6.1797
9. Yoshimoto T, Paul WE. CD4$^{pos}$, NK1.1$^{pos}$ T cells promptly produce interleukin 4 in response to *in vivo* challenge with anti-CD3. *J Exp Med* (1994) 179:1285–95. doi:10.1084/jem.179.4.1285
10. Kondo Y, Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Futatsugi-Yumikura S, Morimoto M, Hayashi N, et al. Administration of IL-33 induces airway hyperresponsiveness and goblet cell hyperplasia in the lungs in the absence of adaptive immune system. *Int Immunol* (2008) 20:791–800. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxn037
11. Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Tanaka H, Nakahira M, Imai Y, Fujimori Y, et al. Basophils contribute to TH2–IgE responses *in vivo via* IL-4 production and presentation of peptide–MHC class II complexes to CD4$^+$ T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:706–12. doi:10.1038/ni.1737
12. Bendelac A, Rivera MN, Park SH, Roark JH. Mouse CD1-specific NK1 T cells: development, specificity, and function. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1997) 15:535–62. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.15.1.535
13. Bendelac A, Savage PB, Teyton L. The biology of NKT cells. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2007) 25:297–336. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141711
14. Bendelac A, Killeen N, Littman DR, Schwartz RH. A subset of CD4$^+$ thymocytes selected by MHC class I molecules. *Science* (1994) 263:1744–8. doi:10.1126/science.7907820
15. Yoshimoto T, Bendelac A, Watson C, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Role of NK1.1$^+$ T cells in a TH2 response and in immunoglobulin E production. *Science* (1995) 270:1845–7. doi:10.1126/science.270.5243.1845
16. Watanabe N, Kojima S, Ovary Z. Suppression of IgE antibody production in SJL mice. I. Nonspecific suppressor T cells. *J Exp Med* (1976) 143:833–45. doi:10.1084/jem.143.4.833
17. Lebrun P, Spiegelberg HL. Concomitant immunoglobulin E and immunoglobulin G1 formation in *Nippostrongylus brasiliensis*-infected mice. *J Immunol* (1987) 139:1459–65.
18. Yoshimoto T, Bendelac A, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Defective IgE production by SJL mice is linked to the absence of CD4$^+$, NK1.1$^+$ T cells that promptly produce interleukin 4. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1995) 92:11931–4. doi:10.1073/pnas.92.25.11931
19. Okamura H, Tsutsui H, Komatsu T, Yutsudo M, Hakura A, Tanimoto T, et al. Cloning of a new cytokine that induces IFN-γ production by T cells. *Nature* (1995) 378:88–91. doi:10.1038/378088a0
20. Gu Y, Kuida K, Tsutsui H, Ku G, Hsiao K, Fleming MA, et al. Activation of interferon-γ inducing factor mediated by interleukin-1β converting enzyme. *Science* (1997) 275:206–9. doi:10.1126/science.275.5297.206
21. Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Tominaga K, Hoshino K, Okamura H, Akira S, et al. IL-18, although antiallergic when administered with IL-12, stimulates IL-4 and histamine release by basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1999) 96:13962–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.24.13962
22. Hoshino T, Wiltrout RH, Young HA. IL-18 is a potent coinducer of IL-13 in NK and T cells: a new potential role for IL-18 in modulating the immune response. *J Immunol* (1999) 162:5070–7.
23. Yoshimoto T, Mizutani H, Tsutsui H, Noben-Trauth N, Yamanaka K, Tanaka M, et al. IL-18 induction of IgE: dependence on CD4$^+$ T cells, IL-4 and STAT6. *Nat Immunol* (2000) 1:132–7. doi:10.1038/77811
24. Hoshino T, Yagita H, Ortaldo JR, Wiltrout RH, Young HA. *In vivo* administration of IL-18 can induce IgE production through Th2

cytokine induction and up-regulation of CD40 ligand (CD154) expression on CD4+ T cells. *Eur J Immunol* (2000) 30:1998–2006. doi:10.1002/1521-4141(200007)30:7<1998::AID-IMMU1998>3.0.CO;2-U
25. Nakanishi K, Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Okamura H. Interleukin-18 regulates both Th1 and Th2 responses. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2001) 19:423–74. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.19.1.423
26. Yoshimoto T, Min B, Sugimoto T, Hayashi N, Ishikawa Y, Sasaki Y, et al. Nonredundant roles for CD1d-restricted natural killer T cells and conventional CD4+ T cells in the induction of immunoglobulin E antibodies in response to interleukin 18 treatment of mice. *J Exp Med* (2003) 197: 997–1005. doi:10.1084/jem.20021701
27. Lee YJ, Holzapfel KL, Zhu J, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. Steady-state production of IL-4 modulates immunity in mouse strains and is determined by lineage diversity of iNKT cells. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:1146–54. doi:10.1038/ni.2731
28. Gaya M, Barral P, Burbage M, Aggarwal S, Montaner B, Warren Navia A, et al. Initiation of antiviral B cell immunity relies on innate signals from spatially positioned NKT cells. *Cell* (2018) 172:517–33. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.11.036
29. Weinstein JS, Herman EI, Lainez B, Licona-Limón P, Esplugues E, Flavell R, et al. TFH cells progressively differentiate to regulate the germinal center response. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:1197–205. doi:10.1038/ni.3554
30. Ben-Sasson SZ, Le Gros G, Conrad DH, Finkehnan FD, Paul WE. Cross-linking Fc receptors stimulate splenic non-B, non-T cells to secrete interleukin 4 and other lymphokines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1990) 87:1421–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.4.1421
31. Seder RA, Paul WE, Ben-Sasson SZ, Le Gros GS, Kagey-Sobotka A, Finkelman FD, et al. Production of interleukin-4 and other cytokines following stimulation of mast cell lines and *in vivo* mast cells/basophils. *Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol* (1991) 94:137–40. doi:10.1159/000235345
32. Phillips C, Coward WR, Pritchard DI, Hewitt CR. Basophils express a type 2 cytokine profile on exposure to proteases from helminths and house dust mites. *J Leukoc Biol* (2003) 73:165–71. doi:10.1189/jlb.0702356
33. Sokol CL, Barton GM, Farr AG, Medzhitov RA. Mechanism for the initiation of allergen-induced T helper type 2 responses. *Nat Immunol* (2008) 9:310–8. doi:10.1038/ni1558
34. Rosenstein RK, Bezbradica JS, Yu S, Medzhitov R. Signaling pathways activated by a protease allergen in basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2014) 111:4963–71. doi:10.1073/pnas.1418959111
35. Bieneman AP, Chichester KL, Chen YH, Schroeder JT. Toll-like receptor 2 ligands activate human basophils for both IgE-dependent and IgE-independent secretion. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2005) 115:295–301. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2004.10.018
36. Oh K, Shen T, Le Gros G, Min B. Induction of Th2 type immunity in a mouse system reveals a novel immunoregulatory role of basophils. *Blood* (2007) 109:2921–7. doi:10.1182/blood-2006-07-037739
37. Sokol CL, Chu NQ, Yu S, Nish SA, Laufer TM, Medzhitov R. Basophils function as antigen-presenting cells for an allergen-induced T helper type 2 response. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:713–20. doi:10.1038/ni.1738
38. Perrigoue JG, Saenz SA, Siracusa MC, Allenspach EJ, Taylor BC, Giacomin PR, et al. MHC class II-dependent basophil–CD4+ T cell interactions promote TH2 cytokine-dependent immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:697–705. doi:10.1038/ni.1740
39. Finkelman FD. Basophils as TH2-inducing APCs: the dog can sing but is it a diva? *Immunol Cell Biol* (2009) 87:568–70. doi:10.1038/icb.2009.67
40. Maddur MS, Kaveri SV, Bayry J. Basophils as antigen presenting cells. *Trends Immunol* (2010) 31:45–8. doi:10.1016/j.it.2009.12.004
41. Voehringer D. Protective and pathological roles of mast cells and basophils. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2013) 13:362–75. doi:10.1038/nri3427
42. Siracusa MC, Kim BS, Spergel JM, Artis D. Basophils and allergic inflammation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2013) 132:789–801. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.07.046
43. Ohnmacht C, Schwartz C, Panzer M, Schiedewitz I, Naumann R, Voehringer D. Basophils orchestrate chronic allergic dermatitis and protective immunity against helminths. *Immunity* (2010) 33:364–74. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2010.08.011
44. Sawaguchi M, Tanaka S, Nakatani Y, Harada Y, Mukai K, Matsunaga Y, et al. Role of mast cells and basophils in IgE responses and in allergic airway hyperresponsiveness. *J Immunol* (2012) 188:1809–18. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1101746
45. Hammad H, Plantinga M, Deswarte K, Pouliot P, Willart MA, Kool M, et al. Inflammatory dendritic cells—not basophils—are necessary and sufficient for induction of Th2 immunity to inhaled house dust mite allergen. *J Exp Med* (2010) 207:2097–111. doi:10.1084/jem.20101563
46. Phythian-Adams AT, Cook PC, Lundie RJ, Jones LH, Smith KA, Barr TA, et al. CD11c depletion severely disrupts Th2 induction and development *in vivo*. *J Exp Med* (2010) 207:2089–96. doi:10.1084/jem.20100734
47. Tang H, Cao W, Kasturi SP, Ravindran R, Nakaya HI, Kundu K, et al. The T helper type 2 response to cysteine proteases requires dendritic cell–basophil cooperation *via* ROS-mediated signaling. *Nat Immunol* (2010) 11:608–17. doi:10.1038/ni.1883
48. Otsuka A, Nakajima S, Kubo M, Egawa G, Honda T, Kitoh A, et al. Basophils are required for the induction of Th2 immunity to hapten and peptide antigens. *Nat Commun* (2013) 4:1738. doi:10.1038/ncomms2740
49. Leyva-Castillo JM, Hener P, Michea P, Karasuyama H, Chan S, Soumelis V, et al. Skin thymic stromal lymphopoietin initiates Th2 responses through an orchestrated immune cascade. *Nat Commun* (2013) 4:2847. doi:10.1038/ncomms3847
50. Muto T, Fukuoka A, Kabashima K, Ziegler SF, Nakanishi K, Matsushita K, et al. The role of basophils and proallergic cytokines, TSLP and IL-33, in cutaneously sensitized food allergy. *Int Immunol* (2014) 26:539–49. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxu058
51. Miyake K, Shiozawa N, Nagao T, Yoshikawa S, Yamanishi Y, Karasuyama H. Trogocytosis of peptide–MHC class II complexes from dendritic cells confers antigen-presenting ability on basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2017) 114:1111–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.1615973114
52. Jankovic D, Kullberg MC, Noben-Trauth N, Caspar P, Paul WE, Sher A. Single cell analysis reveals that IL-4 receptor/Stat6 signalling is not required for the *in vivo* or *in vitro* development of CD4+ lymphocytes with a Th2 cytokine profile. *J Immunol* (2000) 164:3047–55. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.164.6.3047
53. van Panhuys N, Tang SC, Prout M, Camberis M, Scarlett D, Roberts J, et al. *In vivo* studies fail to reveal a role for IL-4 or STAT6 signaling in Th2 lymphocyte differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) 105:12423–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0806372105
54. Zhu J, Min B, Hu-Li J, Watson CJ, Grinberg A, Wang Q, et al. Conditional deletion of GATA3 shows its essential function in TH1–TH2 responses. *Nat Immunol* (2004) 5:1157–65. doi:10.1038/ni1128
55. Pai SY, Truitt ML, Ho IC. GATA-3 deficiency abrogates the development and maintenance of T helper type 2 cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2004) 101:1993–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0308697100
56. Al-Shami A, Spolski R, Kelly J, Keane-Myers A, Leonard WJ. A role for TSLP in the development of inflammation in an asthma model. *J Exp Med* (2005) 202:829–39. doi:10.1084/jem.20050199
57. Halim TY, Steer CA, Mathä L, Gold MJ, Martinez-Gonzalez I, McNagny KM, et al. Group 2 innate lymphoid cells are critical for the initiation of adaptive T helper 2 cell-mediated allergic lung inflammation. *Immunity* (2014) 40:425–35. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.01.011
58. Morikawa T, Fukuoka A, Matsushita K, Yasuda K, Iwasaki N, Akasaki S, et al. Activation of group 2 innate lymphoid cells exacerbates and confers corticosteroid resistance to mouse nasal type 2 inflammation. *Int Immunol* (2017) 29:221–33. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxx030

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

MINI REVIEW
published: 07 June 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00888

# Tuning the Cytokine Responses: An Update on Interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-13 Receptor Complexes

*Ilkka S. Junttila*[1,2]*

[1] Cytokine Biology Research Group, Faculty of Medicine and Life Sciences, University of Tampere, Tampere, Finland,
[2] Department of Clinical Microbiology, Fimlab Laboratories, Tampere, Finland

Interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-13 are related cytokines that regulate many aspects of allergic inflammation. They play important roles in regulating the responses of lymphocytes, myeloid cells, and non-hematopoietic cells. In T-cells, IL-4 induces the differentiation of naïve CD4 T cells into Th2 cells, in B cells, IL-4 drives the immunoglobulin (Ig) class switch to IgG1 and IgE, and in macrophages, IL-4 and IL-13 induce alternative macrophage activation. This review gives a short insight into the functional formation of these cytokine receptors. I will discuss both the binding kinetics of ligand/receptor interactions and the expression of the receptor chains for these cytokines in various cell types; both of which are crucial factors in explaining the efficiency by which these cytokines induce intracellular signaling and gene expression. Work initiated in part by William (Bill) E. Paul on IL-4 some 30 years ago has now grown into a major building block of our current understanding of basic immunology and the immune response. This knowledge on IL-4 has growing clinical importance, as therapeutic approaches targeting the cytokine and its signal transduction are becoming a part of the clinical practice in treating allergic diseases. Just by reading the reference list of this short review, one can appreciate the enormous input Bill has had on shaping our understanding of the pathophysiology of allergic inflammation and in particular the role of IL-4 in this process.

**Keywords: interleukin-4, signal transduction, STAT6, interleukin-4 receptor, cytokine signaling, allergic inflammation**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Joshua Milner,*
*National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Amit Awasthi,*
*Translational Health Science and Technology Institute, India*
*Paula M. Oliver,*
*University of Pennsylvania, United States*

***Correspondence:***
*Ilkka S. Junttila*
*ilkka.junttila@uta.fi*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *08 December 2017*
***Accepted:*** *10 April 2018*
***Published:*** *07 June 2018*

***Citation:***
*Junttila IS (2018) Tuning the Cytokine Responses: An Update on Interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-13 Receptor Complexes. Front. Immunol. 9:888. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00888*

## INTRODUCTION

Allergic inflammation is an inappropriately controlled inflammatory response with characteristic hallmarks of eosinophilia, elevated immunoglobulin (Ig)E-levels, increased mucus production, and typical cytokine/chemokine expression. Clinically, these basic pathophysiological mechanisms result in symptoms varying from mild skin rash (atopic dermatitis) and runny nose (allergic rhinitis) to life-threatening problems in breathing (allergic asthma). This inflammatory process from the very initiation is critically regulated by cytokines and chemokines. The cytokines regulate cellular responses on transcriptional level, while chemokines play a role in recruiting inflammatory cells to the sites on inflammation. One of the central cytokines regulating allergic inflammation is interleukin (IL)-4 and since its cloning, efforts targeting IL-4 have been made to decrease IL-4-induced inflammation. In part, these efforts have been slowed down by the receptor of IL-4, which is ubiquitously expressed and easily saturated by the ligand. In this minireview, I briefly discuss the receptor system of IL-4 that is also shared by IL-13, how it elicits signaling, and how it has been recently therapeutically

targeted. I also highlight the enormous input of Bill Paul in this field; learning the story of IL-4 is not only about IL-4 but has also helped in unfolding more profound biological phenomenon in how T cells can dynamically respond to changes in environment to output an appropriate response.

## IL-4 AND IL-13 PRODUCTION

Interleukin-4 and IL-13 are the signature cytokines of the type II inflammatory response. They are key players in the inflammatory response triggered either by an invading parasite or allergen. The cellular sources of IL-4 and IL-13 have been studied extensively and along with CD4 T cells, basophils, eosinophils, mast cells, and NK T cells, appropriately stimulated ILC2 cells have the ability to produce IL-4 and IL-13 (1–9).

The genomic locus, where IL-4 and IL-13 are produced (along with IL-5), is called the Th2 cytokine locus, which is located on chromosome 5 in humans and on chromosome 11 in mice and is under the control of the locus control region (LCR) of the Rad 50 gene (10, 11). The LCR in CD4 T-cells is indispensable for the production of IL-4 and IL-13 *in vivo* (12). The production of the two cytokines is not identical though: IL-4 production is calcineurin dependent, whereas IL-13 production is only partially dependent on calcineurin (13). Upon the appropriate stimulation of the cells, the LCR of the Th2 cytokine locus is epigenetically modified to allow the access of transcription factors to the DNA and the subsequent transcription of these cytokines. This complex regulation was recently reviewed in detail (10). Interestingly and in line with findings in mice, a polymorphism in the murine equivalent of the DNase I hypersensitive site (RHS)7 in humans affects DNA methylation and gene expression at 5q31 and subsequently IgE levels on a population level (14).

## IL-4 RECEPTOR SYSTEM

When IL-4 or IL-13 is released from T cells, cells carrying the receptors for these cytokines will respond. For IL-4 and IL-13, the unique utilization of the STAT6 transcription factor in the signaling they elicit allows them to execute specific functions on different cell types; IL-4 is the regulator of lymphocyte functions (Th2 differentiation and B-cell IgG1 and IgE class switch), whereas IL-13 is an effector cytokine, regulating smooth cell muscle contraction and mucus production in the airway epithelium, for example, in allergic asthma (15). In addition to IL-4 and IL-13, one report has shown that at least in human cells, thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) can induce the tyrosine phosphorylation of STAT6 (16), TSLP signaling will be discussed in detail below.

The cytokine-binding receptor chain for IL-4 is IL-4Rα. This receptor chain is widely expressed, most cells carry at least low numbers of this receptor chain. Upon IL-4 binding to IL-4Rα, the IL-4/IL-4Rα-complex will bind a secondary receptor chain, either IL-2Rγc (γc) or IL-13Rα1 (**Figure 1**). The expression of these secondary chains varies among different cell types. In non-hematopoietic cells, γc expression is low or absent, whereas higher amounts of IL-13Rα1 are expressed in these cells. By contrast, lymphocytes express only low levels of IL-13Rα1 and relatively large amounts of γc. Finally, myeloid cells fall in between non-hematopoietic cells and lymphocytes, as they express of both IL-13Rα1 and γc.

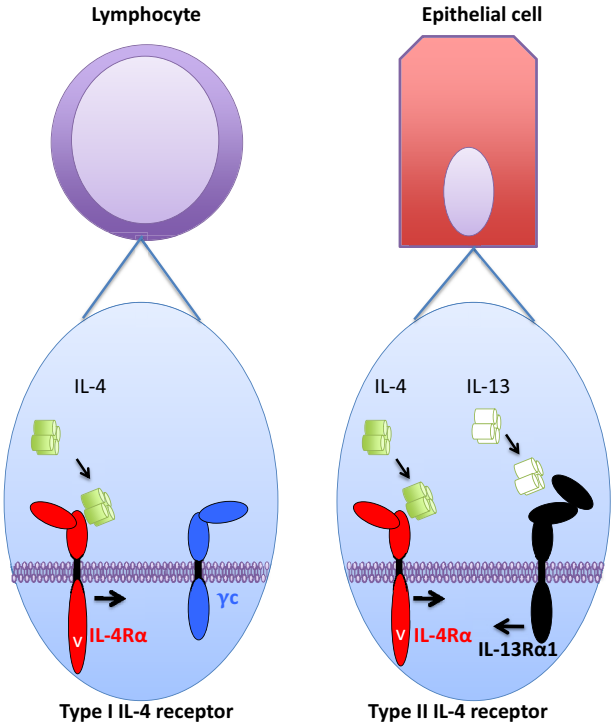



**FIGURE 1** | Type I and type II interleukin (IL)-4 receptor components and cellular distribution. Type I IL-4 receptor is mainly expressed in hematopoietic cells, and specifically in lymphocytes (left part) very little or no expression of type II receptor is observed. In non-hematopoietic cells, such as epithelial cells (right part), very little or no expression of type I IL-4 receptor is observed. Instead, type II IL-4 receptor is readily expressed and subsequently these cells are also responsive to IL-13 that utilizes type II IL-4 receptor, but "drives" it into opposite direction than IL-4. Myeloid cells (not pictured) fall in between these two cell types as they express both type I and type II IL-4 receptors.

Interleukin-4 and IL-13 regulate cellular functions and activate transcriptional machinery *via* cell surface receptors. For IL-4, binding of the cytokine to a single cell surface receptor chain (IL-4Rα) generates a ligand/receptor complex that requires the recruitment of a third receptor chain to form a functional receptor complex. The receptor formed by IL-4/IL-4Rα with γc is a type I IL-4 receptor and the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex binding IL-13Rα1 is a type II IL-4 receptor (17). Thus, based on their tissue distribution, the type I IL-4 receptor is found in lymphocytes and myeloid cells, and the type II IL-4 receptor is expressed in myeloid cells and all non-hematopoietic cells. The binding of IL-4 to IL-4Rα occurs with high affinity (Kd in the order of $10{\cdot}10\ M^{-1}$). This effectively means that at very low concentrations of IL-4 it can maximally occupy the receptor chains at a given cell surface.

It was originally assumed that the secondary recruitment of either γc or IL-13Rα1 into the IL-4/IL-4Rα dimer would occur with substantially lower affinity than the primary binding of IL-4 to IL-4Rα (18, 19). The expression levels of the secondary receptor chain would then become important. As the primary receptor chain for IL-4 is saturated easily, the formation of a

functional receptor complex could be dictated by the availability of the second receptor chain (20). However, the initial binding measurements for the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex binding to γc or IL-13Rα1 were carried out in free solution. Cell membrane-bound γc and IL-13Rα1 behave differently in recruiting the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex under conditions of maximal ligand occupancy (21). While the recruitment of membrane-bound γc is relatively inefficient, the recruitment of IL-13Rα1 takes place roughly with the same efficiency as does the IL-13 driven IL-13/IL-13Rα1 binding to IL-4Rα (21). The authors suggested that early endosomes concentrated the receptor chains underneath the plasma membrane. However, if this is the case, it still remains unclear how IL-4 and IL-13 induce the phosphorylation of STAT6 differently in type I IL-4R-deficient macrophages from different locations, namely, BMDM and peritoneal cavity macrophages (20). If it is not the differential expression of IL-13Rα1 that explains the difference in the cytokine response between these macrophage populations, then a more profound difference in the IL-4Rα-induced STAT6 signaling pathway must be involved which remains uncharacterized. One plausible explanation might be differences in receptor endocytosis between the cells. For IL-13-induced type II IL-4 receptor signaling, IL-13 variants showing decreased IL-4Rα recruitment to the complex indicate that STAT6 signaling is regulated by receptor endocytosis (22). Quite recently, the role of the receptor transmembrane domain in regulating the recruitment of the type II IL-4 receptor has also become appreciated, and the cell type specific actin-dependent membrane microcompartments may participate in dictating the signaling potency of the type II IL-4R (23).

Once completely assembled, the IL-4 receptor complexes will induce intracellular signaling. The binding of IL-4 to the ectodomain of the IL-4Rα and subsequently to γc or IL-13Rα1, induces a conformational change in the intracellular receptor domains allowing the activation of intracellular signaling molecules. The Jak kinases, associated with γc (Jak3), IL-4Rα (Jak1), or IL-13Rα1 (Tyk2, Jak2), will auto- and cross-phosphorylate each other, resulting in their activation and the subsequent tyrosine (Y) phosphorylation of critical Y residues in IL-4Rα chain. Upon phosphorylation, the Y residues in the intracellular domains of IL-4Rα serve as docking sites for SH domains of intracellular signaling molecules (17). STAT6 and IRS molecules, in particular, become activated on these tyrosine residues in response to the activation of the type I IL-4 receptor. By contrast, the type II IL-4 receptor is unable to activate IRS significantly, whereas the activation of STAT6 occurs quite efficiently, which also means that IL-4 (*via* type I IL-4 receptor) activates IRS2 efficiently while IL-13 does not (24). Once activated, STAT6 molecules homodimerize and translocate to the nucleus where they bind specific accessible DNA sequences, for example, on the CD23 promoter in human B-cells and on the arginase1 enhancer in mouse macrophages (25, 26). IRS molecules do not translocate to the nucleus, but rather, they activate signaling pathways independent of STAT6 including PI3K, Akt, PKBE, and mTOR [reviewed in Ref. (27)].

In addition to signaling events that elicit transcriptional changes, pathways that negatively regulate activated signaling pathways are also upregulated by IL-4. Phosphatases, SOCS, and PIAS proteins all participate in the downregulation of the elicited signal, for detailed reviews on these inhibitory mechanisms, see Ref. (28, 29).

## IL-13 RECEPTOR SYSTEM

Like IL-4, IL-13 also has two receptors, but unlike IL-4, IL-13 utilizes two separate binding chains, namely, IL-13Rα1 and IL-13Rα2. Thus, the decision of whether a type I or a type II IL-4 receptor is formed occurs *after* the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex is formed, whereas IL-13 binding *upon* either IL-13Rα1 or IL-13Rα2 determines which receptor IL-13 utilizes. IL-13Rα2 binds IL-13 with higher affinity than IL-13Rα1. The role of IL-13Rα2 in IL-13 biology has been somewhat elusive, and it has been considered merely a decoy receptor that binds free IL-13 strongly, without eliciting signaling, and thus would serve as a "neutralizer" of IL-13, by efficiently internalizing IL-13 from extracellular spaces. Further studies on IL-13Rα2 have shown that the receptor chain is not only a decoy receptor. Indeed, Fichtner-Feigl and colleagues showed a role for IL-13Rα2-mediated signaling that required the cytoplasmic tail of IL-13Rα2 in the production of TGF-β1 providing evidence for IL-13Rα2-mediated signaling (30).

The IL-13Rα1-bound IL-13 "drives" the type II IL-4 receptor into the opposite direction, as does IL-4 (**Figure 1**). Thus, IL-13 binds IL-13Rα1, and the IL-13/IL-13Rα1 complex then recruits IL-4Rα into the functional receptor complex. The fully assembled receptor complex then activates the STAT6 transcription factor, but like IL-4 *via* the type II IL-4 receptor, IL-13 is a poor inducer of IRS activation through this receptor (24). The binding of IL-13 to IL-13Rα1 is relatively inefficient, indicating that once IL-13/IL-13Rα1 binding occurs, the ensuing formation of the functional receptor complex is likely. However, lowering the IL-13/IL-13Rα1-binding capability to IL-4Rα requires a substantial decrease in the second binding step to result in lowered STAT6 activation (22).

## IL-4- AND IL-13-INDUCED SIGNALING: A COMPARISON OF SIGNALING INDUCED BY THE TWO CYTOKINES

Depending on the cell type, IL-4 and IL-13 both can activate STAT6 (**Figure 1**). As IRS2 is only weakly induced by type II IL-4 receptor [and thus IL-13; (24)], intracellular signaling elicited by the two cytokines is somewhat different. By inducing IRS2, IL-4 subsequently activates various pathways including Sos/Ras, PI3K/Akt, PKB/mTOR, or PKC [reviewed in Ref. (31)]. Of these pathways, mTOR has recently been linked to CD4 Th2 cell differentiation as well as alternative macrophage activation these results were recently thoroughly reviewed (32). Unfortunately, experimental therapeutic efforts targeting mTOR in murine allergic disease models have failed (33). Here, it is of note though that mTOR-based approaches target type I IL-4 receptor (i.e., IRS2 signaling), while many disadvantageous IL-4 effects, such as compromised epithelial barrier function, arise from IL-4 signaling *via* type II IL-4 receptor (34).

As pointed out earlier, lymphocytes respond poorly to IL-13. The expression of IL-4Rα (i.e., type I IL-4 receptor) plays thus

a main role in lymphocyte responses to IL-4. The expression of IL-4Rα in naïve lymphocyte is relatively low and *in vitro*, a STAT5-dependent, STAT6-independent signal likely enhances IL-4Rα expression, which then in an autocrine manner, further upregulates IL-4Rα expression (35). Th2 cells then express large amounts of IL-4Rα and are further stimulated *via* IL-4. In case of Th1 or Th17 cells, the lack of IL-4-positive signal inhibits the upregulation of IL-4Rα, but in the case of Th1 cells, for example, the differentiation does not ablate the ability of the cells to respond to IL-4 (36). Interestingly, Th17 cells do express IL-13Rα1 (37).

For ILCs, the expression of IL-4 and IL-13 receptor(s) is still unclear. Several reports have established the ILC2-derived IL-13 acting on target cells *via* type II IL-4 receptor as a mechanism for several physiological functions such as beige fat biogenesis (38) or hepatic fibrosis (39) but if ILC2-derived IL-13 can act on autocrine manner has not been established. Future experiments will also be warranted to reveal if IL-4Rα is differently expressed between ILC subtypes to tune the cells either to IL-4 or IL-13.

## THERAPEUTIC UTILIZATION OF THE IL-4 RECEPTOR SYSTEM

The road for IL-4- and IL-4R-based treatments from bench to bedside has been a long and winding one (40). IL-4 has been considered a therapeutic target for boosting and redirecting T and B cell functions, but the usage of IL-4 itself has been problematic, not least due to the harmful side effects of activating the type II IL-4 receptor in non-hematopoietic cells (34). Furthermore, in mice, IL-4, but not IL-13, induced weight loss and spontaneous erythrophagocytosis (41). Theoretically, in this sense, an IL-4 that could activate only the type I IL-4 receptor but not the type II receptor could be advantageous. Structural studies of human IL-4 receptor complexes (18) indicated that once IL-4 is bound to IL-4Rα, the D-helix of IL-4 faces the secondary receptor chain and forms the interacting surface of IL-4/IL-4Rα to the second chain in question. This opened up opportunities to mutate the structure of the human IL-4 at the D-helix in a way that left the IL-4/IL-4Rα interaction intact but allowed the binding efficiencies of the IL-4/IL-4Rα complexes toward either γc or IL-13Rα1 to be altered. These studies indicated that a 1,000-fold induction in the recruitment of the IL-4/IL-4Rα complex to the secondary chain had surprisingly little effect on the immediate signaling induced by such an IL-4-mutant, as measured by STAT6 activation (42) and similar results were obtained with IL-13Rα1 bound IL-13 mutants with varying abilities to recruit IL-4Rα into the type II IL-4 receptor complex (22). However, in the case of the type I IL-4 receptor, when the availability of the second chain (γc) was decreased with a blocking antibody, the difference between the WT and the type I receptor-specific IL-4 mutant became more evident, suggesting that such IL-4 mutants could be used to redirect IL-4 responses into cells expressing small amounts of second chains for IL-4/IL-4Rα complexes (42).

When considering the harmful effects arising from excess IL-4 and IL-13, in for example allergies, knowledge of the structural and functional characteristics of the IL-4 receptors and their unique signaling *via* STAT6 has been useful in efforts to therapeutically modify IL-4/IL-13 biology. As an example of some therapeutic approaches used are indicated in **Table 1**. A set of monoclonal antibodies for blocking different aspect of the early events of IL-4 and IL-13 signaling are being considered for wider clinical use: dupilumab (43)—a monoclonal blocking antibody for IL-4Rα—lebrikizumab (44), anrukinzumab (45), tralokinumab (46)—blocking antibodies for IL-13—and pascolizumab—a blocking antibody for IL-4 (47) among others. Furthermore, pitrakinra, an IL-4 receptor antagonist that upon binding IL-4Rα, blocks both type I and type II IL-4 receptors has showed initial efficacy in clinical trials (48). The utilization of biological approaches to target IL-4/IL-13 pathways requires an understanding of the pathophysiological process underlying the inflammatory response. The cell type- and tissue-specific distribution of the IL-4/IL-13 receptor components adds to the complexity of the picture and probably in part explains this long and winding road of IL-4R system-based treatments from the initial cloning of the receptor and cytokines to the development of useful clinical applications. Interestingly, STAT6 inhibitor (AS1517499) has shown some potential in inhibiting prostate cancer cell growth [**Table 1**; (49)], which opens new possibilities in targeting the IL-4/IL-13 signaling therapeutically even beyond allergic diseases.

## ANOTHER SHARED CYTOKINE RECEPTOR SYSTEM: IL-7/TSLP

An analogous way of sharing cytokine receptor chains, as seen in the IL-4/IL-13 system, can be found in IL-7/TSLP receptor signaling. In this system, IL-7-bound-IL-7Rα binds γc and thus forms the complete IL-7 receptor, while TSLP binds TSLPR and then recruits IL-7Rα to the complex [reviewed in Ref. (50)]. Thus, theoretically, the IL-7/IL-7Rα/γc complex resembles the type I IL-4 and TSLP/TSLPR/IL-7Rα resembles the type II IL-4 receptor "driven" by TSLP. Furthermore, it is intriguing that TSLPR and γc are closely related structurally, sharing 24% identity to the common γ receptor chain (γc) (51, 52) with certain specific features associated with TSLPR as opposed to other type I cytokine receptors, including the PSxW(S/T) sequence cassette as opposed to WSxWS in the membrane proximal

**TABLE 1** | Examples of various steps interleukin (IL)-4/IL-13 signaling could potentially be targeted.

| Molecule name | Target molecule | Potential | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|
| Dupilumab | IL-4Ra | IL-4- and IL-13-mediated signaling | (43) |
| Pitrakinra | IL-4Ra | IL-4- and IL-13- mediated signaling | (48) |
| Leprikizumab | IL-13 | IL-13-mediated signaling | (44) |
| Anrukinzumab | IL-13 | IL-13-mediated signaling | (45) |
| Tralokinumab | IL-13 | IL-13-mediated signaling | (46) |
| Pascolizumab | IL-4 | IL-4-mediated signaling (trials aborted) | (47) |
| AS1517499 | STAT6 | IL-4- and IL-13-mediated signaling/ transcription/proliferation in prostate cancer cells | (49) |

domain (53). However, this is where the analogy ends, as IL-7/IL-7Rα does not recruit TSLPR, but only γc to the receptor complex. Functionally, it seems that the IL-4/IL-13 receptor is "tuned" for differential purposes than is the IL-7/TSLP system. IL-4Rα is expressed ubiquitously and the second receptor chain (either γc or IL-13Rα1) is also widely distributed. Thus, IL-4 has access to virtually all cell types, and it can saturate receptors at low concentrations due to the efficient primary binding of IL-4 to IL-4Rα. For IL-13, the cytokine concentration required to saturate IL-13Rα1 needs to be higher as the binding efficiency of IL-13 binding to IL-13Rα1 is lower. In line with this, when PBMCs from atopic patients were stimulated with a mite allergen, the cells produced over 20 times more IL-13 than IL-4 (54). The notion of the "effector" function of IL-13 in, for example, parasite expulsion, combined with the known toxicity of IL-4, suggest that the system has evolved in a way that protects peripheral tissues from the toxicity of IL-4 by tuning the receptors in the periphery to be more responsive to IL-13 than to IL-4.

In the IL-7/TSLP system, the differential anatomical expression of the cytokines suggests that the sharing of the cytokine receptors might occur, because the cytokines are not expressed in same sites and thus would not limit the signaling of each other. Regulating the expression of just one receptor chain on the cell surface (IL-7Rα), will affect both. However, there are likely further lessons to be learned from TSLP and its functional receptors. Recently, neutrophils in mice were found to respond to TSLP (55), whereas at least in humans, neutrophils do not likely express IL-7Rα (56). It was recently also shown that dynamic IL-7Rα expression on DCs was required for IL-7 and TSLP responses (57), so one possibility might be that IL-7Rα is under very stringent regulation and is only upregulated in various cell types under very specific conditions.

## CONCLUDING REMARKS

Taken together, the organization and binding events of type I and type II IL-4 receptors have been reviewed here. The efficiency by which a functional IL-4/IL-13 receptor is formed appears to be a sum of three parameters. First, the binding efficiency of a cytokine to the cytokine-binding receptor chain dictates the concentration of the cytokine required for the saturation of the cytokine-binding receptor chain. Second, the binding efficiency of the cytokine/binding chain to the second receptor chain dictates the driving force for the completion of the receptor complex. Third, the expression level of the second receptor chain determines the availability of the second chains, at least in free fluid. All of these three parameters influence the efficiency of IL-4/IL-13 signaling and thereby tune the signal of the immune response in allergic inflammation.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

IJ planned and wrote the MS.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Dedicated to the memory of my mentor William E. Paul to whom we owe so much of our current understanding of IL-4 cytokine and to whom I owe so much of my achievements in science. IJ is funded by grants from Sigrid Juselius Foundation, Finnish Medical Foundation, Academy of Finland (projects 25013080481 and 25013142041), Tampere Children's Hospital Support Association (Tampereen Lastenklinikan Tuki ry), and Tampere Tuberculosis Foundation and Competitive State Research Funding for Fimlab Laboratories (Grant number: X51409). Dr. Helen Cooper is thanked for the language editing of the MS.

## REFERENCES

1. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol* (1986) 136:2348–57.
2. Yoshimoto T, Paul WE. CD4pos, NK1.1pos T cells promptly produce interleukin 4 in response to in vivo challenge with anti-CD3. *J Exp Med* (1994) 179:1285–95. doi:10.1084/jem.179.4.1285
3. Seder RA, Paul WE, Dvorak AM, Sharkis SJ, Kagey-Sobotka A, Niv Y, et al. Mouse splenic and bone marrow cell populations that express high-affinity Fc epsilon receptors and produce interleukin 4 are highly enriched in basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1991) 88:2835–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.7.2835
4. Brown MA, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Falco J, Ihle JN, Paul WE. B cell stimulatory factor-1/interleukin-4 mRNA is expressed by normal and transformed mast cells. *Cell* (1987) 50:809–18. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(87)90339-4
5. Nonaka M, Nonaka R, Woolley K, Adelroth E, Miura K, Okhawara Y, et al. Distinct immunohistochemical localization of IL-4 in human inflamed airway tissues. IL-4 is localized to eosinophils in vivo and is released by peripheral blood eosinophils. *J Immunol* (1995) 155:3234–44.
6. Moqbel R, Ying S, Barkans J, Newman TM, Kimmitt P, Wakelin M, et al. Identification of messenger RNA for IL-4 in human eosinophils with granule localization and release of the translated product. *J Immunol* (1995) 155:4939–47.
7. Moro K, Yamada T, Tanabe M, Takeuchi T, Ikawa T, Kawamoto H, et al. Innate production of T(H)2 cytokines by adipose tissue-associated c-Kit(+)Sca-1(+) lymphoid cells. *Nature* (2010) 463:540–4. doi:10.1038/nature08636
8. Neill DR, Wong SH, Bellosi A, Flynn RJ, Daly M, Langford TK, et al. Nuocytes represent a new innate effector leukocyte that mediates type-2 immunity. *Nature* (2010) 464:1367–70. doi:10.1038/nature08900
9. Saenz SA, Siracusa MC, Perrigoue JG, Spencer SP, Urban JF Jr, Tocker JE, et al. IL25 elicits a multipotent progenitor cell population that promotes T(H)2 cytokine responses. *Nature* (2010) 464:1362–6. doi:10.1038/nature08901
10. Zhu J. T helper 2 (Th2) cell differentiation, type 2 innate lymphoid cell (ILC2) development and regulation of interleukin-4 (IL-4) and IL-13 production. *Cytokine* (2015) 75:14–24. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2015.05.010
11. Ansel KM, Djuretic I, Tanasa B, Rao A. Regulation of Th2 differentiation and IL4 locus accessibility. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2006) 24:607–56. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.23.021704.115821
12. Koh BH, Hwang SS, Kim JY, Lee W, Kang MJ, Lee CG, et al. Th2 LCR is essential for regulation of Th2 cytokine genes and for pathogenesis of allergic asthma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2010) 107:10614–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.1005383107
13. Guo L, Urban JF, Zhu J, Paul WE. Elevating calcium in Th2 cells activates multiple pathways to induce IL-4 transcription and mRNA stabilization. *J Immunol* (2008) 181:3984–93. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.181.6.3984
14. Schieck M, Sharma V, Michel S, Toncheva AA, Worth L, Potaczek DP, et al. A polymorphism in the TH 2 locus control region is associated with changes in DNA methylation and gene expression. *Allergy* (2014) 69:1171–80. doi:10.1111/all.12450
15. Wills-Karp M, Luyimbazi J, Xu X, Schofield B, Neben TY, Karp CL, et al. Interleukin-13: central mediator of allergic asthma. *Science* (1998) 282:2258–61. doi:10.1126/science.282.5397.2258
16. Arima K, Watanabe N, Hanabuchi S, Chang M, Sun SC, Liu YJ. Distinct signal codes generate dendritic cell functional plasticity. *Sci Signal* (2010) 3:ra4. doi:10.1126/scisignal.2000567

17. Nelms K, Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. The IL-4 receptor: signaling mechanisms and biologic functions. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1999) 17:701–38. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.17.1.701
18. LaPorte SL, Juo ZS, Vaclavikova J, Colf LA, Qi X, Heller NM, et al. Molecular and structural basis of cytokine receptor pleiotropy in the interleukin-4/13 system. *Cell* (2008) 132:259–72. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2007.12.030
19. Zhang JL, Buehner M, Sebald W. Functional epitope of common gamma chain for interleukin-4 binding. *Eur J Biochem* (2002) 269:1490–9. doi:10.1046/j.1432-1033.2002.02796.x
20. Junttila IS, Mizukami K, Dickensheets H, Meier-Schellersheim M, Yamane H, Donnelly RP, et al. Tuning sensitivity to IL-4 and IL-13: differential expression of IL-4Ralpha, IL-13Ralpha1, and gammac regulates relative cytokine sensitivity. *J Exp Med* (2008) 205:2595–608. doi:10.1084/jem.20080452
21. Gandhi H, Worch R, Kurgonaite K, Hintersteiner M, Schwille P, Bokel C, et al. Dynamics and interaction of interleukin-4 receptor subunits in living cells. *Biophys J* (2014) 107:2515–27. doi:10.1016/j.bpj.2014.07.077
22. Moraga I, Richter D, Wilmes S, Winkelmann H, Jude K, Thomas C, et al. Instructive roles for cytokine-receptor binding parameters in determining signaling and functional potency. *Sci Signal* (2015) 8:ra114. doi:10.1126/scisignal.aab2677
23. Richter D, Moraga I, Winkelmann H, Birkholz O, Wilmes S, Schulte M, et al. Ligand-induced type II interleukin-4 receptor dimers are sustained by rapid re-association within plasma membrane microcompartments. *Nat Commun* (2017) 8:15976. doi:10.1038/ncomms15976
24. Heller NM, Qi X, Junttila IS, Shirey KA, Vogel SN, Paul WE, et al. Type I IL-4Rs selectively activate IRS-2 to induce target gene expression in macrophages. *Sci Signal* (2008) 1:ra17. doi:10.1126/scisignal.1164795
25. Pauleau AL, Rutschman R, Lang R, Pernis A, Watowich SS, Murray PJ. Enhancer-mediated control of macrophage-specific arginase I expression. *J Immunol* (2004) 172:7565–73. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.172.12.7565
26. Keegan AD, Conrad DH. The murine lymphocyte receptor for IgE. V. Biosynthesis, transport, and maturation of the B cell Fc epsilon receptor. *J Immunol* (1987) 139:1199–205.
27. Gadani SP, Cronk JC, Norris GT, Kipnis J. IL-4 in the brain: a cytokine to remember. *J Immunol* (2012) 189:4213–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1202246
28. Rakesh K, Agrawal DK. Controlling cytokine signaling by constitutive inhibitors. *Biochem Pharmacol* (2005) 70:649–57. doi:10.1016/j.bcp.2005.04.042
29. Greenhalgh CJ, Hilton DJ. Negative regulation of cytokine signaling. *J Leukoc Biol* (2001) 70:348–56. doi:10.1189/jlb.70.3.348
30. Fichtner-Feigl S, Strober W, Kawakami K, Puri RK, Kitani A. IL-13 signaling through the IL-13alpha2 receptor is involved in induction of TGF-beta1 production and fibrosis. *Nat Med* (2006) 12:99–106. doi:10.1038/nm1332
31. Luzina IG, Keegan AD, Heller NM, Rook GA, Shea-Donohue T, Atamas SP. Regulation of inflammation by interleukin-4: a review of "alternatives". *J Leukoc Biol* (2012) 92:753–64. doi:10.1189/jlb.0412214
32. McCormick SM, Heller NM. Commentary: IL-4 and IL-13 receptors and signaling. *Cytokine* (2015) 75:38–50. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2015.05.023
33. Fredriksson K, Fielhaber JA, Lam JK, Yao X, Meyer KS, Keeran KJ, et al. Paradoxical effects of rapamycin on experimental house dust mite-induced asthma. *PLoS One* (2012) 7:e33984. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0033984
34. Sosman JA, Fisher SG, Kefer C, Fisher RI, Ellis TM. A phase I trial of continuous infusion interleukin-4 (IL-4) alone and following interleukin-2 (IL-2) in cancer patients. *Ann Oncol* (1994) 5:447–52. doi:10.1093/oxfordjournals.annonc.a058878
35. Renz H, Domenico J, Gelfand EW. IL-4-dependent up-regulation of IL-4 receptor expression in murine T and B cells. *J Immunol* (1991) 146:3049–55.
36. Nakamura T, Kamogawa Y, Bottomly K, Flavell RA. Polarization of IL-4- and IFN-gamma-producing CD4+ T cells following activation of naive CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol* (1997) 158:1085–94.
37. Newcomb DC, Zhou W, Moore ML, Goleniewska K, Hershey GK, Kolls JK, et al. A functional IL-13 receptor is expressed on polarized murine CD4+ Th17 cells and IL-13 signaling attenuates Th17 cytokine production. *J Immunol* (2009) 182:5317–21. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0803868
38. Lee MW, Odegaard JI, Mukundan L, Qiu Y, Molofsky AB, Nussbaum JC, et al. Activated type 2 innate lymphoid cells regulate beige fat biogenesis. *Cell* (2015) 160:74–87. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.12.011
39. McHedlidze T, Waldner M, Zopf S, Walker J, Rankin AL, Schuchmann M, et al. Interleukin-33-dependent innate lymphoid cells mediate hepatic fibrosis. *Immunity* (2013) 39:357–71. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2013.07.018
40. Paul WE. History of interleukin-4. *Cytokine* (2015) 75:3–7. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2015.01.038
41. Milner JD, Orekov T, Ward JM, Cheng L, Torres-Velez F, Junttila I, et al. Sustained IL-4 exposure leads to a novel pathway for hemophagocytosis, inflammation, and tissue macrophage accumulation. *Blood* (2010) 116:2476–83. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-11-255174
42. Junttila IS, Creusot RJ, Moraga I, Bates DL, Wong MT, Alonso MN, et al. Redirecting cell-type specific cytokine responses with engineered interleukin-4 superkines. *Nat Chem Biol* (2012) 8:990–8. doi:10.1038/nchembio.1096
43. Chang HY, Nadeau KC. IL-4Ralpha inhibitor for atopic disease. *Cell* (2017) 170:222. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.046
44. Bujarski S, Parulekar AD, Hanania NA. Lebrikizumab in the treatment of asthma. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* (2016) 16:847–52. doi:10.1080/14712598.2016.1182152
45. Hua F, Ribbing J, Reinisch W, Cataldi F, Martin S. A pharmacokinetic comparison of anrukinzumab, an anti-IL-13 monoclonal antibody, among healthy volunteers, asthma and ulcerative colitis patients. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* (2015) 80:101–9. doi:10.1111/bcp.12589
46. Piper E, Brightling C, Niven R, Oh C, Faggioni R, Poon K, et al. A phase II placebo-controlled study of tralokinumab in moderate-to-severe asthma. *Eur Respir J* (2013) 41:330–8. doi:10.1183/09031936.00223411
47. Hart TK, Blackburn MN, Brigham-Burke M, Dede K, Al-Mahdi N, Zia-Amirhosseini P, et al. Preclinical efficacy and safety of pascolizumab (SB 240683): a humanized anti-interleukin-4 antibody with therapeutic potential in asthma. *Clin Exp Immunol* (2002) 130:93–100. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2249.2002.01973.x
48. Antoniu SA. Pitrakinra, a dual IL-4/IL-13 antagonist for the potential treatment of asthma and eczema. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* (2010) 11:1286–94.
49. Nappo G, Handle F, Santer FR, McNeill RV, Seed RI, Collins AT, et al. The immunosuppressive cytokine interleukin-4 increases the clonogenic potential of prostate stem-like cells by activation of STAT6 signalling. *Oncogenesis* (2017) 6:e342. doi:10.1038/oncsis.2017.23
50. Ziegler SF, Roan F, Bell BD, Stoklasek TA, Kitajima M, Han H. The biology of thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP). *Adv Pharmacol* (2013) 66:129–55. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12-404717-4.00004-4
51. Pandey A, Ozaki K, Baumann H, Levin SD, Puel A, Farr AG, et al. Cloning of a receptor subunit required for signaling by thymic stromal lymphopoietin. *Nat Immunol* (2000) 1:59–64. doi:10.1038/76923
52. Park LS, Martin U, Garka K, Gliniak B, Di Santo JP, Muller W, et al. Cloning of the murine thymic stromal lymphopoietin (TSLP) receptor: formation of a functional heteromeric complex requires interleukin 7 receptor. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192:659–70. doi:10.1084/jem.192.5.659
53. Verstraete K, van Schie L, Vyncke L, Bloch Y, Tavernier J, Pauwels E, et al. Structural basis of the proinflammatory signaling complex mediated by TSLP. *Nat Struct Mol Biol* (2014) 21:375–82. doi:10.1038/nsmb.2794
54. Kimura M, Tsuruta S, Yoshida T. IL-4 production by PBMCs on stimulation with mite allergen is correlated with the level of serum IgE antibody against mite in children with bronchial asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2000) 105:327–32. doi:10.1016/S0091-6749(00)90083-6
55. West EE, Spolski R, Kazemian M, Yu ZX, Kemper C, Leonard WJ. A TSLP-complement axis mediates neutrophil killing of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. *Sci Immunol* (2016) 1:eaaf8471. doi:10.1126/sciimmunol.aaf8471
56. Girard D, Beaulieu AD. Absence of the IL-7 receptor component CDw127 indicates that gamma(c) expression alone is insufficient for IL-7 to modulate human neutrophil responses. *Clin Immunol Immunopathol* (1997) 83:264–71. doi:10.1006/clin.1997.4341
57. Kummola L, Ortutay Z, Chen X, Caucheteux S, Hamalainen S, Aittomaki S, et al. IL-7Ralpha expression regulates murine dendritic cell sensitivity to thymic stromal lymphopoietin. *J Immunol* (2017) 198:3909–18. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1600753


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

PERSPECTIVE
published: 02 May 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00960

# Seventeen-Year Journey Working With a Master

*Jinfang Zhu**

*Molecular and Cellular Immunoregulation Section, Laboratory of Immunology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States*

It had been a great honor for me to work with the late Dr. William E. Paul for 17 years in the Laboratory of Immunology (LI) from 1998 until his passing in 2015. He was such a master in the immunology field. Under his outstanding guidance, my research has been focusing on transcriptional regulation of T helper (Th) cell differentiation, especially, on the role of a master transcription factor GATA3 during Th2 cell differentiation. Just as enormous scientific contributions of Dr. Paul (we all call him Bill) to the immunology community are far beyond his serving as the Chief of the LI, GATA3 also plays important roles in different lymphocytes at various developmental stages besides its critical functions in Th2 cells. In this special review dedicated to the memory of Bill, I will summarize the research that I have carried out in Bill's lab working on GATA3 in the context of related studies by other groups in the field of T cell differentiation and innate lymphoid cell (ILC) development. These include the essential role of GATA3 in regulating Th2/ILC2 differentiation/development and their functions, the critical role of GATA3 during the development of T cells and innate lymphoid cells, and dynamic and quantitative expression of GATA3 in controlling lymphocyte homeostasis and functions.

**Keywords: GATA3 transcription factor, T helper cells, innate lymphoid cells, cytokines, T cell differentiation, T cell development**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Yun-Cai Liu,*
*Tsinghua University,*
*China*

***Reviewed by:***
*Li-Fan Lu,*
*University of California,*
*San Diego, United States*
*Nengming Xiao,*
*Xiamen University,*
*China*

***Correspondence:**
*Jinfang Zhu*
*jfzhu@niaid.nih.gov*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *07 March 2018*
***Accepted:*** *18 April 2018*
***Published:*** *02 May 2018*

***Citation:***
*Zhu J (2018) Seventeen-Year Journey Working With a Master. Front. Immunol. 9:960. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00960*

## PREFACE

I joined the lab of Dr. William E. Paul (Bill) in 1998 as a postdoctoral fellow soon after I got my Ph.D. degree from the Shanghai Institute of Biochemistry, Chinese Academy of Sciences. Before I arrived in the U.S., Bill and I had already exchanged several emails regarding my potential projects. As a scientist who discovered interleukin (IL)-4, Bill had always been interested in IL-4 signaling and the structure of IL-4 receptor (IL-4R). He initially suggested me to crystallize the intracellular domains of the IL-4Rα chain, but I was more interested in transcriptional regulation of gene expression in lymphocytes, an area no one in Bill's lab had explored in the past. Bill later asked several other postdocs, who joined his lab after me, to work on IL-4R structure demonstrating his amazing persistence in research and impressive flexibility in mentoring.

Since IL-4 is the critical cytokine for driving type 2 T helper (Th2) cell differentiation (1), my first project started with searching for IL-4-inducible transcription factor(s) during early Th2 cell differentiation using DNA microarray. At the same time, I was working on the cross-regulation of T cell receptor (TCR)- and IL-4-mediated signaling (2) together with Dr. Hua Huang, a senior postdoc in Bill's lab at that time, who is now a full professor at the National Jewish Health.

My first project ended up with identifying growth factor independent-1 (Gfi-1) as an IL-4-inducible transcription factor, which plays an important role in promoting selective growth of committed Th2 cells (3). Later, Gfi-1 was also reported to suppress Th1, Th17, and Treg cell differentiation and the expression of IL-7 receptor α chain (4–6). The reason why we focused on transcription factors

**TABLE 1** | GATA3 expression and functions in distinct lymphocytes and during T cell/innate lymphoid cell (ILC) development/differentiation.

| Cell type or process | GATA3 levels | GATA3 functions | Genes regulated by GATA3 | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| T helper (Th)2 | High | Essential for Th2 cell differentiation and Th2 cytokine production; suppressing the expression of Th1-related genes | Inducing *Il4, Il5, Il13, Areg, Ccr8, Il1rl1, Il7r, Cd69*; suppressing *Ifng, Tbx21, Ccl5, Havcr2* | (7–9, 40, 41, 43, 44, 47, 50, 54, 85) |
| ILC2 | Very high | Essential for ILC2 development and type 2 cytokine production | *Il5, Il13, Areg, Ccr8, Il1rl1, Il7r, Il2ra, Il17rb* | (52–57) |
| Early T cell development | Intermediate to high | Essential for early T cell development | *Tcr*, *Cd3*??? | (59–61) |
| CD4 T cell development | Intermediate to high | Essential for CD4 but not CD8 T cell development | *Il7r, Cd3, Th-POK* | (47, 59, 62–64) |
| PLZF$^+$ ILC progenitor | High | Essential for the generation of PLZF/PD-1-expressing ILC progenitors | *Il7r, Id2*??? | (54, 65) |
| LTi progenitor | Low to intermediate | Required for LTi homeostasis and functions but not for development | *Il7r, Lta*??? | (54, 65) |
| Regulatory T cell | Low to high | Defining Treg subsets, modulating Treg functions and stability | *Il7r, Foxp3, Il2ra, Il1rl1, Ccr8* | (47, 66, 68–70) |
| Natural killer (NK)T cell | Low to high | Defining NKT cell subsets and maintaining homeostasis | *Il7r, Il4* | (74, 75) |
| CD8 T cell | Low | Homeostasis and memory generation | *Il7r, Myc* | (76) |
| Th1, Th17, and Tfh cell | Very low to low | Unknown | *Il7r, Ifng, Il4*??? | N.A. |
| ILC3 | Intermediate | Essential for the development of NKp46$^+$ ILC3s and modulating ILC3 function | Inducing *Il7r, Il22;* suppressing *Rorc* | (58, 65) |
| ILC1 | Intermediate | Homeostasis | *Il7r*??? | (26) |
| NK cell | Low | Maturation | *Ifng* | (72, 73) |

*??? refers to likely but not yet confirmed.*

that are induced by IL-4 at *early* stages of Th2 cell differentiation is mainly because, in 1997, Drs. Richard Flavell and Anuradha Ray's groups had already independently reported that GATA3 is necessary and sufficient for the expression of Th2 cytokines (7, 8).

In our initial report, the effect of Gfi-1 on Th2 cell proliferation was demonstrated by retroviral co-expression of Gfi-1 and GATA3 (3). To further assess whether Gfi-1 indeed plays an important role during Th2 responses under physiological conditions, with the help of Dr. Hua Gu who was a new Principle Investigator in the LI at that time, I started to generate Gfi-1 conditional knockout mice (4). At that time, GATA3 conditional knockout mice were not available either. While I was making Gfi-1 floxed mice, Bill gave me a very important suggestion—why don't you also prepare GATA3 conditional knockout mice at the same time (9). He said "I believe Gfi-1 is an interesting molecule to further work on, however, GATA3 is probably more important than Gfi-1 for Th2 cells." Indeed, throughout the 17 years period that I worked with Bill, first on T helper (Th) cell differentiation as a postdoctoral fellow and then on innate lymphoid cell (ILC) development as an independent investigator, I published 15 papers with their titles containing GATA3, but only 5 for Gfi-1. This visionary advice from Bill—always focusing on the most important things—has had a great impact on my research career.

## INTRODUCTION

CD4 Th cells orchestrate adaptive immune responses by producing effector cytokines. In order to effectively exert their protective functions during infections, distinct Th subsets are developed to deal with a variety of pathogens (10–12). There are three major Th cell subsets: type 1 T helper (Th1) cells that mainly produce IFN-γ, Th2 cells that produce IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13, and Th17 cells that produce IL-17a and IL-17f (13, 14). Th1 cells are important for immune responses to intracellular bacteria and viruses; Th2 cells are mainly responsible for immunity against helminth infections; whereas Th17 cells are essential for dealing with infections with extracellular bacteria and fungi. Besides their critical roles in mediating protective immunity, Th subsets are also capable of inducing many types of inflammatory responses. While Th2 cells are known to be involved in allergic diseases, Th1 and Th17 cells may cause autoimmunity (12, 15). All the Th effector cells are developed from naïve CD4 T cells when they encounter an antigen/MHCII complex that can be recognized by their antigen-specific TCR. Some naïve CD4 T cells may differentiate into regulatory T cells (Tregs) and they are regarded as peripheral induced Tregs (pTregs); together with thymic-derived Tregs, pTregs regulate the magnitude and duration of a particular immune response in addition to their essential role in maintaining immune tolerance (16–20).

In recent years, a group of non-B non-T lymphocyte-like cells that are capable of producing Th effector cytokines have drawn much attention in the field. These cells are now designated as innate lymphoid cells (ILCs) (21–24). Just like Th cells, there are three major ILC subsets: group 1 ILCs (ILC1s) that mainly produce IFN-γ, ILC2s that produce IL-5 and IL-13, and ILC3s that mainly produce IL-22. Since ILC subsets can produce cytokines known to be effector cytokines of Th cells, ILC and Th subsets of the same group are involved in related type of immune responses in a collaborative manner (25–30). For example, just as Th2 cells, ILC2s are not only involved in immune responses against helminth infections, but also induce allergic inflammation (29, 31–38). Therefore, similar to Th cells serving as professional cytokine-producing cells, ILCs are considered as the innate counterparts of Th cells.

The differentiation of Th1, Th2, and Th17 cells is mainly controlled by cytokine environment during their activation, which

induces the expression of lineage-defining transcription factors: T-bet for Th1; GATA3 for Th2; and RORγt for Th17 cells (39). These master regulators are not only essential for the differentiation and functions of Th subsets, but also they are utilized by ILC subsets for their development and functions: T-bet for ILC1s; GATA3 for ILC2s; and RORγt for ILC3s. While T-bet and RORγt are selectively expressed by Th1/ILC1 and Th17/ILC3 subsets, respectively, GATA3 is actually expressed by all the Th and ILC subsets although its expression in Th2 cells and ILC2s is the highest. Furthermore, GATA3 is dynamically expressed during T cell and ILC development. In this mini-review, I will discuss multiple important functions of this master transcription factor in a variety of lymphocytes at different developmental stages (**Table 1**).

## CRITICAL ROLE OF GATA3 IN Th2 DIFFERENTIATION AND FUNCTIONS

As mentioned earlier, Drs. Flavell and Ray's groups independently reported that GATA3 is a key transcription factor for inducing Th2 cytokine expression back in 1997 (7, 8). Soon after, Dr. Ken Murphy's group further showed that enforced expression of retroviral GATA3 induces endogenous GATA3 expression even in cells that were cultured under Th1 polarization conditions (40, 41). However, because GATA3-deficient CD4 T cells were not available at that time, direct evidence to support the essential role of GATA3 during Th2 differentiation particularly *in vivo* was still lacking. Nevertheless, these exciting reports inspired Bill and me to prepare a conditional knockout allele of *Gata3* by the Cre-loxP system (42). By using *Gata3* conditional knockout mice, both Dr. I-Cheng Ho's group and ours confirmed that GATA3 indeed is the master regulator of Th2 cells (9, 43). In the absence of GATA3, the production of Th2 cytokines is severely impaired, at the same time, IFN-γ production is induced even when the cells are cultured under Th2 conditions (44).

Interleukin-4-mediated STAT6 activation is sufficient to induce GATA3 expression during Th2 cell differentiation (45). Low dose of TCR stimulation can also upregulate GATA3 expression in the absence of IL-4 signaling (46). Indeed, Th2 differentiation may occur *in vivo* in an IL-4-STAT6-independent manner (15). On the other hand, although GATA3 can autoregulate its own expression, GATA3 is not required to induce itself in the presence of IL-4 signaling (47). Nevertheless, IL-4-dependent as well as IL-4-independent Th2 cell differentiation depends on GATA3 both *in vitro* and *in vivo* (9).

Genome-wide analyses of GATA3 binding through ChIP-Seq (chromatin immune-precipitation followed by high throughput sequencing) show that GATA3 binds to the Th2 cytokine locus *Il4/Il13* at multiple sites including sites in the *Il4* intron 2, the *Il13* promoter, and the locus control region within the *Rad50* gene (47). GATA3 also binds to the promoter of the *Il5* genes (48, 49). A major mechanism for GATA3 to induce IL-4 expression is through chromatin remodeling at the *Il4/Il13/Rad50* locus. In mature Th2 cells in which GATA3-mediated epigenetic modifications within the Th2 cytokine locus have already occurred, GATA3 is no longer needed for IL-4 production. However, since the activity of the *Il5* and *Il13* promoters always depends on GATA3, GATA3 deletion at any time completely abolishes IL-5 and IL-13 expression (9). Many other Th2-specific genes as well as long intergenic non-coding RNAs are also directly regulated by GATA3 (50). For example, T1/ST2, the IL-33 receptor encoded by the *Il1rl1* gene, is highly expressed in the most mature Th2 cells and GATA3 binds to the *Il1rl1* gene (47, 50).

## CRITICAL ROLE OF GATA3 IN ILC2 DEVELOPMENT AND FUNCTION

When I started my own research group, it had been known that there are a group of non-T non-B innate-like lymphocytes capable of producing type 2 cytokines and that type 2 cytokines produced by CD4 T cells are not essential for host defense (29, 33). Thus, I was very interested in what these cells were and how they developed. We hypothesized that GATA3, the critical factor for type 2 immune responses, may also be functionally important for the generation of type 2 cytokine-producing innate-like lymphocytes. Thus, we started to generate mice with GATA3 deficiency in the hematopoietic system and mice allowing inducible GATA3 deletion.

These innate-like cells are now known as type 2 innate lymphoid cells (ILC2s). Indeed, ILC2s express very high levels of GATA3 and they are highly enriched in the lung, skin, gut, and adipose tissues (21, 31, 35). Strikingly, ILC2s and Th2 cells generated during helminth infection are identical in their transcriptomes (51). Just as its critical function for Th2 cell differentiation, GATA3 is presumably also important for ILC2 development. However, due to its essential role during ILC development in the progenitor stage, which I will discuss later, definitive evidence showing the importance of GATA3 expression for ILC2 development is still lacking. Nevertheless, even in mature ILC2s, deletion of GATA3 results in loss of ILC2 functions (i.e., diminished IL-5 and IL-13 production) and reduced survival of ILC2s (52–57). Genome-wide analysis comparing transcriptomes between wild type ILC2s and GATA3-deficient "ILC2s" indicates that several important genes involved in type 2 immune responses, such as *Il5*, *Il13*, *Il1rl1*, and *Ccr8*, etc., are regulated by GATA3 (54). These genes are also regulated by GATA3 in mature Th2 cells, which may explain similar functionalities between ILC2s and Th2 cells.

GATA3 also directly binds to the *Il4/Il13* loci in ILC2s; the pattern of GATA3 binding to the Th2 cytokine locus in ILC2s is very similar to that in Th2 cells (47, 58). It has been reported that GATA3 regulates chromatin remodeling at several Th2-specific gene loci in Th2 cells (47), however, whether GATA3 play a similar role in epigenetic modifications in ILC2s is unknown. GATA3 also regulated the expression of the IL-33 receptor subunit T1/ST2 and IL-25R in ILC2s (47, 54, 58). Therefore, because of the downregulation of IL-33R and IL-25R expression in GATA3-deficient "ILC2s," these cells fail to respond to either IL-33 or IL-25. GATA3-deficient "ILC2s" also express lower levels of CD25 and IL-7R. Thus, there is a general defect of GATA3-deficient ILC2s in response to multiple cytokines.

## CRITICAL ROLE OF GATA3 IN T CELL AND ILC DEVELOPMENT

Besides its essential function in Th2 cells and ILC2s, GATA3 is also critical for T cell and ILC development at multiple stages (59, 60). GATA3 is important for the generation of T cell progenitors (59, 61). GATA3 is also required for CD4 but not for CD8 T cell development (47, 59, 62–64). Similarly, GATA3 is critical for the development of T helper-like ILCs that express IL-7Rα, but not of NK cells (54). In fact, high levels of GATA3 expression are required for the generation of PLZF/PD-1-expressing non-LTi progenitors but low levels of GATA3 expression are necessary for the function of LTi cells (65). Therefore, helper-like ILCs are considered as the innate counterpart of CD4 Th cells, whereas NK cells resemble innate CD8-like cells, and GATA3 is a master regulator for the development of both innate (ILC) and adaptive (Th) lymphocytes.

## CRITICAL FUNCTIONS OF GATA3 IN Tregs

GATA3 is also expressed by Tregs, and under certain circumstances, GATA3 expression may reach high levels, especially when cells receive IL-4 and/or TCR stimulation (66). The expression of some "Th2-related" genes, including *Il1rl1* and *Ccr8,* in Tregs depends on GATA3 (47). GATA3 binds to the *Foxp3* locus at the CNS2 region (67) and such binding may be important for maintaining optimal Foxp3 expression in Tregs (66, 68). Deletion of GATA3 specifically in Treg cells results in uncontrolled systemic Th2 responses in one study (68), however, other studies reported that these GATA3 conditional knockout mice were grossly normal although the GATA3-deficient Tregs showed some abnormal phenotype (66, 69, 70). Interestingly, GATA3 is dynamically expressed by Treg cells (70). Because persistent expression of GATA3 in Tregs at high levels may convert Tregs into Th2 cells (71), dynamic expression of GATA3 may be critical for maintaining Treg phenotype. Together with T-bet, GATA3 also suppresses RORγt expression in Tregs. Therefore, balanced expression of T-bet, GATA3, and RORγt in Foxp3-expressing is critical for Treg-mediated immune regulation (70).

## IMPORTANT FUNCTIONS OF GATA3 IN OTHER LYMPHOCYTES

GATA3 is expressed by ILC3s at intermediate levels (58). Interestingly, intermediate levels of GATA3 expression are required for regulating the balance between T-bet and RORγt, and thus the development of NKp46$^+$ ILC3s (58). GATA3 also regulates IL-22 expression in ILC3s (58). Whether GATA3 regulates the balance between T-bet and RORγt and/or IL-22 production in Th cells requires further investigation. GATA3 is also expression by ILC1s at intermediate levels and GATA3 is required for maintaining ILC1 homeostasis (26, 58). GATA3 is also expressed by NK cells but at low levels. Although GATA3 is not required for the development of conventional NK cells, it affects their maturation and cytokine production (54, 72, 73). GATA3 also affects NKT cell development and functions (74, 75) as well as CD8 T cell homeostasis partly through regulating IL-7Rα expression (76). Furthermore, GATA3 expression is found at low levels in Th1 and Th17 cells; however, its functions in these cells require further investigation.

## RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN GATA3 AND OTHER IMPORTANT TRANSCRIPTION FACTORS

During Th2 differentiation, GATA3 can be upregulated by IL-4/STAT6 and/or TCR-mediated signaling (15). However, ILC2 development does not require IL-4/STAT6 signaling. It is possible that Notch signaling plays an important role in GATA3 induction in ILCs. Consistent with this notion, TCF7, a transcription factor induced by Notch signaling, can upregulate GATA3 expression in ILC progenitors (56, 77). What induces/maintains high GATA3 expression in ILC2s is not known.

Although GATA3 plays an essential role in the development and functions of ILC and Th cell subsets, many other transcription factors, including Id2, TCF7, Tox, and Th-POK may form a network with GATA3 in determining cell lineage fates (26, 63, 77, 78). Just as GATA3, Bcl11b is important for the development of T cells and ILC2s (79–84). We have recently reported that GATA3 and Bcl11b form a complex and they co-localized in many enhancer regions within the Th1- and Th2-related genes (85). Interestingly, the GATA3/Bcl11b complex not only suppresses the expression of many Th1-related genes, but it also controls the magnitude of Th2 responses. GATA3 and Bcl11b may have common targets in ILC2s, which requires further investigation.

Several other transcription factors can also interact with GATA3. T-bet interacts with GATA3 and suppresses its function (86, 87). Consequently, T-bet and GATA3 co-bind to many Th1- or Th2-related genes (88–90). T-bet overexpression suppresses GATA3 expression at the transcription level (87). Endogenous expression of T-bet may also inhibit a GATA3-mediated "default" Th2 program during Th1 cell differentiation (90). Interestingly, T-bet is detected in GATA3-expressing cells during helminth infection to limit Th2 responses (91). On the other hand, GATA3 may silence the *Tbx21* gene during Th2 cell differentiation (47). GATA3 may also inhibit Th1 differentiation by suppressing the expression of STAT4 expression as well as Runx3-mediated induction of IFN-γ expression (44, 92), and GATA3 can bind to Runx3 at the protein level.

## CONCLUSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Bill was the master of the Laboratory of Immunology at the NIAID, NIH. I had learned tremendously from him through weekly one-on-one meetings throughout the 17-year period working with him. In the earlier era, Bill had also trained many world renowned immunologists, including Drs. Charles Janeway, Mark Davis, Laurie Glimcher, and Ronald Schwartz. Not only Bill had trained many incredible scientists in his lab, but also he had a great impact on our immunology community at the NIH and around the world. Thus, Bill is a true master of immunology. Without him, the NIH immunology interest group has been

suffering from a "knockout" phenotype in the past 2 years. We sincerely hope that a master(s) with his/her knowledge and ability equivalent to Bill's will inspire our community again in the near future.

The master regulator for Th2 cells is GATA3. Just like Bill who contributed to the immunology field in many aspects, GATA3 also plays an essential role during early T cell development, CD4 T cell development as well as ILC development. In mature lymphocytes, ILC2s followed by Th2 cells express the highest levels of GATA3, which is consistent with its critical function in maintaining the functionalities of these type 2 lymphocytes. In other lymphocytes, including Tregs, NKT cells, CD8 T cells, ILC1s, ILC3s, NK cells, and possibly Th1 and Th17 cells, GATA3 may also regulate their homeostasis and functions (**Table 1**). GATA3-mediated IL-7Rα induction may be a common mechanism through which GATA3 regulates lymphocyte homeostasis; however, this may not fully explain the multifunctions of GATA3 during T cell and ILC development (58, 76).

Because GATA3 is expressed by all T cell and ILC subsets, and its expression varies from cell type to cell type and from stage-to-stage, the functions of GATA3 in different lymphocytes at various developmental and activation stages may be controlled by its expression levels and its interacting partners. Quantitative expression of GATA3 may result in a qualitative effect. To study GATA3 dose effect, a model with a titratable GATA3 expression may be needed to separate the differential roles of GATA3 expressed at high or low levels during the development of T cells and ILCs. Distinct complexes containing GATA3 in different cell types may offer cell-type-specific gene regulation. Thus, identifying GATA3-interacting proteins in different lymphocytes will help us understand the mechanisms of GATA3-mediated gene regulation, which will guide us to obtain deeper insights into the biology of the immune responses in allergic, infectious, autoimmune, and other inflammatory diseases.

We have recently generated a new GATA3 reporter mouse strain through the CRISPR/Cas9 technology by inserting a ZsGreen-T2A cassette into the *Gata3* conditional allele flanked by two LoxP sites. This novel reporter works beautifully: variable GATA3 expression ranging for several logs in GFP intensity is observed in distinct lymphocytes at different developmental stages. We are using this mouse strain in combination with different Cre transgenic lines to study the function of this master regulator in a variety of lymphocytes particularly *in vivo*. We will be happy to share this valuable mouse strain with other labs that are interested in using it, even before its publication, as Bill had taught us the right way to promote science. Although Bill is no longer with us, and I cannot discuss our new exciting results with him anymore, my fascination in studying "master regulators" inspired by Bill will continue endlessly and I believe that is what Bill had hoped for the new generation(s) of immunologists.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## FUNDING

JZ is supported by the Division of Intramural Research (DIR), National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), National Institutes of Health (NIH), USA (grant number 1-ZIA-AI001169).

## REFERENCES

1. Le Gros G, Ben-Sasson SZ, Seder R, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. Generation of interleukin 4 (IL-4)-producing cells in vivo and in vitro: IL-2 and IL-4 are required for in vitro generation of IL-4-producing cells. *J Exp Med* (1990) 172:921–9. doi:10.1084/jem.172.3.921
2. Zhu J, Huang H, Guo L, Stonehouse T, Watson CJ, Hu-Li J, et al. Transient inhibition of interleukin 4 signaling by T cell receptor ligation. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192:1125–34. doi:10.1084/jem.192.8.1125
3. Zhu J, Guo L, Min B, Watson CJ, Hu-Li J, Young HA, et al. Growth factor independent-1 induced by IL-4 regulates Th2 cell proliferation. *Immunity* (2002) 16:733–44. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00317-5
4. Zhu J, Jankovic D, Grinberg A, Guo L, Paul WE. Gfi-1 plays an important role in IL-2-mediated Th2 cell expansion. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2006) 103:18214–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.0608981103
5. Zhu J, Davidson TS, Wei G, Jankovic D, Cui K, Schones DE, et al. Down-regulation of Gfi-1 expression by TGF-beta is important for differentiation of Th17 and CD103+ inducible regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med* (2009) 206:329–41. doi:10.1084/jem.20081666
6. Chandele A, Joshi NS, Zhu J, Paul WE, Leonard WJ, Kaech SM. Formation of IL-7Ralphahigh and IL-7Ralphalow CD8 T cells during infection is regulated by the opposing functions of GABPalpha and Gfi-1. *J Immunol* (2008) 180:5309–19. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.180.8.5309
7. Zheng WP, Flavell RA. The transcription factor GATA-3 is necessary and sufficient for Th2 cytokine gene expression in CD4 T cells. *Cell* (1997) 89:587–96. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(00)80240-8
8. Zhang DH, Cohn L, Ray P, Bottomly K, Ray A. Transcription factor GATA-3 is differentially expressed murine Th1 and Th2 cells and controls Th2-specific expression of the interleukin-5 gene. *J Biol Chem* (1997) 272: 21597–603.
9. Zhu J, Min B, Hu-Li J, Watson CJ, Grinberg A, Wang Q, et al. Conditional deletion of Gata3 shows its essential function in T(H)1-T(H)2 responses. *Nat Immunol* (2004) 5:1157–65. doi:10.1038/ni1128
10. Murphy KM, Reiner SL. The lineage decisions of helper T cells. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2002) 2:933–44. doi:10.1038/nri954
11. Zhu J, Paul WE. CD4 T cells: fates, functions, and faults. *Blood* (2008) 112:1557–69. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-05-078154
12. Zhu J, Yamane H, Paul WE. Differentiation of effector CD4 T cell populations (*). *Annu Rev Immunol* (2010) 28:445–89. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-030409-101212
13. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol* (1986) 136:2348–57.
14. Weaver CT, Hatton RD, Mangan PR, Harrington LE. IL-17 family cytokines and the expanding diversity of effector T cell lineages. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2007) 25:821–52. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141557
15. Paul WE, Zhu J. How are T(H)2-type immune responses initiated and amplified? *Nat Rev Immunol* (2010) 10:225–35. doi:10.1038/nri2735
16. Chen W, Jin W, Hardegen N, Lei KJ, Li L, Marinos N, et al. Conversion of peripheral CD4+CD25− naive T cells to CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells by TGF-beta induction of transcription factor Foxp3. *J Exp Med* (2003) 198:1875–86. doi:10.1084/jem.20030152
17. Shevach EM. Mechanisms of foxp3+ T regulatory cell-mediated suppression. *Immunity* (2009) 30:636–45. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2009.04.010
18. Sakaguchi S, Miyara M, Costantino CM, Hafler DA. FOXP3+ regulatory T cells in the human immune system. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2010) 10:490–500. doi:10.1038/nri2785
19. Josefowicz SZ, Lu LF, Rudensky AY. Regulatory T cells: mechanisms of differentiation and function. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2012) 30:531–64. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.25.022106.141623

20. Abbas AK, Benoist C, Bluestone JA, Campbell DJ, Ghosh S, Hori S, et al. Regulatory T cells: recommendations to simplify the nomenclature. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:307–8. doi:10.1038/ni.2554
21. Artis D, Spits H. The biology of innate lymphoid cells. *Nature* (2015) 517:293–301. doi:10.1038/nature14189
22. Diefenbach A, Colonna M, Koyasu S. Development, differentiation, and diversity of innate lymphoid cells. *Immunity* (2014) 41:354–65. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.09.005
23. McKenzie AN, Spits H, Eberl G. Innate lymphoid cells in inflammation and immunity. *Immunity* (2014) 41:366–74. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.09.006
24. Klose CS, Artis D. Innate lymphoid cells as regulators of immunity, inflammation and tissue homeostasis. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:765–74. doi:10.1038/ni.3489
25. Koues OI, Collins PL, Cella M, Robinette ML, Porter SI, Pyfrom SC, et al. Distinct gene regulatory pathways for human innate versus adaptive lymphoid cells. *Cell* (2016) 165:1134–46. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2016.04.014
26. Klose CS, Flach M, Mohle L, Rogell L, Hoyler T, Ebert K, et al. Differentiation of type 1 ILCs from a common progenitor to all helper-like innate lymphoid cell lineages. *Cell* (2014) 157:340–56. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.03.030
27. Sano T, Huang W, Hall JA, Yang Y, Chen A, Gavzy SJ, et al. An IL-23R/IL-22 circuit regulates epithelial serum amyloid A to promote local effector Th17 responses. *Cell* (2015) 163:381–93. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.061
28. Qiu J, Guo X, Chen ZM, He L, Sonnenberg GF, Artis D, et al. Group 3 innate lymphoid cells inhibit T-cell-mediated intestinal inflammation through aryl hydrocarbon receptor signaling and regulation of microflora. *Immunity* (2013) 39:386–99. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2013.08.002
29. Price AE, Liang HE, Sullivan BM, Reinhardt RL, Eisley CJ, Erle DJ, et al. Systemically dispersed innate IL-13-expressing cells in type 2 immunity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2010) 107:11489–94. doi:10.1073/pnas.1003988107
30. Shikhagaie MM, Germar K, Bal SM, Ros XR, Spits H. Innate lymphoid cells in autoimmunity: emerging regulators in rheumatic diseases. *Nat Rev Rheumatol* (2017) 13:164–73. doi:10.1038/nrrheum.2016.218
31. Moro K, Yamada T, Tanabe M, Takeuchi T, Ikawa T, Kawamoto H, et al. Innate production of T(H)2 cytokines by adipose tissue-associated c-Kit(+)Sca-1(+) lymphoid cells. *Nature* (2010) 463:540–4. doi:10.1038/nature08636
32. Neill DR, Wong SH, Bellosi A, Flynn RJ, Daly M, Langford TK, et al. Nuocytes represent a new innate effector leukocyte that mediates type-2 immunity. *Nature* (2010) 464:1367–70. doi:10.1038/nature08900
33. Fallon PG, Ballantyne SJ, Mangan NE, Barlow JL, Dasvarma A, Hewett DR, et al. Identification of an interleukin (IL)-25-dependent cell population that provides IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13 at the onset of helminth expulsion. *J Exp Med* (2006) 203:1105–16. doi:10.1084/jem.20051615
34. Chang YJ, Kim HY, Albacker LA, Baumgarth N, McKenzie AN, Smith DE, et al. Innate lymphoid cells mediate influenza-induced airway hyper-reactivity independently of adaptive immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12:631–8. doi:10.1038/ni.2045
35. Halim TY, Krauss RH, Sun AC, Takei F. Lung natural helper cells are a critical source of Th2 cell-type cytokines in protease allergen-induced airway inflammation. *Immunity* (2012) 36:451–63. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.12.020
36. Monticelli LA, Sonnenberg GF, Abt MC, Alenghat T, Ziegler CG, Doering TA, et al. Innate lymphoid cells promote lung-tissue homeostasis after infection with influenza virus. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12:1045–54. doi:10.1031/ni.2131
37. Kim BS, Wang K, Siracusa MC, Saenz SA, Brestoff JR, Monticelli LA, et al. Basophils promote innate lymphoid cell responses in inflamed skin. *J Immunol* (2014) 193:3717–25. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1401307
38. Roediger B, Kyle R, Yip KH, Sumaria N, Guy TV, Kim BS, et al. Cutaneous immunosurveillance and regulation of inflammation by group 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:564–73. doi:10.1038/ni.2584
39. Fang D, Zhu J. Dynamic balance between master transcription factors determines the fates and functions of CD4 T cell and innate lymphoid cell subsets. *J Exp Med* (2017) 214:1861–76. doi:10.1084/jem.20170494
40. Ouyang W, Ranganath SH, Weindel K, Bhattacharya D, Murphy TL, Sha WC, et al. Inhibition of Th1 development mediated by GATA-3 through an IL-4-independent mechanism. *Immunity* (1998) 9:745–55. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80671-8
41. Ouyang W, Lohning M, Gao Z, Assenmacher M, Ranganath S, Radbruch A, et al. Stat6-independent GATA-3 autoactivation directs IL-4-independent Th2 development and commitment. *Immunity* (2000) 12:27–37. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80156-9
42. Sharma S, Zhu J. Immunologic applications of conditional gene modification technology in the mouse. *Curr Protoc Immunol* (2014) 105:10 34 1–13. doi:10.1002/0471142735.im1034s105
43. Pai SY, Truitt ML, Ho IC. GATA-3 deficiency abrogates the development and maintenance of T helper type 2 cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2004) 101:1993–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0308697100
44. Yagi R, Junttila IS, Wei G, Urban JF Jr, Zhao K, Paul WE, et al. The transcription factor GATA3 actively represses RUNX3 protein-regulated production of interferon-gamma. *Immunity* (2010) 32:507–17. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2010.04.004
45. Zhu J, Guo L, Watson CJ, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Stat6 is necessary and sufficient for IL-4's role in Th2 differentiation and cell expansion. *J Immunol* (2001) 166:7276–81. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.166.12.7276
46. Yamane H, Zhu J, Paul WE. Independent roles for IL-2 and GATA-3 in stimulating naive CD4+ T cells to generate a Th2-inducing cytokine environment. *J Exp Med* (2005) 202:793–804. doi:10.1084/jem.20051304
47. Wei G, Abraham BJ, Yagi R, Jothi R, Cui K, Sharma S, et al. Genome-wide analyses of transcription factor GATA3-mediated gene regulation in distinct T cell types. *Immunity* (2011) 35:299–311. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.08.007
48. Yamashita M, Ukai-Tadenuma M, Kimura M, Omori M, Inami M, Taniguchi M, et al. Identification of a conserved GATA3 response element upstream proximal from the interleukin-13 gene locus. *J Biol Chem* (2002) 277:42399–408. doi:10.1074/jbc.M205876200
49. Tanaka S, Motomura Y, Suzuki Y, Yagi R, Inoue H, Miyatake S, et al. The enhancer HS2 critically regulates GATA-3-mediated Il4 transcription in T(H)2 cells. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12:77–85. doi:10.1038/ni.1966
50. Hu G, Tang Q, Sharma S, Yu F, Escobar TM, Muljo SA, et al. Expression and regulation of intergenic long noncoding RNAs during T cell development and differentiation. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:1190–8. doi:10.1038/ni.2712
51. Shih HY, Sciume G, Mikami Y, Guo L, Sun HW, Brooks SR, et al. Developmental acquisition of regulomes underlies innate lymphoid cell functionality. *Cell* (2016) 165:1120–33. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2016.04.029
52. Hoyler T, Klose CS, Souabni A, Turqueti-Neves A, Pfeifer D, Rawlins EL, et al. The transcription factor GATA-3 controls cell fate and maintenance of type 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Immunity* (2012) 37:634–48. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.06.020
53. Mjosberg J, Bernink J, Golebski K, Karrich JJ, Peters CP, Blom B, et al. The transcription factor GATA3 is essential for the function of human type 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Immunity* (2012) 37:649–59. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.08.015
54. Yagi R, Zhong C, Northrup DL, Yu F, Bouladoux N, Spencer S, et al. The transcription factor GATA3 is critical for the development of all IL-7Ralpha-expressing innate lymphoid cells. *Immunity* (2014) 40:378–88. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.01.012
55. Klein Wolterink RG, Serafini N, van Nimwegen M, Vosshenrich CA, de Bruijn MJ, Fonseca Pereira D, et al. Essential, dose-dependent role for the transcription factor Gata3 in the development of IL-5+ and IL-13+ type 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2013) 110:10240–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.1217158110
56. Yang Q, Monticelli LA, Saenz SA, Chi AW, Sonnenberg GF, Tang J, et al. T cell factor 1 is required for group 2 innate lymphoid cell generation. *Immunity* (2013) 38:694–704. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.12.003
57. Furusawa J, Moro K, Motomura Y, Okamoto K, Zhu J, Takayanagi H, et al. Critical role of p38 and GATA3 in natural helper cell function. *J Immunol* (2013) 191:1818–26. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300379
58. Zhong C, Cui K, Wilhelm C, Hu G, Mao K, Belkaid Y, et al. Group 3 innate lymphoid cells continuously require the transcription factor GATA-3 after commitment. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:169–78. doi:10.1038/ni.3318
59. Ho IC, Tai TS, Pai SY. GATA3 and the T-cell lineage: essential functions before and after T-helper-2-cell differentiation. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2009) 9:125–35. doi:10.1038/nri2476
60. Tindemans I, Serafini N, Di Santo JP, Hendriks RW. GATA-3 function in innate and adaptive immunity. *Immunity* (2014) 41:191–206. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.006
61. Ting CN, Olson MC, Barton KP, Leiden JM. Transcription factor GATA-3 is required for development of the T-cell lineage. *Nature* (1996) 384:474–8. doi:10.1038/384474a0
62. Pai SY, Truitt ML, Ting CN, Leiden JM, Glimcher LH, Ho IC. Critical roles for transcription factor GATA-3 in thymocyte development. *Immunity* (2003) 19:863–75. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00328-5

63. Wang L, Wildt KF, Zhu J, Zhang X, Feigenbaum L, Tessarollo L, et al. Distinct functions for the transcription factors GATA-3 and ThPOK during intrathymic differentiation of CD4(+) T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2008) 9:1122–30. doi:10.1038/ni.1647
64. Hernandez-Hoyos G, Anderson MK, Wang C, Rothenberg EV, Alberola-Ila J. GATA-3 expression is controlled by TCR signals and regulates CD4/CD8 differentiation. *Immunity* (2003) 19:83–94. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00176-6
65. Zhu J. GATA3 regulates the development and functions of innate lymphoid cell subsets at multiple stages. *Front Immunol* (2017) 8:1571. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2017.01571
66. Wohlfert EA, Grainger JR, Bouladoux N, Konkel JE, Oldenhove G, Ribeiro CH, et al. GATA3 controls Foxp3(+) regulatory T cell fate during inflammation in mice. *J Clin Invest* (2011) 121:4503–15. doi:10.1172/JCI57456
67. Zheng Y, Josefowicz S, Chaudhry A, Peng XP, Forbush K, Rudensky AY. Role of conserved non-coding DNA elements in the Foxp3 gene in regulatory T-cell fate. *Nature* (2010) 463:808–12. doi:10.1038/nature08750
68. Wang Y, Su MA, Wan YY. An essential role of the transcription factor GATA-3 for the function of regulatory T cells. *Immunity* (2011) 35:337–48. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.08.012
69. Rudra D, deRoos P, Chaudhry A, Niec RE, Arvey A, Samstein RM, et al. Transcription factor Foxp3 and its protein partners form a complex regulatory network. *Nat Immunol* (2012) 13:1010–9. doi:10.1038/ni.2402
70. Yu F, Sharma S, Edwards J, Feigenbaum L, Zhu J. Dynamic expression of transcription factors T-bet and GATA-3 by regulatory T cells maintains immunotolerance. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:197–206. doi:10.1038/ni.3053
71. Noval Rivas M, Burton OT, Wise P, Charbonnier LM, Georgiev P, Oettgen HC, et al. Regulatory T cell reprogramming toward a Th2-cell-like lineage impairs oral tolerance and promotes food allergy. *Immunity* (2015) 42:512–23. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.02.004
72. Samson SI, Richard O, Tavian M, Ranson T, Vosshenrich CA, Colucci F, et al. GATA-3 promotes maturation, IFN-gamma production, and liver-specific homing of NK cells. *Immunity* (2003) 19:701–11. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00294-2
73. Vosshenrich CA, Garcia-Ojeda ME, Samson-Villeger SI, Pasqualetto V, Enault L, Richard-Le Goff O, et al. A thymic pathway of mouse natural killer cell development characterized by expression of GATA-3 and CD127. *Nat Immunol* (2006) 7:1217–24. doi:10.1038/ni1395
74. Kim PJ, Pai SY, Brigl M, Besra GS, Gumperz J, Ho IC. GATA-3 regulates the development and function of invariant NKT cells. *J Immunol* (2006) 177:6650–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.10.6650
75. Lee YJ, Holzapfel KL, Zhu J, Jameson SC, Hogquist KA. Steady-state production of IL-4 modulates immunity in mouse strains and is determined by lineage diversity of iNKT cells. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:1146–54. doi:10.1038/ni.2731
76. Wang Y, Misumi I, Gu AD, Curtis TA, Su L, Whitmire JK, et al. GATA-3 controls the maintenance and proliferation of T cells downstream of TCR and cytokine signaling. *Nat Immunol* (2013) 14:714–22. doi:10.1038/ni.2623
77. Yang Q, Li F, Harly C, Xing S, Ye L, Xia X, et al. TCF-1 upregulation identifies early innate lymphoid progenitors in the bone marrow. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:1044–50. doi:10.1038/ni.3248
78. Seehus CR, Aliahmad P, de la Torre B, Iliev ID, Spurka L, Funari VA, et al. The development of innate lymphoid cells requires TOX-dependent generation of a common innate lymphoid cell progenitor. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:599–608. doi:10.1038/ni.3168
79. Zook EC, Kee BL. Development of innate lymphoid cells. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:775–82. doi:10.1038/ni.3481
80. Zhong C, Zhu J. Bcl11b drives the birth of ILC2 innate lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212:828. doi:10.1084/jem.2126insight1
81. Li L, Leid M, Rothenberg EV. An early T cell lineage commitment checkpoint dependent on the transcription factor Bcl11b. *Science* (2010) 329:89–93. doi:10.1126/science.1188989
82. Walker JA, Oliphant CJ, Englezakis A, Yu Y, Clare S, Rodewald HR, et al. Bcl11b is essential for group 2 innate lymphoid cell development. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212:875–82. doi:10.1084/jem.20142224
83. Yu Y, Wang C, Clare S, Wang J, Lee SC, Brandt C, et al. The transcription factor Bcl11b is specifically expressed in group 2 innate lymphoid cells and is essential for their development. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212:865–74. doi:10.1084/jem.20142318
84. Califano D, Cho JJ, Uddin MN, Lorentsen KJ, Yang Q, Bhandoola A, et al. Transcription factor Bcl11b controls identity and function of mature type 2 innate lymphoid cells. *Immunity* (2015) 43:354–68. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.07.005
85. Fang D, Cui K, Hu G, Gurram RK, Zhong C, Oler AJ, et al. Bcl11b, a novel GATA3-interacting protein, suppresses Th1 while limiting Th2 cell differentiation. *J Exp Med* (2018) 215. doi:10.1084/jem.20171127
86. Hwang ES, Szabo SJ, Schwartzberg PL, Glimcher LH. T helper cell fate specified by kinase-mediated interaction of T-bet with GATA-3. *Science* (2005) 307:430–3. doi:10.1126/science.1103336
87. Usui T, Preiss JC, Kanno Y, Yao ZJ, Bream JH, O'Shea JJ, et al. T-bet regulates Th1 responses through essential effects on GATA-3 function rather than on IFNG gene acetylation and transcription. *J Exp Med* (2006) 203:754–754; Erratum in (vol 23, pg 755, 2006). doi:10.1084/jem.20052165
88. Kanhere A, Hertweck A, Bhatia U, Gokmen MR, Perucha E, Jackson I, et al. T-bet and GATA3 orchestrate Th1 and Th2 differentiation through lineage-specific targeting of distal regulatory elements. *Nat Commun* (2012) 3:1268. doi:10.1038/ncomms2260
89. Jenner RG, Townsend MJ, Jackson I, Sun K, Bouwman RD, Young RA, et al. The transcription factors T-bet and GATA-3 control alternative pathways of T-cell differentiation through a shared set of target genes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2009) 106:17876–81. doi:10.1073/pnas.0909357106
90. Zhu J, Jankovic D, Oler AJ, Wei G, Sharma S, Hu G, et al. The transcription factor T-bet is induced by multiple pathways and prevents an endogenous Th2 cell program during Th1 cell responses. *Immunity* (2012) 37:660–73. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.09.007
91. Peine M, Rausch S, Helmstetter C, Frohlich A, Hegazy AN, Kuhl AA, et al. Stable T-bet(+)GATA-3(+) Th1/Th2 hybrid cells arise in vivo, can develop directly from naive precursors, and limit immunopathologic inflammation. *PLoS Biol* (2013) 11:e1001633. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.1001633
92. Usui T, Nishikomori R, Kitani A, Strober W. GATA-3 suppresses Th1 development by downregulation of Stat4 and not through effects on IL-12Rbeta2 chain or T-bet. *Immunity* (2003) 18:415–28. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00057-8


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 16 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00719

# TCR Signaling Abnormalities in Human Th2-Associated Atopic Disease

*Joshua D. Milner**

*Laboratory of Allergic Diseases, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), National Institutes of Health (NIH), Bethesda, MD, United States*

Stimulation of naïve CD4 T cells with weak T cell receptor agonists even in the absence of T helper-skewing cytokines can result in IL-4 production which can drive a Th2 response. Evidence for the *in vivo* consequences of such a phenomenon can be found in a number of mouse models and, importantly, a series of monogenic human diseases associated with significant atopy which are caused by mutations in the T cell receptor signaling cascade. Such diseases can help understand how Th2 responses evolve in humans, and potentially provide insight into therapeutic interventions.

**Keywords: T-cell receptor repertoire, signaling pathways, primary immunodeficiencies, atopic disease, monogenic syndromes**

## INTRODUCTION

Within the vast legacy of Bill Paul's career, one theme that emerged was the search for a source of IL-4 that would meaningfully provide differentiating naïve CD4 T cells sufficient signal to develop into memory Th2 cells during an immune response that required such a program. Mast cell (1), basophil (2–4), and NK T (5) IL-4 production were observed, but whether they are the key initiators of most Th2 responses continues to be a matter of debate. It was therefore in the course of that search that attention was turned to IL-4 production by the naïve T cell itself (6, 7). Kim Bottomly, herself a trainee of Bill's, had observed that *in vitro* priming of naïve T cells by relatively weak, but not strong, agonist peptides, in the absence of other priming cytokines, could lead to a Th2 response (8–15). Bill's lab later showed that "strong" agonist peptides themselves could prime such a response, when provided at a sufficiently low dose (16), and that in lymphopenic states or when TCR of high affinity for a given peptide are removed, stimulated naïve cells will differentiate into Th2 cells (17, 18). The mechanisms for these observations continue to be unraveled, but include the notion that responses to IL-2 become blunted at higher dose of peptide, preventing the necessary STAT5b activation and nuclear translocation for transcription of key Th2 lineage transcription factor as well as poor ERK activation, as MEK inhibition could recapitulate the Th2 bias even in the presence of high dose strong TCR agonism (9, 16).

*In vivo*, indeed TCR/MHC interactions may even predominate over exogenous adjuvant activity in determining Th1/Th2 balance (19), although it may not always be *via* IL-4 production itself (20). One potential teleologic reason for the phenomenon could be that parasitic products which could evade immune responses by downregulating TCR-MHC interactions [such as the omega-1 component of schistosome egg antigen which can prime Th2 responses, potentially by weakening TCR/MHC interactions (21, 22)] resulted in the evolution of anti-parasitic cytokine profiles which are derived from differentiation under low-affinity conditions. Whatever the cause, and whether IL-4 itself is the key driver of Th2 differentiation *in vivo* is a matter of debate, the success of IL-4 receptor blocking antibodies in treating human atopic disease has been impressive, strongly suggesting this pathway is critical for the pathogenesis of human atopic disease (23).

Another set of observations have further buttressed the notion that altered TCR signaling could lead to Th2 phenotypes. A series of mouse lines derived spontaneously or *via* random mutagenesis

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Wanjun Chen,*
*National Institutes of Health (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*António Gil Castro,*
*University of Minho, Portugal*
*Lawrence Kane,*
*University of Pittsburgh, United States*

***Correspondence:**
*Joshua D. Milner*
*jdmilner@niaid.nih.gov*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *10 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *22 March 2018*
***Published:*** *16 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*Milner JD (2018) TCR Signaling Abnormalities in Human Th2-Associated Atopic Disease. Front. Immunol. 9:719. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00719*

with missense mutations in key TCR signaling molecules were observed to develop Th2-related pathology spontaneously. These included LAT, ZAP70 (in several independent mutant lines), and CARMA1 (24–28). Null mutations in most of these molecules lead to impairment of effector function which precludes most Th differentiation altogether, and as such it is the hyopomorphic loss-of-function mutations which lead to the phenotype.

Of course, a major consequence of this basic observation could be that certain human disease could also be driven by this phenomenon and would most likely include an atopic phenotype. With the exponential growth of patients undergoing next-generation sequencing, multiple newly described immune disorders which include atopic disease have been identified, some of which may well be due to impaired TCR signaling. This review therefore provides a series of examples of human monogenic disorders associated with atopy which may be caused by imbalances in TCR signaling which fail to prevent Th2 responses.

## OMENN SYNDROME (OS)

Before directly addressing the propensity for mutations to intrinsically bias a T cell toward Th2 differentiation, it is critical to distinguish one congenital atopic phenotype, namely, that seen in OS (29). Mutations that are known to lead to massive curtailment of T cell function and/or number—both intrinsic to signaling and extrinsic to it—can nonetheless permit "leaky" peripheral T cell populations which can progress to CD4 lymphoproliferation, organomegaly, and Th2-like disease associated with marked IgE elevation, erythroderma, and eosinophilia. Why OS is associated with the Th2 phenotype is not clear, but hypotheses have included a failure of central tolerance due to abnormal thymic development which hinders both AIRE-induced negative selection and the generation of a normal repertoire of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells (Tregs) (30–32). The lymphopenic state also may lead to the absence of sufficient high-affinity competition for antigen which would then permit low-affinity cells to be stimulated and proliferate, leading to the Th2 phenotype (17, 18).

## MUTATIONS IN GENES ENCODING CLASSICAL TCR SIGNALING PROTEINS

Similar to the mouse, human mutations in ZAP70 can lead to varied phenotypes from SCID, to autoimmunity, to highly atopic phenotypes (33–37). In the case of one of the reported atopic phenotype in humans, it is not clear whether it was caused by intrinsic Th2 bias similar to the mouse model, or due to the limited repertoire associated with OS (35).

Stronger evidence for the link between TCR intrinsic signaling defects and atopy in human disease can be found in hypomorphic mutations of two members of the CBM complex, such as MALT1 (38) and CARMA1 (39, 40). The CBM complex, which includes MALT1, CARD11, and BCL10, is required for normal NFkB activation after TCR ligation, as well as mTORC1 activation (41, 42). Complete loss-of-function mutations of any of the three CBM complex members lead to a SCID-like illness (43–47), but recently, hypomorphic MALT1 mutations were described in a patient with recurrent infection, marked IgE elevation, and severe eczema (38). Even more recently, dominant-negative mutations leaving residual, hypomorphic CARD11 activity were identified in a cohort of patients with severe atopic disease with, and in some cases, without, comorbid infection. The finding is of particular interest since, in addition to the possibility that severe atopy without comorbidity could be explained by a single-gene mutation, CARD11 has been identified in GWAS studies of common atopic dermatitis (48).

While numerous patients with defects in nearly every NFkB subunit have been identified, atopy has not been reported to be associated with any of them. The lack of atopy argues that defects in another pathway in which CARD11 is involved might explain the allergic disease these patients have. Recent evidence suggests that CARD11 may also participate in mTORC1 activation (42) by recruiting, upregulating, and/or activating of the glutamine transporter ASCT2, which in turn leads to increased intracellular glutamine needed for mTORC1 activation. ASCT2−/− mice have a Th2 phenotype (49), potentially due to inadequate glutamine transport, which may be required for normal Th1 differentiation and the prevention of excessive Th2 differentiation (50, 51). The CARD11DN patients have evidence of impaired mTORC1 activation and reduced Th1 cytokine production, rescuable by exogenous glutamine (39), raising the possibility that glutamine supplementation could be of clinical benefit in these patients. Of note, glutamine supplementation of premature infants is associated with protection from the development of atopic dermatitis (52, 53).

## MUTATIONS IN GENES ENCODING ACTIN CYTOSKELETON PROTEINS

Following TCR ligation, Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome protein (WASP) dissociates from its stabilizing partner WASP-interacting protein (WIP) and binds actin-related protein (ARP) 2/3 (54) to begin the actin assembly cascade.

Loss of WASP leads to Wiskott–Aldrich syndrome, which is characterized by severe atopic dermatitis, increased gut sensitization and clinical food allergy, thrombocytopenia, and combined immunodeficiency (55, 56). A similar phenotype occurs with loss of WASP-interacting protein family member 1 (*WIPF1*) encoding WIP (57) as well as an ARP2/3 subunit, actin-related protein 2/3 complex subunit 1B (*ARPC1B*) (58–60).

WASP-interacting protein also appears to associate with dedicator of cytokinesis 8 (DOCK8) a guanine nucleotide exchange factor whose activity is critical for normal WASP function (61). Loss of function in DOCK8 leads to significant elevations in IgE, combined immunodeficiency, and other many clinical features in common with WAS, including severe atopic dermatitis and food allergy, and even autoimmunity (62, 63). Thrombocytopenia is not seen in DOCK8 deficiency, while severe viral skin infections and anaphylaxis are not as common in WAS, potentially due to differences in redundancy, function, and tissue expression (56, 64, 65).

Once again, we know less about why Th2 phenotypes emerge from these actin cytoskeleton-related mutations. DOCK8 patient lymphocytes have a T cell-intrinsic bias toward Th2, and away

from Th1 differentiation (66), and WASP transcriptional activity appears to be critical for Th1 differentiation (67, 68). Another possible mechanism suggests these proteins have critical roles in Treg function, potentially *via* IL-2 activity, the impairment of which therefore would lead to immune dysregulation of all types, including Th2 (56, 69–73).

On this point, it is important to note that Treg failure is always a consideration when trying to understand how impaired TCR signaling could lead to Th2 phenotypes, since an ideal TCR signal is necessary for normal Treg development, differentiation, and function (74). While CARD11DN patient Tregs appeared quantitatively and qualitatively normal, the mouse model suggested otherwise (26). It is further noteworthy that while the mechanism of weak TCR signal failing to curtail STAT5b activity has not yet been studied in the human TCR signaling defects, gain-of-function missense mutations in STAT5b, and JAK1—which activates STAT5b—are associated with syndromes characterized by profound early onset dermatitis and eosinophilia (75, 76). That said, while STAT5bGOF mutations lead to a Th2 phenotype, so too can STAT5bLOF mutations, which are associated with severe Treg impairment (77). While in humans it is difficult to tease apart the relative contributions of effector T cell intrinsic predisposition toward Th2 responses and responsiveness to extrinsic regulation from the number and function of Tregs themselves, it is still important to study both in the context of human diseases of impaired TCR signaling.

## CONCLUSION

A great deal remains unknown or unproven with respect to the direct role for TCR signaling defects and/or weak TCR signaling in human allergic disease. The limitations which exist when studying human T helper differentiation make it harded to directly demonstrate causality. However, the preponderance of evidence coupling mouse and human *in vitro* studies with *ex vivo* human studies suggests disruption of a number of TCR signaling pathways could well lead to a Th2 phenotype which in turn drives an organismal atopic disease. Apart from the mechanistic insight this provides, how such knowledge could be translated into positive therapeutic manipulation remains a question. Balancing the therapeutic manipulation with risk and cost is of course key. While indeed targeting Th2 cytokines has been quite successful in the clinic, the use of such medications is still in its early phases, and they are extremely expensive. Of course, depending on the severity of disease, bone marrow transplant can be an option, and in theory so could gene therapy and/or gene editing. Other interventions meant to strengthen TCR signaling always run the risk of leaning toward aberrant autoreactivity as well. The ultimate consequences of these balances and their perturbation will be gleaned from continued mechanistic research into the precise mechanisms by which the Th2 phenotypic program emerges when TCR signaling is impaired.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This study was supported by the intramural research program of the NIAID, NIH.

## REFERENCES

1. Plaut M, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Hanley-Hyde J, Nordan RP, Paul WE. Mast cell lines produce lymphokines in response to cross-linkage of Fc epsilon RI or to calcium ionophores. *Nature* (1989) 339(6219):64–7. doi:10.1038/339064a0
2. Ben-Sasson SZ, Le Gros G, Conrad DH, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. Cross-linking Fc receptors stimulate splenic non-B, non-T cells to secrete interleukin 4 and other lymphokines. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1990) 87(4):1421–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.4.1421
3. Seder RA, Paul WE, Ben-Sasson SZ, Le Gros GS, Kagey-Sobotka A, Finkelman FD, et al. Production of interleukin-4 and other cytokines following stimulation of mast cell lines and in vivo mast cells/basophils. *Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol* (1991) 94(1–4):137–40. doi:10.1159/000235345
4. Seder RA, Paul WE, Dvorak AM, Sharkis SJ, Kagey-Sobotka A, Niv Y, et al. Mouse splenic and bone marrow cell populations that express high-affinity Fc epsilon receptors and produce interleukin 4 are highly enriched in basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1991) 88(7):2835–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.7.2835
5. Yoshimoto T, Bendelac A, Watson C, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Role of NK1.1+ T cells in a TH2 response and in immunoglobulin E production. *Science* (1995) 270(5243):1845–7. doi:10.1126/science.270.5243.1845
6. Ben-Sasson SZ, Le Gros G, Conrad DH, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. IL-4 production by T cells from naive donors. IL-2 is required for IL-4 production. *J Immunol* (1990) 145(4):1127–36.
7. Le Gros G, Ben-Sasson SZ, Seder R, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. Generation of interleukin 4 (IL-4)-producing cells in vivo and in vitro: IL-2 and IL-4 are required for in vitro generation of IL-4-producing cells. *J Exp Med* (1990) 172(3):921–9. doi:10.1084/jem.172.3.921
8. Constant SL, Bottomly K. Induction of Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell responses: the alternative approaches. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1997) 15:297–322. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.15.1.297
9. Yamane H, Paul WE. Early signaling events that underlie fate decisions of naive CD4(+) T cells toward distinct T-helper cell subsets. *Immunol Rev* (2013) 252(1):12–23. doi:10.1111/imr.12032
10. Boutin Y, Leitenberg D, Tao X, Bottomly K. Distinct biochemical signals characterize agonist- and altered peptide ligand-induced differentiation of naive CD4+ T cells into Th1 and Th2 subsets. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(12):5802–9.
11. Tao X, Constant S, Jorritsma P, Bottomly K. Strength of TCR signal determines the costimulatory requirements for Th1 and Th2 CD4+ T cell differentiation. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(12):5956–63.
12. Leitenberg D, Boutin Y, Constant S, Bottomly K. CD4 regulation of TCR signaling and T cell differentiation following stimulation with peptides of different affinities for the TCR. *J Immunol* (1998) 161(3):1194–203.
13. Hosken NA, Shibuya K, Heath AW, Murphy KM, O'Garra A. The effect of antigen dose on CD4+ T helper cell phenotype development in a T cell receptor-alpha beta-transgenic model. *J Exp Med* (1995) 182(5):1579–84. doi:10.1084/jem.182.5.1579
14. Tao X, Grant C, Constant S, Bottomly K. Induction of IL-4-producing CD4+ T cells by antigenic peptides altered for TCR binding. *J Immunol* (1997) 158(9):4237–44.
15. Jorritsma PJ, Brogdon JL, Bottomly K. Role of TCR-induced extracellular signal-regulated kinase activation in the regulation of early IL-4 expression in naive CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol* (2003) 170(5):2427–34. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.170.5.2427
16. Yamane H, Zhu J, Paul WE. Independent roles for IL-2 and GATA-3 in stimulating naive CD4+ T cells to generate a Th2-inducing cytokine environment. *J Exp Med* (2005) 202(6):793–804. doi:10.1084/jem.20051304

17. Milner JD, Ward JM, Keane-Myers A, Paul WE. Lymphopenic mice reconstituted with limited repertoire T cells develop severe, multiorgan, Th2-associated inflammatory disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2007) 104(2):576–81. doi:10.1073/pnas.0610289104
18. Milner JD, Fazilleau N, McHeyzer-Williams M, Paul W. Cutting edge: lack of high affinity competition for peptide in polyclonal CD4+ responses unmasks IL-4 production. *J Immunol* (2010) 184(12):6569–73. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1000674
19. van Panhuys N, Klauschen F, Germain RN. T-cell-receptor-dependent signal intensity dominantly controls CD4(+) T cell polarization in vivo. *Immunity* (2014) 41(1):63–74. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.003
20. van Panhuys N, Tang SC, Prout M, Camberis M, Scarlett D, Roberts J, et al. In vivo studies fail to reveal a role for IL-4 or STAT6 signaling in Th2 lymphocyte differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) 105(34):12423–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0806372105
21. Everts B, Perona-Wright G, Smits HH, Hokke CH, van der Ham AJ, Fitzsimmons CM, et al. Omega-1, a glycoprotein secreted by *Schistosoma mansoni* eggs, drives Th2 responses. *J Exp Med* (2009) 206(8):1673–80. doi:10.1084/jem.20082460
22. Steinfelder S, Andersen JF, Cannons JL, Feng CG, Joshi M, Dwyer D, et al. The major component in schistosome eggs responsible for conditioning dendritic cells for Th2 polarization is a T2 ribonuclease (omega-1). *J Exp Med* (2009) 206(8):1681–90. doi:10.1084/jem.20082462
23. Chang HY, Nadeau KC. IL-4Ralpha inhibitor for atopic disease. *Cell* (2017) 170(2):222. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.046
24. Jakob T, Kollisch GV, Howaldt M, Bewersdorff M, Rathkolb B, Muller ML, et al. Novel mouse mutants with primary cellular immunodeficiencies generated by genome-wide mutagenesis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2008) 121(1):179–84.e7. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2007.07.018
25. Mingueneau M, Roncagalli R, Gregoire C, Kissenpfennig A, Miazek A, Archambaud C, et al. Loss of the LAT adaptor converts antigen-responsive T cells into pathogenic effectors that function independently of the T cell receptor. *Immunity* (2009) 31(2):197–208. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2009.05.013
26. Jun JE, Wilson LE, Vinuesa CG, Lesage S, Blery M, Miosge LA, et al. Identifying the MAGUK protein Carma-1 as a central regulator of humoral immune responses and atopy by genome-wide mouse mutagenesis. *Immunity* (2003) 18(6):751–62. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00141-9
27. Siggs OM, Miosge LA, Yates AL, Kucharska EM, Sheahan D, Brdicka T, et al. Opposing functions of the T cell receptor kinase ZAP-70 in immunity and tolerance differentially titrate in response to nucleotide substitutions. *Immunity* (2007) 27(6):912–26. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2007.11.013
28. Aguado E, Richelme S, Nunez-Cruz S, Miazek A, Mura AM, Richelme M, et al. Induction of T helper type 2 immunity by a point mutation in the LAT adaptor. *Science* (2002) 296(5575):2036–40. doi:10.1126/science.1069057
29. Omenn GS. Familial reticuloendotheliosis with eosinophilia. *N Engl J Med* (1965) 273:427–32. doi:10.1056/NEJM196508192730806
30. Cavadini P, Vermi W, Facchetti F, Fontana S, Nagafuchi S, Mazzolari E, et al. AIRE deficiency in thymus of 2 patients with Omenn syndrome. *J Clin Invest* (2005) 115(3):728–32. doi:10.1172/JCI200523087
31. Marrella V, Poliani PL, Casati A, Rucci F, Frascoli L, Gougeon ML, et al. A hypomorphic R229Q Rag2 mouse mutant recapitulates human Omenn syndrome. *J Clin Invest* (2007) 117(5):1260–9. doi:10.1172/JCI30928
32. Poliani PL, Facchetti F, Ravanini M, Gennery AR, Villa A, Roifman CM, et al. Early defects in human T-cell development severely affect distribution and maturation of thymic stromal cells: possible implications for the pathophysiology of Omenn syndrome. *Blood* (2009) 114(1):105–8. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-03-211029
33. Chan AC, Kadlecek TA, Elder ME, Filipovich AH, Kuo WL, Iwashima M, et al. ZAP-70 deficiency in an autosomal recessive form of severe combined immunodeficiency. *Science* (1994) 264(5165):1599–601. doi:10.1126/science.8202713
34. Arpaia E, Shahar M, Dadi H, Cohen A, Roifman CM. Defective T cell receptor signaling and CD8+ thymic selection in humans lacking zap-70 kinase. *Cell* (1994) 76(5):947–58. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(94)90368-9
35. Turul T, Tezcan I, Artac H, de Bruin-Versteeg S, Barendregt BH, Reisli I, et al. Clinical heterogeneity can hamper the diagnosis of patients with ZAP70 deficiency. *Eur J Pediatr* (2009) 168(1):87–93. doi:10.1007/s00431-008-0718-x
36. Picard C, Dogniaux S, Chemin K, Maciorowski Z, Lim A, Mazerolles F, et al. Hypomorphic mutation of ZAP70 in human results in a late onset immunodeficiency and no autoimmunity. *Eur J Immunol* (2009) 39(7):1966–76. doi:10.1002/eji.200939385
37. Elder ME, Lin D, Clever J, Chan AC, Hope TJ, Weiss A, et al. Human severe combined immunodeficiency due to a defect in ZAP-70, a T cell tyrosine kinase. *Science* (1994) 264(5165):1596–9. doi:10.1126/science.8202712
38. McKinnon ML, Rozmus J, Fung SY, Hirschfeld AF, Del Bel KL, Thomas L, et al. Combined immunodeficiency associated with homozygous MALT1 mutations. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2014) 133(5):.1458–.1462. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.10.045
39. Ma CA, Stinson JR, Zhang Y, Abbott JK, Weinreich MA, Hauk PJ, et al. Germline hypomorphic CARD11 mutations in severe atopic disease. *Nat Genet* (2017) 49(8):1192–201. doi:10.1038/ng.3898
40. Dadi H, Jones TA, Merico D, Sharfe N, Ovadia A, Schejter Y, et al. Combined immunodeficiency and atopy caused by a dominant negative mutation in caspase activation and recruitment domain family member 11 (CARD11). *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017). doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.06.047
41. Bertin J, Wang L, Guo Y, Jacobson MD, Poyet JL, Srinivasula SM, et al. CARD11 and CARD14 are novel caspase recruitment domain (CARD)/membrane-associated guanylate kinase (MAGUK) family members that interact with BCL10 and activate NF-kappa B. *J Biol Chem* (2001) 276(15):11877–82. doi:10.1074/jbc.M010512200
42. Hamilton KS, Phong B, Corey C, Cheng J, Gorentla B, Zhong X, et al. T cell receptor-dependent activation of mTOR signaling in T cells is mediated by Carma1 and MALT1, but not Bcl10. *Sci Signal* (2014) 7(329):ra55. doi:10.1126/scisignal.2005169
43. Greil J, Rausch T, Giese T, Bandapalli OR, Daniel V, Bekeredjian-Ding I, et al. Whole-exome sequencing links caspase recruitment domain 11 (CARD11) inactivation to severe combined immunodeficiency. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2013) 131(5):1376–83.e3. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.02.012
44. Stepensky P, Keller B, Buchta M, Kienzler AK, Elpeleg O, Somech R, et al. Deficiency of caspase recruitment domain family, member 11 (CARD11), causes profound combined immunodeficiency in human subjects. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2013) 131(2):477–85.e1. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2012.11.050
45. Jabara HH, Ohsumi T, Chou J, Massaad MJ, Benson H, Megarbane A, et al. A homozygous mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue 1 (MALT1) mutation in a family with combined immunodeficiency. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2013) 132(1):151–8. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.04.047
46. Punwani D, Wang H, Chan AY, Cowan MJ, Mallott J, Sunderam U, et al. Combined immunodeficiency due to MALT1 mutations, treated by hematopoietic cell transplantation. *J Clin Immunol* (2015) 35(2):135–46. doi:10.1007/s10875-014-0125-1
47. Torres JM, Martinez-Barricarte R, Garcia-Gomez S, Mazariegos MS, Itan Y, Boisson B, et al. Inherited BCL10 deficiency impairs hematopoietic and non-hematopoietic immunity. *J Clin Invest* (2014) 124(12):5239–48. doi:10.1172/JCI77493
48. Hirota T, Takahashi A, Kubo M, Tsunoda T, Tomita K, Sakashita M, et al. Genome-wide association study identifies eight new susceptibility loci for atopic dermatitis in the Japanese population. *Nat Genet* (2012) 44(11):1222–6. doi:10.1038/ng.2438
49. Nakaya M, Xiao Y, Zhou X, Chang JH, Chang M, Cheng X, et al. Inflammatory T cell responses rely on amino acid transporter ASCT2 facilitation of glutamine uptake and mTORC1 kinase activation. *Immunity* (2014) 40(5):692–705. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.04.007
50. Delgoffe GM, Pollizzi KN, Waickman AT, Heikamp E, Meyers DJ, Horton MR, et al. The kinase mTOR regulates the differentiation of helper T cells through the selective activation of signaling by mTORC1 and mTORC2. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12(4):295–303. doi:10.1038/ni.2005
51. Chornoguz O, Hagan RS, Haile A, Arwood ML, Gamper CJ, Banerjee A, et al. mTORC1 promotes T-bet phosphorylation to regulate Th1 differentiation. *J Immunol* (2017) 198(10):3939–48. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601078
52. van den Berg A, van Zwol A, Moll HA, Fetter WP, van Elburg RM. Glutamine-enriched enteral nutrition in very low-birth-weight infants: effect on the incidence of allergic and infectious diseases in the first year of life. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* (2007) 161(11):1095–101. doi:10.1001/archpedi.161.11.1095

53. van Zwol A, Moll HA, Fetter WP, van Elburg RM. Glutamine-enriched enteral nutrition in very low birthweight infants and allergic and infectious diseases at 6 years of age. *Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol* (2011) 25(1):60–6. doi:10.1111/j.1365-3016.2010.01173.x
54. Zigmond SH. How WASP regulates actin polymerization. *J Cell Biol* (2000) 150(6):F117–20. doi:10.1083/jcb.150.6.F117
55. Ochs HD. Mutations of the Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein affect protein expression and dictate the clinical phenotypes. *Immunol Res* (2009) 44(1–3):84–8. doi:10.1007/s12026-008-8084-3
56. Lexmond WS, Goettel JA, Lyons JJ, Jacobse J, Deken MM, Lawrence MG, et al. FOXP3+ Tregs require WASP to restrain Th2-mediated food allergy. *J Clin Invest* (2016) 126(10):4030–44. doi:10.1172/JCI85129
57. Lanzi G, Moratto D, Vairo D, Masneri S, Delmonte O, Paganini T, et al. A novel primary human immunodeficiency due to deficiency in the WASP-interacting protein WIP. *J Exp Med* (2012) 209(1):29–34. doi:10.1084/jem.20110896
58. Kuijpers TW, Tool ATJ, van der Bijl I, de Boer M, van Houdt M, de Cuyper IM, et al. Combined immunodeficiency with severe inflammation and allergy caused by ARPC1B deficiency. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017) 140(1):273–7. e10. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.09.061
59. Kahr WH, Pluthero FG, Elkadri A, Warner N, Drobac M, Chen CH, et al. Loss of the Arp2/3 complex component ARPC1B causes platelet abnormalities and predisposes to inflammatory disease. *Nat Commun* (2017) 8:14816. doi:10.1038/ncomms14816
60. Somech R, Lev A, Lee YN, Simon AJ, Barel O, Schiby G, et al. Disruption of thrombocyte and T lymphocyte development by a mutation in ARPC1B. *J Immunol* (2017) 199(12):4036–45. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1700460
61. Janssen E, Tohme M, Hedayat M, Leick M, Kumari S, Ramesh N, et al. A DOCK8-WIP-WASp complex links T cell receptors to the actin cytoskeleton. *J Clin Invest* (2016) 126(10):3837–51. doi:10.1172/JCI85774
62. Zhang Q, Davis JC, Lamborn IT, Freeman AF, Jing H, Favreau AJ, et al. Combined immunodeficiency associated with DOCK8 mutations. *N Engl J Med* (2009) 361(21):2046–55. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0905506
63. Aydin SE, Kilic SS, Aytekin C, Kumar A, Porras O, Kainulainen L, et al. DOCK8 deficiency: clinical and immunological phenotype and treatment options – a review of 136 patients. *J Clin Immunol* (2015) 35(2):189–98. doi:10.1007/s10875-014-0126-0
64. Ogawa K, Tanaka Y, Uruno T, Duan X, Harada Y, Sanematsu F, et al. DOCK5 functions as a key signaling adaptor that links FcepsilonRI signals to microtubule dynamics during mast cell degranulation. *J Exp Med* (2014) 211(7):1407–19. doi:10.1084/jem.20131926
65. Pivniouk VI, Snapper SB, Kettner A, Alenius H, Laouini D, Falet H, et al. Impaired signaling via the high-affinity IgE receptor in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein-deficient mast cells. *Int Immunol* (2003) 15(12):1431–40. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxg148
66. Tangye SG, Pillay B, Randall KL, Avery DT, Phan TG, Gray P, et al. Dedicator of cytokinesis 8-deficient CD4(+) T cells are biased to a TH2 effector fate at the expense of TH1 and TH17 cells. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017) 139(3):933–49. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.07.016
67. Taylor MD, Sadhukhan S, Kottangada P, Ramgopal A, Sarkar K, D'Silva S, et al. Nuclear role of WASp in the pathogenesis of dysregulated TH1 immunity in human Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. *Sci Transl Med* (2010) 2(37):37ra44. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.3000813
68. Sarkar K, Han SS, Wen KK, Ochs HD, Dupre L, Seidman MM, et al. R-loops cause genomic instability in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome T helper lymphocytes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017). doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.11.023
69. Alroqi FJ, Charbonnier LM, Keles S, Ghandour F, Mouawad P, Sabouneh R, et al. DOCK8 deficiency presenting as an IPEX-like disorder. *J Clin Immunol* (2017) 37(8):811–9. doi:10.1007/s10875-017-0451-1
70. Humblet-Baron S, Sather B, Anover S, Becker-Herman S, Kasprowicz DJ, Khim S, et al. Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein is required for regulatory T cell homeostasis. *J Clin Invest* (2007) 117(2):407–18. doi:10.1172/JCI29539
71. Maillard MH, Cotta-de-Almeida V, Takeshima F, Nguyen DD, Michetti P, Nagler C, et al. The Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome protein is required for the function of CD4(+)CD25(+)Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med* (2007) 204(2):381–91. doi:10.1084/jem.20061338
72. Marangoni F, Trifari S, Scaramuzza S, Panaroni C, Martino S, Notarangelo LD, et al. WASP regulates suppressor activity of human and murine CD4(+) CD25(+)FOXP3(+) natural regulatory T cells. *J Exp Med* (2007) 204(2):369–80. doi:10.1084/jem.20061334
73. Singh AK, Eken A, Hagin D, Komal K, Bhise G, Shaji A, et al. DOCK8 regulates fitness and function of regulatory T cells through modulation of IL-2 signaling. *JCI Insight* (2017) 2(19). doi:10.1172/jci.insight.94275
74. Li MO, Rudensky AY. T cell receptor signalling in the control of regulatory T cell differentiation and function. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2016) 16(4):220–33. doi:10.1038/nri.2016.26
75. Ma CA, Xi L, Cauff B, DeZure A, Freeman AF, Hambleton S, et al. Somatic STAT5b gain-of-function mutations in early onset nonclonal eosinophilia, urticaria, dermatitis, and diarrhea. *Blood* (2017) 129(5):650–3. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-09-737817
76. Del Bel KL, Ragotte RJ, Saferali A, Lee S, Vercauteren SM, Mostafavi SA, et al. JAK1 gain-of-function causes an autosomal dominant immune dysregulatory and hypereosinophilic syndrome. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017) 139(6):2016–20.e5. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.12.957
77. Cohen AC, Nadeau KC, Tu W, Hwa V, Dionis K, Bezrodnik L, et al. Cutting edge: decreased accumulation and regulatory function of CD4+ CD25(high) T cells in human STAT5b deficiency. *J Immunol* (2006) 177(5):2770–4. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.5.2770


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The handling Editor declared a shared affiliation, though no other collaboration, with the author.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 19 March 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00547

# Spontaneous T Cell Proliferation: A Physiologic Process to Create and Maintain Homeostatic Balance and Diversity of the Immune System

*Booki Min**

*Department of Immunology, Lerner Research Institute, Cleveland Clinic Foundation, Cleveland, OH, United States*

Naive T lymphocytes undergo heterogeneous proliferative responses when introduced into lymphopenic hosts, referred to as "homeostatic proliferation" and "spontaneous proliferation." Spontaneous proliferation is a unique process through which the immune system generates memory phenotype cells with increasing T cell receptors repertoire complexity. Here, the mechanisms that initiate and control spontaneous proliferation are discussed.

OPEN ACCESS

**Edited by:**
*Joshua Milner, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

**Reviewed by:**
*Hui Hu, University of Alabama at Birmingham, United States*
*Cosima T. Baldari, University of Siena, Italy*

***Correspondence:**
*Booki Min*
*minb@ccf.org*

**Specialty section:**
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

**Received:** *21 January 2018*
**Accepted:** *05 March 2018*
**Published:** *19 March 2018*

**Citation:**
*Min B (2018) Spontaneous T Cell Proliferation: A Physiologic Process to Create and Maintain Homeostatic Balance and Diversity of the Immune System. Front. Immunol. 9:547. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00547*

**Keywords: lymphocytes, homeostasis, T cells, proliferation, lymphopenia**

The immune system is constantly exposed to foreign antigens derived from microbes that are either harmless or pathogenic and to self-antigens that are either normal or transformed. The fundamental goal of such immunological practices is to achieve two outcomes: to eliminate harmful pathogens and transformed cells while to preserve harmless commensal microbes and normal cells.

T cells are a trustworthy fighter that identifies and eliminates invading pathogens, yet a potential traitor capable of attacking self-tissues and causing autoimmunity. The immune system has thus evolved several lines of checkpoints that ensure safety and loyalty of developing lymphocytes. Thymocytes that express useless or harmful antigen receptors are eliminated by apoptotic cell death, while those expressing self-MHC restricted antigen receptors with moderate reactivity to self-antigens are allowed to mature. T cells that survive the selection processes and leave the thymus to express the T cell receptors (TCR) displaying a measurable, yet weak reactivity against self-antigens that is not strong enough to cause autoimmunity, yet sufficient enough to maintain both survivability and reactivity to the subsequent antigen encounter (1, 2). Those T cells selected by relatively stronger interaction toward self-antigens may further develop into T cells with regulatory functions (3–5). In the periphery, T cells constantly receive a "tonic" signal from interacting with $MHC^+$ antigen presenting cells (APCs), resulting in a partial phosphorylation of the ζ chain of the TCR complexes (2). This is critical to maintain proper reactivity and survival of T cells, although the impact on the latter remains controversial (2, 6). Since developing thymocytes are selected based on "self-reactivity," the immune system develops an additional measure to prevent unnecessary T cell activation in response to self-antigens in the periphery, including anergy and regulatory T cells. The failure in such regulatory mechanisms results in uncontrolled autoimmune inflammatory responses. Thus, keeping the regulation under control is a matter of utmost importance.

The number and composition of T cells in the periphery is tightly controlled at a relatively constant level throughout life, suggesting the existence of a homeostatic mechanism(s). Alterations in the homeostasis trigger series of compensatory mechanisms that reinstate homeostatic equilibrium. For example, viral infection causes clonal expansion of antigen-specific CD8 T cells, during which peripheral CD8 T cells massively expand and up to ~90% of the total CD8 T cells may become

antigen specific in case of lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus infection (7). Once the infection is cleared, homeostasis returns to the normal level as the majority of the expanded effector cells are eliminated, leaving newly generated virus-specific memory T cells. Lymphopenia incurred from normal physiologic processes that occur during neonatal period, from pathogenic conditions, such as viral infection, or from therapeutic interventions triggers T cell proliferation that restores the T cell deficiency (8–10). Therefore, T cell homeostasis is a key process that requires a precise balance between proliferation and apoptosis. A plethora of evidence indicates that dysregulation in T cell homeostasis can lead to inflammatory disorders, including autoimmune diseases, HIV-associated immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome, Omenn syndrome, bare lymphocyte syndrome, and others (11–14).

## T CELL PROLIFERATION IN LYMPHOPENIC SETTINGS, A MODEL TO STUDY T CELL HOMEOSTASIS

For the past decades, examining T cell proliferation under lymphopenic settings has been the primary *in vivo* model system to investigate mechanisms controlling T cell homeostasis and immunopathology associated with homeostatic imbalance. Pioneering studies from the Chen and Bevan groups demonstrated that naive CD8 T cells transferred into irradiated or $Rag^{-/-}$ recipients undergo proliferative responses without "cognate antigen" stimulation and acquire a memory-like phenotype (15, 16). The proliferative potential of such responses was once estimated that one T cell has a potential to generate $10^{15}$ progenies during the process (17).

## SPONTANEOUS PROLIFERATION VS. HOMEOSTATIC PROLIFERATION

While earlier studies interchangeably utilized mild and severe lymphopenic models to investigate proliferative T cell responses inclusively called homeostatic proliferation (or lymphopenia-induced proliferation), subsequent studies uncovered that T cell proliferation within lymphopenic settings is highly heterogeneous. We reported that there are at least two mechanistically distinct proliferation modes referred to as spontaneous proliferation and homeostatic proliferation (18). Spontaneous proliferation is a robust proliferation found in "severe" lymphopenic hosts, including mice with mutation in genes involved in lymphocyte generation. Spontaneously proliferating cells divide more than a cell division per day even in the absence of homeostatic cytokines (18, 19). In case of CD4 T cells, the requirement for spontaneous proliferation is rather unique, because MHC II molecules expressed on $CD11c^+$ dendritic cells (DCs), but not on B cells are required for proliferation (20). The requirement for naive CD8 T cell spontaneous proliferation is less rigorous, and either MHC I or MHC II expressed on DCs or B cells are sufficient to induce proliferation (20). Additional important feature for spontaneous proliferation is that the proliferating cells turn into phenotypically different populations. They rapidly differentiate into memory phenotype cells, acquiring memory/effector cell markers and an ability to produce inflammatory cytokines upon stimulation (18). Unlike T cells activated by cognate antigen, however, spontaneously proliferating T cells do not express early activation markers (CD69 and CD25), although CD44 upregulation and CD62L downregulation still occurs, allowing them to preferentially migrate into non-lymphoid tissues as antigen-stimulated effector/memory T cells do. Homeostatic proliferation is a slow response that occurs within "mild" lymphopenic conditions following sublethal irradiation or T cell ablation in the presence of functionally intact thymus (18, 21). Homeostatically proliferating CD4 T cells undergo a cell division every 3–4 days, although CD8 T cell proliferation is considerably faster than that of CD4 T cells (18). TCR interaction with MHC:peptide complexes is instrumental for the responses as blocking the interaction inhibit proliferation (22, 23). However, TCR engagement alone is not sufficient for proliferation. Treatment with neutralizing antibodies against homeostatic cytokine, namely IL-7, significantly inhibits homeostatic proliferation of T cells (18). Therefore, signals generated from the TCR and the cytokine receptors must be incorporated to trigger proliferation. The nature of antigens involved in homeostatic proliferation remains unclear. However, it is likely low affinity self-antigens because homeostatic proliferation is not impaired in germ-free lymphopenic recipients (19).

## QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE SIGNALING MODELS

To account for the distinct nature and underlying mechanisms underlying homeostatic and spontaneous proliferation we propose the quantitative and qualitative signaling models (**Figure 1A**). The quantitative signaling model for homeostatic proliferation postulates that the relative amount of available resources determines the mode of T cell proliferation. The level of serum IL-7 is found significantly higher in lymphopenic hosts (24, 25). In fact, IL-7 production by stromal cells appears to be controlled as a part of homeostatic mechanism (24), through which peripheral T cell survival, proliferation, and apoptosis are balanced. In addition, the relative abundance of lymphocytes in the periphery may further determine the competition. In $Rag^{-/-}$ recipients, a low competition (i.e., more availability) for IL-7 promotes cell survival by enhanced expression of anti-apoptotic factors and cell proliferation by degrading cell cycle inhibitor p27 (26). Homeostatic proliferation is a dominant response in these environments. However, the level of IL-7 available is likely lower in $TCR\beta^{-/-}$ or TCR transgenic mouse recipient due to competing endogenous B cells or transgenic T cells. Due to competition for IL-7, homeostatic proliferation is not typically observed in these recipients (18, 27). However, provision of exogenous IL-7 induces homeostatic proliferation in such conditions, supporting the importance of IL-7 during homeostatic proliferation. Moreover, the extent of proliferation is similar to that observed in $Rag^{-/-}$ or sublethally irradiated recipients and is proportional to the amount of given IL-7 (18). T cells transferred into lympho-replete wild type recipients remain undivided, and providing exogenous IL-7 is sufficient to trigger homeostatic proliferation of the transferred cells in lymphocyte-sufficient environments (18).

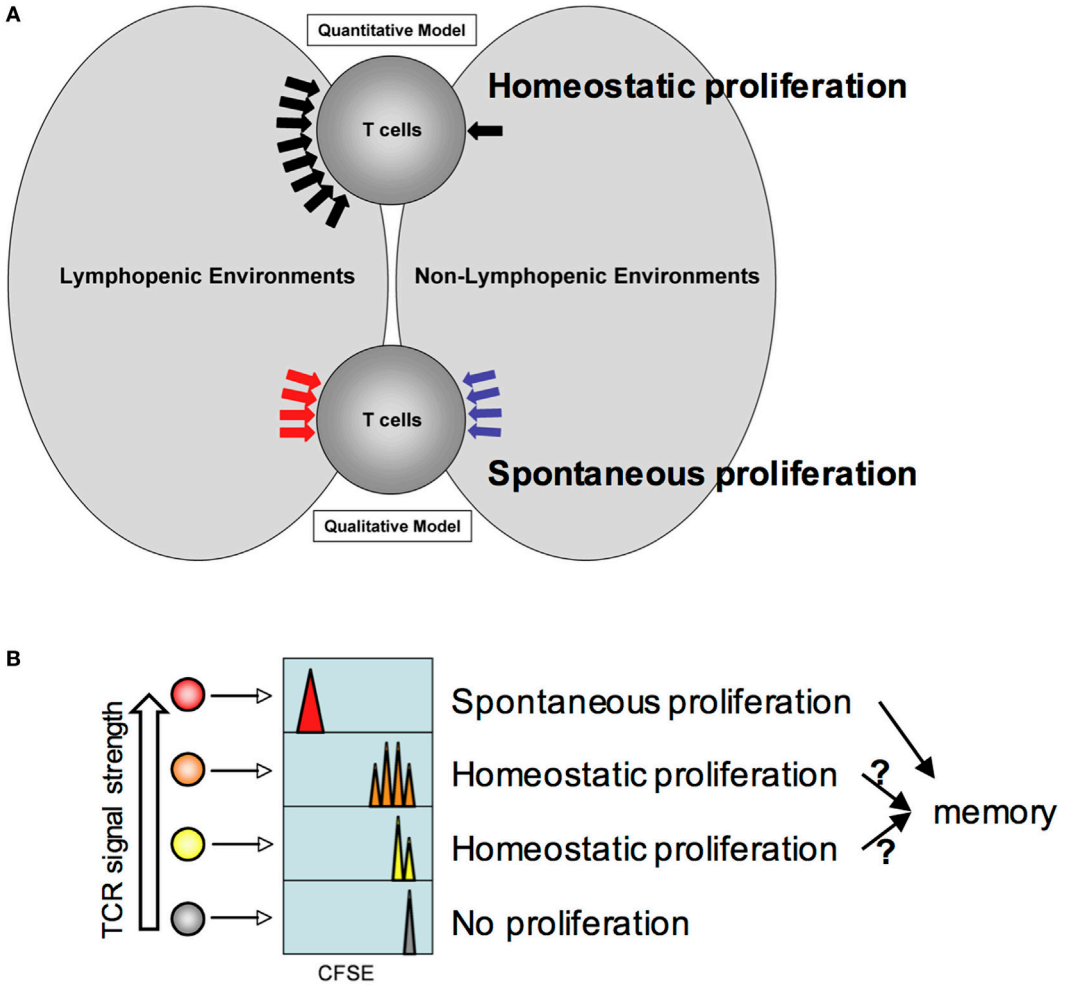



**FIGURE 1** | Model for homeostatic and spontaneous proliferation. **(A)** Quantitative and qualitative signaling model. The model depicts potential signaling mechanisms during homeostatic and spontaneous proliferation. Homeostatic proliferation is triggered by excessive soluble resources available under lymphopenic environments. By contrast, spontaneous proliferation is triggered by different types of signaling mechanism only available under lymphopenic conditions. **(B)** Relative T cell receptors signal strength against endogenous peptide:MHC complexes determines which T cells undergo homeostatic and spontaneous proliferation. The higher the strength is, the more likely the T cells would undergo spontaneous proliferation. If the strength is below threshold, cytokine availability controls homeostatic proliferation. T cells would remain undivided.

The qualitative signaling model for spontaneous proliferation postulates that the nature of signals that T cells receive is fundamentally different from those that T cells receive within lymphocyte-sufficient conditions (**Figure 1A**). IL-7 or other homeostatic cytokines play little or no role in this response. Instead, antigens originated from commensal microbes appear essential in inducing spontaneous proliferation as proliferation is considerably reduced in germ-free lymphopenic animals (19). However, it is worth noting that a measurable spontaneous proliferation is still observed in germ-free lymphopenic hosts, suggesting a contribution of food or self-antigens. Given the fast proliferation dynamics and full differentiation, it is likely that the signaling cascade may be analogous to that of cognate antigen-induced T cell activation.

The molecular basis underlying spontaneous and homeostatic proliferation has been tested using various gene knockout animals. Zamoyska and colleagues reported using the $p56^{lck}$-deficient system that sustained lck expression is required for the proliferation of CD4 and CD8 T cells (28). Lck deficiency in transferred T cells impairs homeostatic and possibly spontaneous proliferation of both CD4 and CD8 T cells (28). However, the study was carried out over 3–6 weeks post transfer. The study is thus not suitable to determine the exact requirement of lck during spontaneous proliferation. Shen et al. examined the importance of the LAT (linker for activation of T cells) during T cell proliferation in lymphopenia (29). They also measured $LAT^{-/-}$ T cell proliferation in T cell-deficient $LAT^{-/-}$ recipients, where T cell development is blocked. LAT deficiency greatly impairs T cell proliferation, suggesting that LAT expression may be necessary for spontaneous proliferation (29). Gascoigne and colleagues examined the role of different protein kinase C isoforms and found that PKCη, but not PKCθ plays a key role in regulating homeostatic proliferation

of CD8 T cells in sublethally irradiated recipients (30). Signaling pathways that occur during spontaneous proliferation remain to be investigated.

Does each T cell express equal potential to undergo homeostatic and/or spontaneous responses and are they stochastically selected? Or alternatively, are they predetermined for either but not for both responses? The strength of "tonic" signals may be a key factor determining which cells are selected to respond to homeostatic or endogenous cues. Peripheral mature T cells are a highly heterogeneous population such that each T cell clone expresses the antigen receptors with spectral affinity against self (and/or commensal) antigens. The heterogeneity (i.e., the strength of such interaction) can be reflected by the level of surface expression of CD5, a negative regulator of TCR signaling (31). An earlier study where $CD5^{hi}$ or $CD5^{lo}$ naïve T cells were purified and transferred into mild lymphopenic recipients showed more extensive homeostatic proliferation of $CD5^{hi}$ T cells in sublethally irradiated recipients (32). Therefore, T cells expressing higher affinity antigen receptors are likely to participate in spontaneous proliferation, although this hypothesis needs to be tested. The proliferating cells turn into memory phenotype cells and play a central role in regulating spontaneous proliferation of naive T cells (see below). On the other hand, T cells expressing low or moderate affinity receptors are expected to undergo homeostatic proliferation or remained undivided (**Figure 1B**). Interestingly, a correlation between slow cell division and CD44 upregulation was observed during homeostatic proliferation (18). These cells may eventually differentiate, if allowed, into memory phenotype cells analogous to those generated from spontaneous mechanism and participate in enhancing the memory cell repertoire complexity (see below). Alternatively, there may exist a threshold that allows proliferating cells to become functional memory cells (33). Marginal upregulation of CD44 expression in homeostatically proliferating cells may become transient and reversible as previously observed (15). $Foxp3^{+}$ regulatory T cells are thought to be selected from developing T cells recognizing self-antigens with a higher affinity (34–36). Indeed, Tregs or $CD44^{hi}$ memory phenotype CD4 T cells are known to undergo more extensive spontaneous proliferation even within lymphocyte-sufficient environments (37, 38).

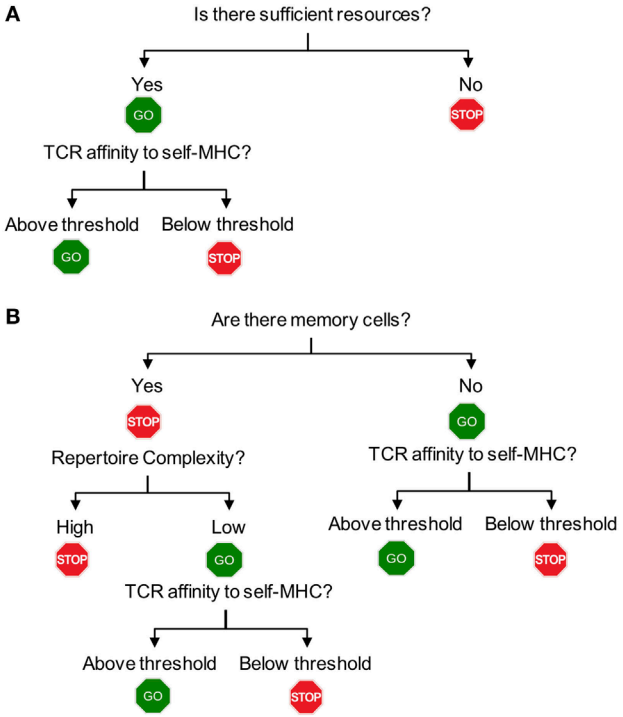



**FIGURE 2** | Flowchart for homeostatic and spontaneous proliferation. **(A)** Homeostatic proliferation. The first step for T cells to check is whether there is sufficient homeostatic factor available. Once the source is available, then the relative affinity of each T cells expresses against MHC-self-antigens (or exogenous antigen as well) will determine proliferation. **(B)** Spontaneous proliferation. Unlike homeostatic proliferation, the first step deciding spontaneous proliferation is whether there is a memory population in the periphery. The lack of any memory population triggers a full blown spontaneous proliferation during which T cells with higher affinity to MHC-self-antigens (and commensal antigens) are induced for proliferation. If there is a population of pre-existing memory cells, the complexity of T cell receptors (TCR) repertoire will then become the next step determining proliferation. Only incomplete repertoire complexity of memory cells will allow spontaneous proliferation to occur. The final decision will depend upon the TCR that each T cell expresses. Only if the TCR strength toward endogenous peptides (self or commensal) is above threshold, they will be allowed to undergo proliferation.

## PRINCIPLES FOR SPONTANEOUS PROLIFERATION

Examining spontaneous proliferation has uncovered several unique features that are distinct from those operated during homeostatic proliferation (**Figure 2**). *First, spontaneous proliferation is triggered by the lack of memory T cells not by the total T cell numbers*. The earlier notion accounting for T cell proliferation within lymphopenic environments was that T cells "sense" the existence of neighboring T cells. Homeostatic proliferation competing for soluble resources is properly explained by the notion. However, the finding that spontaneous proliferation is comparably induced when T cells are transferred "into" TCR transgenic recipients, where wild type level peripheral T cells with monoclonal TCR repertoire and primarily naive phenotype exist strongly suggests that the total number of peripheral T cells is not a factor for proliferation. In fact, the absence of memory T cells in this condition is the signal triggering proliferation. *Second, the clonality of peripheral T cells determines spontaneous proliferation*. However, it was further shown that the presence of memory cells itself cannot be a sole factor determining spontaneous proliferation (**Figure 2B**). TCR transgenic T cells undergo spontaneous proliferation when transferred to TCR transgenic hosts with a different clonotype, while remain undivided when transferred to the hosts with the same clonotype, demonstrating the importance of TCR clonality (39). One may also postulate that memory T cells may better compete for homeostatic resources, thereby efficiently inhibiting spontaneous proliferation. Then, it is predicted that TCR transgenic recipients with abundant memory cells (of the same specificity) would be sufficient to control the proliferation. Immunizing TCR transgenic mice with cognate antigens by which large proportions of peripheral T cells

become effector/memory cells is unable to inhibit spontaneous proliferation of polyclonal naïve T cells (40), suggesting that the clonality of memory T cells is crucial. *Third, the repertoire complexity of memory T cells controls spontaneous proliferation.* Varying numbers of T cells transferred into immunodeficient mice form memory phenotype cells with different repertoire complexity. Importantly, the total number of memory phenotype cells generated from different T cell inoculums' remain relatively similar, suggesting that there appears to be a homeostatic mechanism that maintains the size of memory T cells (40). When the second cohorts of naïve T cells are introduced into these recipients, the extent of spontaneous proliferation of newly transferred cells is directly determined by the repertoire diversity of the pre-existing memory cells (40). When pre-existing memory T cell repertoire complexity is low, the extent of new spontaneous proliferation from the second naïve T cells is greater. By contrast, pre-existing memory T cells with higher repertoire complexity efficiently limit spontaneous proliferation of new naïve T cells. Direct comparison of the TCR clonality between the pre-existing and newly formed memory phenotype cells demonstrates that their TCR clonality is mostly non-overlapping (40). Therefore, it is concluded that a "hole" in the memory T cell repertoire allows naive T cells that are capable of recognizing antigens occupying the hole to undergo spontaneous proliferation and to differentiate into memory cells (41). As the result, the "hole" would be filled up by these newly formed memory phenotype cells, increasing the overall repertoire complexity and becoming homeostatically "stable."

## REGULATION OF SPONTANEOUS PROLIFERATION

The fact that spontaneous proliferation is diminished in germ-free immunodeficient hosts strongly suggests that antigens derived from commensal organisms are the primary source supporting proliferation and differentiation. However, the very similar commensal antigens are also likely presented in a lympho-replete condition possibly in a tolerogenic fashion. *Why do commensal antigens fail to trigger spontaneous proliferation in this case?* We already discussed that the presence of memory phenotype cells with higher repertoire complexity controls the induction of spontaneous proliferation. *Then, how does it operate?*

Reconstituting immunodeficient mice with two cohorts of T cells at different time points gives us a system, where one could examine the underlying cellular mechanisms. Pre-existing memory phenotype CD4 T cells limit spontaneous proliferation of both naive CD4 and CD8 T cells (23). The hypothesis is that the memory T cells inhibit naive T cell proliferation *via* altering APC functions. By reconstituting mice with a mixture of TCRβ$^{-/-}$ bone marrow progenitors that express MHC II or not, we create a mouse model in which half of the bone marrow-derived APCs express MHC II (and the other half of the APCs are derived from MHC II$^{-/-}$ bone marrow progenitors), while equally expressing MHC I molecules. Transferring CD4 T cells will trigger spontaneous proliferation, which will differentiate into memory phenotype cells. The pre-existing memory phenotype CD4 T cells would be interacting with MHC II$^{+}$ APCs, while MHC II$^{-/-}$ APCs would remain "untouched" by those memory cells. Freshly transferred naive CD8 T cells undergo spontaneous proliferation even in the presence of functionally competent memory phenotype CD4 T cells only if the half of the APCs does not express MHC II (**Figure 3A**). We also examine if memory CD4 T cells inhibit naïve CD4 T cell spontaneous proliferation *via* similar mechanism. Bone marrow chimeras harboring different haplotype MHC II molecules (for example, haplotype H2*b* and H2*k*) are created (**Figure 3B**). Memory CD4 T cells restricted to the H2*b* haplotype are able to limit spontaneous proliferation of naïve CD4 T cells, restricted to the H2*k* haplotype only when all APCs do express both haplotypes. By contrast, spontaneous proliferation is strongly induced when some APCs express the H2*k*, but not the H2*b* (**Figure 3B**). T cells may down-modulate peptide-MHC complexes on APCs, inhibiting T cell responses to the same peptide-MHC complexes (42). We found that memory T cell interaction with especially DCs induce the production of IL-27 from CD8$^{+}$ DC subsets, and that IL-27 plays a central role in regulating spontaneous proliferation of naïve CD4 and CD8 T cells, because IL-27R$^{-/-}$ naïve T cell

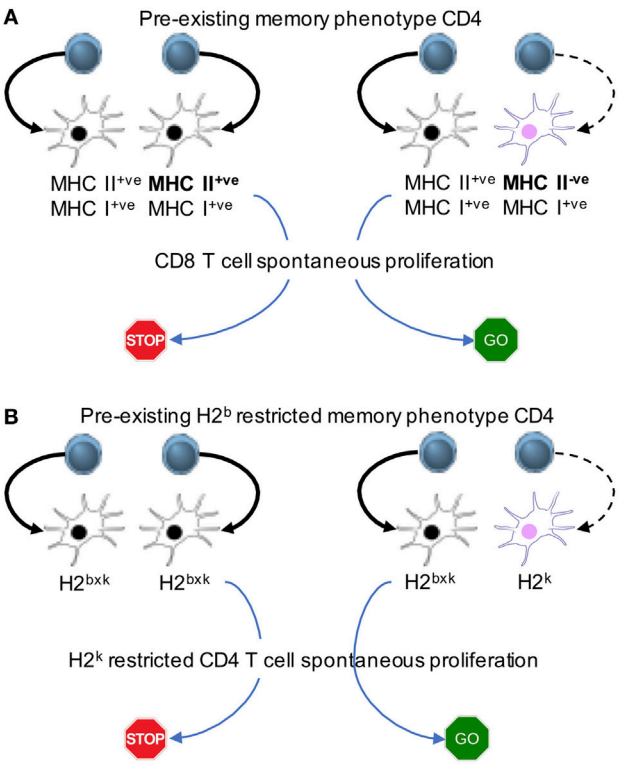



**FIGURE 3** | Memory cell-induced regulation of spontaneous proliferation operates *via* antigen presenting cells (APCs). Mixed bone marrow chimeras in which different APC populations expressing MHC I and II or MHC I alone **(A)** or expressing different MHC II haplotypes **(B)** are created. The first cohort of CD4 T cells is transferred to generate "pre-existing" memory phenotype cells. The second cohort of naive CD8 **(A)** or naive CD4 **(B)** cells is transferred into the recipients. The model system uncovers that the interaction between APCs and pre-existing memory phenotype CD4 T cells is essential to limit the proliferation of new naive T cells.

spontaneous proliferation is not affected by the presence of memory phenotype CD4 cells with complex repertoire diversity and of fully competent APCs (23).

## SPONTANEOUS PROLIFERATION IN A PHYSIOLOGIC SETTING

Does spontaneous proliferation occur in a physiologic setting? We previously reported that naïve T cells transferred into wild type newborn mice undergo spontaneous proliferation (10). During postnatal life, the peripheral lymphoid tissues are rapidly occupied by recent thymic emigrants (43). Those early emigrant T cells are highly proliferating cells as determined by BrdU incorporation and differentiate into memory phenotype cells (44). In fact, delaying the T cell transfer at different postnatal life greatly diminishes spontaneous proliferation of the T cells, suggesting a competition from endogenously generated T cells (10). What is the immunological significance of these spontaneously generated memory phenotype cells? Recent report from Kawabe et al. elegantly demonstrated that these memory phenotype cells acquire T-bet transcription factor expression in response to endogenously supplied IL-12 (38). Most importantly, this study also showed that these IFNγ-producing memory phenotype cells provide a nonspecific host resistance against Toxoplasma infection, enhancing the adaptive immune responses (38). These cells resemble "virtual memory" CD8 T cells expressing foreign antigen-specific memory phenotype in unimmunized animals that are generated by homeostatic mechanisms (45, 46).

## OUTSTANDING QUESTIONS

In conclusion, I would argue that spontaneous proliferation is a key homeostatic process by which endogenous memory phenotype cells are generated and their repertoire complexity increases. There are several key questions worth re-visiting. First, we know very little on the molecular pathways that activate naive T cells to support their differentiation into memory phenotype cells. Although there have been earlier studies examining signaling mediators involved in T cell proliferation within lymphopenic environments, the precise signaling cascade underlying spontaneous proliferation remains poorly understood. What are the key kinases activated during spontaneous proliferation and are they different from cognate antigen-induced activation or homeostatic proliferation? Second, little is known about the antigens that trigger spontaneous proliferation. Are there specific commensal microbe antigens supporting proliferation? Which self-antigens are capable of inducing spontaneous proliferation? Is TCR strength against self-antigens reflected by CD5 expression playing a role in inducing spontaneous proliferation? Last, do Foxp3$^+$ regulatory T cells undergo spontaneous proliferation and is the repertoire complexity of regulatory T cells similarly completed through spontaneous mechanisms seen in conventional T cells? Given the self- or commensal-antigen-driven nature of spontaneous proliferation, it is likely that autoimmunity or inflammatory responses in the intestinal tissues may be induced by dysregulated spontaneous proliferation.

## PERSONAL NOTE

From June 2000 to October 2014, I have had the privilege of working in the Laboratory of Immunology of the NIAID under the guidance of Bill. One day after I joined the lab, he asked me a question. "Will T cells divide in newborn mice ?" Since my Ph.D. project was about neonatal tolerance, his question sounded something testable (and most importantly doable). So, I did the experiment, which changed my interest in Immunology since then. I became fascinated by the concept of lymphocyte homeostasis, which I would still call the main backbone of my current research program. The fact that I was the only fellow in the lab who does not work on IL-4 or on Th2 differentiation did not bother me at all. I still remember how much I had enjoyed doing experiments day and night, preparing and analyzing data for the weekly meeting, discussing the data with him, and planning the next experiments. Nurturing and supportive environment at the Laboratory of Immunology, other faculty members I often interacted with (Ethan Shevach, Ron Germain, Alan Sher, etc.) and colleagues (Jeff Zhu, Lily Guo, Hidehiro Yamane, Javier Cote-Sierra, Nobuki Hayashi, Gilles Foucras, Graham Le Gros, Zami Ben-Sasson, Cyndy Watson, Jane Hu-Li, Irena Stefanova, Dragana Jankovic, and Zvi Grossman), and Bill. It was the perfect combination of all. Even after I had left the lab to run my own laboratory, he continued to inspire and teach me. Thank you, Bill and you are immensely missed.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## FUNDING

BM is supported by grants from the NIAID (AI125247 and AI121524), NMSS (RG1411-02051), AAF (14-001), and CCF.

## REFERENCES

1. Stefanova I, Dorfman JR, Tsukamoto M, Germain RN. On the role of self-recognition in T cell responses to foreign antigen. *Immunol Rev* (2003) 191:97–106. doi:10.1034/j.1600-065X.2003.00006.x
2. Stefanova I, Dorfman JR, Germain RN. Self-recognition promotes the foreign antigen sensitivity of naive T lymphocytes. *Nature* (2002) 420(6914):429–34. doi:10.1038/nature01146
3. Wyss L, Stadinski BD, King CG, Schallenberg S, McCarthy NI, Lee JY, et al. Affinity for self antigen selects Treg cells with distinct functional properties. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17(9):1093–101. doi:10.1038/ni.3522
4. Moran AE, Hogquist KA. T-cell receptor affinity in thymic development. *Immunology* (2012) 135(4):261–7. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2567.2011.03547.x
5. Jordan MS, Boesteanu A, Reed AJ, Petrone AL, Holenbeck AE, Lerman MA, et al. Thymic selection of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells induced by an agonist self-peptide. *Nat Immunol* (2001) 2(4):301–6. doi:10.1038/86302

6. Dorfman JR, Stefanova I, Yasutomo K, Germain RN. CD4+ T cell survival is not directly linked to self-MHC-induced TCR signaling. *Nat Immunol* (2000) 1(4):329–35. doi:10.1038/79783
7. Masopust D, Murali-Krishna K, Ahmed R. Quantitating the magnitude of the lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus-specific CD8 T-cell response: it is even bigger than we thought. *J Virol* (2007) 81(4):2002–11. doi:10.1128/JVI.01459-06
8. Surh CD, Sprent J. Homeostatic T cell proliferation: how far can T cells be activated to self-ligands? *J Exp Med* (2000) 192(4):F9–14. doi:10.1084/jem.192.4.F9
9. Boonnak K, Vogel L, Feldmann F, Feldmann H, Legge KL, Subbarao K. Lymphopenia associated with highly virulent H5N1 virus infection due to plasmacytoid dendritic cell-mediated apoptosis of T cells. *J Immunol* (2014) 192(12):5906–12. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1302992
10. Min B, McHugh R, Sempowski GD, Mackall C, Foucras G, Paul WE. Neonates support lymphopenia-induced proliferation. *Immunity* (2003) 18(1):131–40. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00508-3
11. Kuchroo VK, Ohashi PS, Sartor RB, Vinuesa CG. Dysregulation of immune homeostasis in autoimmune diseases. *Nat Med* (2012) 18(1):42–7. doi:10.1038/nm.2621
12. Barber DL, Andrade BB, Sereti I, Sher A. Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome: the trouble with immunity when you had none. *Nat Rev Microbiol* (2012) 10(2):150–6. doi:10.1038/nrmicro2712
13. Cassani B, Poliani PL, Marrella V, Schena F, Sauer AV, Ravanini M, et al. Homeostatic expansion of autoreactive immunoglobulin-secreting cells in the Rag2 mouse model of Omenn syndrome. *J Exp Med* (2010) 207(7):1525–40. doi:10.1084/jem.20091928
14. Waldburger JM, Masternak K, Muhlethaler-Mottet A, Villard J, Peretti M, Landmann S, et al. Lessons from the bare lymphocyte syndrome: molecular mechanisms regulating MHC class II expression. *Immunol Rev* (2000) 178:148–65. doi:10.1034/j.1600-065X.2000.17813.x
15. Goldrath AW, Bogatzki LY, Bevan MJ. Naive T cells transiently acquire a memory-like phenotype during homeostasis-driven proliferation. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192(4):557–64. doi:10.1084/jem.192.4.557
16. Cho BK, Rao VP, Ge Q, Eisen HN, Chen J. Homeostasis-stimulated proliferation drives naive T cells to differentiate directly into memory T cells. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192(4):549–56. doi:10.1084/jem.192.4.549
17. Freitas AA, Rocha B. Population biology of lymphocytes: the flight for survival. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2000) 18:83–111. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.18.1.83
18. Min B, Yamane H, Hu-Li J, Paul WE. Spontaneous and homeostatic proliferation of CD4 T cells are regulated by different mechanisms. *J Immunol* (2005) 174(10):6039–44. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.174.10.6039
19. Kieper WC, Troy A, Burghardt JT, Ramsey C, Lee JY, Jiang HQ, et al. Recent immune status determines the source of antigens that drive homeostatic T cell expansion. *J Immunol* (2005) 174(6):3158–63. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.174.6.3158
20. Do JS, Min B. Differential requirements of MHC and of DCs for endogenous proliferation of different T-cell subsets in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2009) 106(48):20394–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.0909954106
21. Ernst B, Lee DS, Chang JM, Sprent J, Surh CD. The peptide ligands mediating positive selection in the thymus control T cell survival and homeostatic proliferation in the periphery. *Immunity* (1999) 11(2):173–81. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80092-8
22. Tan JT, Ernst B, Kieper WC, LeRoy E, Sprent J, Surh CD. Interleukin (IL)-15 and IL-7 jointly regulate homeostatic proliferation of memory phenotype CD8+ cells but are not required for memory phenotype CD4+ cells. *J Exp Med* (2002) 195(12):1523–32. doi:10.1084/jem.20020066
23. Do JS, Visperas A, Oh K, Stohlman SA, Min B. Memory CD4 T cells induce selective expression of IL-27 in CD8+ dendritic cells and regulate homeostatic naive T cell proliferation. *J Immunol* (2012) 188(1):230–7. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1101908
24. Guimond M, Veenstra RG, Grindler DJ, Zhang H, Cui Y, Murphy RD, et al. Interleukin 7 signaling in dendritic cells regulates the homeostatic proliferation and niche size of CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10(2):149–57. doi:10.1038/ni.1695
25. Bolotin E, Annett G, Parkman R, Weinberg K. Serum levels of IL-7 in bone marrow transplant recipients: relationship to clinical characteristics and lymphocyte count. *Bone Marrow Transplant* (1999) 23(8):783–8. doi:10.1038/sj.bmt.1701655
26. Li WQ, Jiang Q, Aleem E, Kaldis P, Khaled AR, Durum SK. IL-7 promotes T cell proliferation through destabilization of p27Kip1. *J Exp Med* (2006) 203(3):573–82. doi:10.1084/jem.20051520
27. Do JS, Min B. IL-15 produced and trans-presented by DCs underlies homeostatic competition between CD8 and {gamma}{delta} T cells in vivo. *Blood* (2009) 113(25):6361–71. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-12-192997
28. Seddon B, Legname G, Tomlinson P, Zamoyska R. Long-term survival but impaired homeostatic proliferation of Naive T cells in the absence of p56lck. *Science* (2000) 290(5489):127–31. doi:10.1126/science.290.5489.127
29. Shen S, Chuck MI, Zhu M, Fuller DM, Yang CW, Zhang W. The importance of LAT in the activation, homeostasis, and regulatory function of T cells. *J Biol Chem* (2010) 285(46):35393–405. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.145052
30. Fu G, Hu J, Niederberger-Magnenat N, Rybakin V, Casas J, Yachi PP, et al. Protein kinase C eta is required for T cell activation and homeostatic proliferation. *Sci Signal* (2011) 4(202):ra84. doi:10.1126/scisignal.2002058
31. Azzam HS, DeJarnette JB, Huang K, Emmons R, Park CS, Sommers CL, et al. Fine tuning of TCR signaling by CD5. *J Immunol* (2001) 166(9):5464–72. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.166.9.5464
32. Smith K, Seddon B, Purbhoo MA, Zamoyska R, Fisher AG, Merkenschlager M. Sensory adaptation in naive peripheral CD4 T cells. *J Exp Med* (2001) 194(9):1253–61. doi:10.1084/jem.194.9.1253
33. Hamilton SE, Wolkers MC, Schoenberger SP, Jameson SC. The generation of protective memory-like CD8+ T cells during homeostatic proliferation requires CD4+ T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2006) 7(5):475–81. doi:10.1038/ni1326
34. Lee HM, Bautista JL, Scott-Browne J, Mohan JF, Hsieh CS. A broad range of self-reactivity drives thymic regulatory T cell selection to limit responses to self. *Immunity* (2012) 37(3):475–86. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.07.009
35. Wong J, Obst R, Correia-Neves M, Losyev G, Mathis D, Benoist C. Adaptation of TCR repertoires to self-peptides in regulatory and nonregulatory CD4+ T cells. *J Immunol* (2007) 178(11):7032–41. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.178.11.7032
36. Hsieh CS, Lee HM, Lio CW. Selection of regulatory T cells in the thymus. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2012) 12(3):157–67. doi:10.1038/nri3155
37. Tang AL, Teijaro JR, Njau MN, Chandran SS, Azimzadeh A, Nadler SG, et al. CTLA4 expression is an indicator and regulator of steady-state CD4+ FoxP3+ T cell homeostasis. *J Immunol* (2008) 181(3):1806–13. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.181.3.1806
38. Kawabe T, Jankovic D, Kawabe S, Huang Y, Lee PH, Yamane H, et al. Memory-phenotype CD4(+) T cells spontaneously generated under steady-state conditions exert innate TH1-like effector function. *Sci Immunol* (2017) 2(12). doi:10.1126/sciimmunol.aam9304
39. Troy AE, Shen H. Cutting edge: homeostatic proliferation of peripheral T lymphocytes is regulated by clonal competition. *J Immunol* (2003) 170(2):672–6. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.170.2.672
40. Min B, Foucras G, Meier-Schellersheim M, Paul WE. Spontaneous proliferation, a response of naive CD4 T cells determined by the diversity of the memory cell repertoire. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2004) 101(11):3874–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.0400606101
41. Min B, Paul WE. Endogenous proliferation: burst-like CD4 T cell proliferation in lymphopenic settings. *Semin Immunol* (2005) 17(3):201–7. doi:10.1016/j.smim.2005.02.005
42. Kedl RM, Schaefer BC, Kappler JW, Marrack P. T cells down-modulate peptide-MHC complexes on APCs in vivo. *Nat Immunol* (2002) 3(1):27–32. doi:10.1038/ni742
43. Opiela SJ, Koru-Sengul T, Adkins B. Murine neonatal recent thymic emigrants are phenotypically and functionally distinct from adult recent thymic emigrants. *Blood* (2009) 113(22):5635–43. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-08-173658
44. Le Campion A, Bourgeois C, Lambolez F, Martin B, Leaument S, Dautigny N, et al. Naive T cells proliferate strongly in neonatal mice in response to self-peptide/self-MHC complexes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2002) 99(7):4538–43. doi:10.1073/pnas.062621699
45. Lee JY, Hamilton SE, Akue AD, Hogquist KA, Jameson SC. Virtual memory CD8 T cells display unique functional properties. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2013) 110(33):13498–503. doi:10.1073/pnas.1307572110
46. White JT, Cross EW, Burchill MA, Danhorn T, McCarter MD, Rosen HR, et al. Virtual memory T cells develop and mediate bystander protective immunity

in an IL-15-dependent manner. *Nat Commun* (2016) 7:11291. doi:10.1038/ncomms11291

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

MINI REVIEW
published: 13 March 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00520

# Studies of Mast Cells: Adventures in Serendipity

*Melissa A. Brown**

*Department of Microbiology and Immunology, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL, United States*

Like many of us who had the great fortune to work with Bill Paul, my science life was immeasurably altered by my interactions with him. Although intimidating at first because of his stature in the immunology world, it was soon clear that he not only truly cared about the specific research we were doing together, but he wished to convey to his trainees an approach to science that was open, always questioning, and infinitely fun. His enthusiasm was infectious and after my training with him, despite stresses due to funding and publishing hurdles, I never regretted the path I took. My research took a sharp turn from the studies of adaptive immunity I had planned on pursuing after my fellowship with Bill to a life long quest to understand the wonders of the mast cell, a relatively rare innate immune cell. This came about because Bill's curiosity and expectation of the unexpected allowed him to view, in retrospect, a rather mundane observation we made together involving a non-physiological transformed mast cell line as something that might be really interesting. I have never forgotten that lesson: Look at the data with an eye on the big picture. Sometimes the unexpected is more interesting than predicted results. His example in this regard was incredibly important when as an independent investigator a mistake in mouse sex determination led to unexpected and very confusing data. Yet, these data ultimately revealed a role for mast cells in male-specific protection in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, the mouse model of multiple sclerosis. Bill's influence in immunology is far-reaching and will continue to be felt as those of us who train our own students and post-doctoral fellows pass on his wisdom and approach to scientific research.

**Keywords: IL-4, mast cells, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis/multiple sclerosis, sex-dependent response, IL-33/ST2, testosterone**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu,*
*National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*John R. Lukens,*
*University of Virginia, United States*
*Yousang Gwack,*
*UCLA David Geffen School of Medicine, United States*

***Correspondence:**
*Melissa A. Brown*
*m-brown12@northwestern.edu*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *02 February 2018*
***Accepted:*** *28 February 2018*
***Published:*** *13 March 2018*

***Citation:***
*Brown MA (2018) Studies of Mast Cells: Adventures in Serendipity. Front. Immunol. 9:520. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00520*

## INTRODUCTION

In January of 1983, I arrived at the Laboratory of Immunology, NIAID, NIH, to work as a post-doctoral fellow with Bill Paul. Like most scientists at the time, I was very enamored by the burgeoning revolution in molecular biology and hoped to gain expertise in gene cloning and expression analysis in the context of the very strong cellular immunology environment of Bill's laboratory. As Bill and I discussed projects, it became clear that we needed a better way to study IL-4, a cytokine then referred to as B cell stimulatory factor-1 or BSF-1. This molecule had been recently identified by Maureen Howard and Bill as an "activity" in phorbol ester-stimulated EL4 T cell lymphoma supernatants that induced B cell proliferation (1). Only by cloning the gene encoding this molecule and having the ability to express reasonably large amounts of pure protein could we accurately determine its regulation and range of biological activities.

The task was daunting for a number of reasons: the enzymes available at the time to carry out reverse transcription were inefficient and made the synthesis of a full-length cDNA a challenge. In addition, our ability to screen for IL-4 activity was dependent on a cumbersome B cell co-stimulatory assay in which purified resting B cells are co-incubated with anti-IgD and a source of IL-4. But in consultation with Ron Germain, our resident expert in all things related to genes, we came up with a plan. I would isolate mRNA from activated EL4 T cells, size fractionate the nucleic acid, subject each fraction to *in vitro* translation using *Xenopus laevis* frog eggs, and test the protein in the B cell co-stimulatory assay. Positive fractions would be used to create a cDNA library. I ordered a colony of frogs, harvested eggs, injected RNA fractions then incubated the eggs overnight, added the egg supernatants to purified low density B cells that were co-stimulated with anti-IgD, and finally measured proliferation using a $^{3}$H-thymidine incorporation assay (2). After seemingly endless negative results (and embarrassing to me, multiple weekly meetings with no good data to present to Bill), one fraction showed activity and this was used as a template for a cDNA library. Unfortunately our hopeful results coincided with two reports that the gene encoding IL-4 had been identified (3, 4). Given the promise of our cDNA library, I quickly identified a clone. The race was on to determine what regulates the expression of IL-4 in normal T cells.

## SERENDIPITOUS DISCOVERY # 1: NOT ALL T CELLS EXPRESS IL-4 BUT MAST CELLS DO

Surprisingly, with the exception of EL-4 cells, none of the long-term T cell lines in the Laboratory of Immunology were positive in our Northern blot analyses, thereby suggesting that there are either unique T cell activation requirements for IL-4 expression and/or there is selectivity in the types of T cells that can express IL-4. Indeed, both of these possibilities turned out to be true. Not long afterward, Mossman and Coffman published their seminal paper revealing the existence of distinct CD4$^{+}$ T helper (Th) cell subsets based on cytokine-producing potential and showed that there is a reciprocal expression pattern of IL-4 and IFN-γ in Th2 and Th1 cells, respectively (5). Subsequent studies have shown that the cytokine microenvironment of a naive CD4$^{+}$ T cell undergoing priming dictates its initial differentiation fate [reviewed in Ref. (6)]. Although frustrating, the lack of an IL-4 response in T cell lines prompted me to take advantage of the unique access to the plethora of biological materials available at the NIH. I canvased other laboratories and collected multiple cell lines representing many distinct lineages and screened them for IL-4 mRNA. Only a subset of transformed and IL-3-dependent mast cell lines was positive.

## A Paradigm Shift in Thinking About Mast Cells' Contributions to Health and Disease

This discovery was published in *Cell* in 1987 (7) and while in retrospect the study was extremely limited and descriptive, Bill immediately recognized the importance of the observation. At the time, studies in mast cell research were largely dictated by adherence to an old paradigm. That is, mast cell activation, mediated solely through FcεR1 cross-linking, elicits the local and immediate release of preformed pro-inflammatory mediators contained in granules. These include lysosome enzymes such as β-hexoseaminidase and cathepsin, biogenic amines such as histamine and mast cell-specific proteases, for example, tryptase and chymase, many of which are involved in eliciting the allergic response. The finding that mast cells expressed cytokines, particularly IL-4, initiated a paradigm shift. Not only could mast cells participate in the effector phase of allergic responses but given they could possibly express this cytokine at low levels without activation, these cells have the potential to directly drive IgE production by B cells.

This accidental discovery of IL-4 production in an unexpected cell type was just the beginning of a massive shift in our ideas about mast cells in health and disease, ideas that had changed only incrementally since the discovery of these cells in late 1800s (8). Subsequent studies by Marshall Plaut, Robert Seder, and Achsah Keegan in Bill's laboratory not only demonstrated that IL-4 production is induced in activated non-transformed lines after IgE receptor cross-linking, but that activated mast cells are also a source of other cytokines, both in culture and *in vivo* (9–11). They also revealed that IL-3 priming significantly increases cytokine production by IgE-stimulated mast cells (12). Since the 1990s, there has been an explosion of data revealing both protective and pathologic roles for mast cells heralding in a new age in mast cell biology [reviewed in Ref. (13)]. Many IgE-independent modes of mast cell activation have since been described. Furthermore, both human and rodent mast cells [foreskin-derived or bone marrow-derived mast cell (BMMC) lines] express a surprisingly large number of cytokines and chemokines under multiple activation conditions. *In vivo*, mast cells have ultimately been shown to affect the outcome of many infections, autoimmune diseases and even cancer. Unexpectedly perhaps, in view of the large amount of evidence that support a pro-inflammatory role, it is now clear that mast cells also have regulatory functions and can suppress damaging immune responses.

## Mast Cell-Deficient Mice: A Key to Deciphering *In Vivo* Contributions of Mast Cells

But this re-imagining of a more widespread role of mast cells was not without controversy. Indeed, a paper published in 2011 by Hans Rodewald and colleagues (14), as well as subsequent work by this group (15) called into question the many reports demonstrating the contributions of mast cells in IgE-independent diseases. This controversy arose in part because there are still no perfect mast cell-deficient mice, although some have fewer non-mast cell defects, thus are arguably better and easier to work with.

One of the earliest descriptions of mast cell-deficient mice came in 1973 by Kitamura and colleagues (16). These mice, designated ($Kit^{W/W^{v}}$), are the result of a cross between mice with two distinct naturally occurring mutations, *W* and *W$^{v}$*, in *Kit*, a gene encoding c-kit, the stem cell factor receptor. Unlike most hematopoietic cells that require c-kit signaling only in early development, mast cells depend on strong and sustained c-kit

signals for their development and long-term survival. WBB6 *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ (WB *Kit*$^{W/+}$ X C57BL/6 *Kit*$^{Wv/+}$)F1 mice exhibit an 80–90% reduction in c-kit signaling. While this reduced level of activity is sufficient to support the differentiation of most hematopoietic cells, mast cell development is profoundly affected. These mice are also infertile, anemic, neutropenic, have loss of melanocyte pigment production, and show defects in intestinal mobility.

Despite these issues, *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice became the gold standard for *in vivo* mast cell function studies for a period of time. Mast cells can be selectively reconstituted by systemic or local transfer of wild-type BMMCs. If a phenotype is altered in *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice and reconstitution restores it to a wild-type state yet fails to correct the inherent anemia or neutropenia, the phenotype is designated as mast cell-dependent. Mast cells were subsequently implicated in asthma, experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), the mouse model of multiple sclerosis (MS), arthritis, bullous pemphigus and wound healing, intestinal nematode expulsion, and protection from bacterial infections and protection from animal venoms using *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice [reviewed in Ref. (17)].

Other mice with distinct mutations in *Kit*, such as *Kit* $^{W\text{-}sh/W\text{-}sh}$ mice, have also enjoyed relatively widespread use because unlike *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ they are on a pure C57BL/6 background, are fertile and are not anemic (18). However, these mice exhibit neutrophilia as well as increased numbers of mast cell precursors and basophils. To circumvent the problems associated with *Kit* mutations, a variety of *Kit*-independent mast cell-deficient mice have now been generated. Because a selective mast cell-specific promoter has not been identified, the approach has relied on Cre recombinase expression under the control of mast cell gene "associated" promoters. Some examples: in *Cpa3*$^{Cre+/-}$ mice, the so-called "Cre-master" mice, in which high Cre recombinase expression is driven by the *Carboxypeptidase 3* (*Cpa3*) promoter, both mast cell and basophil populations are deleted due to Cre recombinase toxicity (14). *Mast cell protease 5* (*Mcpt-5*)*-Cre* mice were crossed to *R-DTA*$^{fl/fl}$ mice resulting in diphtheria toxin produced only by Cre-expressing cells (19). These mice lose peritoneal and ear mast cells and >90% of abdominal and back skin mast cells. However, mucosal mast cells are less affected. *Cpa3-Cre; Mcl-1*$^{fl/fl}$ mice were generated by crossing *Cpa3-Cre* mice with mice containing a floxed *Myeloid leukemia sequence 1* gene and exhibit a 92–100% reduction of mast cells in all sites tested with the exception of the spleen (20). They also are anemic, have neutrophilia, and show a dramatic reduction in basophils in the bone marrow and blood.

## Mast Cells Amplify Central Nervous System (CNS) Autoimmune Disease in Female C57BL/6 and SJL Mice

Our laboratory has exclusively used the *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mouse to interrogate the role of mast cells in EAE, a rodent model of multiple sclerosis (MS). MS is an autoimmune demyelinating disorder that develops when myelin-reactive Th1 and Th17 cells gain access to the brain and spinal cord through the normally restrictive blood–brain barrier (BBB) (21). Here, they orchestrate inflammatory damage to the nerve-insulating myelin sheath and the nerve axons. The loss of proper nerve conduction leads to neurological dysfunction that can range from muscle weakness and spasm to loss of motor function and cognitive defects. The most common course of disease is relapsing-remitting MS in which symptoms are intermittent. It is still unclear why MS patients generate pathogenic self-reactive myelin-specific T cells; thus, this autoreactive immune response must be recapitulated in mice by active immunization with myelin, myelin-derived peptides or through adoptive transfer of myelin-specific T cells from immunized mice that are expanded in culture under Th1- or Th17-polarizing conditions (22). Not all mouse strains are susceptible to disease, but $MOG_{35-55}$-immunized C57BL/6 and $PLP_{139-151}$-immunized SJL mice are commonly used as models of chronic and relapsing-remitting disease, respectively.

## Why Mast Cells in EAE/MS?

Our original studies in EAE were prompted by many reports consistent with mast cell involvement in disease. Mast cells are most often associated with blood vessels and nerves and are present in the brain, where they are most numerous in thalamus and hippocampus (23, 24). In addition to their ability to express many mediators including TNF, IL-6, and IL-1β, that promote the pathogenic immune response in MS and EAE, mast cells can also directly provoke demyelination *in vitro* suggesting a potential direct action on myelinated nerves (25). Mast cells are present in the demyelinating lesions of MS patients as are transcripts encoding the mast cell-specific protease, tryptase, as well as histamine and FcεRI (26). Tryptase and histamine are also detected in the cerebral spinal fluid of some patients (27, 28). Drugs that block mast cell degranulation (e.g., proxicromil), or deplete mast cell granules (e.g., cyproheptadine, a serotonin receptor antagonist) inhibit EAE as does hydroxyzine, a histamine receptor antagonist (29, 30).

## Mast Cells Amplify Disease Severity in EAE

In initial experiments, we observed that female *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice on the C57BL/6 and SJL backgrounds exhibit attenuated disease, a phenotype that is associated with decreased inflammatory cell infiltration to the spinal cord and brain. Selective restoration of the meningeal mast cell population *via* BMMC reconstitution is sufficient to restore wild-type disease severity and immune cell influx to the CNS (31, 32). These data indicate that the densely distributed mast cells normally residing in the meninges, a tripartite tissue that surrounds the brain and spinal cord, may be the most relevant population in EAE and MS. In the recent past, the meninges were viewed as merely physical protection for the brain and spinal cord and structures that enclosed the cerebrospinal fluid. This concept has dramatically changed, however, due to several recent discoveries: (a) lymphatic vessels are present in the meninges and provide a passageway for CNS-derived cells and molecules to access the draining deep cervical lymph nodes (33, 34); (b) T cells normally transit through the meninges as part of normal immunosurveillance of infectious microbes that threaten the CNS (35, 36); and (c) many innate immune cells, including macrophages, dendritic cells, and Type 1, 2, and 3 innate lymphoid cells, are permanent residents of these tissues, suggesting this is an immune barrier site analogous

to the skin, gut, and airway mucosa (37–39). Mast cells are relatively prevalent in the dura mater, the outermost layer of the meninges, and in the pia mater, the meningeal layer that lies directly on the brain and spinal cord parenchyma. Of note, mast cells have established roles in regulating vascular permeability in peripheral tissues and in the pia mater are found in close proximity to blood vessels that transition to become the restrictive BBB vasculature. Mast cells are activated within a day of active and passive disease induction and express several mediators including IL-1β, TNF, histamine, matrix metalloproteases (MMPs), CXCL1, and CXCL2 that collectively amplify inflammation and disease severity (40, 41). Among their actions, mast cells contribute to neutrophil recruitment to the meninges and CNS. This neutrophil influx is required for altering BBB integrity and lesion initiation (42, 43). MMPs likely also affect BBB integrity by acting at the glia limitans to degrade the extracellular matrix, a function assigned to mast cells in a model of stroke (44). It has been proposed that meningeal inflammation regulated by mast cells initiates disease by allowing immune cell access to the CNS (37).

Among the most surprising actions of mast cells is their ability to "license" T cells for encephalitogenicity. Primed myelin-specific T cells are not inherently pathogenic but acquire this ability during transit from the secondary lymphoid organs to the CNS. For example, genes that assist in transendothelial migration are induced in T cells post-priming as they transit through the lungs (45). T cells in the meninges can be reactivated by myelin-bearing antigen-presenting cells (36), and it is here that T cells acquire the ability to produce GM-CSF, a cytokine essential for EAE initiation (46–48). In the CNS, GM-CSF$^+$ myelin-reactive T cells recruit CCR2$^+$ monocytes, the major participants in myelin destruction (49). Using an adoptive transfer model of EAE, we demonstrated that T cell-mast cell cross talk in the meninges is crucial for T cell pathogenicity (50). As a result of these interactions, mast cells express IL-1β, which acts on T cells to elicit GM-CSF. In the absence of mast cells or if mast cells are unable to express IL-1β, GM-CSF production is reduced, as is EAE severity.

It is still unclear how this cellular cross talk is initiated, although there are reports of mast cell-T cell interactions through mast cell MHC class II expression (51, 52). Others have shown that direct interactions between for example, OX40/O40L, trigger both mast cell and T cell activation suggesting a contact-dependent mechanism mediates this cross-activation (53). Finally, a recent report describes mast cell–T cell interactions promote increases in T regulatory (Treg) cell numbers in the lung draining lymph nodes in a model of allergic inflammation (54). Mast cell-T cell co-culture experiments demonstrated that mast cell-derived IL-2 was critical for this Treg cell expansion.

## SERENDIPITOUS DISCOVERY #2: A CONTEXT-DEPENDENT ROLE FOR MAST CELLS IN EAE: SEX MATTERS

Until recently, all of our studies to interrogate the pathologic role of mast cells were performed using female mice. This was particularly relevant in the SJL strain because male SJL mice develop little or no disease. However, an incident of inaccurate sex determination in young mice resulted in our accidental analysis of a cohort of wild-type and *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ males. Although it took some time to sort out, we observed that the *Kit* mutation, rather than protecting as it does in females, causes significantly worse disease in males. This unintentional finding ultimately led to surprising insight into the cellular and molecular basis of sex-dimorphic EAE susceptibility.

### Sex-Dependent Protection in EAE

Considerable efforts have been made to understand sex-dependent EAE differences in SJL mice because they provide a model of the profound differences in MS susceptibility that exist in humans where females show a threefold to fourfold higher incidence than men (22, 55–57). Several studies have demonstrated that protection in SJL males is not due to a lack of an anti-myelin response but rather to qualitatively distinct T cell responses: whereas females generate a pathogenic Th17 cell response, a non-harmful Th2 response dominates in males (58, 59).

We observed that male SJL *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice generate a Th17 anti-myelin response consistent with their clinical disease (60). Mast cell reconstitution does not restore protection in *Kit* mutant males indicating these cells are not sufficient for protection and that another c-kit$^+$ cell is likely involved. Indeed, further analysis of these mice revealed an additional c-kit-dependent phenotype. Type 2 innate lymphoid cells (ILC2s) express c-kit and are also in deficit in *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice. ILC2s are CD45$^+$, Lineage$^-$IL-7Rα$^+$ innate immune cells. They are distinguished from other members of the ILC family including ILC1s and ILC3s based on their expression of Th2 cell lineage determining transcription factors (GATA3$^{high}$ and RORα$^+$), ST2, the IL-33 receptor, and their production of Th2 cytokines. This was of interest because ILC2s are established players in immunity to parasites and allergic disease, where their expression of IL-13 is essential for robust Th2 responses (61–64). Thus, our observations suggested the possibility that the lack of ILC2s in *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ males prevented the development of the Th2-dominated response characteristic of male wild-type mice.

These data also raised the possibility that the Th17-dominated response in females is due to absent or dysfunctional ILC2s. Yet female SJL mice have similar steady state populations in the multiple tissues analyzed (bone marrow, lymph nodes, brain, spinal cord, meninges), and there is no difference in the response of wild-type male vs. female-derived ILC2s when provided with activating factors such as IL-33, IL-2, and IL-7 (65). However, there are sex-determined differences in the expression of activating factors, including IL-33. Upon immunization males express significantly higher levels of IL-33 mRNA in the lymph nodes, meninges, brain, and spinal cord. IL-33 is considered the most potent ILC2 activating factor (66), and the importance of this cytokine in disease protection was verified by experiments demonstrating that IL-33 treatment of females prior to disease induction prevents EAE. Importantly, treatment at peak disease reverses clinical symptoms. In both cases, ILC2s are activated and even an established Th17 response shifts to one that is Th2-dominated. Anti-IL-33 treatment of males blocks ILC2 activation and renders the mice susceptible to EAE (65).

## Mast Cells Are Activated to Express IL-33 Upon Immunization

Mast cells are one important source of this cytokine *in vivo* (65). IL-33 mRNA and protein production by mast cells can be detected in the meninges after disease induction. Furthermore, mast cell-deficient males show a significantly reduced IL-33 response upon immunization when compared to wild-type males and BMMC reconstitution partially restores this response. These data have led to a model in which male *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice fail to generate a Th2 response because they lack both an important source of IL-33, mast cells, as well as the IL-33 responder population, ILC2s.

## Testosterone-Induced IL-33 Elicits the Male-Specific ILC2-Dependent Protective Pathway

This model explains the inability to restore protection to susceptible *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ males with mast cells alone. But what accounts for the male-specific expression of IL-33? Testosterone was a likely candidate. This sex hormone is found at sevenfold to eightfold higher levels in adult males than females, and is associated with male-protection (57, 67). MS susceptibility in men increases with the normal age-related decline in testosterone levels, and limited clinical studies have shown treatment of male patients improves cognitive symptoms and gray matter atrophy (68, 69). In mice, testosterone treatment of females attenuates the pathogenic T cell response and reduces disease. Likewise, testosterone blockade using the androgen receptor (AR) antagonist flutamide confers susceptibility to males (70–72).

Both male- and female-derived peritoneal mast cells as well as BMMCs express the AR (65). However, testosterone induces IL-33 protein and mRNA expression only in male-derived BMMCs. This male-specific expression pattern was also evident with other modes of activation. Stimulation with heat killed *Mycobacterium* (Mtb) or IgE receptor cross-linking induced a relatively robust *Il33* response in male- but not female-derived cells. Taken together, we propose that testosterone induces a cascade of events that lead to the expression of mast cell IL-33, activation of ILC2s, and priming of Th2 responses (**Figure 1**). It is notable that immunized males show increases in serum testosterone over time, with

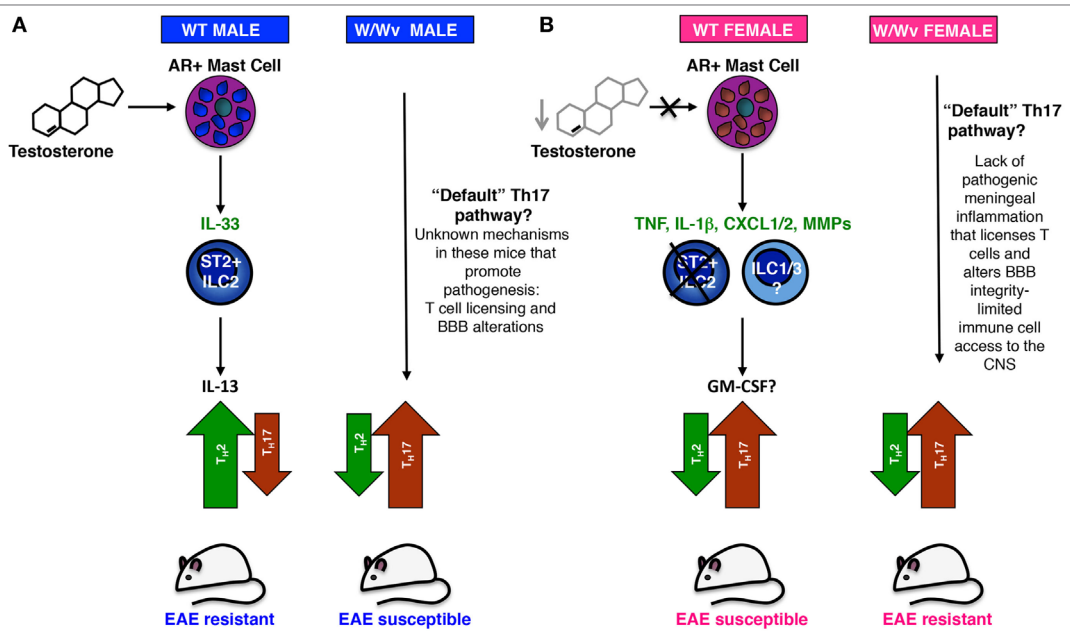



**FIGURE 1** | A model of sex-dimorphic T helper (Th) responses in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) informed by studies in *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice. **(A)** Testosterone-dependent IL-33 production in androgen receptor$^+$ (AR$^+$) mast cells promotes a non-pathogenic Th2 anti-myelin response in $PLP_{139–151}$ immunized wild-type SJL males. Early IL-33 production by mast cells (and perhaps other AR$^+$) cells activates ST2$^+$ innate lymphoid cells (ILC2s), which in turn express IL-13, a cytokine that polarizes the response to one that is Th2-dominant. This Th2 polarization appears to take place during priming in the secondary lymphoid organs and is likely maintained in Th2 effector cells by resident ILC2s in the meninges and Central Nervous System (CNS). Testosterone potentially acts in two ways: (1) acute increases in systemic testosterone directly activate mast cells, and perhaps other AR$^+$ cells, resulting in increased IL-33 expression; (2) long-term testosterone exposure may also exert effects on the *Il33* chromatin landscape in mast cells, enabling higher potential for activation-induced expression. In the absence of IL-33-producing mast cells and ILC2s, a major but not exclusive IL-33 target cell, male *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice cannot generate a strong Th2 response and "default" to a pathogenic Th17 response. In addition to anti-myelin-specific Th17 cells, unknown mechanisms promote inflammatory cell influx to the CNS and promote disease susceptibility in these mice. **(B)** Immunized wild-type females "default" to a Th17 response because they lack sufficient testosterone to elicit the IL-33–ILC2–Th2 pathway. Low testosterone may fail to acutely induce IL-33, but may also affect the *Il33* chromatin landscape, lessening the potential for mast cell IL-33 expression. Upon activation female-derived mast cells express an alternative set of more pro-inflammatory effector molecules. IL-1β-producing mast cells "license" these T cells as they transit through the meninges by eliciting GM-CSF production and enhancing encephalitogenicity. Inflammatory cell influx to the CNS is facilitated by mast cell TNF, CXCL1/2, and matrix metalloprotease (MMP) production that recruits neutrophils and degrades the extracellular matrix, altering blood–brain barrier (BBB) integrity. Increased ILC1 and ILC3 activity in females may also facilitate meningeal inflammation and immune cell infiltration to the CNS (73). Resistant female *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice also generate a Th17 response, but in the absence of meningeal inflammation and T cell licensing, driven by mast cell-derived TNF, IL-1β, CXCL1/2, and MMPs, these cells have only limited access to the CNS parenchyma.

levels peaking at ~ day 13 post-immunization. We speculate that (a) inflammation enhances the male hormonal milieu, which in turn further promotes a shift to Th2-mediated protection, and (b) females do not express the threshold level of testosterone needed to activate this pathway.

## The Ever-Evolving View of Mast Cells—We Must Leave the Paradigms Behind

There are several implications of these data in addition to the obvious possibilities for new therapeutic approaches to neuroinflammatory diseases. First, they further demonstrate that mast cells respond in a context-dependent way. While this concept is not new when considering distinct tissue-specific actions of mast cells, we show that the hormonal context can radically alter outcomes of mast cell activation in cells derived from the same tissues. Indeed, in addition to sex-specific responses by meningeal mast cells in immunized mice, there are distinctions in BMMC responses in culture. This is strikingly illustrated by the fact that female-derived BMMCs do not express appreciable IL-33 even when stimulated with Mtb or through IgE receptor cross-linking (65). Rather these modes of activation induce *Tnf* and *Il1b*, genes that are not as highly expressed in male-derived mast cells. It is likely that in addition to acute influences on mast cell activation, the hormonal environment shapes the overall potential for gene expression in these cells by altering chromatin accessibility. The directive from the NIH director that sex must be considered as a biological variable has not come too soon.

Our findings add to the growing evidence that mast cells can serve protective roles in some settings. Evidence showing that mast cell–Treg cell interactions can be important in limiting inflammation also continues to accumulate. Mast cells appear to act downstream of Treg cells in an allograft tolerance model in which mast cells are required for prolonged survival. It is proposed that IL-9 production by Tregs activates local mast cells to produce IL-10 to limit rejection (74). In a papain-induced model of allergic inflammation, mast cells act upstream of Tregs (75). In this scenario, IL-33, presumably passively released after protease damage of lung epithelial cells, elicits IL-2 production by mast cells. IL-2 promotes Treg cell expansion and limits the damaging effector response mediated by eosinophils. In view of these studies and given the reported protective IL-33-dependent role of a subpopulation of ST2$^+$ Tregs in a model of inflammatory bowel disease (76), it will be important to understand whether these and other ST2$^+$ cells are targets of this mast cell produced cytokine in EAE/MS. Mast cells limit inflammatory damage in a Treg-independent manner as well. Not only do mast cell proteases degrade animal venoms and can decrease the pathological responses associated with envenomation (77), IL-10 and IL-2 produced by mast cells limit chronic inflammation in models of contact sensitivity (78, 79) and in a graft-versus-host disease model where mast cell-derived IL-10 is required for prolonging graft survival (80).

## Are Mast Cells Really the Master Cell?

As alluded to above, results generated using *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice have been called into question because they are often not replicated when *Kit* $^{W\text{-}sh/W\text{-}sh}$ or *Kit*-independent mast cell-deficient mice are used [discussed in beautiful detail in Ref. (17)]. A stunning example is the multitude of papers using Cre-master mice to demonstrate that mast cells are dispensable in many settings where mast cells were previously shown to make a contribution [reviewed in Ref. (15)]. The original report by Rodewald's group showed that anaphylaxis and expansion of intestinal mast cells in a *N. brasiliensis* infection model are extinguished in *Cpa3*$^{Cre+/-}$ mice, supporting the validity of using these mice to assess mast cell contributions in responses in which IgE-activated mast cells are the major effector cells (14). However, unlike previous (but not all) EAE studies by us and by others using *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice suggesting mast cells exacerbate disease (81), *Cpa3*$^{Cre/+}$ mice are fully susceptible to EAE. The reasons for these differences are still unclear, but there are several possibilities: Mast cells provide an accessory function that can amplify or lessen a response mediated by activated T and B cells. In cases where strong T or B cells are induced, the more subtle contributions of mast cells may be masked. Evidence that altering the EAE disease induction protocols affects the ability to assign a mast cell contribution comes from multiple laboratories using the same *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice (81). Of note, the strong disease induction conditions used in the Cre-master mouse study (corroborated by high morbidity in all groups) also support this alternative interpretation of the data. Age of mice and environment, including differences in microbiota, are also variables that may affect disease severity.

So what do we make of all the data that comes from *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice? The dramatically different mast cell functions revealed by our analyses of male and female *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice in EAE confirm that, under the right experimental conditions, *Kit* mutant knock in mice are valid tools to delineate the role of mast cells and other c-kit$^+$ cells in disease models. While we still need more selective ways to genetically deplete mast cells, the data generated from studies with *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice should not be discarded out of hand: in females, the lack of mast cells resulted in reduced clinical disease, which is restored to wild-type severity with reconstitution. Although disease scoring is too often subjective, more objective assessments revealed the alteration of several mast cell-dependent pathways that amplify inflammation. These include meningeal mast cell activation, neutrophil influx to the meninges, BBB breach, inflammatory cell influx to the CNS, mast cell IL-1β expression in the meninges, and acquisition of T cell GM-CSF production. Importantly, our use of male *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice revealed a pathway that could not have been easily identified in other *Kit*-independent mast cell-deficient mice. Mast cell reconstitution failed to confer protection to *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ males, indicating mast cells alone cannot restore the male-specific wild-type phenotype. Thus the system worked, as it should. Indeed, these experiments allowed us to identify the deficit in c-kit$^+$ ILC2s in *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice and to assign them as additional critical players in male-specific protection. The role of a c-kit$^+$ pro-inflammatory ILC3 population in EAE exacerbations was also revealed using these mice (38). It is tempting to speculate that c-kit$^+$ ILCs may contribute to other functions assigned solely to mast cells using *Kit*$^{W/Wv}$ mice. That is, the lack of both mast cells and ILCs in *Kit*-dependent mast cell-deficient mice may explain some of the discrepancies observed in studies

using *Kit*-independent mast cell-deficient mice in which ILC populations are likely unaffected.

As alluded to earlier, mast cells have the potential to influence many if not most biological processes in humans due to their widespread distribution in most tissues, their proximity to blood vessels, the seemingly endless variety of effector molecules they can produce, and their ability to interact with both immune and non-immune cells. Indeed, in a review by Rodewald and Feyerbend it was stated, "There is arguably no second cell type in the immune system as powerfully equipped with a large array of chemically diverse and highly potent compounds" (15). Not surprisingly, soon after the realization that mast cells can act outside the realm of allergy the experimental dam broke so to speak, leading to many studies over the years showing mast cells modulate processes far beyond the innate and adaptive immune responses that dictate the outcomes of autoimmunity, cancer, infection and neuroinflammation. Among the perhaps unexpected activities of mast cells are roles in vascular disease (82), angiogenesis and tissue remodeling (83, 84), diabetic wound healing (85), migraine headaches (86), anxiety (87), metabolic syndromes (88), fertility (89, 90), and development of mammary glands (91).

The challenges ahead are many. First, it is important to ultimately delineate the underlying reasons for the conflicting data derived from various experimental models. Second, the observed strain and sex variations in mast cell activity defined in mice indicate that many new paradigms that arose based on studies in one mouse strain or sex must be revisited to take these variables into account. Third, there is likely to be similar and more extensive mast cell heterogeneity in humans. Uncovering these differences will be a daunting task. An ultimate goal may be to target these cells in disease therapy, but in some settings, we will need to understand their actions in each individual context in order to make decisions about whether blocking or enhancing their activation is desirable. Only by keeping our eyes on the big picture, we will continue to gain greater insight into the biology of these amazing cells, cells which I have made my life's passion, all because of Bill Paul.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## FUNDING

This work was funded by the NIH R21 NS081598, RO1AI12829, RO1 NS047578 and the National Multiple Sclerosis Society RG3104B3/2, RG46845/1, and RG-5281-A-3.

## REFERENCES

1. Howard M, Farrar J, Hilfiker M, Johnson B, Takatsu K, Hamaoka T, et al. Identification of a T cell-derived B cell growth factor distinct from interleukin 2. *J Exp Med* (1982) 155(3):914–23. doi:10.1084/jem.155.3.914
2. Brown MA, Watson C, Ohara J, Paul WE. In vitro translation of B-cell stimulatory factor-1 in *Xenopus laevis* oocytes. *Cell Immunol* (1986) 98(2):538–43. doi:10.1016/0008-8749(86)90313-8
3. Lee F, Yokota T, Otsuka T, Meyerson P, Villaret D, Coffman R, et al. Isolation and characterization of a mouse interleukin cDNA clone that expresses B-cell stimulatory factor 1 activities and T-cell- and mast-cell-stimulating activities. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1986) 83(7):2061–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.83.7.2061
4. Noma Y, Sideras P, Naito T, Bergstedt-Lindquist S, Azuma C, Severinson E, et al. Cloning of cDNA encoding the murine IgG1 induction factor by a novel strategy using SP6 promoter. *Nature* (1986) 319(6055):640–6. doi:10.1038/319640a0
5. Mosmann TR, Cherwinski H, Bond MW, Giedlin MA, Coffman RL. Two types of murine helper T cell clone. I. Definition according to profiles of lymphokine activities and secreted proteins. *J Immunol* (1986) 136(7):2348–57.
6. Zhu J, Paul WE. Peripheral CD4+ T-cell differentiation regulated by networks of cytokines and transcription factors. *Immunol Rev* (2010) 238(1):247–62. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2010.00951.x
7. Brown MA, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Falco J, Ihle JN, Paul WE. B cell stimulatory factor-1/interleukin-4 mRNA is expressed by normal and transformed mast cells. *Cell* (1987) 50(5):809–18. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(87)90339-4
8. Ehrlich P. *Beiträge zur Theorie und Praxis der Histologischen Färbung*. Leipzig, Germany: Leipzig University (1878).
9. Plaut M, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Hanley-Hyde J, Nordan RP, Paul WE. Mast cell lines produce lymphokines in response to cross-linkage of Fc epsilon RI or to calcium ionophores. *Nature* (1989) 339(6219):64–7. doi:10.1038/339064a0
10. Seder RA, Paul WE, Ben-Sasson SZ, LeGros GS, Kagey-Sobotka A, Finkelman FD, et al. Production of interleukin-4 and other cytokines following stimulation of mast cell lines and in vivo mast cells/basophils. *Int Arch Allergy Appl Immunol* (1991) 94(1–4):137–40. doi:10.1159/000235345
11. Seder RA, Paul WE, Dvorak AM, Sharkis SJ, Kagey-Sobotka A, Niv Y, et al. Mouse splenic and bone marrow cell populations that express high-affinity Fc epsilon receptors and produce interleukin 4 are highly enriched in basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1991) 88(7):2835–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.7.2835
12. Keegan AD, Pierce JH, Artrip J, Plaut M, Paul WE. Ligand stimulation of transfected and endogenous growth factor receptors enhances cytokine production by mast cells. *EMBO J* (1991) 10(12):3675–82.
13. da Silva EZ, Jamur MC, Oliver C. Mast cell function: a new vision of an old cell. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2014) 62(10):698–738. doi:10.1369/0022155414545334
14. Feyerabend TB, Weiser A, Tietz A, Stassen M, Harris N, Kopf M, et al. Cre-mediated cell ablation contests mast cell contribution in models of antibody- and T cell-mediated autoimmunity. *Immunity* (2011) 35(5):832–44. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.09.015
15. Rodewald HR, Feyerabend TB. Widespread immunological functions of mast cells: fact or fiction? *Immunity* (2012) 37(1):13–24. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2012.07.007
16. Kitamura Y, Go S, Hatanaka K. Decrease of mast cells in W/Wv mice and their increase by bone marrow transplantation. *Blood* (1978) 52(2):447–52.
17. Galli SJ, Tsai M, Marichal T, Tchougounova E, Reber LL, Pejler G. Approaches for analyzing the roles of mast cells and their proteases in vivo. *Adv Immunol* (2015) 126:45–127. doi:10.1016/bs.ai.2014.11.002
18. Nagle DL, Kozak CA, Mano H, Chapman VM, Bućan M. Physical mapping of the Tec and Gabrb1 loci reveals that the Wsh mutation on mouse chromosome 5 is associated with an inversion. *Hum Mol Genet* (1995) 4(11):2073–9. doi:10.1093/hmg/4.11.2073
19. Dudeck A, Dudeck J, Scholten J, Petzold A, Surianarayanan S, Köhler A, et al. Mast cells are key promoters of contact allergy that mediate the adjuvant effects of haptens. *Immunity* (2011) 34(6):973–84. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.03.028
20. Lilla JN, Chen CC, Mukai K, BenBarak MJ, Franco CB, Kalesnikoff J, et al. Reduced mast cell and basophil numbers and function in Cpa3-Cre; Mcl-1fl/fl mice. *Blood* (2011) 118(26):6930–8. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-03-343962
21. Nylander A, Hafler DA. Multiple sclerosis. *J Clin Invest* (2012) 122(4):1180–8. doi:10.1172/JCI58649
22. Robinson AP, Harp CT, Noronha A, Miller SD. The experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE) model of MS: utility for understanding disease pathophysiology and treatment. *Handb Clin Neurol* (2014) 122:173–89. doi:10.1016/B978-0-444-52001-2.00008-X
23. Hendrix S, Warnke K, Siebenhaar F, Peters EM, Nitsch R, Maurer M. The majority of brain mast cells in B10.PL mice is present in the hippocampal formation. *Neurosci Lett* (2006) 392(3):174–7. doi:10.1016/j.neulet.2005.09.029

24. Taiwo OB, Kovacs KJ, Larson AA. Chronic daily intrathecal injections of a large volume of fluid increase mast cells in the thalamus of mice. *Brain Res* (2005) 1056(1):76–84. doi:10.1016/j.brainres.2005.07.022
25. Theoharides TC, Dimitriadou V, Letourneau R, Rozniecki JJ, Vliagoftis H, Boucher W. Synergistic action of estradiol and myelin basic protein on mast cell secretion and brain myelin changes resembling early stages of demyelination. *Neuroscience* (1993) 57(3):861–71. doi:10.1016/0306-4522(93)90030-J
26. Lock C, Hermans G, Pedotti R, Brendolan A, Schadt E, Garren H, et al. Gene-microarray analysis of multiple sclerosis lesions yields new targets validated in autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Nat Med* (2002) 8(5):500–8. doi:10.1038/nm0502-500
27. Rozniecki JJ, Hauser SL, Stein M, Lincoln R, Theoharides TC. Elevated mast cell tryptase in cerebrospinal fluid of multiple sclerosis patients. *Ann Neurol* (1995) 37(1):63–6. doi:10.1002/ana.410370112
28. Tuomisto L, Kilpelainen H, Riekkinen P. Histamine and histamine-N-methyltransferase in the CSF of patients with multiple sclerosis. *Agents Actions* (1983) 13(2–3):255–7. doi:10.1007/BF01967346
29. Dietsch GN, Hinrichs DJ. The role of mast cells in the elicitation of experimental allergic encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol* (1989) 142(5):1476–81.
30. Dimitriadou V, Pang X, Theoharides TC. Hydroxyzine inhibits experimental allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE) and associated brain mast cell activation. *Int J Immunopharmacol* (2000) 22(9):673–84. doi:10.1016/S0192-0561(00)00029-1
31. Sayed BA, Walker ME, Brown MA. Cutting edge: mast cells regulate disease severity in a relapsing-remitting model of multiple sclerosis. *J Immunol* (2011) 186(6):3294–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1003574
32. Secor VH, Secor WE, Gutekunst CA, Brown MA. Mast cells are essential for early onset and severe disease in a murine model of multiple sclerosis. *J Exp Med* (2000) 191(5):813–22. doi:10.1084/jem.191.5.813
33. Aspelund A, Antila S, Proulx ST, Karlsen TV, Karaman S, Detmar M, et al. A dural lymphatic vascular system that drains brain interstitial fluid and macromolecules. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212(7):991–9. doi:10.1084/jem.20142290
34. Louveau A, Smirnov I, Keyes TJ, Eccles JD, Rouhani SJ, Peske JD, et al. Structural and functional features of central nervous system lymphatic vessels. *Nature* (2015) 523(7560):337–41. doi:10.1038/nature14432
35. Ransohoff RM. Immunology: in the beginning. *Nature* (2009) 462(7269):41–2. doi:10.1038/462041a
36. Ransohoff RM, Engelhardt B. The anatomical and cellular basis of immune surveillance in the central nervous system. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2012) 12(9):623–35. doi:10.1038/nri3265
37. Russi AE, Brown MA. The meninges: new therapeutic targets for multiple sclerosis. *Transl Res* (2015) 165(2):255–69. doi:10.1016/j.trsl.2014.08.005
38. Hatfield JK, Brown MA. Group 3 innate lymphoid cells accumulate and exhibit disease-induced activation in the meninges in EAE. *Cell Immunol* (2015) 297(2):69–79. doi:10.1016/j.cellimm.2015.06.006
39. Walker-Caulfield ME, Hatfield JK, Brown MA. Dynamic changes in meningeal inflammation correspond to clinical exacerbations in a murine model of relapsing-remitting multiple sclerosis. *J Neuroimmunol* (2015) 278:112–22. doi:10.1016/j.jneuroim.2014.12.009
40. Christy AL, Walker ME, Hessner MJ, Brown MA. Mast cell activation and neutrophil recruitment promotes early and robust inflammation in the meninges in EAE. *J Autoimmun* (2013) 42:50–61. doi:10.1016/j.jaut.2012.11.003
41. Sayed BA, Christy AL, Walker ME, Brown MA. Meningeal mast cells affect early T cell central nervous system infiltration and blood-brain barrier integrity through TNF: a role for neutrophil recruitment? *J Immunol* (2010) 184(12):6891–900. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1000126
42. Rumble JM, Huber AK, Krishnamoorthy G, Srinivasan A, Giles DA, Zhang X, et al. Neutrophil-related factors as biomarkers in EAE and MS. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212(1):23–35. doi:10.1084/jem.20141015
43. Carlson T, Kroenke M, Rao P, Lane TE, Segal B. The Th17-ELR+ CXC chemokine pathway is essential for the development of central nervous system autoimmune disease. *J Exp Med* (2008) 205(4):811–23. doi:10.1084/jem.20072404
44. Mattila OS, Strbian D, Saksi J, Pikkarainen TO, Rantanen V, Tatlisumak T, et al. Cerebral mast cells mediate blood-brain barrier disruption in acute experimental ischemic stroke through perivascular gelatinase activation. *Stroke* (2011) 42(12):3600–5. doi:10.1161/STROKEAHA.111.632224
45. Odoardi F, Sie C, Streyl K, Ulaganathan VK, Schläger C, Lodygin D, et al. T cells become licensed in the lung to enter the central nervous system. *Nature* (2012) 488(7413):675–9. doi:10.1038/nature11337
46. Codarri L, Gyülvészi G, Tosevski V, Hesske L, Fontana A, Magnenat L, et al. RORgamma t drives production of the cytokine GM-CSF in helper T cells, which is essential for the effector phase of autoimmune neuroinflammation. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12(6):560–7. doi:10.1038/ni.2027
47. El-Behi M, Ciric B, Dai H, Yan Y, Cullimore M, Safavi F, et al. The encephalitogenicity of T(H)17 cells is dependent on IL-1- and IL-23-induced production of the cytokine GM-CSF. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12(6):568–75. doi:10.1038/ni.2031
48. Ponomarev ED, Shriver LP, Maresz K, Pedras-Vasconcelos J, Verthelyi D, Dittel BN. GM-CSF production by autoreactive T cells is required for the activation of microglial cells and the onset of experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Immunol* (2007) 178(1):39–48. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.178.1.39
49. Croxford AL, Lanzinger M, Hartmann FJ, Schreiner B, Mair F, Pelczar P, et al. The cytokine GM-CSF drives the inflammatory signature of CCR2+ monocytes and licenses autoimmunity. *Immunity* (2015) 43(3):502–14. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.08.010
50. Russi AE, Walker-Caulfield ME, Guo Y, Lucchinetti CF, Brown MA. Meningeal mast cell-T cell crosstalk regulates T cell encephalitogenicity. *J Autoimmun* (2016) 73:100–10. doi:10.1016/j.jaut.2016.06.015
51. Kambayashi T, Allenspach EJ, Chang JT, Zou T, Shoag JE, Reiner SL, et al. Inducible MHC class II expression by mast cells supports effector and regulatory T cell activation. *J Immunol* (2009) 182(8):4686–95. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0803180
52. Lotfi-Emran S, Ward BR, Le QT, Pozez AL, Manjili MH, Woodfolk JA, et al. Human mast cells present antigen to autologous CD4(+) T cells. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2018) 141(1):311–321e10. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.02.048
53. Gri G, Piconese S, Frossi B, Manfroi V, Merluzzi S, Tripodo C, et al. CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells suppress mast cell degranulation and allergic responses through OX40-OX40L interaction. *Immunity* (2008) 29(5):771–81. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2008.08.018
54. Salamon P, Shefler I, Moshkovits I, Munitz A, Horwitz Klotzman D, Mekori YA, et al. IL-33 and IgE stimulate mast cell production of IL-2 and regulatory T cell expansion in allergic dermatitis. *Clin Exp Allergy* (2017) 47(11):1409–16. doi:10.1111/cea.13027
55. Papenfuss TL, Rogers CJ, Gienapp I, Yurrita M, McClain M, Damico N, et al. Sex differences in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in multiple murine strains. *J Neuroimmunol* (2004) 150(1–2):59–69. doi:10.1016/j.jneuroim.2004.01.018
56. Voskuhl RR, Gold SM. Sex-related factors in multiple sclerosis susceptibility and progression. *Nat Rev Neurol* (2012) 8(5):255–63. doi:10.1038/nrneurol.2012.43
57. Whitacre CC. Sex differences in autoimmune disease. *Nat Immunol* (2001) 2(9):777–80. doi:10.1038/ni0901-777
58. Bebo BF Jr, Schuster JC, Vandenbark AA, Offner H. Gender differences in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis develop during the induction of the immune response to encephalitogenic peptides. *J Neurosci Res* (1998) 52(4):420–6.doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-4547(19980515)52:4<420::AID-JNR5>3.0.CO;2-B
59. Cua DJ, Hinton DR, Stohlman SA. Self-antigen-induced Th2 responses in experimental allergic encephalomyelitis (EAE)-resistant mice. Th2-mediated suppression of autoimmune disease. *J Immunol* (1995) 155(8):4052–9.
60. Russi AE, Walker-Caulfield ME, Ebel ME, Brown MA. Cutting edge: c-Kit signaling differentially regulates type 2 innate lymphoid cell accumulation and susceptibility to central nervous system demyelination in male and female SJL mice. *J Immunol* (2015) 194(12):5609–13. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1500068
61. Halim TY, Hwang YY, Scanlon ST, Zaghouani H, Garbi N, Fallon PG, et al. Group 2 innate lymphoid cells license dendritic cells to potentiate memory TH2 cell responses. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17(1):57–64. doi:10.1038/ni.3294
62. Halim TY, Steer CA, Mathä L, Gold MJ, Martinez-Gonzalez I, McNagny KM, et al. Group 2 innate lymphoid cells are critical for the initiation of adaptive T helper 2 cell-mediated allergic lung inflammation. *Immunity* (2014) 40(3):425–35. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.01.011
63. Drake LY, Iijima K, Kita H. Group 2 innate lymphoid cells and CD4+ T cells cooperate to mediate type 2 immune response in mice. *Allergy* (2014) 69(10):1300–7. doi:10.1111/all.12446
64. Mirchandani AS, Besnard AG, Yip E, Scott C, Bain CC, Cerovic V, et al. Type 2 innate lymphoid cells drive CD4+ Th2 cell responses. *J Immunol* (2014) 192(5):2442–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300974

65. Russi AE, Ebel ME, Yang Y, Brown MA. Male-specific IL-33 expression regulates sex-dimorphic EAE susceptibility. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2018) 115(7):E1520–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.1710401115
66. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E, Song Y, Murphy E, McClanahan TK, et al. IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. *Immunity* (2005) 23(5):479–90. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.015
67. Torjesen PA, Sandnes L. Serum testosterone in women as measured by an automated immunoassay and a RIA. *Clin Chem* (2004) 50(3):678; author reply 678–9. doi:10.1373/clinchem.2003.027565
68. Kurth F, Luders E, Sicotte NL, Gaser C, Giesser BS, Swerdloff RS, et al. Neuroprotective effects of testosterone treatment in men with multiple sclerosis. *Neuroimage Clin* (2014) 4:454–60. doi:10.1016/j.nicl.2014.03.001
69. Sicotte NL, Giesser BS, Tandon V, Klutch R, Steiner B, Drain AE, et al. Testosterone treatment in multiple sclerosis: a pilot study. *Arch Neurol* (2007) 64(5):683–8. doi:10.1001/archneur.64.5.683
70. Bebo BF Jr, Schuster JC, Vandenbark AA, Offner H. Androgens alter the cytokine profile and reduce encephalitogenicity of myelin-reactive T cells. *J Immunol* (1999) 162(1):35–40.
71. Bebo BF Jr, Zelinka-Vincent E, Adamus G, Amundson D, Vandenbark AA, Offner H. Gonadal hormones influence the immune response to PLP 139-151 and the clinical course of relapsing experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *J Neuroimmunol* (1998) 84(2):122–30. doi:10.1016/S0165-5728(97)00214-2
72. Dalal M, Kim S, Voskuhl RR. Testosterone therapy ameliorates experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis and induces a T helper 2 bias in the autoantigen-specific T lymphocyte response. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(1):3–6.
73. Kwong B, Rua R, Gao Y, Flickinger J Jr, Wang Y, Kruhlak MJ, et al. T-bet-dependent NKp46(+) innate lymphoid cells regulate the onset of TH17-induced neuroinflammation. *Nat Immunol* (2017) 18(10):1117–27. doi:10.1038/ni.3816
74. Lu LF, Lind EF, Gondek DC, Bennett KA, Gleeson MW, Pino-Lagos K, et al. Mast cells are essential intermediaries in regulatory T-cell tolerance. *Nature* (2006) 442(7106):997–1002. doi:10.1038/nature05010
75. Morita H, Arae K, Unno H, Miyauchi K, Toyama S, Nambu A, et al. An interleukin-33-mast cell-interleukin-2 axis suppresses papain-induced allergic inflammation by promoting regulatory T cell numbers. *Immunity* (2015) 43(1):175–86. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.06.021
76. Schiering C, Krausgruber T, Chomka A, Fröhlich A, Adelmann K, Wohlfert EA, et al. The alarmin IL-33 promotes regulatory T-cell function in the intestine. *Nature* (2014) 513(7519):564–8. doi:10.1038/nature13577
77. Galli SJ, Starkl P, Marichal T, Tsai M. Mast cells and IgE in defense against venoms: possible "good side" of allergy? *Allergol Int* (2016) 65(1):3–15. doi:10.1016/j.alit.2015.09.002
78. Grimbaldeston MA, Nakae S, Kalesnikoff J, Tsai M, Galli SJ. Mast cell-derived interleukin 10 limits skin pathology in contact dermatitis and chronic irradiation with ultraviolet B. *Nat Immunol* (2007) 8(10):1095–104. doi:10.1038/ni1503
79. Hershko AY, Suzuki R, Charles N, Alvarez-Errico D, Sargent JL, Laurence A, et al. Mast cell interleukin-2 production contributes to suppression of chronic allergic dermatitis. *Immunity* (2011) 35(4):562–71. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.07.013
80. Leveson-Gower DB, Sega EI, Kalesnikoff J, Florek M, Pan Y, Pierini A, et al. Mast cells suppress murine GVHD in a mechanism independent of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. *Blood* (2013) 122(22):3659–65. doi:10.1182/blood-2013-08-519157
81. Piconese S, Costanza M, Musio S, Tripodo C, Poliani PL, Gri G, et al. Exacerbated experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis in mast-cell-deficient Kit W-sh/W-sh mice. *Lab Invest* (2011) 91(4):627–41. doi:10.1038/labinvest.2011.3
82. Bot I, Biessen EA. Mast cells in atherosclerosis. *Thromb Haemost* (2011) 106(5):820–6. doi:10.1160/TH11-05-0291
83. Coussens LM, Raymond WW, Bergers G, Laig-Webster M, Behrendtsen O, Werb Z, et al. Inflammatory mast cells up-regulate angiogenesis during squamous epithelial carcinogenesis. *Genes Dev* (1999) 13(11):1382–97. doi:10.1101/gad.13.11.1382
84. Maltby S, Khazaie K, McNagny KM. Mast cells in tumor growth: angiogenesis, tissue remodelling and immune-modulation. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2009) 1796(1):19–26. doi:10.1016/j.bbcan.2009.02.001
85. Tellechea A, Leal EC, Kafanas A, Auster ME, Kuchibhotla S, Ostrovsky Y, et al. Mast cells regulate wound healing in diabetes. *Diabetes* (2016) 65(7) 2006–19. doi:10.2337/db15-0340
86. Levy D. Migraine pain, meningeal inflammation, and mast cells. *Curr Pain Headache Rep* (2009) 13(3):237–40. doi:10.1007/s11916-009-0040-y
87. Nautiyal KM, Ribeiro AC, Pfaff DW, Silver R. Brain mast cells link the immune system to anxiety-like behavior. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2008) 105(46):18053–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.0809479105
88. Zhang J, Shi GP. Mast cells and metabolic syndrome. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2012) 1822(1):14–20. doi:10.1016/j.bbadis.2010.12.012
89. Haidl G, Duan YG, Chen SJ, Kohn FM, Schuppe HC, Allam JP. The role of mast cells in male infertility. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* (2011) 7(5):627–34. doi:10.1586/eci.11.57
90. Menzies FM, Shepherd MC, Nibbs RJ, Nelson SM. The role of mast cells and their mediators in reproduction, pregnancy and labour. *Hum Reprod Update* (2011) 17(3):383–96. doi:10.1093/humupd/dmq053
91. Coussens LM, Pollard JW. Leukocytes in mammary development and cancer. *Cold Spring Harb Perspect Biol* (2011) 3(3):a003285. doi:10.1101/cshperspect.a003285


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 26 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00868

# Controlling Mast Cell Activation and Homeostasis: Work Influenced by Bill Paul That Continues Today

*Heather L. Caslin[1], Kasalina N. Kiwanuka[1], Tamara T. Haque[1], Marcela T. Taruselli[1], H. Patrick MacKnight[2], Anuya Paranjape[1] and John J. Ryan[1]**

[1] Department of Biology, Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond, VA, United States, [2] Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, Virginia Commonwealth University, Richmond, VA, United States

Mast cells are tissue resident, innate immune cells with heterogenous phenotypes tuned by cytokines and other microenvironmental stimuli. Playing a protective role in parasitic, bacterial, and viral infections, mast cells are also known for their role in the pathogenesis of allergy, asthma, and autoimmune diseases. Here, we review factors controlling mast cell activation, with a focus on receptor signaling and potential therapies for allergic disease. Specifically, we will discuss our work with FcεRI and FγR signaling, IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β1 treatment, and Stat5. We conclude with potential therapeutics for allergic disease. Much of these efforts have been influenced by the work of Bill Paul. With many mechanistic targets for mast cell activation and different classes of therapeutics being studied, there is reason to be hopeful for continued clinical progress in this area.

**Keywords: mast cell, IgE, IgG, IL-4, IL-10, TGF-β, Stat5, allergy**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu,*
*National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Avery August,*
*Cornell University, United States*
*Gunnar Nilsson,*
*Karolinska Institute (KI), Sweden*

****Correspondence:***
*John J. Ryan*
*jjryan@vcu.edu*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *24 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *09 April 2018*
***Published:*** *26 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*Caslin HL, Kiwanuka KN, Haque TT, Taruselli MT, MacKnight HP, Paranjape A and Ryan JJ (2018) Controlling Mast Cell Activation and Homeostasis: Work Influenced by Bill Paul That Continues Today. Front. Immunol. 9:868. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00868*

## INTRODUCTION

Mast cells were first described by Paul Ehrlich in 1878. The future Nobel Laureate identified them based on their unique staining characteristics with aniline dyes and their position in all tissues of the body, particularly at interfaces with the external environment (1). As with T cells and macrophages, mast cells are a heterogeneous population, consisting of at least two major subsets (2). Although the origin of these cells remained elusive, seminal work in the 1970s and 1980s established that mast cells originate from hematopoetic stem cells in the bone marrow, spleen, fetal liver, and peripheral blood (3–5). Subsequent work showed that mast cells can be differentiated and expanded *in vitro* with relative ease, which greatly increased interest and progress in the field. What followed was detailed work describing how mast cells bind and respond to IgE, providing evidence for the role of mast cells in allergic disease (6, 7).

However, our understanding of mast cell biology changed drastically in the late 1980s with work by Bill Paul and colleagues. Bill Paul's career centered on understanding T cell function and cytokine biology, contributing to the discovery, and understanding of T cell MHC-restriction, the B cell receptor mIg, IL-4, and Th2 polarization, as he eloquently described in a review of his life's work (8). Following the discovery of IL-4, Bill Paul's group showed that transformed and non-transformed mast cells express IL-4 in response to PMA and ionomycin (9) and that mast cells secrete a Th2-like panel of cytokines, including IL-4, in response to IgE receptor cross-linking (10). These were tectonic shifts in our fundamental understanding of mast cells, providing evidence that in addition to granule release, mast cells produce cytokine mediators that influence adaptive immunity and have a broader role in allergic disease. It is in keeping with Bill Paul's visionary abilities that he could abruptly cast a broad light on field tangential to his primary interests. He would go on to publish two dozen mast cell-related articles, including one that initiated our group's focus on Stat5 in mast

cell biology (11). Furthermore, Bill trained many researchers who have gone on to have productive careers in the field of mast cell biology and allergic disease, including the senior author of this article, Takashi Saito, Fred Finkleman, Melissa Brown, Achsah Keegan, and Joshua Milner, many of whom have work cited here. In this review, we will cover several areas of mast cell activation and homeostasis, all of which are of great interest to our lab and have been impacted by Bill Paul's intellect and productivity.

## MAST CELL GROWTH, SURVIVAL, AND APOPTOSIS

Mast cells are long-living tissue-resident immune cells that migrate to and differentiate within the tissue. Development, migration, and survival are shaped by two growth factors, in particular, SCF and IL-3, which are included in **Figure 1**. In healthy tissue, mast cells are maintained in constant numbers, while the mast cell population increases dramatically in chronically allergic tissue (12). This section will summarize findings on mast cell survival and death. Prior to discovery of the c-Kit receptor and its ligand SCF, mice with double mutations at the *ckit*-encoding *W* loci ($W/W^v$ mice) or *scf*-encoding *Sl* loci ($Sl/Sl^d$ mice) were known to exhibit hypoplastic, macrocytic anemia, sterility, and a lack of cutaneous melanocytes (13–15). Importantly, these mice were found to have a defect of mast cells in $W/W^v$ mice due to lineage abnormality and a defect of mast cells in $Sl/Sl^d$ mice due to an abnormality in the microenvironment (4, 16). A decade later, two groups reported that the *W* gene product encodes the c-Kit tyrosine kinase receptor (17, 18), while in 1990, eight groups described and identified the ligand for c-Kit: SCF/MGF/steel factor, encoded by the *SI* locus [prefaced in Ref. (19)]. These papers clarified the complementary receptor–ligand relationship yielding the similar phenotypes of $W/W^v$ and $Sl/Sl^d$ mice and suggested a role for c-Kit and SCF in mast cell development.

c-Kit is a tyrosine kinase growth factor receptor, with a large extracellular domain of five Ig-like domains, a single transmembrane span, and a long cytosolic tail, containing a tyrosine kinase domain and tyrosine phosphorylation sites (21). Dimerization initiates phosphorylation of at least eight tyrosine residues, serving as a docking site for Src homology 2 domains present on signaling proteins such as Grb2, Gab2, Lyn, Fyn, PI3K, phospholipase Cγ, and the negative regulator, SHP-1 (22).

SCF is best known for eliciting mast cell survival and inhibiting apoptosis (23). SCF-mediated activation of the PI3K–AKT cascade is important for mast cell survival, inactivating the pro-apoptotic proteins Bad and Bim, and increasing expression of the pro-survival proteins, such as Bcl-2 and Bcl-XL (24, 25). Interestingly, somatic and germline *ckit* gain-of-function mutations are present in mastocytosis patients (26, 27), suggesting regulatory control by the c-Kit pathway.

In addition to its role in survival, SCF has other important effects. These include inducing mast cell migration, adhesion, and IL-6 secretion (28–30). SCF also augments mast cell activation by FcεRI, ST2, and TLR4, receptors which will be further reviewed below (31–33). c-Kit signaling enhances mast cell degranulation

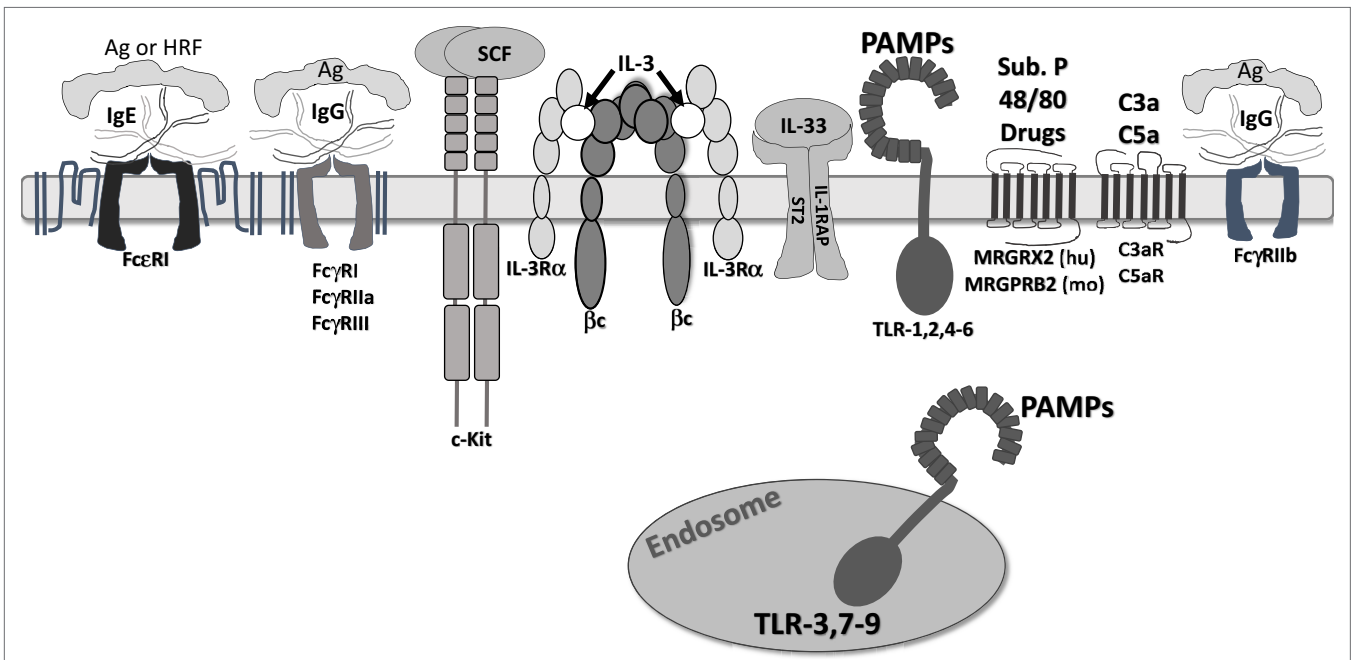



**FIGURE 1** | Receptors that regulate mast cell function. The receptors shown are confirmed to regulate mast cell function. They are depicted at approximate scale. All except FcγRIIb are known to induce mast cell degranulation and/or cytokine secretion. FcγRIIb activates SHIP-1 and SHP-1, suppressing inositol and tyrosine kinase activity. c-Kit is a weak mast cell activator, but augments signals by other receptors. IL-3 receptor is modeled after work by Broughton et al. (20). Note that ligands for Mas-related G protein-coupled receptor-X2 (MRGPRX2)/B2 are not fully known, but include drug classes discussed in the accompanying text. In addition, we do not show "cytokinergic" IgE molecules. These form aggregates in the absence of antigen and elicit FcεRI signaling.

and cytokine production by inducing calcium influx and transcriptional activity (34). These abilities make SCF arguably the most critical factor controlling mast cell biology.

IL-3 is also an important factor for mouse mast cell precursor survival, with an unclear role in human mast cells. Mouse mast cells can differentiate in response to IL-3 (mucosal tissue type) or IL-3 + SCF (connective tissue type), while human mast cells typically require SCF + IL-6 for differentiation (35–38). Contradictory studies suggest that IL-3 plays no role in human mast cell progenitor differentiation (38), while a recent study demonstrated that IL-3 alone is sufficient to drive differentiation and survival of human mast cell progenitors (39). Similar to SCF, withdrawal of IL-3 from cultured mast cells induces apoptosis and appears to play an important role in mast cell survival and development in at least mouse mast cells (23, 40). Lantz et al. showed that IL-3-deficient mice have normal numbers of mast cells in the naïve state, but fail to properly expand intestinal mast cells in response to parasite infection (41).

To balance cell growth, mast cells have pathways for both apoptosis and autophagy. The Fas and TRAIL death receptors are expressed on primary mouse and human mast cells and various mast cell lines (42, 43). Mast cells are susceptible to Fas- or TRAIL-mediated apoptosis *via* caspase activation (1, 43). However, they can overcome Fas death signals by upregulating Fas-associated death domain-like IL-1-converting enzyme-inhibitory protein, a caspase-8 inhibitor that lacks the cysteine domain (42). While transformed and healthy mast cells use this mechanism to bypass Fas-mediated cell death, making this an unreliable and weak apoptosis inducer (43), our group has shown that that BMMCs are more responsive to Fas/FasL-induced apoptosis in the presence of IL-4 and IL-10 (44). Furthermore, rather than acting solely as an apoptosis signal, Fas functions in mast cell development and maturation (45).

In addition to apoptosis, mast cells also undergo autophagy, which controls the clearance and reuse of intracellular organelles and proteins and is essential for eukaryotic cell survival. Light chain (LC)-3 is localized to autophagosomes through conversion of LC3-I to LC3-II, which requires *Atg5* and *-7*. LC3-II-expressing autophagosomes are delivered to lysosomes, where the autocargo is degraded (46). Conversion of LC3-I to IC3-II has been shown to be constitutive in BMMC, in which LC3-II associated with secretory granules (47). The same study showed that BMMC lacking *Atg7* or *12* have normal granule formation, but defective IgE-mediated degranulation, demonstrating the importance of autophagic machinery in granule movement and release. Furthermore, dysregulation of autophagy in mast cells has been shown in various disease states such as systemic sclerosis, chronic rhinosinusitis, and asthma (48–50). Overall, research on mast cell survival, apoptosis, and autophagy pathways suggests that these pathways are important for both maintenance and function in both health and disease.

## ACTIVATING LIGANDS AND RECEPTORS REGULATING MAST CELL FUNCTION

Mast cells respond to myriad signals consistent with their role in defense against pathogens, while contributing to their effects in allergy, asthma, and autoimmunity. In addition, mast cells are a heterogeneous population, particularly susceptible to different tissue microenvironments during development and maturation. Residence in different tissues is linked to distinct mast cell protease and receptor expression (51–53). Moreover, mast cell phenotype is highly "tunable" based on short-term modulation by inflammatory stimuli, growth factors, cytokines, and metabolites (52, 54–56). We will first describe several activating receptors and their stimuli, which are depicted in **Figure 1**.

### IgE and FcεRI

FcεRI, the receptor for IgE, has been the most commonly studied mast cell receptor. While new studies suggest a role for many mediators in allergic disease, IgE remains the best-understood mechanism of mast cell activation in allergic disease (57). The interaction between mast cells and IgE was first shown in 1970 (6, 7). A previously unknown component found in the serum of allergic patients, IgE played a role in the classic Prausnitz–Küstner reaction. In addition, these studies showed that IgE bound to mast cells and basophils. Further characterization found the interaction between IgE and FcεRI, showing that monomeric IgE binds to a singular unit of FcεRI with very high affinity (58). Subsequent studies showed that FcεRI consists of three subunits: one IgE-binding α subunit, one β subunit, and a dimer of disulfide-linked γ subunits (59). FcεRI-mediated activation typically occurs when IgE, bound by its Fc portion (specifically the $C_H3$ domain), interacts with antigen *via* the Fab portion, driving receptor aggregation. This initiates signaling cascades dependent on tyrosine phosphorylation, leading to a biphasic response. The first phase is the immediate degranulation. The second phase is the production of other mediators such as prostaglandins, leukotrienes, cytokines, chemokines, and growth factors (60).

Many of the pathways controlling FcεRI-induced mast cell activation have been described in detail, and we direct the reader to other recent reviews (61–63). However, some aspects of FcεRI activation warrant special attention here. In addition to signaling induced by receptor aggregation, monomeric IgE induces mast cell survival and activation (64–66). Prior to this, there was knowledge that IgE greatly increases FcεRI expression (67, 68), but its ability to induce signals in the absence of antigen was unexpected and controversial. Subsequent studies revealed that the clone of IgE molecule used greatly impacted its effects, with different IgE clones being designated "highly cytokinergic" or "poorly cytokinergic." The latter type has since been shown to form large aggregates through Fv–Fv interactions in the absence of antigen, and hence signals much like IgE + antigen (69). In a similar way, histamine-releasing factor (also called translationally controlled tumor protein or fortillin) binds the Fab region on approximately 25% of IgE molecules tested, allowing for clonally restricted mast cell activation that may be more common among atopic patients (59). These unexpected and clinically important effects of IgE subtypes emphasize the importance of fundamentally understanding receptor–ligand interactions. They also support the approach of suppressing IgE–FcεRI interaction, which is proving effective with the drug omalizumab, discussed in the "Potential Therapies" section below.

## IgG and FcγR

Mast cells can be activated by IgG immune complexes binding pro-inflammatory FcγRI, FcγRIIA, or FcγRIII, which are variably expressed on mouse and human mast cells. These receptors induce a signaling cascade resembling IgE–FcεRI activation that elicits cytokine secretion, arachidonic acid metabolism, and degranulation (70). Our lab has published work suggesting that like FcεRI, FcγR induces Fyn, Lyn, Akt, Erk, p38, and JNK phosphorylation (71–73). Opposingly, the ITIM-containing receptor FcγRIIb activates SHIP-1 and SHP-1, suppressing IgG-induced signals by reducing PI3K and tyrosine kinase activities (74). IgG-mediated mast cell function is less understood than its IgE counterpart, including its direct clinical roles. Various studies show associations for FcγR-induced mast cell function in rheumatoid arthritis, Sjögren's syndrome, multiple sclerosis, bullous pemphigoid, thyroiditis, systemic sclerosis, and glomerulonephritis (74). Thus far, much of these data are correlative. For example, mast cells and their mediators are increased in the rheumatoid synovium (75). Moreover, the results of some studies are contradictory. While there were initial reports of the inflammatory role of mast cells in experimental autoimmune encephalitis [EAE; (76)], there are contradictory reports on the role of mast cells in the disease, potentially due to differences in the severity of the EAE protocols or the mast cell-deficient mouse strains used (77, 78). While many studies have made use of $W/W^{v}$ and $W^{sh}/W^{sh}$ c-Kit-deficient mice, newer mast cell knockout models, such as the CPA3-cre/+ mice cited above and the CPA3-Cre; Mcl-$1^{fl/fl}$, do not have the same changes in neutrophils observed with mutations in c-Kit. Therefore, future studies may clarify the role of mast cells in IgG-associated pathologies such as multiple sclerosis and arthritis (77, 79). This area of research may provide high-impact outcomes, since IgG-induced inflammatory diseases involve pathological processes overlapping with the IgE response and may therefore be responsive to similar therapies.

## Complement Receptors

The complement system is made up of proteolytic pro-enzymes and non-enzymatic proteins that form functional complexes, cofactors, regulators, and receptors (80). Larger fragments derived from C3 and C4 regulate opsonization, phagocytosis, and immunomodulation. The smaller fragments C3a and C5a are anaphylatoxins that mediate inflammatory reactions. Anaphylatoxins can activate mast cells but, like other signals, the outcome depends on factors such as location and microenviroment (81). A few studies have examined the role of complement in mast cell activation. C3a enhances mast cell degranulation in the presence of FcγRI signaling (82), while C5a induces mast cell migration, adhesion, and mast cell mediator production (83).

## Pathogen-Associated Molecular Patterns and Toll-Like Receptors (TLRs)

Toll-like receptors are a part of the pattern-recognition receptor family interacting with a multitude of pattern-associated molecular patterns as well as host-derived damage associated molecular patterns. This family consists of 10 reported receptors (TLR 1–10) (84). Mast cells can express 9 TLRs, including TLR-1, 2, and 4–6 on the cell surface and TLR-3, and 7–9 intracellularly (85). However, some caveats are worth noting: TLR8 has not been detected on human mast cells; receptor distribution varies with mast cell location; and some receptors have only been shown at the mRNA level (86).

Toll-like receptor activation induces cytokine secretion, which can proceed through a DAP12-independent signaling cascade (87). TLR-induced cytokine profiles overlap but have some distinctions. For example, TLR-2 activation led to the production of TNF, IL-6, IL-13, IL-4, and IL-5, while TLR-4 induced TNF, IL-6, IL-13, and IL-1b (88). Interestingly, pre-exposure to TLR ligands suppressed IgE-induced mast cell responses in two mouse models, possibly by transiently reducing FcεRI expression (89, 90). By contrast, simultaneous exposure of human mast cells to various TLR ligands and FcεRI stimulation yielded increased cytokine secretion without altering degranulation (91). This is an area that warrants further study and clarification, since environmental and even laboratory exposure to allergens (e.g., house dust mite extract) is often in the context of TLR ligands.

## Compound 48/80, Substance P, and Mas-Related G Protein-Coupled Receptor-X2 (MRGPRX2)

Mas-related G protein-coupled receptor-X2 has drawn increased interest recently. Human MRGPRX2 is one of approximately 50 7-transmembrane domain proteins in the larger Mas-related gene family. It is unique in its apparently selective expression on human mast cells in the $MC_{TC}$ subtype, outside of the dorsal root ganglion (92). While the MRGPRX gene family is restricted to humans and other primates, a mouse ortholog, MRGPRB2 has recently been described (93). Using transgene and knockout approaches, this group showed that MRGPRB2 is similarly restricted in expression to connective tissue mast cells. Both orthologs are functional receptors for compound 48/80 and the neuropeptide substance P. While of interest to those using these well-known mast cell-activating stimuli, the more important point is that MRGPRX2 (and likely its mouse ortholog) responds to other peptides and drugs. For example, MRGPRX2 binds the host defense protein LL-37 (94). Three classes of drugs have been shown to activate MRGPRX2: fluoriquinone antibiotics such as ciprofloxacin, neuromuscular-blocking drugs such as rocurinium, and the bradykinin $B_2$ receptor antagonist icatibant (95). Although much remains to be done in this area, it appears that MRGPRX2 has an important role in the pseudoallergic reactions induced by some drugs. Inhibiting this receptor may therefore be clinically important.

## Chemokines and Their Receptors

Chemokines are cytokines known to induce cellular locomotion. These are particularly important in the migration of cells to areas of inflammation. All chemokine receptors described are seven-transmembrane-spanning G protein receptors (96). Mast cells have been shown to express multiple chemokine receptors, including CCR1, CCR3–5, CXCR1–4, and CX3CR1 (97). These play a significant role in directing mast cell progenitors to the tissues where they mature, a process that is altered by ongoing inflammation (98–100). In addition to migration, recent

studies show that chemokines can induce partial degranulation (100–102).

## Cytokines and Their Receptors

Cytokines act as messengers and modulate many functions including growth, proliferation, and migration. The importance of cytokines to mast cell biology was first shown in the 1980s, when a method to culture mast cells *in vitro* was being determined. Several groups showed that mast cells could be cultured in media from concanavalin A-activated T cells, cloned Ly + 2 inducer T cells, or WEHI-3B tumor cells. Analysis of this media showed the presence of numerous cytokines such as IL-3, IL-4, IL-9, IL-10, and nerve growth factor (1). The precise role of each cytokine is still a topic of research, partly because mast cells are a heterogenous population due to the microenvironment determining mature phenotype (103). This plasticity allows mast cells to alter their phenotype throughout their lifespan, with the phenotypic profile shaped by the cytokine and growth factor milieu they encounter (54). Our lab has been specifically interested in IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β, which will be addressed below. In addition, the cytokines IL-33 and TSLP deserve specific attention here, due to their ability to activate mast cells and their known role in allergic disease.

IL-33 is an unusual cytokine, in that it is constitutively produced as a pro-form and localized to the nucleus of barrier cells such as keratinocytes, epithelial cells, endothelial cells, and fibroblasts. Its cleavage and release is stimulated by cell damage or inflammation, supporting its classification as an alarmin (104). Mast cells can also secrete IL-33 upon activation with signals such as IgE stimulation (105). IL-33 interacts with a receptor complex composed of T1/ST2 and IL-1RAcP (106, 107), triggering a MyD88-dependent NFκB-activating cascade resembling TLR signaling. Mast cells were among the first lineages shown to express T1/ST2 (108), 7 years before IL-33 was identified (109). IL-33 is a potent mast cell activator, eliciting survival, maturation, adhesion, and cytokine production (15, 106, 107, 110, 111). IL-33 also enhances mast cell responses to IgE (112) and IgG (113). Furthermore, IL-33 injections induce a rapid peritoneal neutrophil influx that requires mast cell-derived TNF secretion (114). IL-33 is now thought to play a significant role in mast cell-associated diseases such allergy, although precise mast cell-restricted functions are not clear and remain to be elucidated (115).

TLSP has some similarities to IL-33, including expression by epithelial and other barrier cell types and constitutive production among some lineages. In 2015, Bill Paul's group published a ZsGreen TSLP reporter mouse, which showed TSLP expression not only in epithelial cells and keratinocytes but also in dendritic cells, basophils, and mast cells (116). TSLP secretion is induced by TLR-type signals, allergen and air irritant exposure, viral and bacterial infection, and trauma (115). TSLP interacts with a complex of TSLP-R and IL-7Rα. TSLP KO mice have reduced mast cell numbers (117), which is consistent with data showing TSLP induces mast cell proliferation through a Stat6- and MDM2-dependent pathway (117). TSLP does not induce mast cell degranulation and alone is a poor inducer of cytokine secretion. However, in combination with IL-1β + TNF, TSLP elicits the release of many cytokines, including IL-5, IL-6, and IL-13 from human $CD34^+$ progenitor-derived mast cells (110, 111). It should be noted that TSLP-induced cytokine secretion has not been shown using mouse mast cells. Hence, while TSLP is clearly relevant to mast cell development and function, further studies should examine differences between mice and humans, which may be important caveats for experimental design.

# IL-4, IL-10, AND TGFβ1 REGULATE MAST CELL FUNCTION AND HOMEOSTASIS

Regarding other cytokine effects, our lab has specific interest and experience studying IL-4, IL-10, and TGFβ effects on mast cell function and homeostasis. These cytokines augment or impair activation by the mechanisms introduced above, but do not directly induce mast cell activation alone.

## IL-4

IL-4, originally termed B cell stimulatory factor-1, is a cytokine primarily known for its role in antibody driven-allergic disease and protection from parasite infections (118). IL-4 was first discovered to induce B cell proliferation during anti-IgM stimulation and to promote isotype switching to IgG1 and IgE (119–121). In addition, Bill Paul's lab and others showed that IL-4 elicits Th2 differentiation from naïve T cells *in vitro*, which subsequently release IL-4 in a positive feedback loop (122, 123). IL-4 signals through IL-4Rα, as part of a heterodimer containing either the common gamma chain (124) or IL13Rα (125). These receptors allow IL-4 to act on non-hematopoietic cells such as intestinal and bronchial epithelial cells and the vasculature to facilitate the protective expulsion of parasites. For details on IL-4 signaling pathways, we direct readers to reviews (126–128).

Unfortunately, IL-4 is also a major contributor to the symptoms observed with allergy and asthma (129–131). IL-4 was the first cytokine shown to be produced by mast cell lines (9), later confirmed to be secreted in response to IgE and lectin activation in human mast cells (132) as well as IL-33 in mouse mast cells (105). Mast cells also respond to IL-4, first reported to increase proliferation of mast cell lines costimulated with IL-3 by Bill Paul's group (133). This work has been supported with data from other mast cell lines, human gut mast cells, BMMC, and in a mouse model of food allergy (9, 134, 135). Culture with IL-4 + IgE for 4–21 days has been shown to enhance FcεRI receptor expression compared with IgE alone on human cord blood, fetal liver-derived mast cells, and BMMC. It also enhances histamine, $PGD_2$, and $LTC_4$, and IL-5 production following IgE receptor cross-linking (134, 136–139). In addition, IL-4 differentially affected mediator release, augmenting Th2-type cytokines (IL-3, IL-5, and IL-13), and downregulating pro-inflammatory cytokines (IL-6 and TNF) in response to IgE receptor cross-linking and Gram-negative bacterial activation (137).

In contrast to its stimulatory effects on mast cells, IL-4 has been reported to suppress c-Kit expression and mast cell development in human fetal liver-derived mast cells grown in SCF in two studies (138, 140). Similarly, we showed IL-4-mediated inhibition of FcεRI and c-Kit expression on BMMC and PMC following 4–21 days of treatment, an effect dependent on Stat6 (141, 142). IL-4 suppressed IL-4, IL-5, IL-6, and IL-13 secretion induced by

IgE crosslinkage, and TNF and IL-13 secretion induced downstream of SCF. Interestingly, our lab subsequently found that IL-4 increases IgG-mediated degranulation and cytokine production in mouse BMMC, involving Stat6 and increased FcγRIIIA protein expression (143). In addition to the role of IL-4 on cellular activation, we found that IL-4 induces apoptosis in developing mouse or human mast cell precursors derived from bone marrow or umbilical cord blood, respectively (144, 145).

The different pro- and anti-inflammatory effects observed by IL-4 are intriguing. Maturation, phenotype, and culture conditions likely play a role in these IL-4 responses, which we also discussed in a recent review (146). Mouse BMMC is considered less mature than human skin, human intestinal, or mouse peritoneal mast cells, which likely contributes to different experimental outcomes. For example, BMMC attain responsiveness to endothelin-1 when cultured in IL-4, while peritoneal mast cells respond to endothelin-1 without IL-4 (147). Similarly, we found that IL-4 induces apoptosis in developing mouse or human mast cell precursors (144, 145), while mature mouse and human mast cells receive survival and proliferation signals from IL-4, which also promotes the $MC_T$ (tryptase-positive) phenotype in human intestinal mast cells (137). Hence, IL-4 effects on mast cells vary with stage of differentiation, with suppressive signals being most overt on developing or less mature mast cells. Future research should experimentally clarify these observations, examining cells at different maturation stages and following both IL-3 and IL-3/SCF differentiation to examine the effects of mast cell phenotype.

## IL-10

IL-10, originally termed cytokine synthesis inhibitory factor, is a homeostatic mediator in many inflammatory diseases. Secreted by macrophages, Th1 and Th2 cells, regulatory T and B cells, and cytotoxic T cells (148), IL-10 is traditionally considered an anti-inflammatory cytokine. It suppresses monocyte MHC II expression (149), dendritic cell maturation (150), and reduces inflammatory cytokine production from monocytes and neutrophils (151, 152). However, IL-10 also has stimulatory effects. It enhances B cell antibody class switching and plasma cell development (153, 154) and increases IL-2-induced proliferation and cytotoxic activity in NK cells (155). These effects correlate with clinical data, as IL-10 therapy has induced platelet loss in RA patients (156) and promoted IFNγ production in sepsis (157) and Crohn's patients (158). In agreement with this, anti-IL-10 therapy has improved SLE measures in a clinical trial (159). While it is likely that anti-IL-10 therapy impacts many cell types *in vivo*, we have studied both the pro- and anti-inflammatory roles of IL-10 in mast cells.

Similar to IL-4, IL-10 is produced by BMMC and affects mast cell survival, proliferation, and function. IL-10 enhances IL-3-mediated growth of mouse mast cells and their progenitors (160–162). Interestingly, when co-cultured with IL-3 and IL-4, IL-10 induces BMMC apoptosis by diminishing Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL expression, in a Stat6-dependent manner (44), and induces apoptosis following IgE receptor cross-linking, a known pro-survival pathway (64).

Early work showed variable responses to IL-10 treatment. IL-10 was shown to induce BMMC expression of mouse mast cell protease (MCPT)-2 (163). Several studies showed inhibition or no change in TNF, IL-6, and histamine secretion following IgE receptor cross-linking and LPS-induced activation in HMC-1, rat peritoneal mast cells, BMMC, and human cord blood-derived mast cells (164–167). Our lab showed that 4-day IL-10 treatment inhibited FcεRI beta chain expression and IgE-induced TNF production in BMMC (168, 169). Recently, we found that while TNF is diminished, IgE-induced degranulation and secretion of other inflammatory cytokines were *increased* by IL-10 after 24-h treatment, through a Stat3–miR-155 cascade that inhibits the negative regulator, suppressor of cytokine signaling-1 (170). These effects were consistent in mouse and human mast cells and in a model of passive systemic anaphylaxis in our study, as well as a mouse model of food allergy used by Clinton Mathias's group (160). How IL-10 suppresses TNF while enhancing other pro-inflammatory cytokines is unknown and may be important for understanding how mast cell function can be tuned. Our interpretation of these data is that while IL-10 has well-established inhibitory roles, it is not monolithic. Instead, stimulatory effects are clear from both clinical and basic research outcomes.

## TGF-β

Our group has also studied the role of TGF-β in mast cell homeostasis. Similar to IL-10, TGF-β is primarily known for its immunosuppressive effects, but pleotropic activities have been reported based on environmental and differentiation factors (171). TGF-β suppresses T cell proliferation and induces Treg differentiation (172, 173), suppresses B cell proliferation and IgG antibody class switching (172, 174), and inhibits macrophage nitric oxide release and TNF translation (175, 176).

TGF-β also alters mast cell development and function. It enhances early mast cell precursor differentiation and increases protease expression, while antagonizing survival of late stage precursors and mature mast cells (177–179). TGF-β elicits mast cell chemotaxis, but can also suppress migration toward SCF (180–182). Our lab has published that TGF-β-1, -2, and -3 inhibit the expression of FcεRI subunits, c-Kit, T1/ST2, and Fcγ receptor chains in BMMC, peritoneal mast cells, and human skin mast cells. In addition, granule formation, degranulation, and IgE-induced cytokine production were reduced by TGF-β (177, 183, 184). Recently, we found that TGF-β-1, -2, and -3 also inhibit IL-33-induced TNF, IL-6, IL-13, and MCP-1 secretion in mouse and human mast cells and suppress IL-33-induced cytokine production *in vivo* (185). Interestingly, a mouse model of lung inflammation suggests TGF-β enhances LPS-induced mast cell IL-6 production, ultimately inducing neutrophil apoptosis and controlling neutrophilic inflammation (186).

As with IL-4 and IL-10, TGF-β effects on mast cells are altered by microenvironment and genetic background. For example, IL-4 and TGFβ1 block the expression and function of the other's receptor, with IL-4 inhibiting TGFβ1-mediated migration and *vice versa* (187). TGF-β1 has divergent effects on C57Bl6/J versus 129/SvJ mast cells. Not only do 129/SvJ BMMCs resist TGF-β1-mediated suppression of IgE-induced cytokine secretion, these BMMCs show enhanced SCF-induced migration in the presence of TGF-β1 (180). We found that matched C57BL/6J and 129/SvJ BMMC cultures have no difference in TGF-β receptor expression, but 129/SvJ BMMC express twofold to threefold greater levels of Fyn and

Stat5 proteins. Since inhibiting the Fyn–Stat5 cascade appears to be important for TGF-β1-mediated suppression, this may convey resistance. In keeping with these BMMC data, we found that human skin mast cells show considerable donor-to-donor variability in TGF-β1-mediated suppression, when measuring IgE-induced cytokine secretion. These donors also showed variable Fyn and Stat5 expression (180). An additional explanation for TGF-β1 resistance is polymorphic TGF-β receptor variation. C57BL/6J and 129/SvJ strains have known polymorphic variations in TGFβR1 between, and similar variations are tied to human cancers (188).

In summary, mast cell development, survival, and function are greatly altered by IL-4, IL-10, and TGF-β. These effects are impacted by microenvironment, since cytokines can act in opposition; by stage of differentiation, since precursors and mature mast cells can respond differently; and by genetic background, with some inbred mouse strains and human donors showing complete resistance or even opposite responses. Understanding how these signals are integrated will provide a coherent approach to mast cell-associated diseases.

## THE ROLE OF STAT5 IN MAST CELL BIOLOGY

The transcription factor Stat5 is expressed ubiquitously and activated by many growth factors and cytokines, including IL-2, IL-3, GM-CSF, prolactin, erythropoietin, thrombopoietin, and growth hormone (189). Stat5 is implicated in immune homeostasis and inflammation, as mice lacking the 110-kb Stat5A/B locus had perinatal lethality and severely compromised immune systems, similar to mice lacking the proteins γc, Jak3, or IL-7R (190).

Our lab was the first to show SCF-induced Stat5-DNA binding activity in mast cells (11). Utilizing the $Stat5^{DN}$ mouse, mutated to have truncated Stat5A and B lacking the N-terminus and able to form teramers but not dimers (191), we showed that BMMC from $Stat5^{DN}$-expressing mice exhibited increased apoptosis and delayed cell cycle progression when cultured in either IL-3 or SCF alone (192). Specifically, we observed reduced expression of the anti-apoptotic proteins Bcl-2, Bcl-(x)l, reduced expression of the cell cycle regulators cyclin A2 and cyclin B1, reduced mitochondrial membrane potential, and greater activation of caspases-9 and -3. *In vivo*, $Stat5^{DN}$-expressing mice were born with normal mast cell distribution, but had near complete loss of tissue mast cells by 12 weeks of age, indicating that Stat5 tetramer formation is essential for regulating mast cell survival. Furthermore, neoplastic mast cells transformed by mutant c-Kit have constitutive Stat5 activation, which can be successfully targeted to inhibit proliferation and survival (193, 194). Together, these results suggest that Stat5 plays a critical role in mast cell survival.

We later reported direct and transient Stat5 activation downstream of FcεRI-mediated mast cell stimulation (195). Stat5-deficient BMMC showed impaired immediate and late phase mediator release in response to IgE-induced stimulation, indicating a critical role for Stat5 in mast cell function. A subsequent study found that Stat5 activation depends on Fyn kinase expression, and that Fyn and Stat5 are physically associated in resting mast cells (72, 73). We also noted that Stat5 co-localizes with FcεRI in antigen-activated mast cells. Interestingly, the absence of Lyn kinase, Gab2, or SHP-1 enhanced FcεRI-mediated Stat5 phosphorylation (72, 73).

In addition to FcεRI, Stat5 has been implicated in other signaling cascades controlling mast cell function. While IL-33 does not appear to activate Stat5, Bill Paul's group showed that IL-33-induced IL-13 secretion required IL-3-mediated Stat5 activation (196). Furthermore, IL-33 elicits a complex between its receptor, ST2/IL-1RAcP, and c-Kit, supporting the finding that IL-33 signaling is enhanced by SCF in mast cells (31). Since c-Kit is a strong Stat5 activator, Stat5 may similarly contribute to IL-33 signaling *via* this pathway. In a separate line of work, Toshio Kawakami's group reported enhanced Stat5 activity tied to increased mast cell numbers in animal models of atopic dermatitis (AD) and lesions in the skin of AD patients (197), suggesting that Stat5 contributes to this disease phenotype.

Stat5A and B are encoded by distinct genes (198–200). While murine Stat5A and Stat5B exhibit 96% sequence similarity and a very similar expression pattern, these isoforms are not completely redundant and have unique biological activity (199). For example, Stat5A is critical for murine mast cell proliferation and survival (201). Our own targeting of Stat5A or Stat5B using siRNA has found that Stat5B has a selective influence over IgE-mediated mast cell cytokine release and SCF-induced migration, with Stat5A being dispensable (72, 73, 180). The idea that Stat5 can directly promote allergic disease is supported by recent work from Joshua Milner's group, who linked a gain-of-function Stat5b mutation to eosinophilia, urticaria, and dermatitis (202). Although no further work was done to study the specific role and functionality of mast cells in these patients, the Stat5 mutation resulted in greater Th2 cytokine production by CD4 T cells, potentially skewing the immune response toward a Th2 response. It should also be noted that increased STAT5b activity, as observed in these patients, was associated with atopic-like skin inflammation that typically involves mast cell activation. Collectively, these findings show that Stat5 is one of the central factors controlling mast cell survival and function. With evidence that Stat5 can be targeted pharmacologically, we see this as a productive avenue for addressing mast cell-associated diseases.

## THERAPEUTICS TARGETING MAST CELLS

Due to the variety of inflammatory diseases in which mast cells participate, targeting mast cell function and survival can be broadly effective. This section will briefly discuss current and potential mast cell-directed therapies. We also refer the reader to several recent reviews focused on this topic (203–206).

There are several therapeutics on the market that are FDA approved for allergic disease or asthma, targeting mast cell activation and/or mediators. These include H1 inhibitors that prevent histamine signaling (207) and antagonists of leukotriene synthesis or signaling *via* the CysLT1 receptor (208). While these drugs are effective in targeting select mediators, broader inhibition of the many mast cell-derived inflammatory factors can be needed for clinical efficacy. We should note here that the newer generation antihistamines have better binding affinity for histamine receptors, reduced adverse side effects, and often have mast cell stabilizing and anti-inflammatory properties in addition

to their effects on histamine, which may provide better relief for patients (209). Corticosteroids such as dexamethasone are effective inhibitors of mast cell activation and a proven treatment for mast cell-associated diseases (210, 211). In fact, we recently found that dexamethasone inhibits not only IgE- but also IL-33-mediated mast cell function (212). However, steroid medications have many adverse effects and reduced efficacy in viral-induced exacerbations, asthmatics who smoke, and in more severe forms of the disease (213, 214). The mast cell stabilizer disodium cromoglycate is approved for some mast cell proliferative and activation diseases (215), although the mechanism of action is poorly understood (216), effects are slower than drugs like antihistamines, and there is evidence that mast cell stabilizers are less efficacious than inhaled corticosteroids for asthma (209, 217). More recently, a humanized anti-IgE antibody, omalizumab, has been developed to prevent binding of circulating IgE to FcεRI and the downstream effects of cross-linking (218, 219). Omalizumab is a common and preferred treatment for chronic urticaria (220, 221) and shows efficacy for the treatment of asthma (218, 219); however, like many drugs, there appear to be responders and non-responders (222). These drugs represent both progress toward suppressing mast cell function and shortcomings supporting further development.

## Repurposing FDA-Approved Drugs

There are several FDA-approved therapeutics with potential to treat diseases caused or exacerbated by mast cell activation (**Table 1**). For instance, the tricyclic antidepressant doxepin was found to be a potent H1 receptor inhibitor and is prescribed to treat chronic urticaria and AD (223). The repurposing approach to targeting mast cells represents a potentially rapid avenue for clinical progress and includes several drug classes.

### Kinase Inhibitors

Imatinib is a chemotherapeutic agent designed to target the BCR–ABL tyrosine kinase common in chronic myeloid lymphoma (224). Although imatinib was designed to target the ABL tyrosine kinase domain, it also inhibits c-Kit kinase activity. Due to this off-target effect, imatinib has been used to treat mastocytosis cases lacking the c-Kit D816V mutation (225). More recently, imatinib has been tested in a clinical trial to treat severe refractory asthma. Patients treated with imatinib had reduced airway hyperresponsiveness and decreased serum tryptase levels compared to placebo (226), supporting broader use of this drug. Unlike imatinib, masitinib was designed as a c-Kit kinase inhibitor and has been used therapeutically to treat canine mast cell tumors (227, 228). It has since entered clinical trials for human mastocytosis and asthma. In a phase 2a clinical trial, masitinib improved the quality of life in 14 of 25 mastocytosis patients for at least 60 weeks (229). It is also in a phase 3 clinical trial to treat severe and persistent asthma in conjunction with corticosteroids (227). An additional kinase inhibitor capable of suppressing c-Kit, toceranib phosphate, is being tested in canines (236). Kinase targeting in mast cell-associated diseases is not limited to c-Kit. The Syk kinase inhibitor R112 has shown mixed results for allergic rhinitis in two trials (231, 232). Similarly, the phosphatidyl inositol 3′-kinase inhibitor idelalisib has shown progress in a phase 1 trial for allergic rhinitis (233). These studies collectively support the approach of targeting kinases activated early in signaling cascades controlling mast cell function.

### Statins

Statin drugs are HMG-CoA reductase (HMGCR) inhibitors designed to reduce cholesterol synthesis (234). These drugs are primarily approved to treat hypercholesterolemia and reduce cardiovascular disease, but have been beneficial in asthma and atopic diseases, albeit with mixed results. For example, a 1-month trial of simvastatin as a monotherapy for asthma showed little benefit (245), but subsequent studies demonstrated positive effects. Most have employed simvastatin or atorvastatin as an adjuvant therapy. Simvastatin has been shown to decrease eosinophils, improve lung function, and promote Treg

**TABLE 1** | Potential therapies for mast cell-associated diseases.

| Drug | Target | Disease | Comments | Status | Reference |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Imatinib | BCR-Abl/c-Kit | Asthma | | FDA-approved for mastocytosis lacking D816V | (224–226) |
| Masitinib | c-Kit, possibly Fyn, and Lyn | Asthma | | In clinical human trials | (227–230) |
| R112 | Syk | Allergic rhinitis | Early stage results promising | In clinical trials | (231, 232) |
| Idelalisib | PI3K | Allergic rhinitis | Early stage results promising | In clinical trials | (233) |
| Statins | HMG-CoA reductase | Asthma | Mixed results, possibly due to varied responses on different genetic backgrounds | Off-label use of drug approved for hypercholesterolemia | (234–237) |
| Etanercept | TNF | Asthma | Early stage trials for severe asthma. Safety concerns noted | Off-label use of drug approved for use in rheumatoid arthritis | (238, 239) |
| siRNA, morpholino oligonucleotides, CRISPR/Cas9 | Many possible: FcεRI, c-Kit, ST2, tryptase, chymase | Mast cell-associated pathology | Most work is in the conceptual stage, with some *in vivo* rodent studies done | Morpholino-based approach for Duchenne muscular dystrophy is approved | (93, 240–244) |

*This table includes the name of the drug, the known targets, and diseases for which research has currently been conducted using the drug. In addition, important comments on the drug and FDA approval and/or clinical trials progress are noted.*

development in mild asthmatics (235, 246). Similarly, atorvastatin decreased sputum inflammatory cytokine levels, suppressed $LTB_4$ production, and improved quality of life scores among mild-to-moderate asthmatics (247–249). A retrospective study found that among severe asthmatics, statins in combination with inhaled therapies had better asthma control in comparison to patients who were not currently taking statins (236). Despite these encouraging findings, meta-analysis studies show that the overall effects of statins in asthma are at the best modest (249–251).

These conflicting outcomes prompted us to study statin effects on mast cells. Our lab found that one drug in particular, fluvastatin, blocked FcεRI-mediated mast cell activation in human and mouse mast cells and reduced passive systemic anaphylaxis in mice (237). However, these effects showed strong genetic influences: BMMC derived from C57BL/6J mice were most sensitive, BALB/c showed intermediate responses, and 129/SvJ mice were completely resistant. Human mast cells cultured from multiple donors showed similar variation. Our data showed that statin resistance was not tied to HMGCR coding polymorphisms, but did correlate with drug-induced HMGCR upregulation. More importantly, geranylgeranyl transferase (GGT), downstream of HMGCR in the cholesterol pathway, appears to be critical for FcεRI-mediated function. These findings suggest that statin efficacy in mast cell-associated disease might be predicted by measuring drug-induced HMGCR expression, and that targeting GGT may be a better means of disrupting mast cell function.

## Targeting Gene Expression

Another promising means of inhibiting mast cell activation is by selectively suppressing gene expression, including FcεRI, c-Kit, histadine decarboxylase, or other mast cell receptors and mediators. There are several approaches that hold promise, with two decades of clinical trials supporting progress. Morpholino oligomers bind mRNA and either block translation or modify pre-mRNA splicing and induce exon skipping (252). This approach has recently been demonstrated in mice showing that morpholinos targeting the FcεRI β-subunit decreased IgE receptor expression and function on mast cells and basophils (240) and was beneficial in treating a mouse model of allergic dermatitis. Morpholino-based therapy is approved for Duchenne muscular dystrophy (243, 244), suggesting that this approach can succeed.

siRNAs are another gene targeting tool, explored in various clinical trials and on the cusp of FDA approval (253). Similar to morpholinos, siRNAs base pair with mRNAs, inhibiting translation or decreasing half-life. Several studies have used siRNAs to diminish mast cell activation or mediator production *in vitro* (93, 241, 242, 254). A critical step for any nucleotide-based approach is customizing targeting and improving cellular uptake. Several approaches are under study, including nanoparticles and lipid-based carriers (255). Progress in this area may also come from excitement surrounding the CRISPR/Cas9 system. Although less vetted in clinical trials than morpholinos and siRNA, the specificity and efficacy of CRISPR/Cas9 elicits great hope for molecular-based therapies in many fields, including mast cell-associated disease.

## Potential Targets for New Inhibitors

Although several mast cell mediators and receptors are targeted by existing therapies, others warrant consideration. Tryptase is a mast cell protease that is expressed by all mast cells and contributes to inflammation in atopy and several autoimmune diseases by causing smooth muscle contraction and fibrosis (205, 206). Several beta-tryptase inhibitors have entered clinical trials, with APC 366 moving as far as phase 2a for asthma. However, issues with target selectivity, formulation, and reproductive toxicity have thus far prevented these inhibitors from gaining FDA approval (256). There is potential for antibodies targeting tryptase to be used for mastocytosis and atopic diseases (257). Chymase is another pro-inflammatory protease made in abundance by mast cells with the potential to be targeted by chemical inhibitors or antibodies (258). Several small molecule inhibitors such as ONO-WH-236 have been developed to selectively inhibit chymase, but none of these drugs have been clinically tested in patients with mast cell-associated diseases (205, 259).

As stated above, IL-33 activates mast cells (106, 107, 260) and is elevated in patients with asthma and AD (106, 107, 261, 262). Since it also activates Th2 cells, targeting IL-33 or its receptor ST2 could be effective. An anti-ST2 human monoclonal antibody, MSTT1041A, is in phase 2 of clinical trials to treat severe asthma (http://Clinicaltrials.gov, NCT02918019). In addition, an anti-IL-33 monoclonal antibody is in a phase 2 clinical trial for peanut allergy (http://Clinicaltrials.gov, NCT02920021) and also in phase 2 trials for AD (EU Clinical Trials Register number 2016-002539-14). With varied mechanistic targets for mast cell activation and different classes of therapeutics currently being studied, there is reason to be hopeful for progress in this area.

# CONCLUSION

By demonstrating that mast cells produce a Th2-type profile of cytokines, Bill Paul's group allowed those of us fortunate to work in this field to expand our horizons and our definition of what the mast cell is. The current view is of a long-lived innate immune cell with considerable plasticity that responds to its microenvironment through a range of surface receptors, allowing the mast cell to greatly alter the course of immunity. It is therefore an ideal target for therapeutic intervention and a lineage that still yields novel insights, more than a century after its discovery.

# AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

All authors wrote and edited the manuscript.

# FUNDING

We gratefully acknowledge funding support from the U.S. National Institutes of Health [1R01AI59638 and 1R01AI101153 (to JR)].

## REFERENCES


1. Hartmann K, Wagelie-Steffen AL, von Stebut E, Metcalfe DD. Fas (CD95, APO-1) antigen expression and function in murine mast cells. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(8):4006–14.
2. Enerback L. Mast cells in rat gastrointestinal mucosa. 2. Dye-binding and metachromatic properties. *Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand* (1966) 66:303–12. doi:10.1111/apm.1966.66.3.303
3. Sonoda T, Ohno T, Kitamura Y. Concentration of mast-cell progenitors in bone marrow, spleen, and blood of mice determined by limiting dilution analysis. *J Cell Physiol* (1982) 112(1):136–40. doi:10.1002/jcp.1041120120
4. Kitamura Y, Go S. Decreased production of mast cells in S1/S1 anemic mice. *Blood* (1979) 53(3):492–7.
5. Kitamura Y, Yokoyama M, Matsuda H, Ohno T, Mori KJ. Spleen colony-forming cell as common precursor for tissue mast cells and granulocytes. *Nature* (1981) 291(5811):159–60. doi:10.1038/291159a0
6. Ishizaka K, Tomioka H, Ishizaka T. Mechanisms of passive sensitization. I. Presence of IgE and IgG molecules on human leukocytes. *J Immunol* (1970) 105(6):1459–67. doi:10.1007/BF00258552
7. Tomioka H, Ishizaka K. Mechanisms of passive sensitization. II. Presence of receptors for IgE on monkey mast cells. *J Immunol* (1971) 107(4):971–8.
8. Paul WE. Endless fascination. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2014) 32:1–24. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-032713-120247
9. Brown MA, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Falco J, Ihle JN, Paul WE. B cell stimulatory factor-1/interleukin-4 mRNA is expressed by normal and transformed mast cells. *Cell* (1987) 50(5):809–18. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(87)90339-4
10. Plaut M, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Hanley-Hyde J, Nordan RP, Paul WE. Mast cell lines produce lymphokines in response to cross-linkage of FcεRI or to calcium ionophores. *Nature* (1989) 339(6219):64–7. doi:10.1038/339064a0
11. Ryan JJ, Huang H, McReynolds LJ, Shelburne C, Hu-Li J, Huff TF, et al. Stem cell factor activates STAT-5 DNA binding in IL-3-derived bone marrow mast cells. *Exp Hematol* (1997) 25(4):357–62.
12. Crimi E, Chiaramondia M, Milanese M, Rossi GA, Brusasco V. Increased numbers of mast cells in bronchial mucosa after the late-phase asthmatic response to allergen. *Am Rev Respir Dis* (1991) 144(6):1282–6. doi:10.1164/ajrccm/144.6.1282
13. Sarvella PA, Russell LB. Steel, a new dominant gene in the house mouse. *J Hered* (1956) 47:123–8. doi:10.1093/oxfordjournals.jhered.a106620
14. Mintz B, Russell ES. Gene-induced embryological modifications of primordial germ cells in the mouse. *J Exp Zool* (1957) 134:207–37. doi:10.1002/jez.1401340202
15. Iikura M, Suto H, Kajiwara N, Oboki K, Ohno T, Okayama Y, et al. IL-33 can promote survival, adhesion and cytokine production in human mast cells. *Lab Invest* (2007) 87(10):971–8. doi:10.1038/labinvest.3700663
16. Kitamura Y, Go S, Hatanaka K. Decrease of mast cells in W/Wv mice and their increase by bone marrow transplantation. *Blood* (1978) 52(2):447–52.
17. Chabot B, Stephenson DA, Chapman VM, Besmer P, Bernstein A. The proto-oncogene c-kit encoding a transmembrane tyrosine kinase receptor maps to the mouse W locus. *Nature* (1988) 335(6185):88–9. doi:10.1038/335088a0
18. Geissler EN, Ryan MA, Housman DE. The dominant-white spotting (W) locus of the mouse encodes the c-kit proto-oncogene. *Cell* (1988) 55(1):185–92. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(88)90020-7
19. Witte ON. Steel locus defines new multipotent growth factor. *Cell* (1990) 63(1):5–6. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(90)90280-R
20. Broughton S, Hervus T, Hardy M, McClure B, Nero T, Dottore M, et al. Dual mechanism of interleukin-3 receptor blockade by an anti-cancer antibody. *Cell Rep* (2014) 8:410–9. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2014.06.038
21. Reber L, Da Silva CA, Frossard N. Stem cell factor and its receptor c-Kit as targets for inflammatory diseases. *Eur J Pharmacol* (2006) 533(1–3):327–40. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2005.12.067
22. Linnekin D. Early signaling pathways activated by c-Kit in hematopoietic cells. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* (1999) 31(10):1053–74. doi:10.1016/S1357-2725(99)00078-3
23. Iemura A, Tsai M, Ando A, Wershil BK, Galli SJ. The c-kit ligand, stem cell factor, promotes mast cell survival by suppressing apoptosis. *Am J Pathol* (1994) 144(2):321–8.
24. Hartmann K, Artuc M, Baldus SE, Zirbes TK, Hermes B, Thiele J, et al. Expression of Bcl-2 and Bcl-xL in cutaneous and bone marrow lesions of mastocytosis. *Am J Pathol* (2003) 163(3):819–26. doi:10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63442-6
25. Möller C, Alfredsson J, Engström M, Wootz H, Xiang Z, Lennartsson J, et al. Stem cell factor promotes mast cell survival via inactivation of FOXO3a-mediated transcriptional induction and MEK-regulated phosphorylation of the proapoptotic protein Bim. *Blood* (2005) 106(4):1330–6. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-12-4792
26. Aichberger KJ, Gleixner KV, Mirkina I, Cerny-Reiterer S, Peter B, Ferenc V, et al. Identification of proapoptotic Bim as a tumor suppressor in neoplastic mast cells: role of KIT D816V and effects of various targeted drugs. *Blood* (2009) 114(26):5342–51. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-08-175190
27. Furitsu T, Tsujimura T, Tono T, Ikeda H, Kitayama H, Kshimizu U, et al. Identification of mutations in the coding sequence of the pro-oncogene c-kit in a human mast cell leukemia cell line causing ligand-independent activation of c-kit product. *J Clin Invest* (1993) 92:1736–44. doi:10.1172/JCI116761
28. Dastych J, Metcalfe DD. Stem cell factor induces mast cell adhesion to fibronectin. *J Immunol* (1994) 152(1):213–9.
29. MacNeil AJ, Junkins RD, Wu Z, Lin T-J. Stem cell factor induces AP-1-dependent mast cell IL-6 production via MAPK kinase 3 activity. *J Leukoc Biol* (2014) 95(6):903–15. doi:10.1189/jlb.0713401
30. Meininger CJ, Yano H, Rottapel R, Bernstein A, Zsebo KM, Zetter BR. The c-kit receptor ligand functions as a mast cell chemoattractant. *Blood* (1992) 79(4):958–63.
31. Drube S, Heink S, Walter S, Lohn T, Grusser M, Gerbaulet A, et al. The receptor tyrosine kinase c-Kit controls IL-33 receptor signaling in mast cells. *Blood* (2010) 115(19):3899–906. doi:10.1182/blood-2009-10-247411
32. Iwaki S, Tkaczyk C, Satterthwaite AB, Halcomb K, Beaven MA, Metcalfe DD, et al. Btk plays a crucial role in the amplification of FcεRI-mediated mast cell activation by kit. *J Biol Chem* (2005) 280(48):40261–70. doi:10.1074/jbc.M506063200
33. Wei JJ, Song CW, Sun LC, Yuan Y, Li D, Yan B, et al. SCF and TLR4 ligand cooperate to augment the tumor-promoting potential of mast cells. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* (2012) 61(3):303–12. doi:10.1007/s00262-011-1098-z
34. Hundley TR, Gilfillan AM, Tkaczyk C, Andrade MV, Metcalfe DD, Beaven MA. Kit and FcεRI mediate unique and convergent signals for release of inflammatory mediators from human mast cells. *Blood* (2004) 104(8):2410–7. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-02-0631
35. da Silva EZM, Jamur MC, Oliver C. Mast cell function: a new vision of an old cell. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2014) 62:698–738. doi:10.1369/0022155414545334
36. Kinoshita T, Sawai N, Hidaka E, Yamashita T, Koike K. Interleukin-6 directly modulates stem cell factor-dependent development of human mast cells derived from CD34(+) cord blood cells. *Blood* (1999) 94(2):496–508.
37. Okayama Y, Kawakami T. Development, survival, and function of mast cells. *Immunol Res* (2006) 34(2):97–115. doi:10.1385/IR:34:2:97
38. Shimizu Y, Matsumoto K, Okayama Y, Kentaro S, Maeno T, Suga T. Interleukin-3 does not affect the differentiation of mast cells derived from human bone marrow progenitors. *Immunol Invest* (2008) 37(1):1–17. doi:10.1080/08820130701741742
39. Dahlin JS, Ekoff M, Grootens J, Löf L, Amini RM, Hagberg H, et al. KIT signaling is dispensable for human mast cell progenitor development. *Blood* (2017) 130(16):1785–94. doi:10.1182/blood-2017-03-773374
40. Mekori YA, Oh CK, Metcalfe DD. IL-3-dependent murine mast cells undergo apoptosis on removal of IL-3. Prevention of apoptosis by c-kit ligand. *J Immunol* (1993) 151(7):3775–84.
41. Lantz C, Boesiger J, Song C, Mach N, Kobayashi T, Mulligan R, et al. Role for interleukin-3 in mast cell and basophil development and in immunity to parasites. *Nature* (1998) 392(6671):90–3. doi:10.1038/32190
42. Yoshikawa H, Nakajima Y, Tasaka K. Enhanced expression of Fas-associated death domain-like IL-1-converting enzyme (FLICE)-inhibitory protein induces resistance to Fas-mediated apoptosis in activated mast cells. *J Immunol* (2000) 165(11):6262–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.165.11.6262
43. Berent-Maoz B, Piliponsky AM, Daigle I, Simon H-U, Levi-Schaffer F. Human mast cells undergo TRAIL-induced apoptosis. *J Immunol* (2006) 176(4):2272–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.176.4.2272
44. Yeatman CF II, Jacobs-helber SM, Mirmonsef P, Gillespie SR, Bouton LA, Collins HA, et al. Combined stimulation with the T helper cell type 2 cytokines interleukin (IL)-4 and IL-10 induces mouse mast cell apoptosis. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192(8):1093–104. doi:10.1084/jem.192.8.1093

45. Berent-Maoz B, Gur C, Vita F, Soranzo MR, Zabucchi G, Levi-Schaffer F. Influence of FAS on murine mast cell maturation. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* (2011) 106(3):239–44. doi:10.1016/j.anai.2010.12.001
46. Mizushima N, Levine B, Cuervo AM, Klionsky DJ. Autophagy fights disease through cellular self-digestion. *Nature* (2008) 451(7182):1069–75. doi:10.1038/nature06639
47. Ushio H, Ueno T, Kojima Y, Komatsu M, Tanaka S, Yamamoto A, et al. Crucial role for autophagy in degranulation of mast cells. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2011) 127(5):1267–76. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2010.12.1078
48. Choi GE, Yoon S-Y, Kim J-Y, Kang D-Y, Jang YJ, Kim HS. Autophagy deficiency in myeloid cells exacerbates eosinophilic inflammation in chronic rhinosinusitis. *J Allergy ClinImmunol* (2017) 141(3):938–50.e12. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.10.038
49. Frech T, De Domenico I, Murtaugh MA, Revelo MP, Li DY, Sawitzke AD, et al. Autophagy is a key feature in the pathogenesis of systemic sclerosis. *Rheumatol Int* (2014) 34(3):435–9. doi:10.1007/s00296-013-2827-8
50. Pham DL, Kim S, Losol P, Yang E, Shin YS, Ye Y, et al. Association of autophagy related gene polymor-phisms with neutrophilic airway inflammation in adult asthma. *Korean J Intern Med* (2015) 31:375–85. doi:10.3904/kjim.2014.390
51. Dwyer DF, Barrett NA, Austen KF; Immunological Genome Project Consortium. Expression profiling of constitutive mast cells reveals a unique identity within the immune system. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17(7):878–87. doi:10.1038/ni.3445
52. Kitamura Y. Heterogeneity of mast cells and phenotypic change between subpopulations. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1989) 7(8):59–76. doi:10.1146/annurev.iy.07.040189.000423
53. Xing W, Austen KF, Gurish MF, Jones TG. Protease phenotype of constitutive connective tissue and of induced mucosal mast cells in mice is regulated by the tissue. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) 108(34):14210–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.1111048108
54. da Silva EZM, Jamur MC, Oliver C. Mast cell function: a new vision of an old cell. *J Histochem Cytochem* (2014) 62(10):698–738. doi:10.1369/0022155414545334
55. Galli SJ, Kalesnikoff J, Grimbaldeston MA, Piliponsky AM, Williams CMM, Tsai M. Mast cells as tunable effector and immunoregulatory cells: recent advances. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2005) 23(1):749–86. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.21.120601.141025
56. Ryan JJ, Kashyap M, Bailey D, Kennedy S, Speiran K, Brenzovich J, et al. Mast cell homeostasis: a fundamental aspect of allergic disease. *Crit Rev Immunol* (2007) 27(1):15–32. doi:10.1615/CritRevImmunol.v27.i1.20
57. Saito H, Ishizaka T, Ishizaka K. Mast cells and IgE: from history to today. *Allergol Int* (2013) 62(1):3–12. doi:10.2332/allergolint.13-RAI-0537
58. Kulczycki BYA, Isersky C, Metzger H. The interaction of IgE with rat basophilic leukemia cells. *J Exp Med* (1974) 139:600–16. doi:10.1084/jem.139.3.600
59. Kawakami T, Blank U. From IgE to omalizumab. *J Immunol* (2016) 197(11):4187–92. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601476
60. Holowka D, Sil D, Torigoe C, Baird B. Insights into immunoglobulin E receptor signaling from structurally definined ligands. *Immunol Rev* (2007) 217:269–79. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2007.00517.x
61. Gonzalez-Espinosa C, Medina-Tamayo J, Sanchez-Miranda E, Benitez-Garrido JP, Avila-Hernandez AM, Padilla A, et al. Signaling through the high affinity IgE receptor and conditions able to modify IgE-antigen responsiveness of mast cells. *Signal Transduction* (2007) 7(5–6):402–14. doi:10.1002/sita.200700142
62. Manikandan J, Kothandaraman N, Hande MP, Pushparaj PN. Deciphering the structure and function of FceRI/mast cell axis in the regulation of allergy and anaphylaxis: a functional genomics paradigm. *Cell Mol Life Sci* (2012) 69:1917–29. doi:10.1007/s00018-011-0886-0
63. Metcalfe DD, Peavy RD, Gilfillan AM. Mechanisms of mast cell signaling in anaphylaxis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2009) 124(4):639–48. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2009.08.035
64. Xiang Z, Ahmed AA, Möller C, Nakayama K, Hatakeyama S, Nilsson G. Essential role of the prosurvival bcl-2 homologue A1 in mast cell survival after allergic activation. *J Exp Med* (2001) 194(11):1561–9. doi:10.1084/jem.194.11.1561
65. Asai K, Kitaura J, Kawakami Y, Yamagata N, Tsai M, Carbone DP, et al. Regulation of mast cell survival by IgE. *Immunity* (2001) 14(6):791–800. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(01)00157-1
66. Kalesnikoff J, Huber M, Lam V, Damen JE, Zhang J, Siraganian RP, et al. Monomeric IgE stimulates signaling pathways in mast cells that lead to cytokine production and cell survival. *Immunity* (2001) 14(6):801–11. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(01)00159-5
67. Hsu C, MacGlashan D. IgE antibody up-regulates high affinity IgE binding on murine bone marrow-derived mast cells. *Immunol Lett* (1996) 52(2–3):129–34. doi:10.1016/0165-2478(96)02599-0
68. Yamaguchi M, Lantz CS, Oettgen HC, Katona IM, Fleming T, Miyajima I, et al. IgE enhances mouse mast cell Fc(epsilon)RI expression in vitro and in vivo: evidence for a novel amplification mechanism in IgE-dependent reactions. *J Exp Med* (1997) 185(4):663–72. doi:10.1084/jem.185.4.663
69. Bax HJ, Bowen H, Dodev TS, Sutton BJ, Gould HJ. Mechanism of the antigen-independent cytokinergic SPE-7 IgE activation of human mast cells in vitro. *Sci Rep* (2015) 5(1):9538. doi:10.1038/srep09538
70. Futosi K, Fodor S, Mócsai A. Neutrophil cell surface receptors and their intracellular signal transduction pathways. *Int Immunopharmacol* (2013) 17(3):638–50. doi:10.1016/j.intimp.2013.06.034
71. Falanga YT, Chaimowitz NS, Charles N, Finkelman FD, Pullen NA, Barbour S, et al. Lyn but not Fyn kinase controls IgG-mediated systemic anaphylaxis. *J Immunol* (2012) 188(9):4360–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1003223
72. Pullen NA, Barnstein BO, Falanga YT, Wang Z, Suzuki R, Tamang TDL, et al. Novel mechanism for Fc{epsilon}RI-mediated signal transducer and activator of transcription 5 (STAT5) tyrosine phosphorylation and the selective influence of STAT5B over mast cell cytokine production. *J Biol Chem* (2012) 287(3):2045–54. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.311142
73. Pullen NA, Falanga YT, Morales JK, Ryan JJ. The Fyn-STAT5 pathway: a new frontier in IgE- and IgG-mediated mast cell signaling. *Front Immunol* (2012) 3:117. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00117
74. Malbec O, Daëron M. The mast cell IgG receptors and their roles in tissue inflammation. *Immunol Rev* (2007) 217:206–21. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2007.00510.x
75. Rivellese F, Nerviani A, Rossi FW, Marone G, Matucci-Cerinic M, de Paulis A, et al. Mast cells in rheumatoid arthritis: friends or foes? *Autoimmun Rev* (2017) 16(6):557–63. doi:10.1016/j.autrev.2017.04.001
76. Robbie-Ryan M, Tanzola MB, Secor VH, Brown MA. Cutting edge: both activating and inhibitory Fc receptors expressed on mast cells regulate experimental allergic encephalomyelitis disease severity. *J Immunol* (2003) 170(4):1630–4. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.170.4.1630
77. Feyerabend TB, Weiser A, Tietz A, Stassen M, Harris N, Kopf M, et al. Cre-mediated cell ablation contests mast cell contribution in models of antibody- and T cell-mediated autoimmunity. *Immunity* (2011) 35(5):832–44. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.09.015
78. Costanza M, Colombo MP, Pedotti R. Mast cells in the pathogenesis of multiple sclerosis and experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis. *Int J Mol Sci* (2012) 13(11):15107–25. doi:10.3390/ijms131115107
79. Lilla JN, Chen CC, Mukai K, BenBarak MJ, Franco CB, Kalesnikoff J, et al. Reduced mast cell and basophil numbers and function in Cpa3-Cre; Mcl-1fl/fl mice. *Blood* (2011) 118(26):6930–8. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-03-343962
80. Sarma JV, Ward PA. The complement system. *Cell Tissue Res* (2011) 343(1):227–35. doi:10.1007/s00441-010-1034-0
81. Erdei A, Andrásfalvy M, Péterfy H, Tóth G, Pecht I. Regulation of mast cell activation by complement-derived peptides. *Immunol Lett* (2004) 92(1–2):39–42. doi:10.1016/J.IMLET.2003.11.019
82. Woolhiser MR, Brockow K, Metcalfe DD. Activation of human mast cells by aggregated IgG through FcγRI: additive effects of C3a. *Clin Immunol* (2004) 110(2):172–80. doi:10.1016/j.clim.2003.11.007
83. Pundir P, MacDonald CA, Kulka M. The novel receptor C5aR2 is required for C5a-mediated human mast cell adhesion, migration, and proinflammatory mediator production. *J Immunol* (2015) 195(6):2774–87. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1401348
84. Akira S, Takeda K, Kaisho T. Toll-like receptors: critical proteins linking innate and acquired immunity. *Nat Immunol* (2001) 2(8):675–80. doi:10.1038/90609
85. Sandig H, Bulfone-Paus S. TLR signaling in mast cells: common and unique features. *Front Immunol* (2012) 3:185. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00185
86. Yu Y, Blokhuis BR, Garssen J, Redegeld FA. Non-IgE mediated mast cell activation. *Eur J Pharmacol* (2016) 778:33–43. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2015.07.017

87. Smrž D, Iwaki S, McVicar DW, Metcalfe DD, Gilfillan AM. TLR-mediated signaling pathways circumvent the requirement for DAP12 in mast cells for the induction of inflammatory mediator release. *Eur J Immunol* (2010) 40(12):3557–69. doi:10.1002/eji.201040573
88. Agier J, Zelechowska P, Kozłowska E, Brzezińska-Błaszczyk E. Expression of surface and intracellular toll-like receptors by mature mast cells. *Cent Eur J Immunol* (2016) 41(4):333–8. doi:10.5114/ceji.2016.65131
89. Laiño J, Wangorsch A, Blanco F, Wolfheimer S, Krause M, Flaczyk A, et al. Targeting of immune cells by dual TLR2/7 ligands suppresses features of allergic Th2 immune responses in mice. *J Immunol Res* (2017) 2017:7983217. doi:10.1155/2017/7983217
90. Wang N, McKell M, Dang A, Yamani A, Waggoner L, Vanoni S, et al. Lipopolysaccharide suppresses IgE-mast cell mediated reactions. *Clin Exp Allergy* (2017) 47(12):1574–85. doi:10.1111/cea.13013
91. Suurmond J, Dorjée AL, Knol EF, Huizinga TWJ, Toes REM. Differential TLR-induced cytokine production by human mast cells is amplified by FcεRI triggering. *Clin Exp Allergy* (2015) 45(4):788–96. doi:10.1111/cea.12509
92. Sarah C. G protein-coupled receptors: novel probe for MRGPRX2. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* (2017) 16(5):314–314. doi:10.1038/nrd.2017.77
93. McNeil BD, Pundir P, Meeker S, Han L, Undem BJ, Kulka M, et al. Identification of a mast-cell-specific receptor crucial for pseudo-allergic drug reactions. *Nature* (2015) 519(7542):237–41. doi:10.1038/nature14022
94. Subramanian H, Gupta K, Guo Q, Price R, Ali H. Mas-related gene X2 (MrgX2) is a novel G protein-coupled receptor for the antimicrobial peptide LL-37 in human mast cells. *J Biol Chem* (2011) 286(52):44739–49. doi:10.1074/jbc.M111.277152
95. Subramanian H, Gupta K, Ali H. Roles of MAS-related G protein coupled receptor-X2 (MRGPRX2) on mast cell-mediated host defense, pseudo-allergic drug reactions and chronic inflammatory diseases. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2016) 138(3):700–10. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.04.051
96. Quackenbush EJ, Wershil BK, Aguirre V, Gutierrez-Ramos JC. Eotaxin modulates myelopoiesis and mast cell development from embryonic hematopoietic progenitors. *Blood* (1998) 92(6):1887–97.
97. Juremalm M, Nilsson G. Chemokine receptor expression by mast cells. *Chem Immunol Allergy* (2005) 87:130–44. doi:10.1159/000087640
98. Hallgren J, Gurish MF. Mast cell progenitor trafficking and maturation. *Adv Exp Med Biol* (2011) 716:14–28. doi:10.1007/978-1-4419-9533-9_2
99. Juremalm M, Hjertson M, Olsson N, Harvima I, Nilsson K, Nilsson G. The chemokine receptor CXCR4 is expressed within the mast cell lineage and its ligand stromal cell-derived factor-1alpha acts as a mast cell chemotaxin. *Eur J Immunol* (2000) 30(12):3614–22. doi:10.1002/1521-4141(200012)30:12<3614::AID-IMMU3614>3.0.CO;2-B
100. Juremalm M, Olsson N, Nilsson G. Selective CCL5/RANTES-induced mast cell migration through interactions with chemokine receptors CCR1 and CCR4. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2002) 297(3):480–5. doi:10.1016/S0006-291X(02)02244-1
101. Migalovich-Sheikhet H, Friedman S, Mankuta D, Levi-Schaffer F. Novel identified receptors on mast cells. *Front Immunol* (2012) 3:238. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2012.00238
102. Willox I, Mirkina I, Westwick J, Ward SG. Evidence for PI3K-dependent CXCR3 agonist-induced degranulation of human cord blood-derived mast cells. *Mol Immunol* (2010) 47(14):2367–77. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2010.05.005
103. Jamur MC, Oliver C. Origin, maturation and recruitment of mast cell precursors. *Front Biosci* (2011) 3(7):1390–406. doi:10.2741/231
104. Cayrol C, Girard JP. IL-33: an alarmin cytokine with crucial roles in innate immunity, inflammation and allergy. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2014) 31:31–7. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2014.09.004
105. Hsu CL, Neilsen CV, Bryce PJ. IL-33 is produced by mast cells and regulates IgE-dependent inflammation. *PLoS One* (2010) 5(8):e11944. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0011944
106. Saluja R, Ketelaar ME, Hawro T, Church MK, Maurer M, Nawijn MC. The role of the IL-33/IL-1RL1 axis in mast cell and basophil activation in allergic disorders. *Mol Immunol* (2015) 63(1):80–5. doi:10.1016/J.MOLIMM.2014.06.018
107. Saluja R, Khan M, Church MK, Maurer M. The role of IL-33 and mast cells in allergy and inflammation. *Clin Transl Allergy* (2015) 5(1):1–8. doi:10.1186/s13601-015-0076-5
108. Moritz DR, Rodewald HR, Gheyselinck J, Klemenz R. The IL-1 receptor-related T1 antigen is expressed on immature and mature mast cells and on fetal blood mast cell progenitors. *J Immunol* (1998) 161(9):4866–74.
109. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E, Song Y, Murphy E, McClanahan TK, et al. IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. *Immunity* (2005) 23(5):479–90. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.015
110. Allakhverdi Z, Comeau MR, Jessup HK, Yoon B-RP, Brewer A, Chartier S, et al. Thymic stromal lymphopoietin is released by human epithelial cells in response to microbes, trauma, or inflammation and potently activates mast cells. *J Exp Med* (2007) 204(2):253–8. doi:10.1084/jem.20062211
111. Allakhverdi Z, Smith DE, Comeau MR, Delespesse G. Cutting edge: the ST2 ligand IL-33 potently activates and drives maturation of human mast cells. *J Immunol* (2007) 179(4):2051–4. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.179.4.2051
112. Ho LH, Ohno T, Oboki K, Kajiwara N, Suto H, Iikura M, et al. IL-33 induces IL-13 production by mouse mast cells independently of IgE-Fc RI signals. *J Leukoc Biol* (2007) 82(6):1481–90. doi:10.1189/jlb.0407200
113. Kaieda S, Wang JX, Shnayder R, Fishgal N, Hei H, Lee RT, et al. Interleukin-33 primes mast cells for activation by IgG immune complexes. *PLoS One* (2012) 7(10):e47252. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0047252
114. Enoksson M, Möller-Westerberg C, Wicher G, Fallon PG, Forsberg-Nilsson K, Lunderius-Andersson C, et al. Intraperitoneal influx of neutrophils in response to IL-33 is mast cell-dependent. *Blood* (2013) 121(3):530–6. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-05-434209
115. Saluja R, Zoltowska A, Ketelaar ME, Nilsson G. IL-33 and thymic stromal lymphopoietin in mast cell functions. *Eur J Pharmacol* (2016) 778:68–76. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2015.04.047
116. Dewas C, Chen X, Honda T, Junttila I, Linton J, Udey MC, et al. TSLP expression: analysis with a ZsGreen TSLP reporter mouse. *J Immunol* (2015) 194(3):1372–80. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1400519
117. Han NR, Oh HA, Nam SY, Moon PD, Kim DW, Kim HM, et al. TSLP induces mast cell development and aggravates allergic reactions through the activation of MDM2 and STAT6. *J Invest Dermatol* (2014) 134(10):2521–30. doi:10.1038/jid.2014.198
118. Paul WE. History of interleukin-4. *Cytokine* (2015) 75(1):3–7. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2015.01.038
119. Howard MC, Farrar J, Hilfiker M, Johnson B, Takatsu K, Hamaoka T, et al. Identification of a T cell-derived B cell growth factor distinct from interleukin 2. *J Exp Med* (1982) 155(3):914–23. doi:10.1084/jem.155.3.914
120. Sudowe S, Arps V, Vogel T, Kölsch E. The role of interleukin-4 in the regulation of sequential isotype switch from immunoglobulin G1 to immunoglobulin E antibody production. *Scand J Immunol* (2000) 51(5):461–71. doi:10.1046/j.1365-3083.2000.00705.x
121. Vitetta ES, Ohara J, Myers CD, Layton JE, Krammer PH, Paul WE. Serological, biochemical, and functional identity of B cell-stimulatory factor 1 and B cell differentiation factor for IgG1. *J Exp Med* (1985) 162(5):1726–31. doi:10.1084/jem.162.5.1726
122. Le Gros G, Ben-Sasson SZ, Seder R, Finkelman FD, Paul WE. Generation of interleukin 4 (IL-4)-producing cells in vivo and in vitro: IL-2 and IL-4 are required for in vitro generation of IL-4-producing cells. *J Exp Med* (1990) 172(3):921–9. doi:10.1017/CBO9781107415324.004
123. Swain SL, Weinberg AD, English M, Huston G. IL-4 directs the development of Th2-like helper effectors. *J Immunol* (1990) 145(11):3796–806.
124. Russell SM, Keegan AD, Harada N, Nakamura Y, Noguchi M, Leland P, et al. Interleukin-2 receptor gamma chain: a functional component of the interleukin-4 receptor. *Science* (1993) 262(5141):1880–3. doi:10.1126/science.8266078
125. Hilton DJ, Zhang JG, Metcalf D, Alexander WS, Nicola NA, Willson TA. Cloning and characterization of a binding subunit of the interleukin 13 receptor that is also a component of the interleukin 4 receptor. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1996) 93(1):497–501. doi:10.1073/pnas.93.1.497
126. Keegan AD, Zamorano J. Regulation of gene expression, growth, and cell survival by IL-4: contribution of multiple signaling pathways. *Cell Res* (1998) 8(1):1–13. doi:10.1038/cr.1998.1
127. Nelms K, Keegan AD, Zamorano J, Ryan JJ, Paul WE. The IL-4 receptor: signaling mechanisms and biologic functions. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1999) 17:701–38. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.17.1.701
128. Kelly-Welch A, Hanson EM, Keegan AD. Interleukin-4 (IL-4) pathway. *Sci STKE* (2005) 2005(293):cm9. doi:10.1126/stke.2932005cm9

129. Galietta LJV, Pagesy P, Folli C, Caci E, Romio L, Costes B, et al. IL-4 is a potent modulator of ion transport in the human bronchial epithelium in vitro. *J Immunol* (2002) 168(2):839–45. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.168.2.839
130. Madden KB, Whitman L, Sullivan C, Gause WC, Urban JF, Katona IM, et al. Role of STAT6 and mast cells in IL-4- and IL-13-induced alterations in murine intestinal epithelial cell function. *J Immunol* (2002) 169:4417–22. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.169.8.4417
131. Strait RT, Morris SC, Smiley K, Urban JF, Finkelman FD. IL-4 exacerbates anaphylaxis. *J Immunol* (2003) 170(7):3835–42. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.170.7.3835
132. Hoffmann HJ, Dahl C, Schiøtz PO, Berglund L, Dahl R. Lectins interact differentially with purified human eosinophils, cultured cord blood-derived mast cells and the myeloid leukaemic cell line AML14.3D10: induction of interleukin-4 secretion is conserved among granulocytes, but is not proportional to agglut. *Clin Exp Allergy* (2003) 33(7):930–5. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2222.2003.01625.x
133. Mossman TR, Bond MW, Coffman RL, Ohara J, Paul WE. T cell and mast cell lines respond to B-cell stimulatory factor 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1986) 83(15):5654–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.83.15.5654
134. Bischoff SC, Sellge G, Lorentz A, Sebald W, Raab R, Manns MP. IL-4 enhances proliferation and mediator release in mature human mast cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1999) 96(14):8080–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.14.8080
135. Burton OT, Darling AR, Zhou JS, Noval-Rivas M, Jones TG, Gurish MF, et al. Direct effects of IL-4 on mast cells drive their intestinal expansion and increase susceptibility to anaphylaxis in a murine model of food allergy. *Mucosal Immunol* (2013) 6(4):740–50. doi:10.1038/mi.2012.112
136. Karimi K, Redegeld FA, Heijdra B, Nijkamp FP. Stem cell factor and interleukin-4 induce murine bone marrow cells to develop into mast cells with connective tissue type characteristics in vitro. *Exp Hematol* (1999) 27(4):654. doi:10.1016/S0301-472X(98)00083-6
137. Lorentz A, Bischoff SC. Regulation of human intestinal mast cells by stem cell factor and IL-4. *Immunol Rev* (2001) 179:57–60. doi:10.1034/j.1600-065X.2001.790106.x
138. Xia HZ, Du Z, Craig S, Klisch G, Noben-Trauth N, Kochan JP, et al. Effect of recombinant human IL-4 on tryptase, chymase, and Fc epsilon receptor type I expression in recombinant human stem cell factor-dependent fetal liver-derived human mast cells. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(6):2911–21.
139. Yamaguchi M, Sayama K, Yano K, Lantz CS, Noben-Trauth N, Ra C, et al. IgE enhances Fc epsilon receptor I expression and IgE-dependent release of histamine and lipid mediators from human umbilical cord blood-derived mast cells: synergistic effect of IL-4 and IgE on human mast cell Fc epsilon receptor I expression and mediator release. *J Immunol* (1999) 162(9):5455–65.
140. Nilsson G, Miettinen U, Ishizaka T, Ashman LK, Irani AM, Schwartz LB. Interleukin-4 inhibits the expression of Kit and tryptase during stem cell factor-dependent development of human mast cells from fetal liver cells. *Blood* (1994) 84(5):1519–27.
141. Mirmonsef P, Shelburne CP, Yeatman CF, Chong HJ, Ryan JJ. Inhibition of kit expression by IL-4 and IL-10 in murine mast cells: role of STAT6 and phosphatidylinositol 3'-kinase. *J Immunol* (1999) 163(5):2530–9.
142. Ryan JJ, DeSimone S, Klisch G, Shelburne CP, McReynolds LJ, Han K, et al. IL-4 inhibits mouse mast cell Fc epsilonRI expression through a STAT6-dependent mechanism. *J Immunol* (1998) 161(12):6915–23.
143. Chong HJ, Bouton LA, Bailey DP, Wright H, Ramirez C, Gharse A, et al. IL-4 selectively enhances FcγRIII expression and signaling on mouse mast cells. *Cell Immunol* (2003) 224(2):64–72. doi:10.1016/j.cellimm.2003.08.004
144. Bailey DP, Kashyap M, Bouton LA, Murray PJ, Ryan JJ. Interleukin-10 induces apoptosis in developing mast cells and macrophages. *J Leukoc Biol* (2006) 80(3):581–9. doi:10.1189/jlb.0405201
145. Speiran K, Bailey DP, Fernando J, Macey M, Barnstein B, Kolawole M, et al. Endogenous suppression of mast cell development and survival by IL-4 and IL-10. *J Leukoc Biol* (2009) 85(5):826–36. doi:10.1189/jlb.0708448
146. McLeod JJA, Baker B, Ryan JJ. Mast cell production and response to IL-4 and IL-13. *Cytokine* (2015) 75(1):57–61. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2015.05.019
147. Egger D, Geuenich S, Denzlinger C, Schmitt E, Mailhammer R, Ehrenreich H, et al. IL-4 renders mast cells functionally responsive to endothelin-1. *J Immunol* (1995) 154(4):1830–7.
148. Wolk K, Kunz S, Asadullah K, Sabat R. Cutting edge: immune cells as sources and targets of the IL-10 family members? *J Immunol* (2002) 168(11):5397–402. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.168.11.5397
149. Chadban SJ, Tesch GH, Foti R, Lan HY, Atkins RC, Nikolic-Paterson DJ. Interleukin-10 differentially modulates MHC class II expression by mesangial cells and macrophages in vitro and in vivo. *Immunology* (1998) 94(1):72–8. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2567.1998.00487.x
150. Corinti S, Albanesi C, la Sala A, Pastore S, Girolomoni G. Regulatory activity of autocrine IL-10 on dendritic cell functions. *J Immunol* (2001) 166(7):4312–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.166.7.4312
151. Kasama T, Strieter RM, Lukacs NW, Burdick MD, Kunkel SL. Regulation of neutrophil-derived chemokine expression by IL-10. *J Immunol* (1994) 152(7):3559–69.
152. Wang P, Wu P, Siegel MI, Egan RW, Billah MM. IL-10 inhibits transcription of cytokine genes in human peripheral blood mononuclear cells. *J Immunol* (1994) 153(2):811–6.
153. Malisan F, Brière F, Bridon JM, Harindranath N, Mills FC, Max EE, et al. Interleukin-10 induces immunoglobulin G isotype switch recombination in human CD40-activated naive B lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* (1996) 183(3):937–47. doi:10.1084/jem.183.3.937
154. Rousset F, Peyrol S, Garcia E, Vezzio N, Andujar M, Grimaud JA, et al. Long-term cultured CD40-activated B lymphocytes differentiate into plasma cells in response to IL-10 but not IL-4. *Int Immunol* (1995) 7(8):1243–53. doi:10.1093/intimm/7.8.1243
155. Carson BWE, Lindemann MJ, Baiocchi R, Linett M, Tan JC, Chou C, et al. The functional characterization of interleukin-l0 receptor expression on human natural killer cells. *Blood* (1995) 85(12):3577–86.
156. van Roon J, Wijngaarden S, Lafeber FPJG, Damen C, van deWinkel J, Bijlsma JWJ. Interleukin 10 treatment of patients with rheumatoid arthritis enhances Fc γ receptor expression on monocytes and responsiveness to immune complex stimulation. *J Rheumatol* (2003) 30(4):648–51.
157. Lauw FN, Pajkrt D, Hack CE, Kurimoto M, van Deventer SJH, van der Poll T. Proinflammatory effects of IL-10 during human endotoxemia. *J Immunol* (2000) 165(5):2783–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.165.5.2783
158. Tilg H. Treatment of Crohn's disease with recombinant human interleukin 10 induces the proinflammatory cytokine interferon gamma. *Gut* (2002) 50(2):191–5. doi:10.1136/gut.50.2.191
159. Claret E, Llorente L, Richaud-patin Y, Garci C, Jakez-ocampo J, Cardiel MH, et al. Clinical and biologic effects of anti-interleukin-10 monoclonal antibody administration in systemic lupus erythematosus. *Arthritis Rheum* (2000) 43(8):1790–800. doi:10.1002/1529-0131(200008)43:8<1790::AID-ANR15>3.0.CO;2-2
160. Polukort SH, Rovatti J, Carlson L, Thompson C, Ser-Dolansky J, Kinney SRM, et al. IL-10 enhances IgE-mediated mast cell responses and is essential for the development of experimental food allergy in IL-10-deficient mice. *J Immunol* (2016) 196(12):4865–76. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1600066
161. Rennick D, Hunte B, Holland G, Thompson-Snipes L. Cofactors are essential for stem cell factor-dependent growth and maturation of mast cell progenitors: comparative effects of interleukin-3 (IL-3), IL-4, IL-10, and fibroblasts. *Blood* (1995) 85(1):57–65.
162. Thompson-Snipes L, Dhar V, Bond MW, Mosmann TR, Moore KW, Rennick DM. Interleukin 10: a novel stimulatory factor for mast cells and their progenitors. *J Exp Med* (1991) 173(2):507–10. doi:10.1084/jem.173.2.507
163. Ghildyal N, Mcneil HP, Gurish MF, Austen KF, Stevens RL. Transcriptional regulation of the mucosal mast cell-specific protease gene, MMCP-8. *Mol Biol* (1992) 267(12):8473–7.
164. Arock M, Zuany-Amorim C, Singer M, Benhamou M, Pretolani M. Interleukin-10 inhibits cytokine generation from mast cells. *Eur J Immunol* (1996) 26(1):166–70. doi:10.1002/eji.1830260126
165. Conti P, Kempuraj D, Kandere K, Di Gioacchino M, Barbacane RC, Castellani ML, et al. IL-10, an inflammatory/inhibitory cytokine, but not always. *Immunol Lett* (2003) 86(2):123–9. doi:10.1016/S0165-2478(03)00002-6
166. Lin TJ, Befus AD. Differential regulation of mast cell function by IL-10 and stem cell factor. *J Immunol* (1997) 159(8):4015.
167. Marshall JS, Leal-Berumen I, Nielsen L, Glibetic M, Jordana M. Interleukin (IL)-10 inhibits long-term IL-6 production but not preformed mediator release from rat peritoneal mast cells. *J Clin Invest* (1996) 97(4):1122–8. doi:10.1172/JCI118506

168. Gillespie SR, DeMartino RR, Zhu J, Chong HJ, Ramirez C, Shelburne CP, et al. IL-10 inhibits Fc epsilon RI expression in mouse mast cells. *J Immunol* (2004) 172(5):3181–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.172.5.3181
169. Millat G, Marc C, Tomasetto C, Chikh K, Fensom AH, Harzer K, et al. Niemann-pick C1 disease: correlations between NPC1 mutations, levels of NPC1 protein, and phenotypes emphasize the functional significance of the putative sterol-sensing domain and of the cysteine-rich luminal loop. *Am J Hum Genet* (2001) 68(6):1373–85. doi:10.1086/320606
170. Qayum AA, Paranjape A, Abebayehu D, Kolawole EM, Haque TT, McLeod JJA, et al. IL-10-induced miR-155 targets SOCS1 to enhance IgE-mediated mast cell function. *J Immunol* (2016) 196(11):4457–67. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1502240
171. Letterio JJ, Roberts AB. Regulation of immune responses by TGF-beta. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1998) 16(1):137–61. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.16.1.137
172. Kehrl JH. Production of transforming growth factor beta by human T lymphocytes and its potential role in the regulation of T cell growth. *J Exp Med* (1986) 163(5):1037–50. doi:10.1084/jem.163.5.1037
173. Rao PE, Petrone AL, Ponath PD. Differentiation and expansion of T cells with regulatory function from human peripheral lymphocytes by stimulation in the presence of TGF-β. *J Immunol* (2005) 174(3):1446–55. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.174.3.1446
174. Petit-Koskas E, Génot E, Lawrence D, Kolb JP. Inhibition of the proliferative response of human B lymphocytes to B cell growth factor by transforming growth factor-beta. *Eur J Immunol* (1988) 18(1):111–6. doi:10.1002/eji.1830180117
175. Bogdan C, Paik J, Vodovotz Y, Nathan C. Contrasting mechanisms for suppression of macrophage cytokine release by transforming growth factor-B and interleukin-10. *J Biol Chem* (1992) 267(32):23301–8.
176. Vodovotz Y. Mechanisms of suppression of macrophage nitric oxide release by transforming growth factor beta. *J Exp Med* (1993) 178(2):605–13. doi:10.1084/jem.178.2.605
177. Kashyap M, Bailey DP, Gomez G, Rivera J, Huff TF, Ryan JJ. TGF-β1 inhibits late-stage mast cell maturation. *Exp Hematol* (2005) 33(11):1281–91. doi:10.1016/j.exphem.2005.07.001
178. Miller HR, Wright SH, Knight PA, Thornton EM. A novel function for transforming growth factor-beta1: upregulation of the expression and the IgE-independent extracellular release of a mucosal mast cell granule-specific beta-chymase, mouse mast cell protease-1. *Blood* (1999) 93(10):3473–86.
179. Norozian F, Kashyap M, Ramirez CD, Patel N, Kepley CL, Barnstein BO, et al. TGFβ1 induces mast cell apoptosis. *Exp Hematol* (2006) 34(5):579–87. doi:10.1016/j.exphem.2006.02.003
180. Fernando J, Faber TW, Pullen NA, Falanga YT, Kolawole EM, Oskeritzian CA, et al. Genotype-dependent effects of TGF-β1 on mast cell function: targeting the Stat5 pathway. *J Immunol* (2013) 191(9):4505–13. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1202723
181. Gruber BL, Marchese MJ, Kew RR. Transforming growth factor-b-1 mediates mast cell chemotaxis. *J Immunol* (1994) 152:5860–7.
182. Olsson N, Piek E, ten Dijke P, Nilsson G. Human mast cell migration in response to members of the transforming growth factor-beta family. *J Leukoc Biol* (2000) 67(3):350–6. doi:10.1002/jlb.67.3.350
183. Gomez G, Ramirez CD, Rivera J, Patel M, Norozian F, Wright HV, et al. TGF-β1 inhibits mast cell FcεRI expression. *J Immunol* (2005) 174(10):5987–93. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.174.10.5987
184. Zhao W, Gomez G, Yu S, Ryan JJ, Schwartz LB. TGF-β1 attenuates mediator release and de novo kit expression by human skin mast cells through a Smad-dependent pathway. *J Immunol* (2008) 181(10):7263–72. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.181.10.7263
185. Ndaw VS, Abebayehu D, Spence AJ, Paez PA, Kolawole EM, Taruselli MT, et al. TGF-β1 suppresses IL-33-induced mast cell function. *J Immunol* (2017) 199(3):866–73. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601983
186. Ganeshan K, Johnston LK, Bryce PJ. TGF-1 limits the onset of innate lung inflammation by promoting mast cell-derived IL-6. *J Immunol* (2013) 190(11):5731–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1203362
187. Macey MR, Sturgill JL, Morales JK, Falanga YT, Morales J, Norton SK, et al. IL-4 and TGF-1 counterbalance one another while regulating mast cell homeostasis. *J Immunol* (2010) 184(9):4688–95. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0903477
188. Liu L, Wei Y, Xu H, Huang Y, Luo F, Huang Z. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the association of transforming growth factor β receptor I 6A/9A gene polymorphism with ovarian cancer risk. *J Recept Signal Transduct Res* (2014) 34(4):313–6. doi:10.3109/10799893.2014.885051
189. Schindler C, Darnell JE. Transcriptional responses to polypeptide ligands: the JAK-STAT pathway. *Annu Rev Biochem* (1995) 64(1):621–52. doi:10.1146/annurev.bi.64.070195.003201
190. Yao Z, Cui Y, Watford WT, Bream JH, Yamaoka K, Hissong BD, et al. Stat5a/b are essential for normal lymphoid development and differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2006) 103(4):1000–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.0507350103
191. Teglund S, McKay C, Schuetz E, van Deursen JM, Stravopodis D, Wang D, et al. Stat5a and Stat5b proteins have essential and nonessential, or redundant, roles in cytokine responses. *Cell* (1998) 93(5):841–50. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(00)81444-0
192. Shelburne CP, McCoy ME, Piekorz R, Sexl V, Roh KH, Jacobs-Helber SM, et al. Stat5 expression is critical for mast cell development and survival. *Blood* (2003) 102(4):1290–7. doi:10.1182/blood-2002-11-3490
193. Baumgartner C, Cerny-Reiterer S, Sonneck K, Mayerhofer M, Gleixner KV, Fritz R, et al. Expression of activated STAT5 in neoplastic mast cells in systemic mastocytosis. *Am J Pathol* (2009) 175(6):2416–29. doi:10.2353/ajpath.2009.080953
194. Peter B, Bibi S, Eisenwort G, Wingelhofer B, Berger D, Stefanzl G, et al. Drug-induced inhibition of phosphorylation of STAT5 overrides drug resistance in neoplastic mast cells. *Leukemia* (2018) 32(4):1016–22. doi:10.1038/leu.2017.338
195. Barnstein BO, Li G, Wang Z, Kennedy S, Chalfant C, Nakajima H, et al. Stat5 expression is required for IgE-mediated mast cell function. *J Immunol* (2006) 177(5):3421–6. doi:10.4049/JIMMUNOL.177.5.3421
196. Junttila IS, Watson C, Kummola L, Chen X, Hu-Li J, Guo L, et al. Efficient cytokine-induced IL-13 production by mast cells requires both IL-33 and IL-3. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2013) 132(3):704–12.e10. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2013.03.033
197. Ando T, Xiao W, Gao P, Namiranian S, Matsumoto K, Tomimori Y, et al. Critical role for mast cell Stat5 activity in skin inflammation. *Cell Rep* (2014) 6(2):366–76. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2013.12.029
198. Azam M, Erdjument-Bromage H, Kreider BL, Xia M, Quelle F, Basu R, et al. Interleukin-3 signals through multiple isoforms of Stat5. *EMBO J* (1995) 14(7):1402–11.
199. Liu X, Robinson GW, Gouilleuxt F, Gronert B, Hennighausen L. Cloning and expression of Stat5 and an additional homologue (Stat5b) involved in prolactin signal transduction in mouse mammary tissue (Janus kinase/signal transducers and activators of transcription/mammary gland factor/milk protein). *Dev Biol* (1995) 92:8831–5.
200. Mui AL, Wakao H, O'Farrell AM, Harada N, Miyajima A. Interleukin-3, granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor and interleukin-5 transduce signals through two STAT5 homologs. *EMBO J* (1995) 14(6):1166–75.
201. Ikeda K, Nakajima H, Suzuki K, Watanabe N, Kagami S, Iwamoto I. Stat5a is essential for the proliferation and survival of murine mast cells. *Int Arch Allergy Immunol* (2005) 137(Suppl 1):45–50. doi:10.1159/000085431
202. Ma CA, Liqiang X, Cauff B, DeZure A, Freeman AF, Hambleton S, et al. Somatic Stat5b gain-of-function mutations in early onset nonclonal eosinophilia, urticaria, and dermatitis. *Blood* (2017) 129:650–3. doi:10.1182/blood-2016-09-737817
203. Harvima IT, Levi-schaffer F, Draber P, Friedman S. Molecular targets on mast cells and basophils for novel therapies. *J Allergy ClinImmunol* (2014) 134(3):530–44. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2014.03.007
204. Molderings GJ, Haenisch B, Brettner S, Homann J, Menzen M, Dumoulin FL, et al. Pharmacological treatment options for mast cell activation disease. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* (2016) 389(7):671–94. doi:10.1007/s00210-016-1247-1
205. Reber LL, Frossard N. Targeting mast cells in inflammatory diseases. *Pharmacol Ther* (2014) 142(3):416–35. doi:10.1016/j.pharmthera.2014.01.004
206. Siebenhaar F, Redegeld FA, Bischoff SC, Gibbs BF, Maurer M. Mast cells as drivers of disease and therapeutic targets. *Trends Immunol* (2017) 39(2):151–62. doi:10.1016/j.it.2017.10.005
207. Simons FER, Simons KJ. Histamine and H1-antihistamines: celebrating a century of progress. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2011) 128(6):1139–50.e4. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2011.09.005
208. Tantisira KG, Drazen JM. Genetics and pharmacogenetics of the leukotriene pathway. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2009) 124(3):422–7. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2009.06.035
209. Bielory L, Lien KW, Bigelsen S. Efficacy and tolerability of newer antihistamines in the treatment of allergic conjunctivitis. *Drugs* (2005) 65(2):215–28. doi:10.2165/00003495-200565020-00004

210. Oppong E, Flink N, Cato ACB. Molecular mechanisms of glucocorticoid action in mast cells. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* (2013) 380(1–2):119–26. doi:10.1016/j.mce.2013.05.014
211. Yamaguchi M, Hirai K, Komiya A, Miyamasu M, Furumoto Y, Teshima R, et al. Regulation of mouse mast cell surface Fc epsilon RI expression by dexamethasone. *Int Immunol* (2001) 13(7):843. doi:10.1093/intimm/13.7.843
212. Paranjape A, Chernushevich O, Qayum AA, Spence AJ, Taruselli MT, Abebayehu D, et al. Dexamethasone rapidly suppresses IL-33-stimulated mast cell function by blocking transcription factor activity. *J Leukoc Biol* (2016) 100(6):1395–404. doi:10.1189/jlb.3A0316-125R
213. Holgate ST, Polosa R. Treatment strategies for allergy and asthma. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) 8(3):218–30. doi:10.1038/nri2262
214. Gupta R, Fonacier LS. Adverse effects of nonsystemic steroids (inhaled, intranasal, and cutaneous): a review of the literature and suggested monitoring tool. *Curr Allergy Asthma Rep* (2016) 16(6):44. doi:10.1007/s11882-016-0620-y
215. Zhang T, Finn DF, Barlow JW, Walsh JJ. Mast cell stabilisers. *Eur J Pharmacol* (2016) 778:158–68. doi:10.1016/j.ejphar.2015.05.071
216. Oka T, Kalesnikoff J, Starkl P, Tsai M, Galli SJ. Evidence questioning cromolyns effectiveness and selectivity as a mast cell stabilizer in mice. *Lab Invest* (2012) 92(10):1472–82. doi:10.1038/labinvest.2012.116
217. Guevara JP, Ducharme FM, Keren R, Nihtianova S, Zorc J. Inhaled corticosteroids versus sodium cromoglycate in children and adults with asthma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* (2006) 19(2):CD003558. doi:10.1002/14651858.CD003558.pub2
218. Lai T, Wang S, Xu Z, Zhang C, Zhao Y, Hu Y, et al. Long-term efficacy and safety of omalizumab in patients with persistent uncontrolled allergic asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sci Rep* (2015) 5:8191. doi:10.1038/srep08191
219. Pennington LF, Tarchevskaya S, Brigger D, Sathiyamoorthy K, Graham MT, Nadeau KC, et al. Structural basis of omalizumab therapy and omalizumab-mediated IgE exchange. *Nat Commun* (2016) 7:11610. doi:10.1038/ncomms11610
220. Tonacci A, Billeci L, Pioggia G, Navarra M, Gangemi S. Omalizumab for the treatment of chronic idiopathic urticaria: systematic review of the literature. *Pharmacotherapy* (2017) 37(4):464–80. doi:10.1002/phar.1915
221. Goldstein S, Gabriel S, Kianifard F, Ortiz B, Skoner DP. Clinical features of adolescents with chronic idiopathic or spontaneous urticaria: review of omalizumab clinical trials. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol* (2017) 118(4):500–4. doi:10.1016/j.anai.2017.02.003
222. Suzukawa M, Matsumoto H, Ohshima N, Tashimo H, Asari I, Tajiri T, et al. Baseline serum CXCL10 and IL-12 levels may predict severe asthmatics' responsiveness to omalizumab. *Respir Med* (2018) 131:95–102. doi:10.1016/j.rmed.2017.12.002
223. Adhya Z, Karim Y. Doxepin may be a useful pharmacotherapeutic agent in chronic urticaria. *Clin Exp Allergy* (2015) 45(8):1370–1370. doi:10.1111/cea.12580
224. Cohen MH, Williams G, Johnson JR, Duan J, Gobburu J, Rahman A, et al. Approval summary for imatinib mesylate capsules in the treatment of chronic myelogenous leukemia approval summary for imatinib mesylate capsules in the treatment of chronic myelogenous leukemia. *Clin Cancer Res* (2002) 8(5):935–42.
225. Growney JD, Clark JJ, Adelsperger J, Stone R, Fabbro D, Griffin JD, et al. Activation mutations of human c-KIT resistant to imatinib mesylate are sensitive to the tyrosine kinase inhibitor PKC412. *Blood* (2005) 106(2):721–4. doi:10.1182/blood-2004-12-4617
226. Cahill KN, Katz HR, Cui J, Lai J, Kazani S, Crosby-Thompson A, et al. KIT inhibition by Imatinib in patients with severe refractory asthma. *N Engl J Med* (2017) 376(20):1911–20. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1613125
227. Dubreuil P, Letard S, Ciufolini M, Gros L, Humbert M, Castéran N, et al. Masitinib (AB1010), a potent and selective tyrosine kinase inhibitor targeting KIT. *PLoS One* (2009) 4(9):e7258. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0007258
228. Marech I, Patruno R, Zizzo N, Gadaleta C, Introna M, Zito AF, et al. Masitinib (AB1010), from canine tumor model to human clinical development: where we are? *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* (2014) 91(1):98–111. doi:10.1016/j.critrevonc.2013.12.011
229. Paul C, Sans B, Suarez F, Casassus P, Barete S, Lanternier F, et al. Masitinib for the treatment of systemic and cutaneous mastocytosis with handicap: a phase 2a study. *Am J Hematol* (2010) 85(12):921–5. doi:10.1002/ajh.21894
230. Humbert M, de Blay F, Garcia G, Prud'homme A, Leroyer C, Magnan A, et al. Masitinib, a c-kit/PDGF receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor, improves disease control in severe corticosteroid-dependent asthmatics. *Allergy* (2009) 64(8):1194–201. doi:10.1111/j.1398-9995.2009.02122.x
231. Meltzer EO, Berkowitz RB, Grossbard EB. An intranasal Syk-kinase inhibitor (R112) improves the symptoms of seasonal allergic rhinitis in a park environment. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2005) 115(4):791–6. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2005.01.040
232. Guyer BJ, Shimamoto SR, Bradhurst AL, Grossbard EB, Dreskin SC, Nelson HS. Mast cell inhibitor R112 is well tolerated and affects prostaglandin D2 but not other mediators, symptoms, or nasal volumes in a nasal challenge model of allergic rhinitis. *Allergy Asthma Proc* (2006) 27(3):208–13. doi:10.2500/aap.2006.27.2861
233. Horak F, Puri KD, Steiner BH, Holes L, Xing G, Zieglmayer P, et al. Randomized phase 1 study of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase δ inhibitor idelalisib in patients with allergic rhinitis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2016) 137(6):1733–41. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2015.12.1313
234. Ross S, Allen I, Connelly J, Korenblat B, Smith M, Bishop D, et al. Clinical outcomes in statin treatment trials: a meta-analysis. *Arch Intern Med* (1999) 159(15):1793–802. doi:10.1001/archinte.159.15.1793
235. Cowan DC, Cowan JO, Palmay R, Williamson A, Taylor DR. Simvastatin in the treatment of asthma: lack of steroid-sparing effect. *Thorax* (2010) 65(10):891–6. doi:10.1136/thx.2010.138990
236. Zeki AA, Oldham J, Wilson M, Fortenko O, Goyal V, Last M, et al. Statin use and asthma control in patients with severe asthma. *BMJ Open* (2013) 3(8). doi:10.1136/bmjopen-2013-003314
237. Kolawole EM, McLeod JJA, Ndaw V, Abebayehu D, Barnstein BO, Faber T, et al. Fluvastatin suppresses mast cell and basophil IgE responses: genotype-dependent effects. *J Immunol* (2016) 196(4):1461–70. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1501932
238. Howarth PH, Babu KS, Arshad HS, Lau L, Buckley M, McConnell W, et al. Tumour necrosis factor (TNFalpha) as a novel therapeutic target in symptomatic corticosteroid dependent asthma. *Thorax* (2005) 60(12):1012–8. doi:10.1136/thx.2005.045260
239. Bathon JM, Martin RW, Fleischmann RM, Tesser JR, Schiff MH, Keystone EC, et al. A comparison of etanercept and methotrexate in patients with early rheumatoid arthritis. *N Engl J Med* (2000) 343(22):1586–93. doi:10.1056/NEJM200011303432201
240. Cruse G, Yin Y, Fukuyama T, Desai A, Arthur GK, Bäumer W, et al. Exon skipping of FcεRIβ eliminates expression of the high-affinity IgE receptor in mast cells with therapeutic potential for allergy. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2016) 113(49):14115–20. doi:10.1073/pnas.1608520113
241. Cruse G, Beaven MA, Music SC, Bradding P, Gilfillan AM, Metcalfe DD. The CD20 homologue MS4A4 directs trafficking of KIT toward clathrin-independent endocytosis pathways and thus regulates receptor signaling and recycling. *Mol Biol Cell* (2015) 26(9):1711–27. doi:10.1091/mbc.E14-07-1221
242. Woska JR, Gillespie ME. SNARE complex-mediated degranulation in mast cells. *J Cell Mol Med* (2012) 16(4):649–56. doi:10.1111/j.1582-4934.2011.01443.x
243. Cirak S, Arechavala-Gomeza V, Guglieri M, Feng L, Torelli S, Anthony K, et al. Exon skipping and dystrophin restoration in patients with Duchenne muscular dystrophy after systemic phosphorodiamidate morpholino oligomer treatment: an open-label, phase 2, dose-escalation study. *Lancet* (2011) 378(9791):595–605. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(11)60756-3
244. Lim KRQ, Maruyama R, Yokota T. Eteplirsen in the treatment of Duchenne muscular dystrophy. *Drug Des Devel Ther* (2017) 11:533–45. doi:10.2147/DDDT.S97635
245. Menzies D, Nair A, Meldrum KT, Fleming D, Barnes M, Lipworth BJ. Simvastatin does not exhibit therapeutic anti-inflammatory effects in asthma. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2007) 119(2):328–35. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2006.10.014
246. Maneechotesuwan K, Ekjiratrakul W, Kasetsinsombat K, Wongkajornsilp A, Barnes PJ. Statins enhance the anti-inflammatory effects of inhaled corticosteroids in asthmatic patients through increased induction of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2010) 126(4):754–62. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2010.08.005
247. Braganza G, Chaudhuri R, McSharry C, Weir CJ, Donnelly I, Jolly L, et al. Effects of short-term treatment with atorvastatin in smokers with

asthma—a randomized controlled trial. *BMC Pulm Med* (2011) 11(1):16. doi:10.1186/1471-2466-11-16

248. Hothersall EJ, Chaudhuri R, McSharry C, Donnelly I, Lafferty J, McMahon AD, et al. Effects of atorvastatin added to inhaled corticosteroids on lung function and sputum cell counts in atopic asthma. *Thorax* (2008) 63(12): 1070–5. doi:10.1136/thx.2008.100198
249. Thomson NC, Charron CE, Chaudhuri R, Spears M, Ito K, McSharry C. Atorvastatin in combination with inhaled beclometasone modulates inflammatory sputum mediators in smokers with asthma. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther* (2015) 31:1–8. doi:10.1016/j.pupt.2015.01.001
250. Bhattacharjee D, Chogtu B, Magazine R. Statins in asthma: potential beneficial effects and limitations. *Pulm Med* (2015) 2015:835204. doi:10.1155/2015/835204
251. Silva D, Couto M, Delgado L, Moreira A. A systematic review of statin efficacy in asthma. *J Asthma* (2012) 49(9):885–94. doi:10.3109/02770903.2012.721433
252. Subbotina E, Koganti S, Hodgson-Zingman D, Zingman L. Morpholino-driven gene editing: a new horizon for disease treatment and prevention. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* (2016) 99(1):21–5. doi:10.1002/cpt.276
253. Beierlein JM, McNamee LM, Ledley FD. As technologies for nucleotide therapeutics mature, products emerge. *Mol Ther Nucleic Acids* (2017) 9:379–86. doi:10.1016/j.omtn.2017.10.017
254. Safaralizadeh R, Soheili ZS, Deezagi A, Pourpak Z, Samiei S, Moin M. FcεRI-α siRNA inhibits the antigen-induced activation of mast cells. *Iran J Allergy Asthma Immunol* (2009) 8(4):177–83. doi:08.04/ijaai.177183
255. Kaczmarek JC, Kowalski PS, Anderson DG. Advances in the delivery of RNA therapeutics: from concept to clinical reality. *Genome Med* (2017) 9(1):60. doi:10.1186/s13073-017-0450-0
256. Cairns JA. Inhibitors of mast cell tryptase beta as therapeutics for the treatment of asthma and inflammatory disorders. *Pulm Pharmacol Ther* (2005) 18(1):55–66. doi:10.1016/j.pupt.2004.09.032
257. Fukuoka Y, Schwartz LB. The B12 anti-tryptase monoclonal antibody disrupts the tetrameric structure of heparin-stabilized-tryptase to form monomers that are inactive at neutral pH and active at acidic pH. *J Immunol* (2006) 176(5):3165–72. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.176.5.3165
258. Pejler G, Abrink M, Ringvall M, Wernersson S. Mast cell proteases. *Adv Immunol* (2007) 95:167–255. doi:10.1016/S0065-2776(07)95006-3
259. Nabe T, Kijitani Y, Kitagawa Y, Sakano E, Ueno T, Fujii M, et al. Involvement of chymase in allergic conjunctivitis of guinea pigs. *Exp Eye Res* (2013) 113:74–9. doi:10.1016/j.exer.2013.05.015
260. Liew FY, Pitman NI, McInnes IB. Disease-associated functions of IL-33: the new kid in the IL-1 family. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2010) 10(2):103–10. doi:10.1038/nri2692
261. Prefontaine D, Lajoie-Kadoch S, Foley S, Audusseau S, Olivenstein R, Halayko AJ, et al. Increased expression of IL-33 in severe asthma: evidence of expression by airway smooth muscle cells. *J Immunol* (2009) 183(8): 5094–103. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0802387
262. Tamagawa-Mineoka R, Okuzawa Y, Masuda K, Katoh N. Increased serum levels of interleukin 33 in patients with atopic dermatitis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* (2014) 70(5):882–8. doi:10.1016/j.jaad.2014.01.867

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

MINI REVIEW
published: 20 June 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01392

# Molecular Regulation of Histamine Synthesis

*Hua Huang[1,2]*, Yapeng Li[1], Jinyi Liang[1,3] and Fred D. Finkelman[4,5]*

*[1] The Department of Biomedical Research, National Jewish Health, Denver, CO, United States, [2] The Department of Immunology and Microbiology, University of Colorado School of Medicine, Aurora, IL, United States, [3] Department of Parasitology, Zhongshan School of Medicine, Sun Yat-sen University, Guangzhou, China, [4] The Division of Immunobiology, Cincinnati Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati, OH, United States, [5] The Division of Immunology, Allergy and Rheumatology, Department of Medicine, University of Cincinnati College of Medicine, Cincinnati, OH, United States*

Histamine is a critical mediator of IgE/mast cell-mediated anaphylaxis, a neurotransmitter and a regulator of gastric acid secretion. Histamine is a monoamine synthesized from the amino acid histidine through a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme histidine decarboxylase (HDC), which removes carboxyl group from histidine. Despite the importance of histamine, transcriptional regulation of *HDC* gene expression in mammals is still poorly understood. In this review, we focus on discussing advances in the understanding of molecular regulation of mammalian histamine synthesis.

**Keywords: histamine, histidine decarboxylase, enhancers, promoter, gene regulation**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Joshua Milner, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Cosima T. Baldari, University of Siena, Italy*
*Liam O'Mahony, Swiss Institute of Allergy and Asthma Research (SIAF), Switzerland*

****Correspondence:***
*Hua Huang*
*huangh@njhealth.org*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to Cytokines and Soluble Mediators in Immunity, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *25 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *05 June 2018*
***Published:*** *20 June 2018*

***Citation:***
*Huang H, Li Y, Liang J and Finkelman FD (2018) Molecular Regulation of Histamine Synthesis. Front. Immunol. 9:1392. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01392*

## INTRODUCTION

Bill Paul's impact on immunology is broad and enormous. Like many of his former trainees, I had the good fortune to learn from him. Bill's mentorship has nurtured my lifelong interest in studying type 2 immune responses that cause allergic diseases and protect against parasitic infections. In the early years of my laboratory, we had investigated how naïve $CD4^+$ T cells commit into T helper type 1 cells by silencing the potential to transcribe the *Il4* gene (1–3). More recently, we extended our efforts to understand how a bi-potential basophil and mast cell progenitor acquires the capacity to transcribe a set of basophil-specific or mast cell-specific genes while simultaneously repressing transcription of a gene set that is specific for the other cell type (4). With a newly gained understanding of a network of transcription factors and their targeted enhancers (5), our laboratory has chosen to investigate the *Hdc* gene (encode histidine decarboxylase, a rate-limiting enzyme for histamine synthesis) in greater detail.

Anaphylaxis is a serious allergic reaction that is rapid in onset and can be life threatening. The clinic manifestations include symptoms that involve the skin, gastrointestinal track, respiratory system, and cardiovascular system (6). Anaphylaxis can be caused by allergy to foods, insect venoms, medications, and other agents (6). The incidence of food-induced anaphylaxis has risen dramatically in developed countries during the past several decades (7–9). The cost of treating food allergy is estimated at about 25 billion dollars annually in the US alone (10).

Histamine plays an essential role in IgE-medicated anaphylaxis, the most common type of anaphylaxis (11–14). Histamine was first purified from ergot fungi (15) in 1910 and from human tissues (16) in 1927. Histamine has pleiotropic effects on skin and the cardiovascular, respiratory, digestive, central nervous, and immune systems (17). It is a profound vasodilator that increases blood vessel permeability, allowing blood leukocytes to enter tissues to promote inflammatory responses. Relatively large quantities of histamine can cause a rapid decrease in body temperature due to massive leakage of blood plasma into the extravascular space. Rapid release of large amounts of histamine leads to anaphylaxis (12, 14). Histamine belongs to a family of biogenic amines that

includes neurotransmitters, such as serotonin and dopamine, and hormones, such as epinephrine. Biogenic amines that contain one or more amine groups are formed mainly by decarboxylation of amino acids. Histamine is a monoamine synthesized from the amino acid histidine through a reaction catalyzed by the enzyme histidine decarboxylase (HDC), which removes carboxyl group from histidine (**Figure 1**). Although histamine can be synthesized by bacteria found in contaminated food (18) and in the gut of asthma patients (17, 19), in this review, we focus on discussing advances in the understanding of molecular regulation of mammalian histamine synthesis.

## HISTAMINE-PRODUCING CELLS IN MAMMALS AND STIMULI THAT TRIGGER HISTAMINE RELEASE

Histamine is synthesized primarily by mast cells, basophils, histaminergic neurons in the basal ganglia of the brain and enterochromaffin-like cells (ECL) in the stomach. These cells produce large amounts of histamine and are thought to be the major histamine-producing cells (**Figure 2**). They continuously synthesize histamine, which is then linked to the carboxyl group of heparin and stored in intracellular granules until the cells receive the appropriate activating stimulus. Upon external stimulation, these cells degranulate, releasing the stored histamine. Stimuli that trigger histamine release by these major histamine-producing cells have been reviewed extensively (20–25). Antigen crosslinking of antigen-specific IgE bound to the high-affinity IgE receptor, FcεRI, on the mast cell and basophil surface is the most robust stimulus that triggers histamine release by these cells (20–23). Substance P and allergy-inducing drugs that bind to G-protein-coupled receptors can also trigger basophils and mast cells to release histamine *via* different signaling pathway (23, 26). In addition, complement components, such as the C3a and C5a "anaphylatoxins," have also been shown to induce histamine release by mast cells (27). Many cytokines, including IL-3, IL-18, IL-33, GM-CSF, and SCF, promote histamine synthesis (28–30). In general, cytokines alone do not induce histamine release although it remains controversial whether IL-33 can have this effect. Some reports describe that IL-33 stimulates histamine release (31, 32), while other reports dispute this (33, 34). It is suggested that IL-33 alone does not induce histamine release by basophils, but enhances histamine release in response to IgE/FcεRI crosslinking (35).

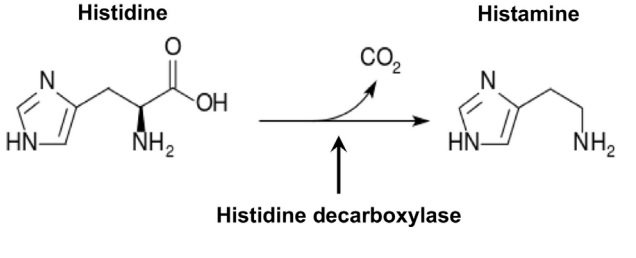



**FIGURE 1** | Histamine synthesis.

Additional histamine-producing cells have also been identified, including T cells (36), dendritic cells (37), macrophages (38, 39), and epithelial cells (40, 41) (**Figure 2**). In contrast to mast cells and basophils, these cells produce relative small quantities of histamine and do not store it in their cytoplasm (42). The small amounts of histamine that they produced are released without external stimulation (42). The biological significance of the small amounts of histamine produced by these minor histamine-producing cells remains unclear. Cell type-specific deletion of the *Hdc* gene, which encodes HDC, an enzyme essential for histamine synthesis, would shed light on the role of histamine synthesis and secretion by the minor histamine-producing cells.

## HDC AND HISTAMINE SYNTHESIS IN MAMMALS

After several groups purified mammalian HDC protein from fetal rat liver and mouse mastocytoma P-815 cells (43–45), a cDNA that encodes this protein was subsequently cloned (46, 47). The *Hdc* gene encodes HDC protein, which has a molecular mass of 74 kDa and is a proenzyme with little or no enzyme activity. Once the proenzyme is cleaved at the site near its c-terminus, presumably by Caspase-9, it yields a 53 kDa N-terminal and a 20 kDa C-terminal subunit. The 20 kDa C-terminal subunit is believed to possess inhibitory activity (48). The 53 kDa N-terminal subunit forms a homodimer that is an active decarboxylase (48, 49). HDC is the primary enzyme that catalyzes histamine synthesis. Mice deficient in the *Hdc* gene fail to synthesize histamine and have reduced or absent IgE-mediated anaphylactic responses (50–53). Several potent HDC inhibitors have been identified, including the histidine derivatives α-fluoromethyl histidine, histidine methyl ester, and pirodoxal histidine methyl ester (54–56). However, these HDC inhibitors have not been further developed for clinical use.

## *HDC* GENE EXPRESSION AND HISTAMINE SYNTHESIS IN BASOPHILS AND MAST CELLS

*Hdc* gene expression and histamine synthesis are regulated both positively and negatively by a range of factors. Notably, crosslinking of FcεRI by antigen binding to FcεRI-associated IgE increases mast cell *Hdc* mRNA expression and histamine synthesis (57, 58). These mast cell activation-induced increases in *Hdc* mRNA expression and histamine synthesis are also induced by phorbol 12-myristate 13-acetate (59). *Hdc* mRNA expression and histamine synthesis also increase as immature mast cells undergo maturation. Bone marrow-derived mast cells (BMMCs) appear immature because they contain relatively little histamine and express relatively low levels of FcεRI (60). These immature mast cells develop into mature mast cells with higher amounts of histamine *in vivo* if they are adoptively transferred into the peritoneal cavity (61). However, it is not clear if *in vivo* exposure to IgE promotes maturation and increases *Hdc* mRNA expression.

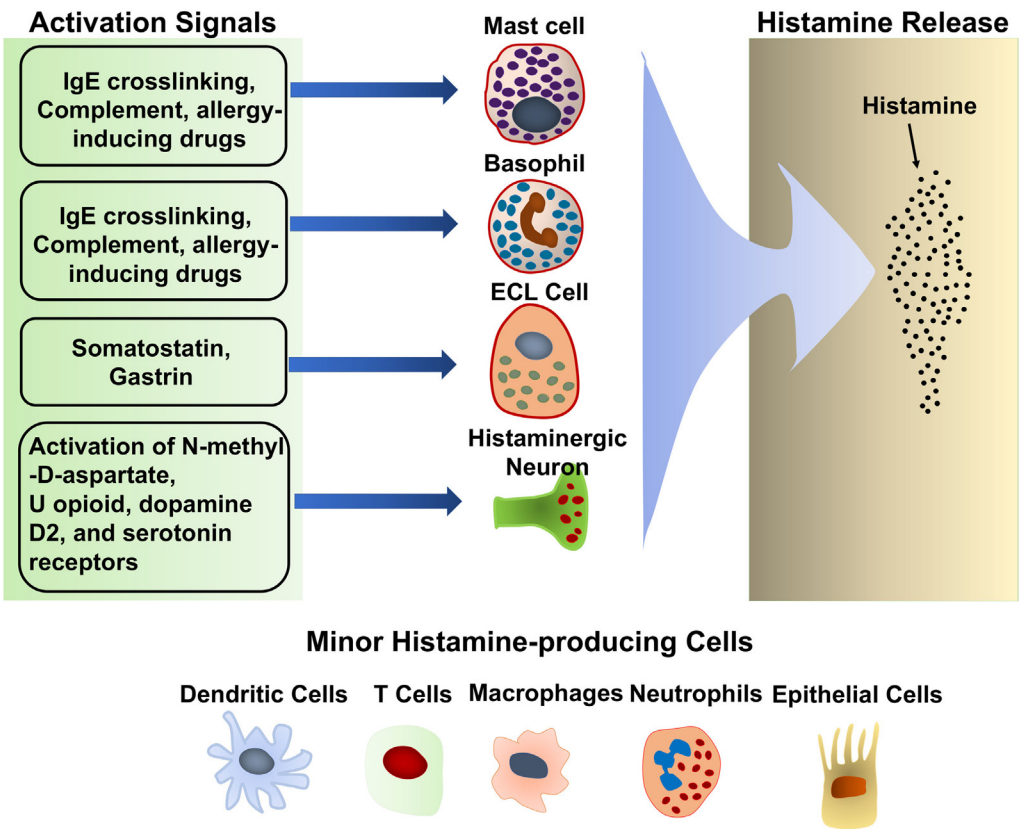



**FIGURE 2** | Histamine-producing cells and stimuli that trigger histamine release.

In this regard, we demonstrated that chlorotoxin, which induces mast cell maturation (62), strongly upregulates *Hdc* gene expression in BMMCs within few hours after the treatment (5). The mechanism by which chlorotoxin enhances *Hdc* gene transcription remains to be determined. It is conceivable that chlorotoxin activates mast cells by binding to an acidic glycosphingolipid, ganglioside G, that has been shown to be expressed on the mast cell surface (62). Chlorotoxin-triggered signals in mast cells then activate transcription factors that directly and rapidly promote *Hdc* gene transcription. It is unknown whether bacteria in the gut of allergic patients can promote *Hdc* mRNA and histamine synthesis by producing substances similar to chlorotoxin.

In line with the notion that factors promoting mast cell maturation also enhance histamine synthesis, cytokines that promote basophil and mast cell maturation, such as IL-3, IL-18, IL-33, GM-CSF, and SCF, have also been reported to increase HDC activity (28–30, 63). It is unclear whether these cytokines regulate *Hdc* gene transcription by increasing the expression of the genes that encode *Hdc* gene-activating transcription factors or by activating already expressed transcription factors to induce transcription of the *Hdc* gene. Other substances, including chemokines, neuropeptide substance P, and IL-1α have also been reported to induce *Hdc* mRNA and histamine synthesis (64, 65).

By contrast, mitochondrial uncoupling protein 2, a mitochondrial transporter protein that transfers anions from the inner to the outer mitochondrial membrane and protons from the outer to the inner mitochondrial membrane, inhibits *Hdc* mRNA expression and histamine synthesis, possibly by suppressing the production of reactive oxygen species (66). Substances found in fruits and vegetables, such as quercetin (67), and in green tea, such as epigallocatechin gallate, also potently inhibit HDC (68). More detailed examination of negative regulators of *Hdc* mRNA expression should promote development of agents that may be able to prevent and treat food allergy and other histamine-mediated allergic inflammatory disorders.

The human *HDC* gene is located in the 15q21.2 region of chromosome 15. It contains 12 exons (69) (**Figure 3**). Eight predicted isoforms can be generated by alternative splicing and two actual isoforms have been described (70). *HDC* mRNA is expressed broadly in many organs, with the highest expression levels found in the gallbladder, stomach, and lung (71). Because the RNA-seq data for normal tissues in the Human Protein Atlas were obtained from intact tissues, it is not clear whether the human *HDC* gene is expressed predominantly in known histamine-producing cells, such as mast cells and ECL in high *HDC*-expressing tissues, or predominantly in other cell types in those tissues. In contrast to

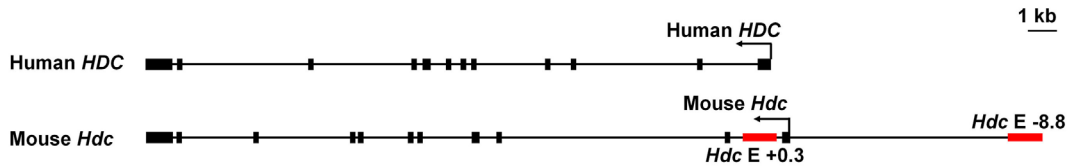



**FIGURE 3** | Genomic structures of the human and mouse histidine decarboxylase (*HDC*) gene. Red bars indicate the enhancers we described.

the human *Hdc* gene, the mouse *HDC* gene is located in chromosome 2 (72). It resembles the human gene in that it contains 12 exons, is expressed broadly in many tissues with the highest expression levels in lung, ovary, and subcutaneous fat pads (72, 73), and is 86% homologous with the human gene (https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/homologene/20490); however, there are only three predicted isoforms and no isoform, other than the classical one, have been found for murine *Hdc* (72).

There is still limited knowledge of how *Hdc* gene expression is regulated transcriptionally. Most previous work has concentrated on the promoter region of this gene. Deletion analysis of *Hdc* promoter-driven luciferase reporter gene transcription demonstrated that the transcription factor SP1 binds to a GC box (GGGGCGGGG) found in both the human and mouse *Hdc* gene promoters (72, 74). Several promoter elements have been reported to negatively regulate *Hdc* gene transcription. For example, the transcription factors YY1 and KLF4 have been shown to negatively regulate the *Hdc* gene by suppressing SP1 in a gastric cancer cell line (75, 76).

By contrast, *Hdc* gene expression is positively regulated by the transcription factor GATA binding protein 2 (GATA2), a member of the GATA family of transcription factors. GATA2 is critical for survival and proliferation of hematopoietic stem cells (77, 78), granulocyte-monocyte progenitor differentiation (79), and basophil and mast cell differentiation (80, 81) and is required for connective tissue mast cell development (5). By contrast, basophil development is not affected in connective tissue-specific *Gata2*-deficient mice (5). We have also found that mucosal and connective tissue-specific *Gata2*-deficient mice fail to develop both mucosal and connective tissue mast cells, indicating that GATA2 is required for both mucosal and connective tissue mast cell development (Li et al., unpublished data). To distinguish the role of GATA2 in regulating the *Hdc* gene from its role in mast cell development, we used an inducible gene deletion method to delete the *Gata2* gene from mast cells after they had fully differentiated. In this inducible gene deletion model, the enzyme Cre is fused to the estrogen receptor (ER) and the ER-Cre fusion product is induced to enter the cell nucleus to cleave a floxed gene of interest by the ER ligand 4-hydroxytamoxifen (82). Using this method, we demonstrated that GATA2 plays a critical role in regulating *Hdc* gene expression in even fully differentiated mast cells. However, in contrast to its role in mast cell development, GATA2 is not needed for survival of fully differentiated mast cells (83).

More recently, our group has used active histone mark ChIP and reporter gene transcription assays to identify and characterize two *Hdc* enhancers in mast cells. Epigenomic studies demonstrate that monomethylation of lysine 4 on histone 3 (H3K4me1) marks genes that are poised to be transcribed, whereas acetylation of lysine 27 on histone 3 (H3K27ac) identifies genes that are actively being transcribed. The combined presence of H3K4me1 and H3K27ac modifications predicts enhancer activity (84–88). Our H3K4me1 and H3K27ac ChIP-seq analysis of BMMCs identified two putative *Hdc* enhancers located −8.8 kb upstream and +0.3 kb downstream from the transcription start site of the *Hdc* gene (**Figure 3**). We demonstrated that the −8.8 kb *Hdc* enhancer, but not the +0.3 kb *Hdc* enhancer, increases minimal *Hdc* promoter activity in a luciferase reporter gene transcription assay. The transcription factor MITF binds to the −8.8 *Hdc* enhancer and drives its enhancer activity. Indeed, MITF overexpression largely restores *Hdc* gene expression in *Gata2*-deficient mast cells. Our study also suggests that GATA2 induces MITF and that these two transcription factors together direct full *Hdc* gene transcription in mast cells in a feed-forward manner. However, it is not certain that the −8.8 kb *Hdc* enhancer is fully responsible for positive regulation of the *Hdc* gene, because *in vivo* importance of the +0.3 kb *Hdc* enhancer in *Hdc* gene transcription cannot be ruled out by the luciferase reporter gene transcription assay alone (5).

Despite remarkable progress in genome-wide annotation of potential enhancers, functional validation of annotated enhancers remains an unmet challenge. Transgenic mice, reporter gene assay, and CRISPR/Cas9 genome editing have been used to validate the biological functions of enhancers identified by histone marks. Each of these methods has its strengths and weaknesses (89, 90). The reporter gene assay has been widely used to assess enhancer activity. It is simple, rapid, and efficient at assessing promoter and enhancer activity in transiently or stably transfected cell lines. The limitation of the transient reporter gene assay is that it does not measure promoter and enhancer activity in the context of chromatin. Despite this disadvantage, this reductionist approach is useful for assessing binding of transcription factors to *cis* regulatory elements in accessible regions. It has been reported that ~60% of annotated enhancers show enhancer activity by the luciferase reporter gene assay (86, 91–94). The *in vivo* function of the −8.8 *Hdc* enhancer requires further investigation.

## HISTAMINE SYNTHESIS IN THE CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM AND THE STOMACH

In addition to its activity as a vasoactive mediation, histamine is a neurotransmitter and a regulator of gastric acid secretion. *HDC* mRNA is expressed in the brain exclusively in the basal ganglia (95). Specific ablation of histaminergic neurons leads to repetitive movements (96), that resemble the signs of Tourette syndrome (97). Consistent with this, a nonsense mutation at the human

*HDC* gene (W317X) has been identified in a family of patients with this syndrome (97, 98) and mice completely deficient in *Hdc* gene transcription develop a Tourette-like syndrome (97, 99). However, the mechanisms involved in *Hdc* gene regulation in the basal ganglia are currently unknown. In the stomach, histamine is synthesized in ECL and is released from these cells upon gastrin and acetylcholine stimulation. The released histamine then stimulates parietal cells to secrete stomach acid (25, 100). Mice deficient in the *Hdc* gene fail to fully acidify their gastric contents (100), which can lead to indigestion, diarrhea, constipation, or rectal itching (101). Clinically, histamine 2 ($H_2$) receptor antagonists, such as ranitidine, are currently used to ameliorate stomach hyperacidity and peptic ulcer disease by blocking this receptor on the hydrochloric acid-producing parietal cells in the stomach (102). At present, it is not known how the *Hdc* gene is regulated in ECL. It is most likely that different transcription factors are used to regulate the *Hdc* gene in basal ganglia and ECL.

## CONCLUDING REMARKS

Histidine decarboxylase is the rate-limiting enzyme for histamine synthesis. Understanding transcriptional regulation of the *Hdc* gene will advance our knowledge about how this gene detects extracellular stimuli and increases its transcription, leading to histamine synthesis, replenishment, and accumulation that exacerbate allergic inflammation and anaphylaxis. Fine mapping of critical transcription factors and their authentic binding sites within the *Hdc* promoter and enhancers should promote identification of regulatory variants that influence allergy susceptibility and severity. Today, Bill Paul's teaching and his large body of work on IL-4 continues to inspire our fascination with type 2 immunity.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

All authors contributed to the literature review and writing the paper.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Research reported in this article was supported by grants from the National Institutes of Health R01AI107022 and RO1AI083986 (HH), R01AI113162 and R01AI130103 (FF), and a fund provided by Sun Yet-Sen University (JL).

## REFERENCES

1. Zhang Y, Apilado R, Coleman J, Ben-Sasson S, Tsang S, Hu-Li J, et al. Interferon gamma stabilizes the T helper cell type 1 phenotype. *J Exp Med* (2001) 194(2):165–72. doi:10.1084/jem.194.2.165
2. Zhuang Y, Huang Z, Nishida J, Brown M, Zhang L, Huang H. A continuous T-bet expression is required to silence the interleukin-4-producing potential in T helper type 1 cells. *Immunology* (2009) 128(1):34–42. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2567.2009.03049.x
3. Huang H. Suppressing allergic immune responses. *Front Biosci* (2011) 3:864–70. doi:10.2741/e294
4. Qi X, Hong J, Chaves L, Zhuang Y, Chen Y, Wang D, et al. Antagonistic regulation by the transcription factors C/EBPalpha and MITF specifies basophil and mast cell fates. *Immunity* (2013) 39(1):97–110. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2013.06.012
5. Li Y, Liu B, Harmacek L, Long Z, Liang J, Lukin K, et al. The transcription factors GATA2 and MITF regulate Hdc gene expression in mast cells and are required for IgE/mast cell-mediated anaphylaxis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017). doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.10.043
6. Simons FE. Anaphylaxis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2010) 125(2 Suppl 2): S161–81. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2009.12.981
7. Sicherer SH, Sampson HA. Food allergy. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2010) 125 (2 Suppl 2):S116–25. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2009.08.028
8. Hogan SP, Wang YH, Strait R, Finkelman FD. Food-induced anaphylaxis: mast cells as modulators of anaphylactic severity. *Semin Immunopathol* (2012) 34(5):643–53. doi:10.1007/s00281-012-0320-1
9. Vickery BP, Chin S, Burks AW. Pathophysiology of food allergy. *Pediatr Clin North Am* (2011) 58(2):363–76, ix–x. doi:10.1016/j.pcl.2011.02.012
10. Gupta R, Holdford D, Bilaver L, Dyer A, Holl JL, Meltzer D. The economic impact of childhood food allergy in the United States. *JAMA Pediatr* (2013) 167(11):1026–31. doi:10.1001/jamapediatrics.2013.2376
11. Kemp SF, Lockey RF. Anaphylaxis: a review of causes and mechanisms. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2002) 110(3):341–8. doi:10.1067/mai.2002.126811
12. Finkelman FD. Anaphylaxis: lessons from mouse models. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2007) 120(3):506–15; quiz 516–7. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2007.07.033
13. Strait RT, Morris SC, Yang M, Qu XW, Finkelman FD. Pathways of anaphylaxis in the mouse. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2002) 109(4):658–68. doi:10.1067/mai.2002.123302
14. Reber LL, Hernandez JD, Galli SJ. The pathophysiology of anaphylaxis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017) 140(2):335–48. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2017.06.003
15. Dale HH, Laidlaw PP. The physiological action of beta-iminazolylethylamine. *J Physiol* (1910) 41(5):318–44. doi:10.1113/jphysiol.1910.sp001406
16. Best CH, Dale HH, Dudley HW, Thorpe WV. The nature of the vaso-dilator constituents of certain tissue extracts. *J Physiol* (1927) 62(4):397–417. doi:10.1113/jphysiol.1927.sp002369
17. O'Mahony L, Akdis M, Akdis CA. Regulation of the immune response and inflammation by histamine and histamine receptors. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2011) 128(6):1153–62. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2011.06.051
18. Landete JM, De las Rivas B, Marcobal A, Munoz R. Updated molecular knowledge about histamine biosynthesis by bacteria. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* (2008) 48(8):697–714. doi:10.1080/10408390701639041
19. Barcik W, Pugin B, Westermann P, Perez NR, Ferstl R, Wawrzyniak M, et al. Histamine-secreting microbes are increased in the gut of adult asthma patients. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2016) 138(5):1491–4.e1497. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.05.049
20. Gilfillan AM, Tkaczyk C. Integrated signalling pathways for mast-cell activation. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2006) 6(3):218–30. doi:10.1038/nri1782
21. Caslin HL, Kiwanuka KN, Haque TT, Taruselli MT, MacKnight HP, Paranjape A, et al. Controlling mast cell activation and homeostasis: work influenced by Bill Paul that continues today. *Front Immunol* (2018) 9:868. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2018.00868
22. Gaudenzio N, Sibilano R, Marichal T, Starkl P, Reber LL, Cenac N, et al. Different activation signals induce distinct mast cell degranulation strategies. *J Clin Invest* (2016) 126(10):3981–98. doi:10.1172/JCI85538
23. Cildir G, Pant H, Lopez AF, Tergaonkar V. The transcriptional program, functional heterogeneity, and clinical targeting of mast cells. *J Exp Med* (2017) 214(9):2491–506. doi:10.1084/jem.20170910
24. Rapanelli M, Pittenger C. Histamine and histamine receptors in Tourette syndrome and other neuropsychiatric conditions. *Neuropharmacology* (2016) 106:85–90. doi:10.1016/j.neuropharm.2015.08.019
25. Hersey SJ, Sachs G. Gastric acid secretion. *Physiol Rev* (1995) 75(1):155–89. doi:10.1152/physrev.1995.75.1.155
26. McNeil BD, Pundir P, Meeker S, Han L, Undem BJ, Kulka M, et al. Identification of a mast-cell-specific receptor crucial for pseudo-allergic drug reactions. *Nature* (2015) 519(7542):237–41. doi:10.1038/nature14022
27. Woolhiser MR, Brockow K, Metcalfe DD. Activation of human mast cells by aggregated IgG through FcgammaRI: additive effects of C3a. *Clin Immunol* (2004) 110(2):172–80. doi:10.1016/j.clim.2003.11.007
28. Saluja R, Ketelaar ME, Hawro T, Church MK, Maurer M, Nawijn MC. The role of the IL-33/IL-1RL1 axis in mast cell and basophil activation in allergic

disorders. *Mol Immunol* (2015) 63(1):80–5. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2014.06.018

29. Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Tominaga K, Hoshino K, Okamura H, Akira S, et al. IL-18, although antiallergic when administered with IL-12, stimulates IL-4 and histamine release by basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1999) 96(24):13962–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.24.13962
30. Schneider E, Pollard H, Lepault F, Guy-Grand D, Minkowski M, Dy M. Histamine-producing cell-stimulating activity. Interleukin 3 and granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor induce de novo synthesis of histidine decarboxylase in hemopoietic progenitor cells. *J Immunol* (1987) 139(11):3710–7.
31. Moulin D, Donze O, Talabot-Ayer D, Mezin F, Palmer G, Gabay C. Interleukin (IL)-33 induces the release of pro-inflammatory mediators by mast cells. *Cytokine* (2007) 40(3):216–25. doi:10.1016/j.cyto.2007.09.013
32. Silver MR, Margulis A, Wood N, Goldman SJ, Kasaian M, Chaudhary D. IL-33 synergizes with IgE-dependent and IgE-independent agents to promote mast cell and basophil activation. *Inflamm Res* (2010) 59(3):207–18. doi:10.1007/s00011-009-0088-5
33. Allakhverdi Z, Smith DE, Comeau MR, Delespesse G. Cutting edge: the ST2 ligand IL-33 potently activates and drives maturation of human mast cells. *J Immunol* (2007) 179(4):2051–4. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.179.4.2051
34. Andrade MV, Iwaki S, Ropert C, Gazzinelli RT, Cunha-Melo JR, Beaven MA. Amplification of cytokine production through synergistic activation of NFAT and AP-1 following stimulation of mast cells with antigen and IL-33. *Eur J Immunol* (2011) 41(3):760–72. doi:10.1002/eji.201040718
35. Fux M, Pecaric-Petkovic T, Odermatt A, Hausmann OV, Lorentz A, Bischoff SC, et al. IL-33 is a mediator rather than a trigger of the acute allergic response in humans. *Allergy* (2014) 69(2):216–22. doi:10.1111/all.12309
36. Kubo Y, Nakano K. Regulation of histamine synthesis in mouse CD4+ and CD8+ T lymphocytes. *Inflamm Res* (1999) 48(3):149–53. doi:10.1007/s000110050438
37. Szeberenyi JB, Pallinger E, Zsinko M, Pos Z, Rothe G, Orso E, et al. Inhibition of effects of endogenously synthesized histamine disturbs in vitro human dendritic cell differentiation. *Immunol Lett* (2001) 76(3):175–82. doi:10.1016/S0165-2478(01)00184-5
38. Takamatsu S, Nakashima I, Nakano K. Modulation of endotoxin-induced histamine synthesis by cytokines in mouse bone marrow-derived macrophages. *Inflamm Res* (1997) 46(Suppl 1):S91–2. doi:10.1007/s000110050106
39. Takamatsu S, Nakano K. Histamine synthesis by bone marrow-derived macrophages. *Biosci Biotechnol Biochem* (1994) 58(10):1918–9. doi:10.1271/bbb.58.1918
40. Stegaev V, Nies AT, Porola P, Mieliauskaite D, Sanchez-Jimenez F, Urdiales JL, et al. Histamine transport and metabolism are deranged in salivary glands in Sjogren's syndrome. *Rheumatology (Oxford)* (2013) 52(9):1599–608. doi:10.1093/rheumatology/ket188
41. Maslinski C, Kierska D. Histamine in C3H/W mice carrying spontaneous tumors of the mammary gland. *Agents Actions* (1991) 33(1–2):192–4. doi:10.1007/BF01993164
42. Konttinen YT, Husu H, Han X, Passani MB, Ballerini C, Stegaev V, et al. Non-professional histamine producing cells, immune responses and autoimmunity. In: Stark H, editor. *H4 Receptor: A Novel Drug Target in Immunoregulation and Inflammation*. (2013). p. 201–58.
43. Taguchi Y, Watanabe T, Kubota H, Hayashi H, Wada H. Purification of histidine decarboxylase from the liver of fetal rats and its immunochemical and immunohistochemical characterization. *J Biol Chem* (1984) 259(8):5214–21.
44. Martin SA, Bishop JO. Purification and characterization of histidine decarboxylase from mouse kidney. *Biochem J* (1986) 234(2):349–54. doi:10.1042/bj2340349
45. Ohmori E, Fukui T, Imanishi N, Yatsunami K, Ichikawa A. Purification and characterization of L-histidine decarboxylase from mouse mastocytoma P-815 cells. *J Biochem* (1990) 107(6):834–9. doi:10.1093/oxfordjournals.jbchem.a123134
46. Joseph DR, Sullivan PM, Wang YM, Kozak C, Fenstermacher DA, Behrendsen ME, et al. Characterization and expression of the complementary DNA encoding rat histidine decarboxylase. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1990) 87(2):733–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.87.2.733
47. Yamamoto J, Yatsunami K, Ohmori E, Sugimoto Y, Fukui T, Katayama T, et al. cDNA-derived amino acid sequence of L-histidine decarboxylase from mouse mastocytoma P-815 cells. *FEBS Lett* (1990) 276(1–2):214–8. doi:10.1016/0014-5793(90)80545-T
48. Furuta K, Nakayama K, Sugimoto Y, Ichikawa A, Tanaka S. Activation of histidine decarboxylase through post-translational cleavage by caspase-9 in a mouse mastocytoma P-815. *J Biol Chem* (2007) 282(18):13438–46. doi:10.1074/jbc.M609943200
49. Komori H, Nitta Y, Ueno H, Higuchi Y. Structural study reveals that Ser-354 determines substrate specificity on human histidine decarboxylase. *J Biol Chem* (2012) 287(34):29175–83. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.381897
50. Ohtsu H, Tanaka S, Terui T, Hori Y, Makabe-Kobayashi Y, Pejler G, et al. Mice lacking histidine decarboxylase exhibit abnormal mast cells. *FEBS Lett* (2001) 502(1–2):53–6. doi:10.1016/S0014-5793(01)02663-1
51. Hallgren J, Gurish MF. Granule maturation in mast cells: histamine in control. *Eur J Immunol* (2014) 44(1):33–6. doi:10.1002/eji.201344262
52. Makabe-Kobayashi Y, Hori Y, Adachi T, Ishigaki-Suzuki S, Kikuchi Y, Kagaya Y, et al. The control effect of histamine on body temperature and respiratory function in IgE-dependent systemic anaphylaxis. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2002) 110(2):298–303. doi:10.1067/mai.2002.125977
53. Nakazawa S, Sakanaka M, Furuta K, Natsuhara M, Takano H, Tsuchiya S, et al. Histamine synthesis is required for granule maturation in murine mast cells. *Eur J Immunol* (2014) 44(1):204–14. doi:10.1002/eji.201343838
54. Kollonitsch J, Perkins LM, Patchett AA, Doldouras GA, Marburg S, Duggan DE, et al. Selective inhibitors of biosynthesis of aminergic neurotransmitters. *Nature* (1978) 274(5674):906–8. doi:10.1038/274906a0
55. Kelley JL, Miller CA, White HL. Inhibition of histidine decarboxylase. Derivatives of histidine. *J Med Chem* (1977) 20(4):506–9. doi:10.1021/jm00214a009
56. Wu F, Yu J, Gehring H. Inhibitory and structural studies of novel coenzyme-substrate analogs of human histidine decarboxylase. *FASEB J* (2008) 22(3):890–7. doi:10.1096/fj.07-9566com
57. Castellani ML, Perrella A, Kempuraj DJ, Boucher W, Tagen M, Salini V, et al. Immunological activation of human umbilical cord blood mast cells induces tryptase secretion and interleukin-6, and histidine decarboxilase mRNA gene expression. *Pharmacol Res* (2007) 55(1):57–63. doi:10.1016/j.phrs.2006.10.006
58. Chhiba KD, Hsu CL, Berdnikovs S, Bryce PJ. Transcriptional heterogeneity of mast cells and basophils upon activation. *J Immunol* (2017) 198(12):4868–78. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601825
59. Nagashima Y, Kako K, Kim JD, Fukamizu A. Enhanced histamine production through the induction of histidine decarboxylase expression by phorbol ester in Jurkat cells. *Mol Med Rep* (2012) 6(5):944–8. doi:10.3892/mmr.2012.1049
60. Galli SJ, Dvorak AM, Marcum JA, Ishizaka T, Nabel G, Der Simonian H, et al. Mast cell clones: a model for the analysis of cellular maturation. *J Cell Biol* (1982) 95(2 Pt 1):435–44. doi:10.1083/jcb.95.2.435
61. Nakano T, Sonoda T, Hayashi C, Yamatodani A, Kanayama Y, Yamamura T, et al. Fate of bone marrow-derived cultured mast cells after intracutaneous, intraperitoneal, and intravenous transfer into genetically mast cell-deficient W/Wv mice. Evidence that cultured mast cells can give rise to both connective tissue type and mucosal mast cells. *J Exp Med* (1985) 162(3):1025–43.
62. Katz HR, Levine JS, Austen KF. Interleukin 3-dependent mouse mast cells express the cholera toxin-binding acidic glycosphingolipid, ganglioside GM1, and increase their histamine content in response to toxin. *J Immunol* (1987) 139(5):1640–6.
63. Wang Z, Mascarenhas N, Eckmann L, Miyamoto Y, Sun X, Kawakami T, et al. Skin microbiome promotes mast cell maturation by triggering stem cell factor production in keratinocytes. *J Allergy Clin Immunol* (2017) 139(4):1205–16.e1206. doi:10.1016/j.jaci.2016.09.019
64. Conti P, Pang X, Boucher W, Letourneau R, Reale M, Barbacane RC, et al. Impact of Rantes and MCP-1 chemokines on in vivo basophilic cell recruitment in rat skin injection model and their role in modifying the protein and mRNA levels for histidine decarboxylase. *Blood* (1997) 89(11):4120–7.
65. Castellani ML, Ciampoli C, Felaco M, Tete S, Conti CM, Salini V, et al. Neuropeptide substance P induces mRNA expression and secretion of CXCL8 chemokine, and HDC in human umbilical cord blood mast cells. *Clin Invest Med* (2008) 31(6):E362–72. doi:10.25011/cim.v31i6.4923
66. Tagen M, Elorza A, Kempuraj D, Boucher W, Kepley CL, Shirihai OS, et al. Mitochondrial uncoupling protein 2 inhibits mast cell activation and reduces histamine content. *J Immunol* (2009) 183(10):6313–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0803422

67. Kempuraj D, Castellani ML, Petrarca C, Frydas S, Conti P, Theoharides TC, et al. Inhibitory effect of quercetin on tryptase and interleukin-6 release, and histidine decarboxylase mRNA transcription by human mast cell-1 cell line. *Clin Exp Med* (2006) 6(4):150–6. doi:10.1007/s10238-006-0114-7
68. Rodriguez-Caso C, Rodriguez-Agudo D, Sanchez-Jimenez F, Medina MA. Green tea epigallocatechin-3-gallate is an inhibitor of mammalian histidine decarboxylase. *Cell Mol Life Sci* (2003) 60(8):1760–3. doi:10.1007/s00018-003-3135-3
69. Yatsunami K, Ohtsu H, Tsuchikawa M, Higuchi T, Ishibashi K, Shida A, et al. Structure of the L-histidine decarboxylase gene. *J Biol Chem* (1994) 269(2):1554–9.
70. Mamune-Sato R, Yamauchi K, Tanno Y, Ohkawara Y, Ohtsu H, Katayose D, et al. Functional analysis of alternatively spliced transcripts of the human histidine decarboxylase gene and its expression in human tissues and basophilic leukemia cells. *Eur J Biochem* (1992) 209(2):533–9. doi:10.1111/j.1432-1033.1992.tb17317.x
71. Fagerberg L, Hallstrom BM, Oksvold P, Kampf C, Djureinovic D, Odeberg J, et al. Analysis of the human tissue-specific expression by genome-wide integration of transcriptomics and antibody-based proteomics. *Mol Cell Proteomics* (2014) 13(2):397–406. doi:10.1074/mcp.M113.035600
72. Suzuki-Ishigaki S, Numayama-Tsuruta K, Kuramasu A, Sakurai E, Makabe Y, Shimura S, et al. The mouse L-histidine decarboxylase gene: structure and transcriptional regulation by CpG methylation in the promoter region. *Nucleic Acids Res* (2000) 28(14):2627–33. doi:10.1093/nar/28.14.2627
73. Yue F, Cheng Y, Breschi A, Vierstra J, Wu W, Ryba T, et al. A comparative encyclopedia of DNA elements in the mouse genome. *Nature* (2014) 515(7527):355–64. doi:10.1038/nature13992
74. Hirasawa N, Torigoe M, Kano K, Ohuchi K. Involvement of Sp1 in lipopolysaccharide-induced expression of HDC mRNA in RAW 264 cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* (2006) 349(2):833–7. doi:10.1016/j.bbrc.2006.08.104
75. Ai W, Liu Y, Wang TC. Yin yang 1 (YY1) represses histidine decarboxylase gene expression with SREBP-1a in part through an upstream Sp1 site. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* (2006) 290(6):G1096–104. doi:10.1152/ajpgi.00199.2005
76. Ai W, Liu Y, Langlois M, Wang TC. Kruppel-like factor 4 (KLF4) represses histidine decarboxylase gene expression through an upstream Sp1 site and downstream gastrin responsive elements. *J Biol Chem* (2004) 279(10):8684–93. doi:10.1074/jbc.M308278200
77. Ling KW, Ottersbach K, van Hamburg JP, Oziemlak A, Tsai FY, Orkin SH, et al. GATA-2 plays two functionally distinct roles during the ontogeny of hematopoietic stem cells. *J Exp Med* (2004) 200(7):871–82. doi:10.1084/jem.20031556
78. Lim KC, Hosoya T, Brandt W, Ku CJ, Hosoya-Ohmura S, Camper SA, et al. Conditional Gata2 inactivation results in HSC loss and lymphatic mispatterning. *J Clin Invest* (2012) 122(10):3705–17. doi:10.1172/JCI61619
79. Rodrigues NP, Boyd AS, Fugazza C, May GE, Guo Y, Tipping AJ, et al. GATA-2 regulates granulocyte-macrophage progenitor cell function. *Blood* (2008) 112(13):4862–73. doi:10.1182/blood-2008-01-136564
80. Tsai FY, Orkin SH. Transcription factor GATA-2 is required for proliferation/survival of early hematopoietic cells and mast cell formation, but not for erythroid and myeloid terminal differentiation. *Blood* (1997) 89(10):3636–43.
81. Iwasaki H, Mizuno S, Arinobu Y, Ozawa H, Mori Y, Shigematsu H, et al. The order of expression of transcription factors directs hierarchical specification of hematopoietic lineages. *Genes Dev* (2006) 20(21):3010–21. doi:10.1101/gad.1493506
82. Hayashi S, McMahon AP. Efficient recombination in diverse tissues by a tamoxifen-inducible form of Cre: a tool for temporally regulated gene activation/inactivation in the mouse. *Dev Biol* (2002) 244(2):305–18. doi:10.1006/dbio.2002.0597
83. Li Y, Qi X, Liu B, Huang H. The STAT5-GATA2 pathway is critical in basophil and mast cell differentiation and maintenance. *J Immunol* (2015) 194(9):4328–38. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1500018
84. Rada-Iglesias A, Bajpai R, Swigut T, Brugmann SA, Flynn RA, Wysocka J. A unique chromatin signature uncovers early developmental enhancers in humans. *Nature* (2011) 470(7333):279–83. doi:10.1038/nature09692
85. Calo E, Wysocka J. Modification of enhancer chromatin: what, how, and why? *Mol Cell* (2013) 49(5):825–37. doi:10.1016/j.molcel.2013.01.038
86. Heintzman ND, Stuart RK, Hon G, Fu Y, Ching CW, Hawkins RD, et al. Distinct and predictive chromatin signatures of transcriptional promoters and enhancers in the human genome. *Nat Genet* (2007) 39(3):311–8. doi:10.1038/ng1966
87. Creyghton MP, Cheng AW, Welstead GG, Kooistra T, Carey BW, Steine EJ, et al. Histone H3K27ac separates active from poised enhancers and predicts developmental state. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2010) 107(50):21931–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.1016071107
88. Spitz F, Furlong EE. Transcription factors: from enhancer binding to developmental control. *Nat Rev Genet* (2012) 13(9):613–26. doi:10.1038/nrg3207
89. Kellis M, Wold B, Snyder MP, Bernstein BE, Kundaje A, Marinov GK, et al. Defining functional DNA elements in the human genome. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2014) 111(17):6131–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.1318948111
90. Shlyueva D, Stampfel G, Stark A. Transcriptional enhancers: from properties to genome-wide predictions. *Nat Rev Genet* (2014) 15(4):272–86. doi:10.1038/nrg3682
91. Koues OI, Kowalewski RA, Chang LW, Pyfrom SC, Schmidt JA, Luo H, et al. Enhancer sequence variants and transcription-factor deregulation synergize to construct pathogenic regulatory circuits in B-cell lymphoma. *Immunity* (2015) 42(1):186–98. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.12.021
92. May D, Blow MJ, Kaplan T, McCulley DJ, Jensen BC, Akiyama JA, et al. Large-scale discovery of enhancers from human heart tissue. *Nat Genet* (2011) 44(1):89–93. doi:10.1038/ng.1006
93. Arnold CD, Gerlach D, Stelzer C, Boryn LM, Rath M, Stark A. Genome-wide quantitative enhancer activity maps identified by STARR-seq. *Science* (2013) 339(6123):1074–7. doi:10.1126/science.1232542
94. Bonn S, Zinzen RP, Girardot C, Gustafson EH, Perez-Gonzalez A, Delhomme N, et al. Tissue-specific analysis of chromatin state identifies temporal signatures of enhancer activity during embryonic development. *Nat Genet* (2012) 44(2):148–56. doi:10.1038/ng.1064
95. Krusong K, Ercan-Sencicek AG, Xu M, Ohtsu H, Anderson GM, State MW, et al. High levels of histidine decarboxylase in the striatum of mice and rats. *Neurosci Lett* (2011) 495(2):110–4. doi:10.1016/j.neulet.2011.03.050
96. Rapanelli M, Frick L, Bito H, Pittenger C. Histamine modulation of the basal ganglia circuitry in the development of pathological grooming. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2017) 114(25):6599–604. doi:10.1073/pnas.1704547114
97. Baldan LC, Williams KA, Gallezot JD, Pogorelov V, Rapanelli M, Crowley M, et al. Histidine decarboxylase deficiency causes Tourette syndrome: parallel findings in humans and mice. *Neuron* (2014) 81(1):77–90. doi:10.1016/j.neuron.2013.10.052
98. Ercan-Sencicek AG, Stillman AA, Ghosh AK, Bilguvar K, O'Roak BJ, Mason CE, et al. L-histidine decarboxylase and Tourette's syndrome. *N Engl J Med* (2010) 362(20):1901–8. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa0907006
99. Xu M, Li L, Ohtsu H, Pittenger C. Histidine decarboxylase knockout mice, a genetic model of Tourette syndrome, show repetitive grooming after induced fear. *Neurosci Lett* (2015) 595:50–3. doi:10.1016/j.neulet.2015.03.067
100. Tanaka S, Hamada K, Yamada N, Sugita Y, Tonai S, Hunyady B, et al. Gastric acid secretion in L-histidine decarboxylase-deficient mice. *Gastroenterology* (2002) 122(1):145–55. doi:10.1053/gast.2002.30312
101. Saltzman JR, Kemp JA, Golner BB, Pedrosa MC, Dallal GE, Russell RM. Effect of hypochlorhydria due to omeprazole treatment or atrophic gastritis on protein-bound vitamin B12 absorption. *J Am Coll Nutr* (1994) 13(6):584–91. doi:10.1080/07315724.1994.10718452
102. Brogden RN, Carmine AA, Heel RC, Speight TM, Avery GS. Ranitidine: a review of its pharmacology and therapeutic use in peptic ulcer disease and other allied diseases. *Drugs* (1982) 24(4):267–303. doi:10.2165/00003495-198224040-00002


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 23 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00739

# Multilayer Control of B Cell Activation by the B Cell Antigen Receptor: Following Themes Initiated With Bill Paul

*Anthony L. DeFranco**

*Department of Microbiology and Immunology, University of California, San Francisco, San Francisco, CA, United States*

This article describes the work I did in Bill Paul's lab as a postdoctoral fellow between 1979 and 1983, and to a lesser extent puts that work in the context of other work on B cell activation and antibody responses that was going on in Bill's lab at that time and shortly beforehand, including the discovery of interleukin 4. In addition, this work describes the subsequent and continuing work in my own lab following-up on themes I began during my time working directly with Bill. A particular emphasis was on understanding the biochemical mechanisms of signaling by the B cell antigen receptor (BCR) to the interior of the B cell. Some of the studies from my lab related to the regulation of BCR signaling by Lyn are described in relationship to the lymphocyte tuning hypothesis put forth by Grossman and Paul in 1992 and subsequently.

**Keywords: activation, autoimmunity, B cell, B cell antigen receptor, signaling, tolerance, tuning**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Joshua Milner, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Susan K. Pierce, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*
*Silvia Deaglio, Università degli Studi di Torino, Italy*

***Correspondence:**
*Anthony L. DeFranco*
*anthony.defranco@ucsf.edu*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *26 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *26 March 2018*
***Published:*** *23 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*DeFranco AL (2018) Multilayer Control of B Cell Activation by the B Cell Antigen Receptor: Following Themes Initiated With Bill Paul. Front. Immunol. 9:739. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00739*

## STUDIES OF B CELL ACTIVATION WITH BILL PAUL (1979–1983)

I joined Bill Paul's research group at NIH in late 1979 as a postdoctoral fellow soon after Bill had focused much of his attention on understanding B cell activation by antigen. I was interested in the biochemical mechanisms by which receptors signaled to the interior of the cell that they had bound their ligand. At this time, before the discovery of the TCR (which was very close on the horizon; Mark Davis joined us a year later), this problem was more readily approachable in B cells than T cells, as anti-Ig reagents were an accepted surrogate for antigen, and there was no equivalent approach in T cells.

Previous to this time, Bill and colleagues had studied how lymphocytes responded to antigen in B cells and T cells and had concluded that membrane Ig on the surface of B cells was a signaling receptor (1), as opposed to serving primarily a binding/focusing function, as proposed by some other investigators. For example, they and others had found that anti-IgM crosslinking antibodies induced vigorous proliferation of mouse B cells. My initial studies with Bill were designed to characterize in more detail the nature of this proliferation. Maureen Howard, who had recently joined Bill's lab from Australia, used this assay to look for T cell-derived growth factors for B cells (by analogy with IL-2), and she and John Farrar discovered IL-4 by its ability to strongly promote the proliferation of B cells stimulated with a sub-mitogenic concentration of anti-IgM antibodies (2).

The spleen was used as a source of B cells for these experiments, and there was evident heterogeneity in the size of the cells, suggesting that perhaps some of the cells were in the process of activation at the time of isolation. It is now known that splenic marginal zone B cells and B1 B cells have an enlarged pre-activation-like phenotype, in contrast to follicular B cells, which are small, resting lymphocytes. To reduce this heterogeneity, I used Percoll density gradients to isolate a more homogeneous small

lymphocyte population of splenic B cells. These cells, comprising 60–70% of splenic B cells, fit the cell biological definition of resting or quiescent cells, as they needed at least 30 h of stimulation before entering S phase and completed the first round of cell division in a synchronous fashion (3, 4). When stimulated with anti-IgM, all of these small, resting B cells exhibited a prolonged period of cell enlargement, corresponding to exit from a quiescent phase ($G_0$) and progress through the $G_1$ phase of the cell cycle in a process that required continuous stimulation (5). At any time during the first 24 h, removal of anti-IgM caused the cells to stop their enlargement, indicating that progression through early $G_1$ phase was dependent on continued B cell antigen receptor (BCR) stimulation (5). This result was somewhat surprising since anti-IgM is very effective at capping membrane IgM molecules and causing their internalization and degradation. However, newly synthesized membrane IgM molecules are present on the cell surface, albeit at low levels, and these studies indicated that their engagement and signaling was required for B cell activation to proceed. After 24 h, progression through S phase, which occurred with about 50% of the stimulated B cells, was now independent of BCR stimulation, consistent with B cells following the cell cycle rules observed in various other mammalian cell types in culture.

Previous work in Bill's lab had found that anti-IgM failed to induce proliferation of splenic B cells isolated from CBA/N mice or from $F_1$ male mice with CBA/N mothers (6), which were subsequently shown to have a loss-of-function mutation in the gene encoding Btk (7), which is located on the X chromosome. Btk is now known to be an important signaling component of the BCR. The mutant locus in CBA/N mice at the time was called *xid*, for X-linked immunodeficiency locus, as these mice had defective antibody responses to polysaccharide antigens. These antigens would induce antibody responses in T cell-deficient mice (nude mice), as would some other antigens that induced responses in *xid* mice. Thus, T cell-deficient mice and *xid* mice were used to characterize antigens into three functionally distinct groupings: T cell-dependent antigens, T-independent type I antigens (those that worked in *xid* mice), and T-independent type 2 antigens (those that did not induce antibody responses in *xid* mice). Based on lack of responsiveness in *xid* mice, anti-IgM most resembled polysaccharide antigens (TI-2 antigens), which made sense in that polysaccharides were thought to be able to effectively cross-link many BCR molecules on the surface of B cells (8) and hence induce strong signaling reactions to stimulate the B cell, a point that was experimentally verified several years later when BCR signaling reactions were identified (9). This analogy only went so far, however, as anti-IgM-stimulated B cells failed to differentiate into antibody-secreting cells *in vitro*, suggesting that additional signals beyond BCR signaling were needed. Along with Maureen Howard and Bill's pioneering discovery of IL-4, two other groups discovered IL-5 and IL-6, which had distinct effects on B cells *in vitro*. Treatment of anti-IgM-stimulated B cells with highly purified IL-4$^+$IL-5$^+$IL-6 induced them to terminally differentiate into antibody-secreting cells (10), thereby providing an *in vitro* model mimicking many properties of polysaccharide antigens.

Bill's interest in using *xid* mice as a tool to uncover aspects of B cell activation in this time period contributed importantly to understanding the differential requirements for antibody responses of polysaccharide antigens vs. other types of antigens and several of my fellow postdoctoral fellows in Bill's lab were studying antibody responses to pure polysaccharide antigens (11, 12). Remarkably, the understanding that Bill's lab contributed on this topic would subsequently have relevance to human vaccine design. To make vaccines against several major bacterial pathogens, their cell wall polysaccharides were isolated and used as vaccines. It was subsequently recognized that this type of vaccine was poorly efficacious in very young children (<2 years old), whereas other types of vaccines were effective when used to immunize children several times within the first year of life. Thus, the TI-2 vaccines had limitations that meant that they were unable to prevent some forms of serious disease in young children. The elegant solution was to convert TI-2 antigens to T cell-dependent antigens by attaching an immunogenic protein to them, creating the "conjugate vaccines" (13). Although Bill's own research efforts were not directed toward this particular development, his earlier studies had laid the conceptual groundwork for the development of conjugate vaccines.

While IL-4, IL-5, and IL-6 could all be made by CD4$^+$ T cells, the anti-IgM$^+$IL-4$^+$IL-5$^+$IL-6 model did not seem to fully recapitulate the activity of helper T cells, in part because *xid* B cells could not respond in this system, but made reasonable responses *in vivo* to T cell dependent antigens such as haptenated proteins. At that time, Ron Schwartz's lab, also in the Laboratory of Immunology at NIH, had become highly proficient at propagating CD4 T cells *in vitro* and could generate clonal cell lines with homogeneous specificity. One of Ron's postdoctoral fellows, Jonathan Ashwell, now an investigator at NCI, had such T cell clones, and we decided to join forces to try and study how helper T cells and B cells interact to induce T cell-dependent antibody responses. We were able to observe excellent polyclonal proliferation of small resting splenic B cells when we put them together with some of Jon's clones and added the antigen for that clone. This represented a polyclonal version of earlier experiments published by Singer and colleagues at NIH, who had taken antigen-specific helper T cells, combined them with B cells and achieved *in vitro* activation of the antigen-specific B cells as judged by antibody production. In those studies, to be activated, the B cells had to express the allelic form of class II MHC that was recognized by the helper T cells (14). We thought our system might be able to tease out some aspects of the mechanism by which helper T cells activate B cells, and indeed this was the case, but only after an important issue was resolved first.

Central to these experiments was the issue of whether B cells presented antigen to T cells and if so, what were the functional consequences of that presentation for the two partners in the interaction. Since B cells expressed high levels of class II MHC molecules, it seemed likely that they could present antigen to T cells but did this presentation lead to activation of the T cells or did the recognition of peptide/MHC by the T cell directly send an activation signal to the B cell? With regard to the activation of the T cell, B lymphoma-derived cell lines could present antigen to primary T cells (15), but attempts to demonstrate directly this presentation by primary B cells *in vitro* had often been unsuccessful. We were more focused on the other issue: would the clonal T cells, once activated by adding their antigen, stimulate any

B cell or only the B cell presenting antigen to that T cell? If T cell help for B cells was primarily mediated by the cytokines produced upon T cell recognition of antigen, then perhaps the T cell would activate "bystander" B cells. Alternatively, the recognition of peptide/MHC by the T cell might generate a signal only within the antigen-presenting B cell, for example, transmitted by MHC class II molecules upon their engagement by the T cells' TCR. To address this question, we mixed together with the T cell clones equal numbers of two types of splenic B cells, one expressing the allele of class II MHC molecule that was recognized by the T cell, and the other expressing only non-stimulatory alleles of MHC class II. As the read out for many of these experiments was proliferation of the cell of interest, a common approach was to irradiate the other cells added to the culture, so that they were incapable of incorporating radiolabeled thymidine and hence would not add to the signal. When an unseparated population of spleen cells was irradiated in this way (3,000 R), it retained full activity to activate T cells, so this approach seemed to be valid. For our experiments, we irradiated the T cells and one or the other of the two B cell populations. When we then analyzed proliferation of the two types of B cell, the B cells with the correct MHC class II proliferated when the bystander B cells were irradiated, but the bystander B cells failed to proliferate when the antigen-presenting B cells were irradiated. This turned out to be a misleading answer, as we soon discovered. In discussing this experiment with Bill and Ron Schwartz, Bill was concerned that perhaps the effects seen were due to differential activation of the clonal T cells in the two parallel cultures. While the irradiation procedure seemed to be innocuous, how could we be sure? Bill's rigorous thought proved to be pivotal. Jon and I went back to the bench and devised an experiment to address Bill's objection. Now, we did not irradiate either B cell population, but just mixed them together, incubated them with the T cell clone and added the T cell's antigen. After 24 h incubation, we measured enlargement of the two types of B cells, which we could distinguish by flow cytometry. Now both the antigen-presenting B cells and the bystander B cells became activated to similar extents, indicating that once the T cells were activated, they could activate bystander B cells as well as the B cells that presented antigen to them (16). Of course, the activation of the T cells was MHC restricted, but, at least in this circumstance where there were many T cells present, the means by which T cells activated B cells was not MHC restricted and behaved as expected for cytokines. It was several years later that Randy Noelle at Dartmouth University discovered the molecular mechanism for this activation as being due to CD40L on the surface of the helper T cell (17). T cell recognition of antigen/MHC induces upregulation of CD40L on the T cell, which delivers a critical signal to B cells *via* their CD40. We now know that soluble cytokines such as IL-4 and IL-21 also contribute to the B cell response. The critical nature of CD40L for helper T cell activation of B cells was subsequently verified by the discovery that X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome, in which T cell-dependent antibody responses are highly defective, results from mutations in the gene encoding CD40L (18).

A second outcome of the collaboration between Jon and me was the direct demonstration that primary B cells are very good at presenting antigen to T cells and activating them (19). Whereas macrophages and dendritic cells still presented antigen well following irradiation at 3,000 R, antigen presentation by B cells was very sensitive to irradiation; their antigen presentation function could be maintained by irradiation up to 1,000 R, but above that, their antigen presentation function was abrogated by irradiation-induced apoptosis. Thus, our early experimental design was flawed by a difference in radiosensitivity between small resting B cells and "professional" antigen-presenting cells such as macrophages and dendritic cells. In any case, the direct demonstration of a robust ability of primary B cells to present antigen to T cells and induce their activation, an outcome of this project, was a substantial contribution to immunology at the time, and by challenging Jon and me to improve our experiments, Bill played an essential role in this discovery.

## BIOCHEMICAL BASIS OF BCR SIGNALING (1983–PRESENT)

As I was pursuing the projects described earlier in Bill's lab at NIH, I was interested in the biochemical basis by which BCR engagement by anti-IgM induced its effects on B cells. In those days, knowledge about receptor signaling mechanisms was limited to a handful of receptors. Given the techniques available at the time, investigating the process in small resting splenic B cells seemed to be a large challenge. Mark Davis was accumulating different mouse B lymphoma-derived cell lines to use in his efforts to isolate and characterize genes that were differentially expressed between B cells and T cells. Mark and Steve Hedrick found that among the cDNAs that were expressed only in T cells, one was found to exhibit DNA rearrangement in the genome of T cells and was then found to encode the TCR β chain, which was the initial cloning of a TCR gene (20). One of the B cell lines accumulated by Mark, WEHI-231, stopped growing when incubated with anti-IgM, demonstrating that it had intact BCR signaling and suggesting that it might be representative of immature B cells contacting self-antigen (3, 4). While in Bill's lab, I explored the properties of this cell line and decided that when I started my own lab I would use this cell line to study the mechanism of BCR signaling.

Of course how antigen receptors informed B cells and T cells of their encounter with cognate antigen was a fundamental problem and of great interest to many immunologists. Roger Tsien had recently synthesized novel calcium sensing fluorescent dyes that could be loaded into cells and used to measure intracellular free calcium which was widely thought to be important for regulating cell responses and indeed, it turned out that both B cells and T cells stimulated *via* the BCR or TCR exhibited a rapid and robust increase in intracellular free calcium (21). At this time, a novel lipid signaling reaction, involving hydrolysis of phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate ($PIP_2$) had been recently characterized in a number of different cell types and Gerry Klaus and collaborators then showed that B cells stimulated by the BCR robustly triggered this signaling reaction (22). We confirmed that this was also true of the WEHI-231 cell line and that one of the second messengers released, inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate could release calcium from intracellular stores present in B cells, as in smooth muscle and other non-lymphoid cell types (23),

indicating that hydrolysis of $PIP_2$ was likely upstream of the rapid rise in intracellular free calcium seen upon treatment of B cells with anti-IgM. $PIP_2$ hydrolysis seemed to be an important aspect of lymphocyte response to antigen as in both B cells and T cells, since antigen stimulation could be mimicked well by incubating them in a calcium ionophore (to raise intracellular free calcium) and a phorbol ester (24), compounds that were unmetabolizable analogs of the other second messenger generated from $PIP_2$ hydrolysis, namely diacylglycerol (DG). At the time, DG and phorbol esters were thought to act *via* a small family of protein kinases called protein kinase Cs. Several years later, it was learned that there are additional signaling reactions downstream of DG or phorbol esters, including activation of the Ras GTPases *via* RasGRP. DG activation of RasGRP is a critical pathway in lymphocytes leading to activation of mitogen-activated protein kinases (25, 26).

As appreciation of the likely important role of $PIP_2$ hydrolysis as a mediator of BCR and TCR signaling grew, the problem remained, how did these receptors activate this signaling reaction? The answer emerged from investigators studying how cells became malignant. Cancer researchers Tony Hunter, Mike Bishop, and others, had implicated a new form of protein phosphorylation, tyrosine phosphorylation, as central to growth control in multiple situations, including treatment of cells with growth factors and transformation of cells with certain oncogenes. It emerged that the epidermal growth factor receptor's intracellular domain was a tyrosine kinase and other tyrosine kinases, such as the viral oncogene v-Src and its normal cellular counterpart (c-Src), were intracellular protein tyrosine kinases associated with the plasma membrane. Mike Gold in my lab used recently developed antibodies against phosphotyrosine to demonstrate that stimulation of the BCR induced very rapid tyrosine phosphorylation of a series of different proteins (27), a result that was also reported independently at about the same type by several other groups (28). In parallel, protein tyrosine phosphorylation emerged as a critical early event triggered by the TCR, with major contributions made by Larry Samelson, Andre Veillette, Joe Bolen, Art Weiss, and others (29).

Soon after the discovery that BCR and TCR stimulation induced tyrosine phosphorylation of multiple proteins, it became evident these phosphorylations represented the key proximal signaling events triggered by antigen engagement (27). For example, Mike Gold and others in my lab set about defining the targets of this phosphorylation (28, 30–32), which made it possible to connect tyrosine phosphorylation to other signaling events such as $PIP_2$ hydrolysis and calcium elevation.

In addition to identifying some of the signaling molecules that were the targets of this tyrosine phosphorylation, we set about identifying the tyrosine kinases that were activated and understanding how they associated with the BCR. We found that among the earliest phosphorylated proteins were the membrane Ig associated proteins Igα and Igβ (CD79a and CD79b) (33), and moreover, only the Igα and Igβ of engaged BCR complexes became tyrosine phosphorylated, whereas these subunits of unbound BCR complexes did not become tyrosine phosphorylated. These tyrosines are present in a sequence motif also found in TCR signaling chains (CD3 γ, δ, and γ and ζ chain) and in other immune receptors with similar signaling mechanisms, such as activating Fc receptors, as first identified by Reth (34) and now referred to as the immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motif (ITAM). Art Weiss's group discovered a tyrosine kinase, ZAP70, that binds to TCR ζ phosphorylated ITAMs (35) and is required for their signaling. B cells and most other hematopoietic cell types do not express ZAP70, but do express a very similar protein tyrosine kinase, Syk, and a number of groups showed that it plays an analogous role in BCR signaling (36–39).

These observations left open the question of what tyrosine kinase phosphorylates the ITAM tyrosines, and Src-family tyrosine kinases were implicated as performing this role in T cells (29). B cells primarily express three Src-family tyrosine kinases, Lyn, Fyn, and Blk. To address the role of Lyn, my colleague Cliff Lowell and others generated mice with an inactivated Lyn gene (40–42), and Tomohiro Kurosaki inactivated the Lyn gene in a chicken B cell line, DT-40 (37). In the DT-40 cells, Lyn is apparently the predominant Src-family tyrosine kinase, and the deletion of either Syk or Lyn is sufficient to largely cripple BCR signaling, consistent with the concept that these two types of tyrosine kinases must work in concert to mediate BCR signaling. Genetic analysis of B cells from mice deficient in Lyn, Fyn, or Blk demonstrated that these three Src-family tyrosine kinases are redundant for BCR crosslinking-induced phosphorylation of BCR ITAMs and only deletion of all three results in a block in B cell development at the pre-BCR checkpoint (43). Consistent with a redundant function of Lyn, Fyn, and Blk for initiation of BCR signaling, we found that B cells from Lyn-deficient mice had a slower initiation of BCR-induced calcium elevation and tyrosine phosphorylation of cellular proteins, compared with wild type B cells (40, 44).

## THE TUNABLE LYMPHOCYTE ACTIVATION THRESHOLD IN B CELLS: REGULATION OF mIgM EXPRESSION AND B CELL ANERGY (1992–PRESENT)

In 1992, Zvi Grossman and Bill Paul proposed a hypothesis that the activation threshold for T cell activation was not a constant with regard to the amount of antigen sensed, but rather was "tuned" by the subthreshold antigen receptor signals that the T cell had received in the recent past (45). This tuning was viewed as transient and an adaptive response to the presence of self-antigens that induced frequent but low intensity antigen receptor signals. Numerous subsequent studies described the applicability of this concept to developing and mature T cells in various situations, and moreover indicated that B cells and NK cells also adapt themselves to their degree of sub-activation stimulation through the BCR and NK cell receptors, respectively (46). In this section, I describe how the Grossman and Paul tuning hypothesis may relate to the regulation of BCR signaling, which has been studied by my lab and by many other labs. In this regard, it should be noted that Grossman and Paul distinguished lymphocyte tuning, which is transient, from developmental or differentiative changes in antigen receptor signaling, such as durable differences that are characteristic of double positive thymocytes vs. naïve T cells or of naïve T cells vs. memory T cells.

A remarkable heterogeneity of mature resting B cells is seen in the level of expression of mIgM, which is in contrast to mIgD, which is expressed by all mature resting B cells at a comparable level. Membrane IgD is not expressed in the most immature B cells in bone marrow and spleen, referred to transitional 1 or T1 B cells, whereas it is highly expressed in mature B cells. Chris Goodnow and colleagues found that mIgM was strongly downregulated in the MD4 Ig transgenic B cells when they came from a mouse expressing the corresponding antigen, lysozyme, as a self-antigen (47, 48). In addition, these B cells were profoundly unresponsive to stimulation *in vitro* or *in vivo*, a condition referred to as anergy. Subsequent studies have found that downregulation of mIgM is a function of the degree of self-antigen recognition for a particular B cell specificity and therefore the majority of mature B cells in the periphery exhibit some degree of self-reactivity (49). Studies of BCR signaling indicate that the downregulation of mIgM also decreases signaling observed when mIgM is crosslinked with anti-IgM antibody or when specific antigen is used in a low valency form, e.g., a form that would not induce strong crosslinking of mIgM molecules (47, 48). Thus, mIgM downregulation is a tuning response of B cells to adjust to their level of self-reactivity. Interesting in this regard, low valency antigens induce robust signaling from mIgM, whereas they are poor stimulators of mIgD on the same cells (50). By contrast, mIgD is able to signal vigorously if extensively crosslinked. Thus, the tuning of the antigen responsiveness of B cells that is observed is primarily applicable to self-antigens that are poorly able to crosslink BCRs. This implies that a foreign antigen present in a higher valency form (as would often be the case on a virus particle or a microbial cell surface) would still be able to stimulate vigorously those B cells that have tuned their responsiveness due to some self-reactivity.

While the Grossman and Paul concept of lymphocyte tuning and the concept of B cell anergy both address the result of B cell self-reactivity, the former concept emphasizes the potential of these cells to participate in immune responses, whereas the latter concept focuses attention of the role of tuning in restraining their activation and the maintenance of immune tolerance to self. Despite this difference in outlook, the phenomenon of B cell anergy is best understood by considering it in light of the continuum of mIgM downregulation seen in the normal population of follicular B cells and the concept of lymphocyte tuning. That is to say, B cell anergy should be considered as the property of those B cells with greater degrees of tuning and moreover, the functional defects in anergic B cells also likely represent a continuum from a deeper anergy, as seen in the MD4 anti-lysozyme Ig transgenic mice and as seen in those anti-DNA reactive B cells in which the IgH transgenic 3H9 heavy chain is paired with λ1 light chains (51), to a milder anergy, as seen in B cells from the Ars/A1 transgenic mouse. Milder forms of B cell anergy appear to be very rapidly reversible, probably reflecting primarily changes in localization and activity of signaling regulators within the cell (52), whereas more deeply anergic B cells have a more slowly reversible tuning of their responsiveness, which may in part reflect transcriptional changes in the levels of signaling regulators (47).

## REGULATION OF BCR SIGNALING BY THE INTRACELLULAR PROTEIN TYROSINE KINASE Lyn (1995–PRESENT)

Our studies with B cells from Lyn-deficient mice also revealed that Lyn has a second function in B cells in addition to its phosphorylation of BCR ITAMs. While BCR signaling exhibited a short delay in reaching its peak, at later times BCR signaling was elevated in $Lyn^{-/-}$ B cells compared with wild type B cells. This enhanced BCR signaling results from the loss of Lyn's unique ability to attenuate BCR signaling by phosphorylation of tyrosines in the cytoplasmic domains of inhibitory receptors, including FcγRIIb and CD22 (44, 53). Phosphorylation of single tyrosines within conserved sequences, called immunoreceptor tyrosine-based inhibitory motifs leads to recruitment to the plasma membrane of inhibitory phosphatases, both SHP-1, which is a protein tyrosine phosphatase that counters BCR signaling at early stages (54), and SHIP-1, a lipid phosphatase that removes the signaling lipid phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5-trisphosphate ($PIP_3$), and thereby attenuates a critical branch of the BCR signaling pathway (55). *In vitro* BCR signaling in response to anti-IgM reagents that do not bind to FcγRIIb are similarly enhanced in $Lyn^{-/-}$ follicular B cells and in $CD22^{-/-}$ follicular B cells (56), indicating that phosphorylated CD22 provides a tonic inhibition of BCR signaling and that *in vitro*, it is the main inhibitory receptor in B cells downstream of Lyn.

Lyn-deficient mice develop a severe lupus-like autoimmunity, characterized by production of anti-nuclear antibodies (ANAs) starting at about 3 months of age and die of glomerulonephritis after a little more than 1 year of age (53). Deletion of *Lyn* selectively in B cells using Mb1-Cre to induce deletion from a floxed allele of *Lyn* is sufficient to induce ANAs and glomerulonephritis (57), and similar phenotypes are found in $CD22^{-/-}$ mice (58), $FcγRIIb^{-/-}$ mice (59), and mice with a B cell-specific deletion of the gene encoding SHP-1 (54). Lyn is also expressed in dendritic cells, macrophages, and neutrophils and also enables inhibitory receptor function in these cell types. Deletion of *Lyn* selectively in dendritic cells is also sufficient to induce a lupus-like autoimmunity including production of ANAs, but with greater barrier inflammation than is seen in $Lyn^{-/-}$ mice (60). Thus, the lupus-like autoimmunity seen in $Lyn^{-/-}$ mice is driven both by Lyn-deficient B cells and by Lyn-deficient dendritic cells. The ANAs produced in $Lyn^{-/-}$ mice are T cell-dependent and are dependent upon MyD88-dependent signaling in B cells (61). MyD88 is a signaling adaptor that is essential for signaling by most toll-like receptors, including TLR7 and TLR9.

Thus, defects in Lyn, the inhibitory receptors that it phosphorylates in B cells, or the inhibitory phosphatases that become recruited by those inhibitory receptors upon their phosphorylation, all predispose mice to lupus-like autoimmunity, suggesting a critical role for Lyn-mediated attenuation of BCR signaling in preventing autoantibody production to nuclear components. Production of these particular autoantibodies depends on MyD88 signaling in the B cells, both in $Lyn^{-/-}$ mice and in other mouse models of lupus that have been examined (62, 63). It appears that the nucleic acid present in apoptotic debris can promote

activation of DNA or ribonucleoprotein-specific B cells *via* a synergy between exaggerated BCR signaling (resulting from loss of Lyn-mediated inhibitory pathways) and TLR7 or TLR9 signaling in the B cell. In support of this concept, it is clear that TLR7 or TLR9 can greatly enhance B cell responses to virus-like particles that contain ligands for TLR7 or TLR9 (64), or to hapten-carrier conjugates with attached TLR9 ligands (65) and this requires cell-intrinsic TLR signaling in the responding B cell.

Lyn-mediated inhibitory pathways may be one mechanism of tuning of B cells, as described by the Grossman and Paul lymphocyte tuning hypothesis. The downregulation of mIgM cell surface expression is likely to be a major mechanism of B cell tuning, and this function appears to occur normally in Lyn-deficient B cells. Nonetheless, Lyn-mediated inhibitory signaling may be a second important mechanism of tuning of B cells. Although the molecular mechanisms of tuning of T cells are not entirely defined, various studies suggest that upregulation of the inhibitory receptor CD5 is one mechanism of tuning of T cells and recruitment of SHP-1 to active TCRs represents another mechanism (46). Thus, an involvement in B cells of Lyn, CD22 and SHP-1 in tuning would be consistent to what is currently known about the signaling mechanisms of tuning of T cells. Moreover, various studies indicate that anergic B cells exhibit striking attenuation of BCR signaling (66) and moreover this attenuation has the hallmarks of tuning, as it is induced by chronic contact with self-antigen and is rapidly reversible if the self-antigen is removed. Lyn inhibitory pathways are likely to be at least partially responsible for the attenuation of BCR signaling seen in anergic B cells since the maintenance of anergy requires the presence of both SHP-1 and SHIP-1 (52), both of which are largely dependent upon Lyn for their recruitment to inhibitory receptors in the plasma membrane.

## CONCLUDING THOUGHTS

Bill Paul's great contributions to the field of immunology came in many spheres and in many ways (1). In this article, I have discussed Bill's influence on me as I entered the field of immunology and discussed how his theoretical contributions regarding modulation of the strength of antigen receptor signaling has considerable relevance to some of the experimental systems that I have pursued in my own independent laboratory in the years since my time as a postdoctoral fellow in his lab. Clearly, Bill had a long-lasting and positive impact on the field of immunology in many ways, but his roles as a mentor and as a thought leader in developing overriding concepts about how the immune system functions were two of his more important impacts.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

AD wrote the text and is wholly responsible for the opinions expressed.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I thank William E. Paul, all members of the Paul lab during 1979–1983, Jonathan Ashwell, Ronald Schwartz, and all members of my laboratory at UCSF.

## FUNDING

The work from my laboratory was supported by NIH research grants, including AI020038, AI078869, AI108684, and AI117378. I also thank the University of California, San Francisco for support of my research efforts.

## REFERENCES

1. Paul WE. Endless fascination. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2014) 32:1–24. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-032713-120247
2. Howard M, Farrar J, Hilfiker M, Johnson B, Takatsu K, Hamaoka T, et al. Identification of a T cell-derived B cell growth factor distinct from interleukin 2. *J Exp Med* (1982) 155:914–23. doi:10.1084/jem.155.3.914
3. DeFranco A, Davis M, Paul WE. WEHI-231 as a tumor model for tolerance induction in immature B lymphocytes. In: Vitetta E, editor. *B and T cell Tumors*. New York: Academic Press (1982). p. 445–50.
4. Defranco AL, Raveche ES, Asofsky R, Paul WE. Frequency of B lymphocytes responsive to anti-immunoglobulin. *J Exp Med* (1982) 155:1523–36. doi:10.1084/jem.155.5.1523
5. DeFranco AL, Raveche ES, Paul WE. Separate control of B lymphocyte early activation and proliferation in response to anti-IgM antibodies. *J Immunol* (1985) 135:87–94.
6. Sieckmann DG, Scher I, Asofsky R, Mosier DE, Paul WE. Activation of mouse lymphocytes by anti-immunoglobulin. II. A thymus-independent response by a mature subset of B lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* (1978) 148:1628–43. doi:10.1084/jem.148.6.1628
7. Thomas JD, Sideras P, Smith CI, Vorechovský I, Chapman V, Paul WE. Colocalization of X-linked agammaglobulinemia and X-linked immunodeficiency genes. *Science* (1993) 261:355–8. doi:10.1126/science.8332900
8. Dintzis HM, Dintzis RZ, Vogelstein B. Molecular determinants of immunogenicity: the immunon model of immune response. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1975) 73:3671–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.73.10.3671
9. Brunswick M, June CH, Finkelman FD, Mond JJ. Different patterns of inositol polyphosphate production are seen in B lymphocytes after cross-linking of sIg by anti-Ig antibody or by a multivalent anti-Ig antibody dextran conjugate. *J Immunol* (1989) 143:1414–21.
10. Nakanishi K, Cohen DI, Blackman M, Nielsen E, Ohara J, Hamaoka T, et al. Ig RNA expression in normal B cells stimulated with anti-IgM antibody and T cell-derived growth and differentiation factors. *J Exp Med* (1984) 160:1736–51. doi:10.1084/jem.160.6.1736
11. Mongini PK, Stein KE, Paul WE. T cell regulation of IgG subclass antibody production in response to T-independent antigens. *J Exp Med* (1981) 153:1–12. doi:10.1084/jem.153.1.1
12. Stein KE, Zopf DA, Miller CB, Johnson BM, Mongini PK, Ahmed A, et al. Immune response to a thymus-dependent form of B512 dextran requires the presence of Lyb-5+ lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* (1983) 157:657–66. doi:10.1084/jem.157.2.657
13. Ada G, Isaacs D. Carbohydrate-protein conjugate vaccines. *Clin Microbiol Infect* (2003) 9:79–85. doi:10.1046/j.1469-0691.2003.00530.x
14. Asano Y, Singer A, Hodes RJ. Role of the major histocompatibility complex in T cell activation of B cell subpopulations. Major histocompatibility complex-restricted and -unrestricted B cell responses are mediated by distinct B cell subpopulations. *J Exp Med* (1981) 154:1100–15. doi:10.1084/jem.154.4.1100
15. McKean DJ, Infante AJ, Nilson A, Kimoto M, Fathman CG, Walker E, et al. Major histocompatibility complex-restricted antigen presentation to antigen-reactive T cells by B lymphocyte tumor cells. *J Exp Med* (1981) 154:1419–31. doi:10.1084/jem.154.5.1419
16. DeFranco AL, Ashwell JD, Schwartz RH, Paul WE. Polyclonal stimulation of resting B lymphocytes by antigen-specific T lymphocytes. *J Exp Med* (1984) 159:861–80. doi:10.1084/jem.159.3.861
17. Noelle RJ, Roy M, Shepherd DM, Stamenkovic I, Ledbetter JA, Aruffo A. A 39-kDa protein on activated helper T cells binds CD40 and transduces

the signal for cognate activation of B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1992) 89:6550–4. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.14.6550
18. Aruffo A, Farrington M, Hollenbaugh D, Li X, Milatovich A, Nonoyama S, et al. The CD40 ligand, gp39, is defective in activated T cells from patients with X-linked hyper-IgM syndrome. *Cell* (1993) 72:291–300. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(93)90668-G
19. Ashwell JD, DeFranco AL, Paul WE, Schwartz RH. Antigen presentation by resting B cells. Radiosensitivity of the-presentation function and two distinct pathways of T cell activation. *J Exp Med* (1984) 159:881–905. doi:10.1084/jem.159.3.881
20. Hedrick SM, Cohen DI, Nielsen EA, Davis MM. Isolation of cDNA clones encoding T cell-specific membrane-associated proteins. *Nature* (1984) 308:149–53. doi:10.1038/308149a0
21. LaBaer J, Tsien RY, Fahey KA, DeFranco AL. Stimulation of the antigen receptor on WEHI-231 B lymphoma cells results in a voltage-independent increase in cytoplasmic calcium. *J Immunol* (1986) 137:1836–44.
22. Bijsterbosch MK, Meade CJ, Turner GA, Klaus GG. B lymphocyte receptors and polyphosphoinositide degradation. *Cell* (1985) 41:999–1006. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(85)80080-5
23. Fahey KA, DeFranco AL. Cross-linking membrane IgM induces production of inositol trisphosphate and inositol tetrakisphosphate in WEHI-231 B lymphoma cells. *J Immunol* (1987) 138:3935–42.
24. Page DM, DeFranco AL. Role of phosphoinositide-derived second messengers in mediating anti-IgM-induced growth arrest of WEHI-231 B lymphoma cells. *J Immunol* (1988) 140:3717–26.
25. Coughlin JJ, Stang SL, Dower NA, Stone JC. RasGRP1 and RasGRP3 regulate B cell proliferation by facilitating B cell receptor-Ras signaling. *J Immunol* (2005) 175:7179–84. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.175.11.7179
26. Roose JP, Mollenauer M, Ho M, Kurosaki T, Weiss A. Unusual interplay of two types of Ras activators, RasGRP and SOS, establishes sensitive and robust Ras activation in lymphocytes. *Mol Cell Biol* (2007) 27:2732–45. doi:10.1128/MCB.01882-06
27. Gold MR, Law DA, DeFranco AL. Stimulation of protein tyrosine phosphorylation by the B-lymphocyte antigen receptor. *Nature* (1990) 345:810–3. doi:10.1038/345810a0
28. DeFranco AL. Signaling pathways activated by protein tyrosine phosphorylation in lymphocytes. *Curr Opin Immunol* (1994) 6:364–71. doi:10.1016/0952-7915(94)90114-7
29. Weiss A, Littman DR. Signal transduction by lymphocyte antigen receptors. *Cell* (1994) 76:263–74. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(94)90334-4
30. Hempel WM, Schatzman RC, DeFranco AL. Tyrosine phosphorylation of phospholipase C-gamma 2 upon cross-linking of membrane Ig on murine B lymphocytes. *J Immunol* (1992) 148:3021–7.
31. Gold MR, Chan VW, Turck CW, DeFranco AL. Membrane Ig cross-linking regulates phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase in B lymphocytes. *J Immunol* (1992) 148:2012–22.
32. Gold MR, Crowley MT, Martin GA, McCormick F, DeFranco AL. Targets of B lymphocyte antigen receptor signal transduction include the p21ras GTPase-activating protein (GAP) and two GAP-associated proteins. *J Immunol* (1993) 150:377–86.
33. Gold MR, Matsuuchi L, Kelly RB, DeFranco AL. Tyrosine phosphorylation of components of the B-cell antigen receptors following receptor crosslinking. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1991) 88:3436–40. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.8.3436
34. Reth M. Antigen receptor tail clue. *Nature* (1989) 338:383–4. doi:10.1038/338383b0
35. Chan AC, Irving BA, Fraser JD, Weiss A. The zeta chain is associated with a tyrosine kinase and upon T-cell antigen receptor stimulation associates with ZAP-70, a 70-kDa tyrosine phosphoprotein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1991) 88:9166–70. doi:10.1073/pnas.88.20.9166
36. Law DA, Chan VW, Datta SK, DeFranco AL. B-cell antigen receptor motifs have redundant signalling capabilities and bind the tyrosine kinases PTK72, Lyn and Fyn. *Curr Biol* (1993) 3:645–57. doi:10.1016/0960-9822(93)90062-S
37. Takata M, Sabe H, Hata A, Inazu T, Homma Y, Nukada T, et al. Tyrosine kinases Lyn and Syk regulate B cell receptor-coupled Ca2+ mobilization through distinct pathways. *EMBO J* (1994) 13:1341–9.
38. Turner M, Mee PJ, Costello PS, Williams O, Price AA, Duddy LP, et al. Perinatal lethality and blocked B-cell development in mice lacking the tyrosine kinase Syk. *Nature* (1995) 378:298–302. doi:10.1038/378298a0
39. Hutchcroft JE, Harrison ML, Geahlen RL. Association of the 72-kDa protein-tyrosine kinase PTK72 with the B cell antigen receptor. *J Biol Chem* (1992) 267:8613–9.
40. Chan VW, Meng F, Soriano P, DeFranco AL, Lowell CA. Characterization of the B lymphocyte populations in Lyn-deficient mice and the role of Lyn in signal initiation and down-regulation. *Immunity* (1997) 7:69–81. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80511-7
41. Hibbs ML, Tarlinton DM, Armes J, Grail D, Hodgson G, Maglitto R, et al. Multiple defects in the immune system of Lyn-deficient mice, culminating in autoimmune disease. *Cell* (1995) 83:301–11. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(95)90171-X
42. Nishizumi H, Taniuchi I, Yamanashi Y, Kitamura D, Ilic D, Mori S, et al. Impaired proliferation of peripheral B cells and indication of autoimmune disease in lyn-deficient mice. *Immunity* (1995) 3:549–60. doi:10.1016/1074-7613(95)90126-4
43. Saijo K, Schmedt C, Su IH, Karasuyama H, Lowell CA, Reth M, et al. Essential role of Src-family protein tyrosine kinases in NF-kappaB activation during B cell development. *Nat Immunol* (2003) 4:274–9. doi:10.1038/ni893
44. Chan VW, Lowell CA, DeFranco AL. Defective negative regulation of antigen receptor signaling in Lyn-deficient B lymphocytes. *Curr Biol* (1998) 7:545–53. doi:10.1016/S0960-9822(98)70223-4
45. Grossman Z, Paul WE. Adaptive cellular interactions in the immune system: the tunable activation threshold and the significance of subthreshold responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1992) 89:10365–9. doi:10.1073/pnas.89.21.10365
46. Grossman Z, Paul WE. Dynamic tuning of lymphocytes: physiological basis, mechanisms, and function. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2015) 33:677–713. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-032712-100027
47. Goodnow CC, Sprent J, Fazekas de St Groth B, Vinuesa CG. Cellular and genetic mechanisms of self tolerance and autoimmunity. *Nature* (2005) 435:590–7. doi:10.1038/nature03724
48. Goodnow CC. Transgenic mice and analysis of B-cell tolerance. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1992) 10:489–518. doi:10.1146/annurev.iy.10.040192.002421
49. Zikherman J, Parameswaran R, Weiss A. Endogenous antigen tunes the responsiveness of naive B cells but not T cells. *Nature* (2012) 489:160–4. doi:10.1038/nature11311
50. Übelhart R, Hug E, Bach MP, Wossning T, Dühren-von Minden M, Horn AH, et al. Responsiveness of B cells is regulated by the hinge region of IgD. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:534–43. doi:10.1038/ni.3141
51. Noorchashm H, Bui A, Li HL, Eaton A, Mandik-Nayak L, Sokol C, et al. Characterization of anergic anti-DNA B cells: B cell anergy is a T cell-independent and potentially reversible process. *Int Immunol* (1999) 11:765–76. doi:10.1093/intimm/11.5.765
52. Getahun A, Beavers NA, Larson SR, Shlomchik MJ, Cambier JC. Continuous inhibitory signaling by both SHP-1 and SHIP-1 pathways is required to maintain unresponsiveness of anergic B cells. *J Exp Med* (2016) 13:751–69. doi:10.1084/jem.20150537
53. Xu Y, Harder KW, Huntington ND, Hibbs ML, Tarlinton DM. Lyn tyrosine kinase: accentuating the positive and the negative. *Immunity* (2005) 22:9–18. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2004.12.004
54. Pao LI, Lam KP, Henderson JM, Kutok JL, Alimzhanov M, Nitschke L, et al. B cell-specific deletion of protein-tyrosine phosphatase Shp1 promotes B-1a cell development and causes systemic autoimmunity. *Immunity* (2007) 27:35–48. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2007.04.016
55. Baracho GV, Miletic AV, Omori SA, Cato MH, Rickert RC. Emergence of the PI3-kinase pathway as a central modulator of normal and aberrant B cell differentiation. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2011) 23:178–83. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2011.01.001
56. Gross AJ, Lyandres JR, Panigrahi AK, Prak ET, DeFranco AL. Developmental acquisition of the Lyn-CD22-SHP-1 inhibitory pathway promotes B cell tolerance. *J Immunol* (2009) 182:5382–92. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0803941
57. Lamagna C, Hu Y, DeFranco AL, Lowell CA. B cell-specific loss of Lyn kinase leads to autoimmunity. *J Immunol* (2014) 192:919–28. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1301979
58. Pillai S, Mattoo H, Cariappa A. B cells and autoimmunity. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2011) 23:721–31. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2011.10.007
59. Nimmerjahn F, Ravetch JV. Fcgamma receptors as regulators of immune responses. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2008) 8:34–47. doi:10.1038/nri2206

60. Lamagna C, Scapini P, van Ziffle J, DeFranco AL, Lowell CA. Hyperactivated MyD88 signaling in dendritic cells, through specific deletion of Lyn kinase, causes severe autoimmunity and inflammation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2013) 110:E3311–20. doi:10.1073/pnas.1300617110
61. Hua Z, Gross AJ, Lamagna C, Ramos-Hernández N, Scapini P, Ji M, et al. Requirement for MyD88 signaling in B cells and dendritic cells for germinal center anti-nuclear antibody production in Lyn-deficient mice. *J Immunol* (2014) 192:875–85. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300683
62. Green NM, Marshak-Rothstein A. Toll-like receptor driven B cell activation in the induction of systemic autoimmunity. *Semin Immunol* (2011) 23:106–12. doi:10.1016/j.smim.2011.01.016
63. Rawlings DJ, Metzler G, Wray-Dutra M, Jackson SW. Altered B cell signalling in autoimmunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2017) 17:421–36. doi:10.1038/nri.2017.24
64. Hou B, Saudan P, Ott G, Wheeler ML, Ji M, Kuzmich L, et al. Selective utilization of toll-like receptor and MyD88 signaling in B cells for enhancement of the antiviral germinal center response. *Immunity* (2011) 34:375–84. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.01.011
65. Rookhuizen DC, DeFranco AL. Toll-like receptor 9 signaling acts on multiple elements of the germinal center to enhance antibody responses. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2014) 111:E3224–33. doi:10.1073/pnas.1323985111
66. Yarkoni Y, Getahun A, Cambier JC. Molecular underpinning of B-cell anergy. *Immunol Rev* (2010) 237:249–63. doi:10.1111/j.1600-065X.2010.00936.x

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The reviewer SP and handling Editor declared their shared affiliation.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 20 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00763

# Unique Action of Interleukin-18 on T Cells and Other Immune Cells

*Kenji Nakanishi**

*Department of Immunology, Hyogo College of Medicine, Hyogo, Japan*

Interleukin (IL)-18 was originally discovered as a factor that enhances interferon (IFN)-γ production by anti-CD3-stimulated Th1 cells, particularly in association with IL-12. IL-12 is a cytokine that induces development of Th1 cells. IL-18 cannot induce Th1 cell development, but has the capacity to activate established Th1 cells to produce IFN-γ in the presence of IL-12. Thus, IL-18 is regarded as a proinflammatory cytokine that facilitates type 1 responses. However, in the absence of IL-12 but presence of IL-2, IL-18 stimulates natural killer cells, NKT cells, and even established Th1 cells to produce IL-3, IL-9, and IL-13. Thus, IL-18 also facilitates type 2 responses. This unique function of IL-18 contributes to infection-associated allergic diseases. Together with IL-3, IL-18 stimulates mast cells and basophils to produce IL-4, IL-13, and chemical mediators such as histamine. Thus, IL-18 also induces innate-type allergic inflammation. IL-18 belongs to the IL-1 family of cytokines, which share similar molecular structures, receptors structures, and signal transduction pathways. Nevertheless, IL-18 shows a unique function by binding to a specific receptor expressed on distinct types of cells. In this review article, I will focus on the unique features of IL-18 in lymphocytes, basophils, and mast cells, particularly in comparison with IL-33.

**Keywords: interleukin-18, Th1, interferon-γ, interleukin-4, innate-type allergy, interleukin-33, ILC2**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Jinfang Zhu, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Guangxun Meng, Institut Pasteur of Shanghai (CAS), China*
*Koji Yasutomo, Tokushima University, Japan*

***Correspondence:**
*Kenji Nakanishi*
*nakaken@hyo-med.ac.jp*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *31 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *27 March 2018*
***Published:*** *20 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*Nakanishi K (2018) Unique Action of Interleukin-18 on T Cells and Other Immune Cells. Front. Immunol. 9:763. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00763*

## PREFACE

I worked with Dr. William E. Paul from 1981 to 1984 in Laboratory of Immunology (LI), National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health. As he was a laboratory chief at LI, I assumed he would have a large laboratory and research group. However, his laboratory was relatively small. Furthermore, he only had three postdoctral fellows (Anthony DeFranco, John Kung, and Maureen Howard) at my first visit. Nevertheless, he was regarded as a giant in the Immunology field. Indeed, he was a real giant, and also an outstanding mentor. Bill was a person who was glad to advise or supervise researchers when asked. Thus, young scientists with big dreams wanted to work with him. Weekly morning group meetings and one-to-one meetings with Bill were always exciting and helpful, and I learned a lot from him. Everybody respected him. He was a very kind and gentle boss. He was also an extremely intelligent man with striking creativity. But, perhaps most, I liked his shyness, because I am Japanese. I studied the functional roles of IL-4, IL-5, and IL-2 for growth and differentiation of B cells. After publishing one paper in *J Immunol* and two papers in *J Exp Med*, I left NIH and returned to Japan. I missed Bill and my friends at LI very much.

## INTRODUCTION

In Japan as a physician-scientist, I had several opportunities to learn that sepsis remains a common life-threatening disorder. Patients with high serum endotoxin levels did not necessarily develop lethal shock. Furthermore, patients with low serum endotoxin levels sometimes died of septic shock. Thus, we simultaneously measured the serum levels of endotoxin and interleukin (IL)-6, because

lipopolysaccharide (LPS) induces IL-6 production *in vivo*. We found that there were at least two groups: an endotoxin shock susceptible group, characterized by high serum IL-6 level with low serum LPS level, and an endotoxin-resistant group, characrized by low serum IL-6 level with high serum LPS level. These findings indicated the presence of certain limiting factors that determined the sensitivity of patients to endotoxin shock. I learned that priming with heat-killed *Propionibacterium acnes* (*P. acnes*), a Gram-positive bacterium, or BCG increased the sensitivity of animals to the lethal effect of LPS. Thus, with Tomohiro Yoshimoto, my long-term collaborator, I studied the mechanism for how *P. acnes* increase the responsiveness of mice to LPS. We found that *P. acnes* priming rendered mice highly susceptible to the lethal effect of LPS by enhanced production of IL-1 and/or tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α) as well as increased responsiveness to the stimulation with IL-1 and/or TNFα.

After publishing these results (1) in 1992, I observed the very interesting phenomenon that *P. acnes*-primed BALB/c *nu/nu* mice were resistant to LPS-induced lethal shock, and instead most of them died of fulminant hepatitis through apoptosis-mediated hepatocytotoxicity. My colleagues, Haruki Okamura and Hiroko Tsutsui, demonstrated this severe liver injury was prevented by administration of a neutralizing anti-IL-18 antibody (2). These experiments were my first exposure to the unique action of IL-18, which forms the long-term target of my investigations and the main theme of this manuscript. In this review, I will initially describe animal models of LPS-induced diseases, and then describe the actions of IL-18 on T cells and other immune cells, as the major topic of the manuscript. Finally, I will compare the actions of IL-18 and IL-33 in various aspects. Pathological roles of IL-18 in various diseases, including hepatic, metabolic, inflammatory, allergic, and autoimmune diseases, are also documented in previous (3, 4) and recent (5, 6) reviews.

## ANIMAL MODELS OF LPS-INDUCED DISEASES

### Susceptibility to LPS-Induced Endotoxin Shock

Mice primed with *P. acnes* markedly increased production of IL-1 and TNFα in response to LPS. Furthermore, these mice were highly susceptible to the lethal shock-inducing effect of IL-1 and/or TNFα (1). We tried to identify the limiting cells for LPS sensitivity. As *P. acnes*-primed BALB/c *nu/nu* mice were resistant to LPS-induced lethal shock, we examined the LPS susceptibility of these mice after reconstitution with splenic T cells from wild-type mice (7). We found that BALB/c *nu/nu* mice reconstituted with T cells became highly susceptible to LPS shock after *P. acnes* treatment and systemic administration of *P. acnes* induced development of Th1 cells in wild-type mice as well as in BALB/c *nu/nu* mice reconstituted with splenic T cells (7). Furthermore, IL-12p40-deficient mice or interferon (IFN)-γ-deficient mice were highly resistant to sequential treatment with *P. acnes* and LPS (7). Thus, IFN-γ-producing Th1 cells play an important role in determining host sensitivity to LPS shock (7).

### Susceptibility to LPS-Induced Liver Injury

The liver has a potent immune system (3). It contains residential immunocompetent cells with self-renewing ability, such as liver NK cells, extrathymically developed T cells, thymically developed $CD4^+$NKT cells, expressing CD4 and NK cell markers, and a limited T-cell antigen receptor repertoire, and Kupffer cells, tissue macrophages. With my long-term colleague Kiyoshi Matsui, I demonstrated that hepatic $CD4^+$NKT cells in non-treated wild-type mice promptly produced large amounts of IL-4 and IFN-γ upon stimulation with immobilized anti-CD3 *in vitro* (8). However, administration of heat-killed *P. acnes* induced hepatic $CD4^+$NKT cells to increase IFN-γ production, but decrease IL-4 production upon anti-CD3 stimulation *in vitro* (8). These effects were attributable to the action of IL-12 from *P. acnes*-elicited Kupffer cells, suggesting a role for Kupffer cells in regulation of immune responses in the liver (3, 8). As noted above, most mice sequentially treated with *P. acnes* and LPS developed lethal shock, while the surviving mice suffered from liver injury. Meanwhile, BALB/c *nu/nu* mice sequentially treated with *P. acnes* and LPS developed severe liver injury. However, this severe liver injury was prevented by administration of a neutralizing anti-IL-18 antibody (2). Furthermore, *P. acnes*-primed IL-18-deficient mice did not develop liver injury upon LPS challenge (9, 10). However, we found that administration of IL-18-induced liver injury in *P. acnes*-primed IL-18-deficient mice by inducing Fas ligand expression and TNFα production in hepatic NK cells (3, 11). Based on these findings, we concluded that the development of thymic T cells into Th1 cells and hepatic $CD4^+$NKT cells into predominant IFN-γ-producing cells was important for induction of LPS-driven endotoxin shock and LPS-induced liver injury in *P. acnes*-primed mice, respectively (7, 8).

## OVERVIEW OF THE IL-18/INTERLEUKIN 18 RECEPTOR (IL-18R) SYSTEM

Interleukin-18 was originally designated IFN-γ-inducing factor (IGIF), because it was first identified through its capacity to induce IFN-γ production by anti-CD3-stimulated Th1 cells (2, 12).Okamura and colleagues discovered this activity in sera or liver extracts from mice sequentially treated with *P. acnes* and LPS (2, 4). Based on the homology of its amino acid sequence to that of IL-1β, and its shared β-pleated sheet structure with IL-1β (2), IL-18 was classified into the IL-1 family of cytokines (13, 14). IL-18 is produced as a biologically inactive precursor, pro-IL-18, that is localized in the cytoplasm and requires proteolytic processing for secretion as active IL-18 (2–4). In collaboration with K. Kuida (Vertex, USA), S. Taniguchi (Shinsyu University, Japan), and J. Tschopp (University of Lausanne, Switzerland), we demonstrated that cleavage of pro-IL-1β and pro-IL-18 into mature IL-1β and IL-18, respectively, depended on the action of intracellular cysteine protease caspase-1, produced in the NLRP3 inflammasome consisting of pattern recognition receptor NLRP3 (NACHT-LRR and pyrin domain-containing protein 3), adaptor molecule ASC (apoptosis-associated speck-like protein containing a caspase recruitment domain), and pro-caspase-1 (15–18). However, we also found that Fas ligand treatment stimulated

Fas-expressing Kupffer cells or macrophages to produce active IL-18 in a caspase-1-independent manner, indicating the presence of some other caspase-mediated pathways for IL-18 secretion (11). A recent study revealed that Fas mediated noncanonical IL-1β and IL-18 maturation *via* caspase-8 (19). In addition, IL-18 can be activated in an inflammasome-independent manner by proteases, such as proteinase 3 (20), chymase (21), and granzyme B (22).

Interleukin 18 receptor is composed of the inducible IL-18Rα chain (IL-1R-related protein or IL-1R5) and constitutively expressed IL-18Rβ chain (IL-1R-associated protein-like or IL-R7) (4, 6). The IL-18Rα and IL-18Rβ chains are members of the IL-1R family, and their cytoplasmic domains contain a TLR/IL-1R (TIR) domain, a common domain shared by toll-like receptors (4–6, 13, 14). IL-18Rα is an IL-18-binding receptor that, upon stimulation with IL-18, forms an IL-18 high-affinity binding heterodimer with IL-18Rβ that mediates intracellular signal transduction (23, 24). The cytoplasmic TIR domains of the IL-18R complex interact with myeloid differentiation factor 88 (MyD88), a signal adaptor containing a TIR domain, *via* a TIR–TIR interaction (4–6, 13, 14, 25). In collaboration with S. Akira (Osaka University), we revealed that the major biological activities of IL-18 were completely abrogated in MyD88-deficient mice (25). In turn, MyD88-induced events resulted in successive activation of nuclear factor-κB and mitogen-activated protein kinase by association with the signal adaptors IL-1R-associated kinase (IRAK) 1, IRAK4, and TNF receptor-activated factor 6, respectively (25), eventually leading to expression of appropriate genes, such as *Il4*, *Il13*, *Ifnγ*, *Tnf*, and *Fasl*, involved in cell differentiation, growth, survival, and apoptosis (2–6, 8–14, 23–26).

Interleukin-18-dependent cell activation can be inhibited at least by two distinct molecules. One is the naturally occurring IL-18-binding protein (IL-18BP) (27). Because IL-18BP binds to IL-18 with high affinity (400 pM), it can downregulate IL-18-induced cell responses, such as IL-18-induced Th1 cell IFN-γ production. Another inhibitor is the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-37, a member of the IL-1 family of cytokines (28). Although IL-37 binds to IL-18Rα with low affinity, the resulting complex inhibits recruitment of IL-18Rβ, thereby abolishing signal transduction *via* IL-18R. Furthermore, this complex induces recruitment of IL-1R8, an orphan receptor of the IL-1 family formerly known as SIGIRR, to form a tripartite complex (IL-37/IL-18Rα/IL-1R8), which does not bind MyD88, but instead induces anti-inflammatory signal into the cell. Thus, IL-18 activity is inhibited by these two distinct inhibitors (6).

## MECHANISM FOR LPS-INDUCED LIVER INJURY IN *P. acnes*-PRIMED MICE

Consistent with a previous report (29), wild-type mice primed with *P. acnes* developed dense granulomas in the liver. These mice also developed acute liver injury and elevated serum IL-18 level after challenge with a sublethal dose of LPS (2–5). Although *P. acnes*-primed IL-18-deficient mice exhibited dense granulomas, similar to the liver of *P. acnes*-primed wild-type mice, they did not develop liver injury after LPS treatment (10, 11). In contrast, MyD88-deficient mice primed with *P. acnes* showed very poor hepatic granuloma formation and produced an undetectable level of IL-18 upon LPS challenge (17). This failure to produce IL-18 in response to LPS was not caused by a loss of potential of MyD88-deficient Kupffer cells to produce IL-18, because MyD88-deficient Kupffer cells were able to secrete IL-18 in response to LPS *in vitro* (30). Thus, *P. acnes* treatment induced hepatic granuloma formation in a MyD88-dependent manner and LPS stimulated Kupffer cells to produce IL-18 in a MyD88-independent manner (**Figure 1**). Next, we examined the contribution of TRIF (TIR domain-containing adapter inducing IFN-β) to *P. acnes*-induced hepatic granuloma formation and LPS-induced IL-18 secretion. In contrast to MyD88-deficient mice, *P. acnes*-primed TRIF-deficient mice showed normal development of hepatic dense granuloma, but did not release IL-18 and, therefore, did not develop liver injury (17). Thus, we concluded that *P. acnes* treatment induced hepatic granuloma formation in a MyD88-dependent manner and that subsequent LPS challenge induced caspase-1 activation in a TRIF-dependent manner in the NLRP3 inflammasome and induced IL-18 release, eventually leading to liver injury (17) (**Figure 1**).

## SEVERAL TOPICS FOR THE UNIQUE FUNCTIONS OF IL-18

### IFN-γ Production

Consistent with its original discovery as an IFN-γ-inducing factor, IL-18 can induce IFN-γ production by natural killer (NK) cells and Th1 cells that express IL-18R (2, 4) (**Figure 2**). However,

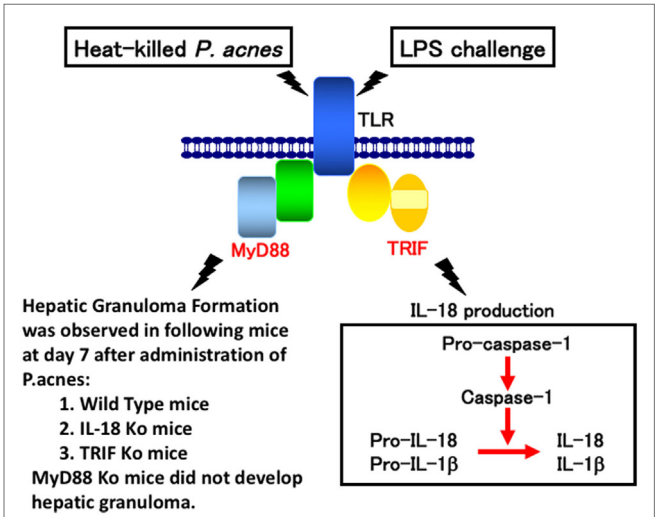



**FIGURE 1** | A proposal model for lipopolysaccharide (LPS)-induced liver injury in *Propionibacterium acnes* (*P. acnes*)-primed and LPS-challenged mice. Wild-type mice or mice deficient for interleukin (IL)-18, MyD88, or TRIF were administered with heat-killed *P. acnes* and examined for their hepatic granuloma formation at day 7 after this treatment. Only *P. acnes*-primed MyD88 did not develop hepatic granuloma at day 7 after treatment, suggesting that *P. acnes* treatment induces hepatic granuloma in a MyD88-dependent manner, but TRIF-independent manner. Although TRIF-deficient mice normally developed hepatic granulomas after *P. acnes* treatment, they could not release IL-18 or develop liver injury, suggesting that LPS TRIF-dependently activated caspase-1 *via* NLRP3 inflammasome. And, resultant IL-18 induces liver injury by induction of interferon-γ, FasL, and tumor necrosis factor-α.

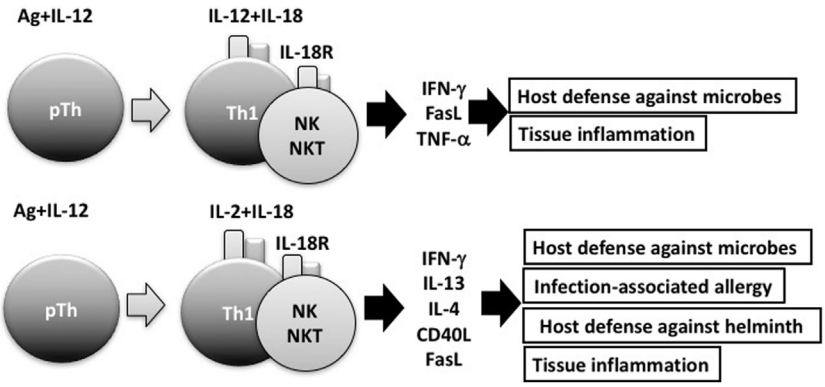



**FIGURE 2** | Interleukin (IL)-18 facilitates both Th1 response and Th2 response. In combination with IL-12, IL-18 stimulates Th1 cells, natural killer (NK) cells, and NKT cells to produce robust interferon (IFN)-γ, resulting in the clearance of intracellular microbes. However, without IL-12, but with IL-2, IL-18 induces Th1 cells, NK cells, and NKT cells to produce IL-13 and IFN-γ both of which are involved in host defense response or in infection-associated allergy. NKT cells stimulated with IL-2 and IL-18 express CD40L and produce IL-4, thereby inducing B cells to produce IgE.

IL-18 also synergizes with IL-12 to induce marked IFN-γ production by various cell types, including nonpolarized T cells, NKT cells, dendritic cells, macrophages, and B cells, through reciprocal induction of expression of their corresponding receptors (4). It is well known that B cells produce IgG1 and IgE when stimulated with anti-CD40 and IL-4. To our surprise, a combination of IL-12 and IL-18 inhibited IL-4-dependent IgG1 and IgE production, but enhanced IgG2a production by inducing IFN-γ production in B cells stimulated with IL-12 and IL-18 (31). Indeed, IL-12-stimulated B cells expressed IL-18R and strongly produced IFN-γ in response to IL-18, particularly in association with IL-12 (23). We also found that naïve Th cells stimulated with antigen (Ag) and IL-12 or IL-4 developed into IL-18R-expressing Th1 or ST2-expressing Th2 cells, respectively (23, 24, 32). Thus, expression of IL-18R and ST2 can be a convenient cell marker for Th1 and Th2 cells, respectively.

## Th2 Cytokine Production by Mast Cells and Basophils Stimulated With IL-18

In 1989, Marshall Plaut and Bill Paul reported in *Nature* that, upon cross-linkage of FcεR1 with Ag/IgE complex, mast cells, and basophils produce Th2 cytokines, including IL-4 and IL-13 (33). Thus, I was interested to know whether mast cells and basophils also had the potential to produce IFN-γ after stimulation with IL-12 and IL-18. I discussed this matter with Bill, and he said "I am very interested in what will happen." Thus, Tomohiro and I started collaboration with Bill. We found that basophils and mast cells derived by culture of bone marrow cells with IL-3 for 10 days expressed the IL-18Rα chain and produced large amounts of IL-4 and IL-13 in response to stimulation with IL-3 and IL-18 (34). These were unexpected results, but turned out to be very important findings. To our disappointment, however, mast cells and basophils never produced IFN-γ in response to various combinations of IL-3, IL-18, and IL-12 (34). As the combination of IL-18 and IL-3 stimulated basophils and mast cells to produce histamine and Th2 cytokines, we speculated that IL-18 could induce allergic inflammation without assistance from the Ag/IgE complex. Thus, we reported a new aspect of IL-18 as an inducer of Th2 cytokine production from basophils and mast cells in 1999 (34) (**Figure 3**). Later, I became interested in the capacity of basophils to produce IL-4 upon cross-linkage of FcεR1 with Ag/IgE complex. Surprisingly, we detected expression of MHC class II molecules on basophils (35). Thus, we examined the capacity of basophils pulsed with Ag/IgE complex to induce development of naïve Th cells into Th2 cells. We found that basophils had the capacity to induce development of Th2 cells (35). Although we were still unable to determine the physiological role of basophils as APCs, we believe that further studies will demonstrate such an activity in basophils.

## Innate-Type Allergic Inflammation

After publication of the paper on Th2 cytokine production by basophils and mast cells stimulated with IL-3 and IL-18, I speculated that IL-18 may have the potential to induce IL-4 production by $CD4^+$ T cells and/or $CD4^+$NKT cells. I found that injection of a mixture of IL-12 and IL-18 increased serum IgE levels in helminth-infected IFN-γ-deficient mice. Most surprisingly, daily administration of IL-18 in particular with IL-2 induced a marked increase in serum IgE levels in a $CD4^+$ T cell- and IL-4/IL-4R/STAT6-dependent manner (36). Furthermore, $CD4^+$NKT cells stimulated with IL-2 and IL-18 increased their CD40 ligand expression and IL-4 production. In addition, these activated $CD4^+$NKT cells induced development of B cells into IgG1- and IgE-producing cells. Consistent with these findings, transgenic mice overexpressing human caspase-1 in keratinocytes, established by Hitoshi Mizutani (Mie University), produced IL-18 and IgE in their sera, and also spontaneously developed atopic dermatitis (AD)-like skin lesions (37). Disruption of STAT6, required for IL-4 signal transduction, abolished IgE production without affecting the skin manifestations. In contrast, disruption of IL-18 in caspase-1 transgenic mice diminished their chronic dermatitis almost completely, although they still produced significant amounts of IgE. Thus, overproduction of IL-18 by keratinocytes induced AD-like skin lesions even in the absence of IgE and IgG1 (37). Based on these results, we designated this IL-18-induced allergic inflammation an innate-type allergic inflammation.

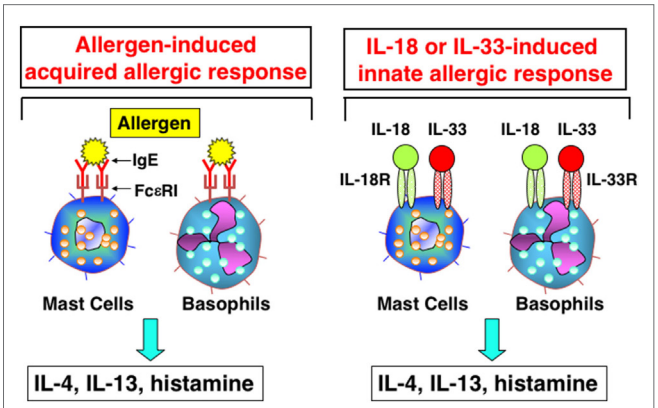



**FIGURE 3** | Interleukin (IL)-18 and IL-33 induce innate allergic response by stimulation of mast cells and basophils. Like mast cells or basophils stimulated with Ag/IgE complex, mast cells and basophils, expressing IL-18R and IL-33R, produce IL-4, IL-13 and chemical mediators, after being stimulated with IL-18 and IL-33, respectively.

In the presence of IL-2, but absence of IL-12, IL-18 stimulated NK cells, $CD4^+$ NKT cells, and splenic $CD4^+$ T cells to produce IL-3, IL-9, and IL-13 (26, 36) (**Figure 2**). Because IL-3 and IL-9 induce mucosal mastocytosis, we examined whether the animals developed mucosal mastocytosis after treatment with IL-2 and IL-18. We found that C57BL/6 mice pretreated with IL-18 and IL-2 developed mucosal mastocytosis with high levels of serum mMCP1, an activation marker of MMC, and became able to promptly expel the intestinal nematode *Strongyloides venezuelensis*. Thus, IL-18 is important for expulsion of intestinal nematodes by induction of mucosal mastocytosis, and we published these results in *J Exp Med* (38).

## Th1 CELLS PRODUCE IFN-γ AND IL-13 IN RESPONSE TO Ag AND IL-18

It is well established that IL-18 increases IFN-γ production by anti-CD3-stimulated Th1 cells, particularly in association with IL-12 (2, 4). Furthermore, endogenous IL-18 is required for host defense against intracellular microbes, such as *Listeria monocytogenes*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, and *Leishmania major*, because IL-18-induced IFNγ activated the infected macrophages sufficiently to kill these pathogens (4, 39, 40). However, we had not examined the possibility that IL-18-stimulated Th1 cells can produce Th2 cytokines. Thus, we stimulated established ovalbumin (OVA)-specific Th1 cells with OVA and/or IL-18 and found that OVA plus IL-18-stimulated Th1 cells produce both a Th1 (IFN-γ) and Th2 cytokines (IL-9, IL-13) (41) and additional IL-2 stimulation enhanced production of Th2 cytokines (**Figure 2**).

Next, we examined whether IL-18 acts on memory Th1 cells to induce airway inflammation and airway hyperresponsiveness (AHR) in naïve host mice. In 2002, Nobuki Hayashi and Bill Paul developed a method to establish both resting Th1 and Th2 memory cells (42). Nobuki performed a wonderful study after coming back to my laboratory from the LI. To avoid a background response of host-derived T cells, he administered newly polarized OVA-specific Th1 or Th2 cells into naïve mice and allowed them to adopt a resting memory phenotypy *in vivo*. Intranasal administration of OVA induced airway inflammation and AHR only in mice that received Th2 cells (41). However, mice that received Th1 cells developed airway inflammation and AHR after intranasal administration of both OVA and IL-18 (41). Th1 cells stimulated with OVA and IL-18 became harmful cells, which we designated "super Th1 cells," that produced IFN-γ and IL-13, the combination of which induced difficult bronchial asthma (41). Nobuki further demonstrated that naïve mice having resting Th1 memory cells developed severe bronchial asthma in response to nasal administration of OVA plus LPS instead of IL-18. He also revealed that endogenous IL-18 from LPS-stimulated bronchial epithelial cells was responsible for inducing severe bronchial asthma. He published these results in 2007 (43). This prominent feature of IL-18 can explain the mechanism for infection-associated allergic diseases (44) (**Figure 2**).

Intriguingly, after several rounds of stimulation with Ag, IL-2 plus IL-18, Ag-specific Th1 cells were found to differentiate from cells producing both IL-13 and IFN-γ into cells producing IL-13, but little IFNγ. My colleague Masakiyo Nakahira verified that GATA3 was essential for induction of IL-13 in Th1 cells after stimulation of these cells with Ag, IL-2, and IL-18 (45). Thus, IL-18 has the potential to induce plasticity of established Th1 cells (41, 43–45) (**Figure 2**).

## SIMILARITIES AND DIFFERENCES BETWEEN IL-18 AND IL-33

Interleukin-33, a member of the IL-1 cytokine family, is a ligand of ST2. IL-33 is synthesized as a full-length active form, stored in the nucleus, and released from cells when they receive mechanical damage or become necrotic (46–48). IL-18 is an immunoregulatory cytokine (4) that acts with IL-12 to stimulate Ag-stimulated Th1 cells to produce IFN-γ (2, 4, 12), but acts with IL-2 to stimulate the same cells to produce both a Th1 (IFN-γ) and a Th2 cytokine (IL-13) (41, 43–45) (**Figure 2**). In contrast, IL-33 has the capacity to induce Ag-stimulated Th2 cells to increase production of Th2 cytokines (IL-4, IL-5, and IL-13) (46–48), suggesting that IL-33 plays an important role in induction of allergic responses.

We found that mast cells and basophils express both IL-18R and IL-33R and produce IL-4 and IL-13, when stimulated with IL-3 plus IL-18 or with IL-33, respectively (34, 49) (**Figure 3**). Therefore, IL-18 and IL-33 have very similar effects on mast cells and basophils. Moreover, IL-18 and IL-33 show similar pathological effects on the lungs. Nasal administration of IL-2 and IL-18 induced AHR, pulmonary eosinophilia, and goblet cell hyperplasia in wild-type mice, but not in Rag2-deficient mice (50) (**Figure 4**). However, nasal administration of IL-33 induced the same changes in both wild-type mice and Rag2-deficient mice (49) (**Figure 4**). Thus, IL-2 plus IL-18 induced these pulmonary changes in a NKT cell-dependent manner, while IL-33 treatment induced the same changes in a NKT cell-independent and innate cell-dependent manner (**Figure 4**). Moro et al. (51) and Neill et al. (52) showed that natural helper cells (NH cells) or nuocytes, currently designated group 2 innate cells (ILC2s), express IL-33R, and produce IL-5 and IL-13 in response to IL-33.

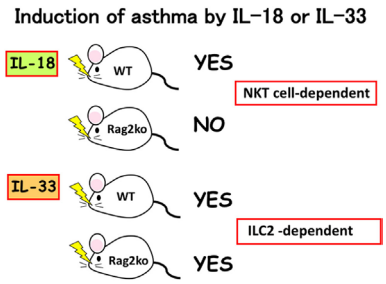



**FIGURE 4** | Induction of bronchial asthma by intranasal administration of interleukin (IL)-18 or IL-33. As natural killer (NK)T cells constitutively express IL-18R, intranasal administration of IL-18 into wild-type mice, but not into Rag2Ko mice induced bronchial asthma by induction of IL-4 and IL-13 from NKT cells. In contrast, intranasal administration of IL-33 into wild-type mice and Rag2Ko mice equally induce bronchial asthma, because Rag2Ko mice are equipped with ILC2 which express IL-33R and produce IL-13 in response to IL-33.

My long-term colleague Koubun Yasuda revealed the mechanism for how IL-33 induced the above pulmonary changes in the absence of acquired immunity. He showed that IL-33 treatment increased the number of ILC2s and that the IL-33-activated-ILC2s induced pulmonary eosinophilia and goblet cell hyperplasia by producing IL-5 and IL-13 in a T-cell-independent manner (53). Thus, IL-33 plays an important role in the induction of ILC2-dependent allergic diseases. Furthermore, he found that infection with the intestinal nematode *S. venezuelensis*, which transiently migrates into the lungs, increased the number of IL-33-producing alveolar epithelial type II cells in the lungs of wild-type mice and Rag2-deficient mice (53). Thus, both types of mice infected with *S. venezuelensis* developed eosinophilic inflammation and goblet cell hyperplasia in their lungs (Loeffler syndrome) (53). Therefore, IL-33 production and release in the lungs is very important for induction of pulmonary eosinophilic inflammation during nematode infection (53–55).

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author expresses his sincere gratitude to Drs. William Paul and Tadamitsu Kishimoto for their great help in all stages of his research. The author also thanks all members of the Department of Immunology and Medical Zoology, Hyogo College of Medicine, and all of his collaborators inside and outside of Japan.

## REFERENCES

1. Yoshimoto T, Nakanishi K, Hirose S, Hiroishi K, Okamura H, Takemoto Y, et al. High serum IL-6 level reflects susceptible status of the host to endotoxin and IL-1/TNF. *J Immunol* (1992) 148:3596–603.
2. Okamura H, Tsutsui H, Komatsu T, Yutsudo M, Hakura A, Tanimoto T, et al. Cloning of a new cytokine that induces IFN-γ production by T cells. *Nature* (1995) 378:88–91. doi:10.1038/378088a0
3. Tsutsui H, Matsui K, Okamura H, Nakanishi K. Pathophysiological roles of interleukin-18 in inflammatory liver diseases. *Immunol Rev* (2000) 174:192–209. doi:10.1034/j.1600-0528.2002.017418.x
4. Nakanishi K, Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Okamura H. Interleukin-18 regulates both Th1 and Th2 responces. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2001) 19:423–74. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.19.1.423
5. Tsutsui H, Nakanishi K. Immunotherapeutic applications of IL-18. *Immunotherapy* (2012) 4(12):1883–94. doi:10.2217/imt.12.137
6. Kaplanski G. Interleukin-18: biological properties and role in disease pathogenesis. *Immunol Rev* (2018) 281:138–53. doi:10.1111/imr.12616
7. Kawa K, Tsutsui H, Uchiyama R, Kato J, Matsui K, Iwakura Y, et al. IFN-γ is a master regulator of endotoxin shock syndrome in mice primed with heat-killed *Propionibacterium acnes*. *Int Immunol* (2010) 22:157–66. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxp122
8. Matsui K, Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Hyodo Y, Hayashi N, Hiroishi K, et al. *Propionibacterium acnes* treatment diminishes $CD4^+NK1.1^+$ T cells but induces type I T cells in the liver by induction of IL-12 and IL-18 production from Kupffer cells. *J Immunol* (1997) 159:97–106.
9. Takeda K, Tsutsui H, Yoshimoto T, Adachi O, Yoshida N, Kishimoto T, et al. Defective NK cell activity and Th1 response in IL-18-deficient mice. *Immunity* (1998) 8:383–90. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80543-9
10. Sakao Y, Takeda K, Tsutsui H, Kaisho T, Nomura F, Okamura H, et al. IL-18-deficient mice are resistant to endotoxin-induced liver injury but highly susceptible to endotoxin shock. *Int Immunol* (1999) 11:471–80. doi:10.1093/intimm/11.3.471
11. Tsutsui H, Kayagaki N, Kuida K, Nakano H, Hayashi N, Takeda K, et al. Caspase-1-independetnt, Fas/Fas ligand-mediated IL-18 secretion from macrophages causes acute liver injury in mice. *Immunity* (1999) 11:359–67. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80111-9
12. Okamura H, Kashiwamura S-I, Tsutsui H, Yoshimoto T, Nakanishi K. Regulation of interferon-gamma (IFN-γ) production by IL-12 and IL-18. *Curr Opin Immunol* (1998) 10:259–64. doi:10.1016/S0952-7915(98)80163-5
13. Dinarello CA. Immunological and inflammatory functions of the interleuin-1 family. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2009) 27:519–50. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.021908.132612
14. Sims JE, Smith DE. The IL-1 family: regulators of immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2010) 10:89–102. doi:10.1038/nri2691
15. Gu Y, Kuida K, Tsutsui H, Ku G, Hsiao K, Fleming MA, et al. Activation of interferon-γ inducing factor mediated by interferon-1βconverting enzyme. *Science* (1997) 275:206–9. doi:10.1126/science.275.5297.206
16. Yamamoto M, Yaginuma K, Tsutsui H, Sagara J, Guan X, Seki E, et al. ASC is essential for LPS-induced activation of procaspase-1independently of TLR-associated signal adaptor molecules. *Genes Cells* (2004) 9:1055–67. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2443.2004.00789.x
17. Imamura M, Tsutsui H, Yasuda K, Uchiyama R, Yumikura-Futatsugi S, Mitani K, et al. Contribution of TIR domain-containing adapter inducing IFN-beta-mediated IL-18 release to LPS-induced liver injury in mice. *J Hepatol* (2009) 51:333–41. doi:10.1016/j.jhep.2009.03.027
18. Martinon F, Mayor A, Tschopp J. The inflammasomes: guardians of the body. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2009) 27:229–65. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.021908.132715
19. Bossaller L, Chiang PI, Schmidt-Lauber C, Ganesan S, Kaiser WJ, Rathinam VAK, et al. FAS (CD95) mediates noncanonical IL-1b and IL-18 maturation via caspase-8 in an RIP3-independent manner. *J Immunol* (2012) 189:5508–12. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1202121
20. Sugawara S, Uehara A, Nochi T, Yamaguchi T, Ueda H, Sugiyama H, et al. Neutrophil proteinase 3-mediated induction of bioactive IL-18 secretion by human oral epithelial cells. *J Immunol* (2001) 167:6568–75. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.167.11.6568
21. Omoto Y, Tokime K, Yamanaka K, Habe K, Morioka T, Kurokawa I, et al. Human mast cell chymase cleaves pro-IL-18 and generates a novel and biologically active IL-18 fragment. *J Immunol* (2006) 177:8315–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.12.8315
22. Omoto Y, Yamanaka K, Tokime K, Kitano S, Kakeda M, Akeda T, et al. Granzyme B is a novel interleukin-18 converting enzyme. *J Dermatol Sci* (2010) 59:129–35. doi:10.1016/j.jdermsci.2010.05.004

23. Yoshimoto T, Takeda K, Tanaka T, Ohkusu K, Kashiwamura S-I, Okamura H, et al. IL-12 upregulates IL-18R expression on T cells, Th1 cells and B cells: synergism with IL-18 for IFN-gamma production. *J Immunol* (1998) 161: 3400–7.
24. Hoshino K, Tsutsui H, Kawai T, Takeda K, Nakanishi K, Takeda Y, et al. Generation of IL-18 receptor-deficient mice: evidence for IL-1 receptor-related protein as an essential IL-18 binding receptor. *J Immunol* (1999) 162: 5041–4.
25. Adachi O, Kawai T, Takeda K, Matsumoto M, Tsutsui H, Sakagami M, et al. Targeted disruption of the *MyD88* gene results in loss of IL-1-and IL-18-mediated function. *Immunity* (1998) 9:143–50. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80596-8
26. Hoshino T, Wiltrout RH, Young HA. IL-18 is a potent coinducer of IL-13 in NK and T cells: a new potential role for IL-18 in modulating the immune response. *J Immunol* (1999) 162:5070–7.
27. Novick D, Kim SH, Fantuzzi G, Reznikov LL, Dinarello CA, Rubinstein M. Interleukin-18 binding protein: a novel modulator of the Th1 cytokine response. *Immunity* (1999) 10:127–36. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80013-8
28. Nold-Petry CA, Lo CY, Rudloff I, Elgass KD, Li S, Gantier MP, et al. IL-37 requires the receptors IL-18Rα and IL-1R8 (SIGIRR) to carry out its multifaceted anti-inflammatory program upon innate signal transduction. *Nat Immunol* (2015) 16:354–65. doi:10.1038/ni.3103
29. Ferluga J, Allison AC. Role of mononuclear infiltrating cells in pathogenesis of hepatitis. *Lancet* (1978) 312:610–1. doi:10.1016/S0140-6736(78)92828-3
30. Seki E, Tsutsui H, Nakano H, Tsuji NM, Hoshino K, Adachi O, et al. Lipopolysaccharide-induced IL-18 selection from murine Kupffer cells independently of myeloid differentiation factor 88 that is critically involved in induction of production of IL-12 and IL-18. *J Immunol* (2001) 166:2651–7. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.166.4.2651
31. Yoshimoto T, Okamura H, Tagawa Y, Iwakura Y, Nakanishi K. Interleukin-18 (IL-18) together with IL-12 inhibits IgE production by induction of IFNγ production from activated B cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1997) 94:3948–53. doi:10.1073/pnas.94.8.3948
32. Hoshino K, Kashiwamura S, Kuribayashi K, Kodama T, Tsujimura T, Nakanishi K, et al. The absence of interleukin 1 receptor-related T1/ST2 does not affect T helper cell type 2 development and its effector function. *J Exp Med* (1999) 190:1541–8. doi:10.1084/jem.190.10.1541
33. Plaut M, Pierce JH, Watson CJ, Hanley-Hyde J, Nordan RP, Paul WE. Mast cell lines produce lymphokines in response to cross-linkage of Fc epsilon RI or to calcium ionophores. *Nature* (1989) 339:64–7. doi:10.1038/339064a0
34. Yoshimoto T, Tsutsui H, Tominaga K, Hoshino K, Okamura H, Akira S, et al. IL-18, although antiallergic when administered with IL-12, stimulates IL-4 and histamine release by basophils. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1999) 96:13962–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.96.24.13962
35. Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Tanaka H, Nakahira M, Imai Y, Fujimori Y. Basophils contribute to TH2-IgE responses in vivo via IL-4 production and presentation of peptide-MHC class II complexes to $CD4^+$ T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:706–12. doi:10.1038/ni.1737
36. Yoshimoto T, Mizutani H, Tsutsui H, Noben-Trauth N, Yamanaka K-I, Tanaka M, et al. IL-18 induction of IgE: dependence on $CD4^+$ T cells, IL-4 and STAT6. *Nat Immunol* (2000) 1:132–7. doi:10.1038/77811
37. Konishi H, Tsutsui H, Murakami T, Nakano H, Yamanaka K, Yumikura-Futatsugi S, et al. IL-18 contributes to the spontaneous development of atopic dermatitis-like inflammatory skin lesion independently of IgE/stat6 under specific pathogen-free conditions. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2002) 99:11340–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.152337799
38. Sasaki Y, Yoshimoto T, Maruyama H, Tegoshi T, Ohta N, Arizono N, et al. IL-18 with IL-2 protects against *Strongyloides venezuelensis* infection by activating mucosal mast cell-dependent type 2 innate immunity. *J Exp Med* (2005) 202:607–16. doi:10.1084/jem.20042202
39. Ohkusu K, Yoshimoto T, Takeda K, Ogura T, Kashiwamura S-I, Iwakura Y, et al. Potentiality of interleukin-18 as a useful reagent for the treatment and prevention of *Leishmania major* infection. *Infect Immun* (2000) 68: 2449–56. doi:10.1128/IAI.68.5.2449-2456.2000
40. Seki E, Tsutsui H, Tsuji MN, Hayashi N, Adachi K, Nakano H, et al. Critical roles of MyD88-dependent proinflammatory cytokine release in early phase clearance of *Listeria monocytogenes*. *J Immunol* (2002) 169:3863–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.169.7.3863
41. Sugimoto T, Ishikawa Y, Yoshimoto T, Hayashi N, Fujimoto J, Nakanishi K. Interleukin 18 acts on memory T helper cells type 1 to induce airway inflammation and hyperresponsiveness in a naive host mouse. *J Exp Med* (2004) 199:535–45. doi:10.1084/jem.20031368
42. Hayashi N, Liu D, Min B, Ben-Sasson SZ, Paul WE. Antigen challenge leads to in vivo activation and elimination of highly polarized TH1 memory T cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2002) 2002(99):6187–91. doi:10.1073/pnas.092129899
43. Hayashi N, Yoshimoto T, Izuhara K, Matsui K, Tanaka T, Nakanishi K. T helper 1 cells stimulated with ovalbumin and IL-18 induce airway hyperresponsiveness and lung fibrosis by IFN-γ and IL-13 production. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2007) 104:14765–70. doi:10.1073/pnas.0706378104
44. Tsutsui H, Yoshimoto T, Hayashi N, Mizutani H, Nakanishi K. Induction of allergic inflammation by interleukin 18 in experimental animal models. *Immunol Rev* (2004) 202:115–38. doi:10.1111/j.0105-2896.2004.00205.x
45. Nakahira M, Nakanishi K. Requirement of GATA-binding protein 3 for Il13 gene expression in IL-18-stimulated Th1 cells. *Int Immunol* (2011) 23:761–72. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxr087
46. Schmitz J, Owyang A, Oldham E, Song Y, Murphy E, McClanahan TK, et al. IL-33, an interleukin-1-like cytokine that signals via the IL-1 receptor-related protein ST2 and induces T helper type 2-associated cytokines. *Immunity* (2005) 23:479–90. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.015
47. Talabot-Ayer D, Lamacchia C, Gabay C, Palmer G. Interleukin-33 is biologically active independently of caspase-1 cleavage. *J Biol Chem* (2009) 284: 19420–6. doi:10.1074/jbc.M901744200
48. Cayrol C, Girard JP. IL-33: an alarmin cytokine with crucial roles in innate immunity, inflammation and allergy. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2014) 31:31–7. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2014.09.004
49. Kondo Y, Yoshimoto T, Yasuda K, Futatsugi-Yumikura S, Morimoto M, Hayashi N. Administration of IL-33 induces airway hyperresponsiveness and goblet cell hyperplasia in the absence of adaptive immune system. *Int Immunol* (2008) 20:791–800. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxn037
50. Ishikawa Y, Yoshimoto T, Nakanishi K. Contribution of IL-18-induced innate T cell activation to airway inflammation with mucus hypersecretion and airway hyperresponsiveness. *Int Immunol* (2006) 18:847–55. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxl021
51. Moro K, Yamada T, Tanabe M, Takeuchi T, Ikawa T, Kawamoto H, et al. Innate production of T(H)2 cytokines by adipose tissue-associated c-Kit(+) Sca-1(+) lymphoid cells. *Nature* (2010) 463:540–4. doi:10.1038/nature08636
52. Neill DR, Wong SH, Bellosi A, Flynn RJ, Daly M, Langford TK, et al. Nuocytes represent a new innate effector leukocyte that mediates type-2 immunity. *Nature* (2010) 464:1367–70. doi:10.1038/nature08900
53. Yasuda K, Muto T, Kawagoe T, Matsumoto M, Sasaki Y, Matsushita K, et al. Contribution of IL-33-activated type II innate lymphoid cells to pulmonary eosinophilia in intestinal nematode-infected mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2012) 109:3451–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.1201042109
54. Yasuda K, Matsumoto M, Nakanishi K. Importance of both innate immunity and acquired immunity for rapid expulsion of *S. venezuelensis*. *Front Immunol* (2014) 5:118. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00118
55. Yasuda K, Nakanishi K. Host responses to intestinal nematodes. *Int Immunol* (2018) 30:93–102. doi:10.1093/intimm/dxy002


**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

MINI REVIEW
published: 21 March 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00598

# Distinct Immunologic Properties of Soluble Versus Particulate Antigens

*Clifford M. Snapper**

*Department of Pathology, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences, Bethesda, MD, United States*

Antigens in particulate form have distinct immunologic properties relative to soluble antigens. An understanding of the mechanisms and functional consequences of the distinct immunologic pathways engaged by these different forms of antigen is particularly relevant to the design of vaccines. It is also relevant regarding the use of therapeutic human proteins in clinical medicine that have been shown to aggregate, and perhaps as a result, elicit autoantibodies.

**Keywords: bacteria, antibody, particle, vaccine, polysaccharide, autoantibody, marginal zone, antigen presentation**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Joshua Milner, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Philip Anton Van Der Merwe, University of Oxford, United Kingdom*
*Christoph Wülfing, University of Bristol, United Kingdom*

***Correspondence:**
*Clifford M. Snapper*
*clifford.snapper@usuhs.edu*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *28 November 2017*
***Accepted:*** *09 March 2018*
***Published:*** *21 March 2018*

***Citation:***
*Snapper CM (2018) Distinct Immunologic Properties of Soluble Versus Particulate Antigens. Front. Immunol. 9:598. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00598*

## DIFFERENCES BETWEEN SOLUBLE AND PARTICULATE ANTIGENS RELEVANT TO THE IMMUNE RESPONSE

Relative to soluble antigens, antigens in particulate form are selectively internalized through antigen-presenting cell (APC) phagocytosis, with greater efficiency (1, 2) but with longer processing time (3), exhibit quantitative and qualitative differences in the antigenic epitopes generated (4), concentrate for extended periods within the marginal zone of the spleen (5), and are presented poorly, if at all, by splenic B cells (4), although efficiently internalized by peritoneal B1b cells (6). Signaling responses of APC can differ markedly in response to microbe-associated molecular patterns that are expressed in particulate versus soluble form (7). Various particulates, including intact bacteria activate the inflammasome resulting in production of IL-1β (8, 9), a cytokine that can augment T cell-dependent antibody responses (10). Phagocytosis of particulate antigens by APC also augment the calcineurin/NFAT signaling pathway resulting in a higher level of immune stimulation (7).

## ANTIGEN PARTICULATION IMPROVES VACCINE IMMUNOGENICITY

The aggregation or particulation of an antigen could increase its overall immunogenicity by enhancing B cell receptor cross-linking, leading to higher levels of B cell activation and targeting of internalized antigen to lysosomes with subsequent enhanced antigen presentation to T cells. Thus, DNA vaccination with plasmids encoding for weakly immunogenic GFP protein fused to either a long polyQ domain that triggers aggregation or a short polyQ domain that does not resulted in a significantly higher anti-GFP antibody response to the GFP aggregate, relative to its non-aggregated form, as well as to enhanced CTL activity (11). The attachment of several vaccines to bacterium-like particles derived from the Gram-positive bacterium *Lactococcus lactis* that was treated to become a predominantly peptidoglycan shell (1–2 μm in diameter), has demonstrated significant enhancement in $CD4^+$ T cell responses, and promotion of antigen cross-presentation for $CD8^+$ T cell activation (12). Nanoparticles can also be used as a platform for synchronizing delivery of antigens and adjuvants that can be targeted to specific cell types (13). The particle size to which antigen is associated may play a critical factor in the subsequent immune response. Thus, intradermal immunization of mice with ovalbumin (OVA) covalently attached to a range of

carboxylated polystyrene microspheres (0.02–2 μm in diameter) in the absence of adjuvant demonstrated the highest OVA-specific T cell and antibody responses when using 0.04 μm, but not larger, beads (14). The immune response using 0.04-μm beads was also higher relative to OVA immunizations using a number of different adjuvants. A subsequent study from this group further demonstrated a greater uptake by lung APC, and higher immune mediator release, following intratracheal instillation in mice of 0.05-μm, relative to 0.5-μm, diameter polystyrene nanoparticles (15). In this regard vaccines, in which recombinant proteins are displayed as virus-like particles, such as hepatitis B and human papilloma virus have proven clinically safe and highly effective in preventing the corresponding viral infections (16, 17). Many additional vaccination approaches using antigen particulation as a platform are currently under investigation (18–21), to mention only a few.

One underlying mechanism involved in the adjuvant effect of particulation is the targeted delivery of antigens to APCs in a concentrated form. We demonstrated that dendritic cells (DCs) were >5,000 times more efficient in the uptake and presentation of a bacterial protein to antigen-specific T-cells when delivered on the bacterial surface than when in soluble form, as a polysaccharide (PS)–protein conjugate (1). This likely reflected the fact that ingestion of a single bacterial particle by an APC effected the uptake of multiple copies of the associated protein. In contrast, the amount of soluble protein internalized *via* pinocytosis depended more heavily on the local concentration of antigen. Thus, the same total amount of soluble PS–protein conjugate delivered at a higher concentration was internalized 10–50 times more efficiently by the DC (1). PS–protein conjugates include several licensed clinical vaccines, such as that for *Haemophilus influenzae* type b, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, and *Neisseria meningitidis*, that are highly protective against infections with these PS-encapsulated extracellular bacteria (22).

## ANTIGEN PARTICULATION CAN BREAK IMMUNE TOLERANCE

The immune system typically develops tolerance to self-proteins, yet autologous proteins used for therapeutic purposes often elicit antibody responses (23–25). Unwanted consequences of the latter include a reduction in drug efficacy (25) or development of significant pathologies (24, 26). Although the mechanism that underlies this break in immune tolerance is uncertain, possible contributors include degradation, modification, or aggregation of the protein (27, 28), or its contamination with Toll-like receptor (TLR) ligands (29, 30). In particular, aggregation has been implicated in immune responses to intravenous immunoglobulin, human growth hormone, and interferon α2 formulations (27, 28, 31, 32). Therapeutic proteins can aggregate in response to various stressors, such as agitation, freezing, and exposure to the air–liquid interface, during their manufacture, storage, and/or delivery to patients (33). Such aggregates may contain different secondary and tertiary structures that expose different epitopes, as well as create a repeating antigenic array for higher avidity B cell receptor binding and cross-linking. Indeed, immunization of rabbits or mice with virus-like particles to which arrays of self-antigens were conjugated induced strong antibody responses to those self-antigens (34, 35).

In light of the above, we directly tested the hypothesis that particulation of a soluble self-protein, i.e., mouse serum albumin (MSA), may lead to the breaking of self-tolerance in non-autoimmune mice, manifested by induction of $CD4^+$ T cell-dependent antigen-specific antibody responses. This question was directly relevant to the fact that human serum albumin has a wide variety of clinical applications including intravascular volume expansion (36) and stabilization of protein therapeutics and vaccines (37). Certain properties of albumin would suggest a low likelihood of its eliciting autoantibodies. Thus, it exhibits limited polymorphism, including no known phenotypic variation in inbred mouse strains (38). In humans, although the gene for albumin is highly polymorphic, variations in the encoded protein sequences are rare (39). Moreover, during its synthesis, albumin is non-glycosylated, reducing its potential variability, although 6–15% may undergo nonenzymatic glycation in the blood (40, 41). Other properties of albumin, however, might suggest its potential for acting as an autoantigen. Thus, glycation alters the conformation and function of albumin (42). Albumin also binds various serum ligands (43) and interacts with a variety of host cells (44) and some bacterial pathogens (45–47). Bacteria can also bind albumin indirectly such as specific binding to heme that contains bound albumin (48).

In light of the potential for therapeutic proteins to aggregate as well as the observation that albumin can bind to intact bacterial surfaces, we wished to determine whether MSA covalently attached to bacteria-sized (1 μm) latex beads could induce an autoimmune response in non-autoimmune BALB/c mice. We observed that bead-associated, but not soluble MSA was indeed able to induce a $CD4^+$ T cell-dependent MSA-specific IgG response (49). When MSA and PS (a T cell-independent antigen), were both covalently attached to the same latex beads, but not to each other we observed a $CD4^+$ T cell-dependent augmented primary, and boosted secondary IgM and IgG anti-PS response. No such effects were observed for beads linked to PS alone or with MSA beads mixed with soluble PS. These responses were enhanced by, but did not require TLR stimulation. These results provided a potential mechanism, i.e., protein aggregation/particulation for the induction of responses to self-proteins normally unable to induce specific T cell or antibody responses. Thus, measures to minimize aggregation of proteins used for therapeutic purposes may lead to a reduction in elicitation of neutralizing or pathogenic antibodies. These data further confirmed our earlier demonstration using 1-μm beads with associated PS and a *foreign* protein (50) that *non-covalent* association of protein and PS was sufficient to elicit T cell-dependent anti-PS responses. The simple association of PS and a foreign protein to a biocompatible particulate substrate might serve as a more cost-effective alternative to the use of PS–protein conjugate vaccines in which the antigens require covalent linkage, especially in developing countries where financial cost may be a limiting factor for widespread usage (51).

## PS EXPRESSED AS A SOLUBLE PS–PROTEIN CONJUGATE VERSUS THE SAME PS EXPRESSED BY AN INTACT BACTERIUM ELICITS PS-SPECIFIC ANTIBODY RESPONSES FROM DISTINCT B CELL SUBSETS AND WITH DISTINCT IDIOTYPES

Parenteral injection of particulate, in contrast to soluble, antigens results in their initial and prolonged concentration within the splenic marginal zone where they come into extended contact with marginal zone B (MZB) cells (52, 53). MZB cells, along with B-1 B cells play a major role in eliciting anti-PS responses (54). Thus, we wished to determine whether MZB cells mediated anti-PS responses to PS-expressing intact bacteria and whether or not this was also true for soluble PS–protein conjugates [the IgG anti-PS responses in both cases were shown to be $CD4^+$ T cell-dependent (55, 56)]. For this purpose we utilized $Lsc^{-/-}$ mice. The function of the Lsc protein is to attenuate Gα12/13-mediated G protein-coupled receptor signaling with subsequent activation of RhoA signaling (57). Mice genetically deficient in Lsc ($Lsc^{-/-}$) exhibit a marked defect in MZB migration from the marginal zone following immunization, precluding MZB interaction with $CD4^+$ T cells (58). Lsc acts selectively on MZB cells (58, 59).

$Lsc^{-/-}$ mice were immunized and boosted i.p. with intact, inactivated *S. pneumoniae* expressing the type 14 capsular PS or with a soluble conjugate of type 14 PS and the *S. pneumoniae*-derived cell wall protein, pneumococcal surface protein A. $Lsc^{-/-}$ mice exhibited a nearly complete abrogation in the primary and secondary IgG anti-PS responses to intact *S. pneumoniae*, whereas no effects were observed on the same IgG anti-PS response to the soluble PS–protein conjugate (1, 60). In contrast, neither the T cell-independent IgM anti-PS responses to *S. pneumoniae* nor the T cell-dependent IgG anti-protein responses to *S. pneumoniae* or soluble PS–protein conjugate were affected in $Lsc^{-/-}$ relative to control mice. Thus, these data strongly suggested that particulation of associated PS and protein selectively recruited MZB cells to induce a T cell-dependent IgG anti-PS response. This was further supported by our observation that the IgG anti-PS response to a soluble PS–protein conjugate became completely dependent on MZB cells when the conjugate was adsorbed to the surface of an intact *S. pneumoniae* that lacked *natural* expression of both the relevant PS and protein (1).

The selective utilization of MZB cells for the IgG anti-type 14 PS response to intact *S. pneumoniae* was reflected in the observation that the majority of the elicited PS-specific IgG expressed a dominant idiotype, designated 44.1-Id that was not observed when using a soluble conjugate of type 14 PS and protein (61). The idiotype of an antibody is defined as the epitope(s) within the variable region that uniquely defines the specificity of the antibody for its cognate antigen. Of note, attachment of the soluble conjugate to 1-μm latex beads or to the surface of an intact *S. pneumoniae* lacking the relevant PS and protein referred to earlier, resulted in a switch to significant 44.1-Id expression in the elicited IgG anti-PS response. Usage of the 44.1-Id was linked to the $Igh^a$, but not $Igh^b$, allotype. These results indicated that different antigenic forms of the same capsular PS can recruit distinct B cell clones expressing characteristic idiotypes under genetic control, and strongly suggested that the 44.1-Id is derived from MZB cells.

## ANTIBODY RESPONSES TO SOLUBLE ANTIGENS INVOLVE DISTINCT APCs RELATIVE TO ANTIGENS EXPRESSED BY INTACT BACTERIA

Little is known regarding the specific APCs that initiate T cell activation during T cell-dependent (TD) antibody responses to soluble antigens versus complex particulate antigens, such as inactivated, intact extracellular bacteria. Of note, aluminum salts ("alum") are often used as adjuvants when immunizing with soluble antigens in various experimental systems, and are themselves particulate. However, antigen adsorbed to alum does not behave as a particulate antigen (1). Thus, DC exposed to alum-adsorbed antigen exhibited facilitated antigen uptake, but did not internalize the alum particles themselves (62).

Dendritic cells, monocytes (and monocyte-derived cells), and macrophages, all of which can serve as APCs, are members of the mononuclear phagocyte system that can be distinguished phenotypically (63, 64). Collectively, they play dominant roles as APCs for $CD4^+$ T cells (63). Mouse DC within the spleen are further divided into conventional (classical) (c)DC [either $CD8\alpha^+$ or $CD11b^+$] and plasmacytoid DC (63, 65–67). Although DC are efficient in uptake of soluble antigens, they also exhibit phagocytic activity. Mouse monocytes are classified as $Ly6C^{hi}$ ("classical monocytes") and $Ly6C^{lo}$ ("non-classical monocytes") (63, 68). $Ly6C^{hi}$ monocytes, in particular can internalize and transport antigen to secondary lymphoid organs such as the spleen, where they mature into APCs capable of activating naïve T cells. They are then referred to, generally as monocyte-derived cells (63, 69, 70). Monocyte-derived cells appear to be especially efficient in capturing intact bacteria (71). Macrophages are highly efficient at phagocytosis and play a major role in clearing senescent and apoptotic cells, cellular debris, and pathogens, but are also capable of acting as APC to activate T cells (72). In mouse spleen, macrophages are further divided into red pulp macrophages (73), marginal zone macrophages, and marginal metallophilic macrophages, the latter two located within the MZ (52).

In light of the observation that uptake of intact bacteria and soluble antigens by APCs are skewed toward phagocytosis versus endocytosis or pinocytosis, respectively, we predicted that injection into mice of clodronate-containing liposomes (CL) (74, 75), which are internalized and toxic to highly phagocytic cells, would inhibit $CD4^+$ T cell-dependent IgG responses to antigens expressed by intact bacteria but not isolated soluble antigens. Splenic macrophages and monocytes (and monocyte-derived cells), but not conventional DCs or neutrophils, were depleted by i.v. injection of CL (76). Surprisingly, injection of CL markedly inhibited protein-specific IgG responses to a soluble PS–OVA conjugate or OVA alone, as well as to intact, inactivated

*S. pneumoniae*. In both instances, CL-mediated inhibition of protein-specific IgG responses was associated with a significant reduction in the formation of germinal centers and the differentiation of $CD4^+$ T cells into germinal center T follicular helper cells. However, CL injection which largely abrogated the proliferative response of adoptively transferred OVA peptide-specific transgenic $CD4^+$ T cells in response to immunization with *S. pneumoniae* expressing OVA peptide, did not inhibit T cell proliferation in response to soluble PS–OVA or OVA alone. In this regard, monocyte-derived cells depleted by CL, internalized *S. pneumoniae in vivo*, whereas in contrast $CD11c^{low}$ DCs, unaffected by CL injection, internalized soluble OVA. *Ex vivo* isolation and coculture of these respective APCs from *S. pneumoniae*- or OVA-immunized mice with OVA-specific T cells, in the absence of exogenous antigen, demonstrated their selective ability to induce T cell activation. These data provided strong support to the notion that distinct APCs initiate $CD4^+$ T cell activation in response to antigen expressed by intact bacteria versus antigen in soluble form. However, CL-sensitive cells appear necessary for the subsequent IgG responses to both forms of antigen (76).

These studies using CL are consistent with earlier studies demonstrating a significant CL-mediated reduction in TNP-specific IgG antibody-forming cells following i.v. immunization with other micron-sized, particulate antigens including TNP-sheep red blood cells (77) or TNP-*Lactobacillus acidophilus* (78), or reduction in serum titers of IgG anti-human serum albumin in response to liposome-associated human serum albumin (79). However, these studies provided no mechanistic basis for these observations. Similarly, i.p. injection of CL resulted in a marked inhibition in priming of $CD4^+$ T cells, including IFN-$\gamma^+$ T cells, following i.p. infection with live *Salmonella typhimurium* that was associated with a reduced accumulation of monocyte-derived cells in the spleen (80). However, in contrast to our findings, CL had no effect on the *S. typhimurium*-induced IgG2a plasma blast response and both monocyte-derived cells and conventional DC from *S. typhimurium*-infected mice could activate *S. typhimurium*-specific $CD4^+$ T cells *ex vivo*, in the absence of exogenous antigen (80). The use of a live Gram-negative bacterium in this former study, as opposed to a Gram-positive, heat-killed bacterium used in this study, may potentially underlie the observed differences. Of note, i.v. injection of CL failed to inhibit humoral immune responses to smaller, nanometer-sized particles (i.e., inactivated rabies virus or immune-stimulating complexes containing rabies virus antigens) immunized *via* the i.v. route (81). Collectively, these data add further support to the notion that antigens in particulate form have distinct immunologic properties relative to soluble antigens.

## CONCLUSION AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS

Antigens expressed in particulate/aggregated form exhibit distinct immunologic properties relative to corresponding antigens in soluble form. Cells with high phagocytic activity selectively internalize particulate antigens and do so with relatively high efficiency. Antigen within the particle is displayed in multiple copies facilitating high avidity multivalent B cell cross-linking resulting in higher and sustained levels of B cell activation and antigen internalization for presentation to $CD4^+$ T cells. This promotes higher antibody responses to foreign proteins but also a higher likelihood of generating autoantibody-secreting cells. Antigen particulation also allows for coexpression of adjuvant and cell targeting moieties for more efficient and/or targeted immune responses. Particulation itself may further activate the inflammasome and provide intrinsic adjuvant activity. Finally, particles may localize to the splenic marginal zone that may facilitate engagement of MZB that express specialized functional properties. An understanding of the unique immunologic properties of antigens in particulate form should guide future design of vaccines and protein therapeutics.

The following unanswered questions merit further study: (1) how do conventional B cells extract and present antigens from intact bacteria or protozoans in light of their inability to phagocytose particles of $\geq$1 μm size, (2) what is the significance of the differential usage of select APCs in response to soluble versus particulate antigens on the subsequent nature of the immune response, (3) what is the mechanism by which particulate or aggregated antigens break immunologic tolerance, (4) what are the precise features (e.g., size, composition, organization) of particulate antigens that lead to optimal immune responses, and (5) can directing antigen to MZB cells through particulation be exploited clinically to alter the quantity or quality of the immune response.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author thanks Drs. Jesus Colino, Swagata Kar, and Gouri Chattopadhyay for the research cited from the author's laboratory.

## FUNDING

Supported by N.I.H. 2R01-AI49192 and U.S.U.H.S. Dean's Research and Education Endowment.

## REFERENCES

1. Colino J, Chattopadhyay G, Sen G, Chen Q, Lees A, Canaday DH, et al. Parameters underlying distinct T cell-dependent polysaccharide-specific IgG responses to an intact gram-positive bacterium versus a soluble conjugate vaccine. *J Immunol* (2009) 183:1551–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0900238
2. Kovacsovics-Bankowski M, Clark K, Benacerraf B, Rock KL. Efficient major histocompatibility complex class I presentation of exogenous antigen upon phagocytosis by macrophages. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1993) 90:4942–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.90.11.4942
3. Ziegler HK, Orlin CA, Cluff CW. Differential requirements for the processing and presentation of soluble and particulate bacterial antigens by macrophages. *Eur J Immunol* (1987) 17:1287–96. doi:10.1002/eji.1830170911

4. Vidard L, Kovacsovics-Bankowski M, Kraeft SK, Chen LB, Benacerraf B, Rock KL. Analysis of MHC class II presentation of particulate antigens of B lymphocytes. *J Immunol* (1996) 156:2809–18.
5. Kraal G, Ter Hart H, Meelhuizen C, Venneker G, Claassen E. Marginal zone macrophages and their role in the immune response against T-independent type 2 antigens: modulation of the cells with specific antibody. *Eur J Immunol* (1989) 19:675–80. doi:10.1002/eji.1830190416
6. Gao J, Ma X, Gu W, Fu M, An J, Xing Y, et al. Novel functions of murine B1 cells: active phagocytic and microbicidal abilities. *Eur J Immunol* (2012) 42:982–92. doi:10.1002/eji.201141519
7. Fric J, Zelante T, Ricciardi-Castagnoli P. Phagocytosis of particulate antigens – all roads lead to calcineurin/NFAT signaling pathway. *Front Immunol* (2014) 4:513. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00513
8. Latz E, Xiao TS, Stutz A. Activation and regulation of the inflammasomes. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2013) 13:397–411. doi:10.1038/nri3452
9. Ferrand J, Ferrero RL. Recognition of extracellular bacteria by NLRs and its role in the development of adaptive immunity. *Front Immunol* (2013) 4:344. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00344
10. Ben-Sasson SZ, Hu-Li J, Quiel J, Cauchetaux S, Ratner M, Shapira I, et al. IL-1 acts directly on CD4 T cells to enhance their antigen-driven expansion and differentiation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2009) 106:7119–24. doi:10.1073/pnas.0902745106
11. Ilyinskii PO, Thoidis G, Sherman MY, Shneider A. Adjuvant potential of aggregate-forming polyglutamine domains. *Vaccine* (2008) 26:3223–6. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.03.078
12. Van Braeckel-Budimir N, Haijema BJ, Leenhouts K. Bacterium-like particles for efficient immune stimulation of existing vaccines and new subunit vaccines in mucosal applications. *Front Immunol* (2013) 4:282. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2013.00282
13. Sehgal K, Ragheb R, Fahmy TM, Dhodapkar MV, Dhodapkar KM. Nanoparticle-mediated combinatorial targeting of multiple human dendritic cell (DC) subsets leads to enhanced T cell activation via IL-15-dependent DC crosstalk. *J Immunol* (2014) 193:2297–305. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1400489
14. Fifis T, Gamvrellis A, Crimeen-Irwin B, Pietersz GA, Li J, Mottram PL, et al. Size-dependent immunogenicity: therapeutic and protective properties of nano-vaccines against tumors. *J Immunol* (2004) 173:3148–54. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.173.5.3148
15. Hardy CL, Lemasurier JS, Mohamud R, Yao J, Xiang SD, Rolland JM, et al. Differential uptake of nanoparticles and microparticles by pulmonary APC subsets induces discrete immunological imprints. *J Immunol* (2013) 191:5278–90. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1203131
16. Kash N, Lee MA, Kollipara R, Downing C, Guidry J, Tyring SK. Safety and efficacy data on vaccines and immunization to human papillomavirus. *J Clin Med* (2015) 4:614–33. doi:10.3390/jcm4040614
17. Hepatitis B vaccines WHO position paper. Oct 29. *Weekly Epidemilogical Record*. (Vol. 40), p. 405–20.
18. Riitho V, Walters AA, Somavarapu S, Lamp B, Rumenapf T, Krey T, et al. Design and evaluation of the immunogenicity and efficacy of a biomimetic particulate formulation of viral antigens. *Sci Rep* (2017) 7:13743. doi:10.1038/s41598-017-13915-x
19. Singh B, Maharjan S, Cho KH, Cui L, Park IK, Choi YJ, et al. Chitosan-based particulate systems for the delivery of mucosal vaccines against infectious diseases. *Int J Biol Macromol* (2017). doi:10.1016/j.ijbiomac.2017.10.101
20. Ni D, Qing S, Ding H, Yue H, Yu D, Wang S, et al. Biomimetically engineered demi-bacteria potentiate vaccination against cancer. *Adv Sci (Weinh)* (2017) 4:1700083. doi:10.1002/advs.201700083
21. Karch CP, Doll T, Paulillo SM, Nebie I, Lanar DE, Corradin G, et al. The use of a *P. falciparum* specific coiled-coil domain to construct a self-assembling protein nanoparticle vaccine to prevent malaria. *J Nanobiotechnology* (2017) 15:62. doi:10.1186/s12951-017-0295-0
22. Goldblatt D, Assari T, Snapper C. The immunobiology of polysaccharide and conjugate vaccines. In: Siber GR editor. *Pneumococcal Vaccines*. Washington, DC: ASM Press (2008). p. 67–82.
23. De Groot AS, Scott DW. Immunogenicity of protein therapeutics. *Trends Immunol* (2007) 28:482–90. doi:10.1016/j.it.2007.07.011
24. Casadevall N, Nataf J, Viron B, Kolta A, Kiladjian JJ, Martin-Dupont P, et al. Pure red-cell aplasia and antierythropoietin antibodies in patients treated with recombinant erythropoietin. *N Engl J Med* (2002) 346:469–75. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa011931
25. Scagnolari C, Casato M, Bellomi F, De Pisa F, Turriziani O, Coviello R, et al. Serum interferon (IFN)-neutralizing antibodies and bioactivities of IFNs in patients with severe type II essential mixed cryoglobulinemia. *Clin Diagn Lab Immunol* (2003) 10:70–7. doi:10.1128/CDLI.10.1.70-77.2003
26. Li J, Yang C, Xia Y, Bertino A, Glaspy J, Roberts M, et al. Thrombocytopenia caused by the development of antibodies to thrombopoietin. *Blood* (2001) 98:3241–8. doi:10.1182/blood.V98.12.3241
27. Moore WV, Leppert P. Role of aggregated human growth hormone (hGH) in development of antibodies to hGH. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* (1980) 51:691–7. doi:10.1210/jcem-51-4-691
28. Rosenberg AS. Effects of protein aggregates: an immunologic perspective. *AAPS J* (2006) 8:E501–7. doi:10.1208/aapsj080359
29. Viglianti GA, Lau CM, Hanley TM, Miko BA, Shlomchik MJ, Marshak-Rothstein A. Activation of autoreactive B cells by CpG dsDNA. *Immunity* (2003) 19:837–47. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00323-6
30. Christensen SR, Kashgarian M, Alexopoulou L, Flavell RA, Akira S, Shlomchik MJ.Toll-like receptor 9 controls anti-DNA autoantibody production in murine lupus. *J Exp Med* (2005) 202:321–31. doi:10.1084/jem.20050338
31. Hermeling S, Aranha L, Damen JM, Slijper M, Schellekens H, Crommelin DJ, et al. Structural characterization and immunogenicity in wild-type and immune tolerant mice of degraded recombinant human interferon alpha2b. *Pharm Res* (2005) 22:1997–2006. doi:10.1007/s11095-005-8177-9
32. Hermeling S, Schellekens H, Maas C, Gebbink MF, Crommelin DJ, Jiskoot W. Antibody response to aggregated human interferon alpha2b in wild-type and transgenic immune tolerant mice depends on type and level of aggregation. *J Pharm Sci* (2006) 95:1084–96. doi:10.1002/jps.20599
33. Chi EY, Krishnan S, Randolph TW, Carpenter JF. Physical stability of proteins in aqueous solution: mechanism and driving forces in nonnative protein aggregation. *Pharm Res* (2003) 20:1325–36. doi:10.1023/A:1025771421906
34. Zamora E, Handisurya A, Shafti-Keramat S, Borchelt D, Rudow G, Conant K, et al. Papillomavirus-like particles are an effective platform for amyloid-beta immunization in rabbits and transgenic mice. *J Immunol* (2006) 177:2662–70. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.177.4.2662
35. Bachmann MF, Rohrer UH, Kundig TM, Burki K, Hengartner H, Zinkernagel RM. The influence of antigen organization on B cell responsiveness. *Science* (1993) 262:1448–51. doi:10.1126/science.8248784
36. Hastings GE, Wolf PG. The therapeutic use of albumin. *Arch Fam Med* (1992) 1:281–7. doi:10.1001/archfami.1.2.281
37. Marth E, Kleinhappl B. Albumin is a necessary stabilizer of TBE-vaccine to avoid fever in children after vaccination. *Vaccine* (2001) 20:532–7. doi:10.1016/S0264-410X(01)00329-2
38. Petras ML. An inherited albumin variant in the house mouse, *Mus musculus*. *Biochem Genet* (1972) 7:273–7. doi:10.1007/BF00484827
39. Takahashi N, Takahashi Y, Blumberg BS, Putnam FW. Amino acid substitutions in genetic variants of human serum albumin and in sequences inferred from molecular cloning. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1987) 84:4413–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.84.22.8001
40. Iberg N, Fluckiger R. Nonenzymatic glycosylation of albumin in vivo. Identification of multiple glycosylated sites. *J Biol Chem* (1986) 261:13542–5.
41. Day JF, Thorpe SR, Baynes JW. Nonenzymatically glucosylated albumin. In vitro preparation and isolation from normal human serum. *J Biol Chem* (1979) 254:595–7.
42. Rondeau P, Navarra G, Cacciabaudo F, Leone M, Bourdon E, Militello V. Thermal aggregation of glycated bovine serum albumin. *Biochim Biophys Acta* (2010) 1804:789–98. doi:10.1016/j.bbapap.2009.12.003
43. Lu J, Stewart AJ, Sadler PJ, Pinheiro TJ, Blindauer CA. Albumin as a zinc carrier: properties of its high-affinity zinc-binding site. *Biochem Soc Trans* (2008) 36:1317–21. doi:10.1042/BST0361317
44. Brunskill NJ. Albumin receptors-structure and function. In: Duttaroy AK, Spener F editors. *Cellular Proteins and Their Fatty Acids in Health and Disease*. Weinheim: Wiley–VCH Verlag GmbH & Co. KGaA (2003). p. 79–94.
45. Raeder R, Otten RA, Boyle MD. Comparison of albumin receptors expressed on bovine and human group G streptococci. *Infect Immun* (1991) 59:609–16.
46. Wideback K, Kronvall G. Surface receptors for serum albumin in group C and G streptococci show three different types of albumin specificity. *Infect Immun* (1982) 38:1154–63.
47. Retnoningrum DS, Cleary PP. M12 protein from *Streptococcus pyogenes* is a receptor for immunoglobulin G3 and human albumin. *Infect Immun* (1994) 62:2387–94.

48. Bracken CS, Baer MT, Abdur-Rashid A, Helms W, Stojiljkovic I. Use of heme-protein complexes by the *Yersinia enterocolitica* HemR receptor: histidine residues are essential for receptor function. *J Bacteriol* (1999) 181:6063–72.
49. Colino J, Duke L, Snapper CM. Autologous albumin enhances the humoral immune response to capsular polysaccharide covalently coattached to bacteria-sized latex beads. *Eur J Immunol* (2014) 44:1433–43. doi:10.1002/eji.201344266
50. Colino J, Duke L, Snapper CM. Noncovalent association of protein and capsular polysaccharide on bacteria-sized latex beads as a model for polysaccharide-specific humoral immunity to intact gram-positive extracellular bacteria. *J Immunol* (2013) 191:3254–63. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1300722
51. Peltola H. Worldwide *Haemophilus influenzae* type b disease at the beginning of the 21st century: global analysis of the disease burden 25 years after the use of the polysaccharide vaccine and a decade after the advent of conjugates. *Clin Microbiol Rev* (2000) 13:302–17. doi:10.1128/CMR.13.2.302-317.2000
52. Kraal G, Mebius R. New insights into the cell biology of the marginal zone of the spleen. *Int Rev Cytol* (2006) 250:175–215. doi:10.1016/S0074-7696(06)50005-1
53. Mebius RE, Kraal G. Structure and function of the spleen. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2005) 5:606–16. doi:10.1038/nri1669
54. Cerutti A, Cols M, Puga I. Marginal zone B cells: virtues of innate-like antibody-producing lymphocytes. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2013) 13:118–32. doi:10.1038/nri3383
55. Snapper CM. Differential regulation of polysaccharide-specific antibody responses to isolated polysaccharides, conjugate vaccines, and intact gram-positive versus gram-negative extracellular bacteria. *Vaccine* (2016) 34:3542–8. doi:10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.12.077
56. Snapper CM. Mechanisms underlying in vivo polysaccharide-specific immunoglobulin responses to intact extracellular bacteria. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* (2012) 1253:92–101. doi:10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06329.x
57. Hart MJ, Jiang X, Kozasa T, Roscoe W, Singer WD, Gilman AG, et al. Direct stimulation of the guanine nucleotide exchange activity of p115 RhoGEF by Galpha13. *Science* (1998) 280:2112–4. doi:10.1126/science.280.5372.2112
58. Rubtsov A, Strauch P, Digiacomo A, Hu J, Pelanda R, Torres RM. Lsc regulates marginal-zone B cell migration and adhesion and is required for the IgM T-dependent antibody response. *Immunity* (2005) 23:527–38. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2005.09.018
59. Girkontaite I, Missy K, Sakk V, Harenberg A, Tedford K, Potzel T, et al. Lsc is required for marginal zone B cells, regulation of lymphocyte motility and immune responses. *Nat Immunol* (2001) 2:855–62. doi:10.1038/ni0901-855
60. Chattopadhyay G, Khan AQ, Sen G, Colino J, Dubois W, Rubtsov A, et al. Transgenic expression of Bcl-xL or Bcl-2 by murine B cells enhances the in vivo antipolysaccharide, but not antiprotein, response to intact *Streptococcus pneumoniae*. *J Immunol* (2007) 179:7523–34. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.179.11.7523
61. Colino J, Duke L, Arjunaraja S, Chen Q, Liu L, Lucas AH, et al. Differential idiotype utilization for the in vivo type 14 capsular polysaccharide-specific Ig responses to intact *Streptococcus pneumoniae* versus a pneumococcal conjugate vaccine. *J Immunol* (2012) 189:575–86. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1200599
62. Flach TL, Ng G, Hari A, Desrosiers MD, Zhang P, Ward SM, et al. Alum interaction with dendritic cell membrane lipids is essential for its adjuvanticity. *Nat Med* (2011) 17:479–87. doi:10.1038/nm.2306
63. Guilliams M, Ginhoux F, Jakubzick C, Naik SH, Onai N, Schraml BU, et al. Dendritic cells, monocytes and macrophages: a unified nomenclature based on ontogeny. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2014) 14:571–8. doi:10.1038/nri3712
64. Chow A, Brown BD, Merad M. Studying the mononuclear phagocyte system in the molecular age. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2011) 11:788–98. doi:10.1038/nri3087
65. Wu L, Liu YJ. Development of dendritic-cell lineages. *Immunity* (2007) 26:741–50. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2007.06.006
66. Onai N, Obata-Onai A, Schmid MA, Ohteki T, Jarrossay D, Manz MG. Identification of clonogenic common Flt3+M-CSFR+plasmacytoid and conventional dendritic cell progenitors in mouse bone marrow. *Nat Immunol* (2007) 8:1207–16. doi:10.1038/ni1518
67. Naik SH, Sathe P, Park HY, Metcalf D, Proietto AI, Dakic A, et al. Development of plasmacytoid and conventional dendritic cell subtypes from single precursor cells derived in vitro and in vivo. *Nat Immunol* (2007) 8:1217–26. doi:10.1038/ni1522
68. Geissmann F, Jung S, Littman DR. Blood monocytes consist of two principal subsets with distinct migratory properties. *Immunity* (2003) 19:71–82. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(03)00174-2
69. Jenkins SJ, Hume DA. Homeostasis in the mononuclear phagocyte system. *Trends Immunol* (2014) 35:358–67. doi:10.1016/j.it.2014.06.006
70. Jakubzick C, Gautier EL, Gibbings SL, Sojka DK, Schlitzer A, Johnson TE, et al. Minimal differentiation of classical monocytes as they survey steady-state tissues and transport antigen to lymph nodes. *Immunity* (2013) 39:599–610. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2013.08.007
71. Balazs M, Martin F, Zhou T, Kearney JF. Blood dendritic cells interact with splenic marginal zone B cells to initiate T-independent immune responses. *Immunity* (2002) 17:341–52. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00389-8
72. den Haan JM, Kraal G. Innate immune functions of macrophage subpopulations in the spleen. *J Innate Immun* (2012) 4:437–45. doi:10.1159/000335216
73. Austyn JM, Gordon S. F4/80, a monoclonal antibody directed specifically against the mouse macrophage. *Eur J Immunol* (1981) 11:805–15. doi:10.1002/eji.1830111013
74. van Rooijen N, van Nieuwmegen R. Elimination of phagocytic cells in the spleen after intravenous injection of liposome-encapsulated dichloromethylene diphosphonate. An enzyme-histochemical study. *Cell Tissue Res* (1984) 238:355–8. doi:10.1007/BF00217308
75. Van Rooijen N, Kors N, vd Ende M, Dijkstra CD. Depletion and repopulation of macrophages in spleen and liver of rat after intravenous treatment with liposome-encapsulated dichloromethylene diphosphonate. *Cell Tissue Res* (1990) 260:215–22. doi:10.1007/BF00318625
76. Kar S, Colino J, Snapper CM. Distinct cellular pathways for induction of CD4+ T cell-dependent antibody responses to antigen expressed by intact bacteria versus isolated soluble antigen. *J Immunol* (2016) 196:4204–13. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1502550
77. Delemarre FG, Kors N, van Rooijen N. Elimination of spleen and of lymph node macrophages and its difference in the effect on the immune response to particulate antigens. *Immunobiology* (1990) 182:70–8. doi:10.1016/S0171-2985(11)80584-X
78. Buiting AM, De Rover Z, Kraal G, Van Rooijen N. Humoral immune responses against particulate bacterial antigens are dependent on marginal metallophilic macrophages in the spleen. *Scand J Immunol* (1996) 43:398–405. doi:10.1046/j.1365-3083.1996.d01-54.x
79. Su D, Van Rooijen N. The role of macrophages in the immunoadjuvant action of liposomes: effects of elimination of splenic macrophages on the immune response against intravenously injected liposome-associated albumin antigen. *Immunology* (1989) 66:466–70.
80. Flores-Langarica A, Marshall JL, Bobat S, Mohr E, Hitchcock J, Ross EA, et al. T-zone localized monocyte-derived dendritic cells promote Th1 priming to *Salmonella*. *Eur J Immunol* (2011) 41:2654–65. doi:10.1002/eji.201141440
81. Claassen IJ, Osterhaus AD, Poelen M, Van Rooijen N, Claassen E. Antigen detection in vivo after immunization with different presentation forms of rabies virus antigen, II. Cellular, but not humoral, systemic immune responses against rabies virus immune-stimulating complexes are macrophage dependent. *Immunology* (1998) 94:455–60. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2567.1998.00539.x


**Disclaimer:** The opinions expressed herein are those of the author, and are not necessarily representative of those of the Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences (USUHS), the Department of Defense (DOD), or the United States Army, Navy, or Air Force.

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

PERSPECTIVE
published: 15 May 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01048

# Foxp3$^+$ T Regulatory Cells: Still Many Unanswered Questions—A Perspective After 20 Years of Study

*Ethan M. Shevach**

*Laboratory of Immune System Biology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, Bethesda, MD, United States*

T regulatory (Treg) cells were discovered more than 20 years ago and have remained a topic of intense investigation by immunologists. The initial doubts about their existence were dissipated by the discovery in 2003 of the lineage specific transcription factor Foxp3. In this article, I will discuss some of the questions that I believe still need to be answered before we will be able to fully apply Treg therapy to the clinic. The major issue that remains to be resolved is how they mediate their suppressive functions. In order to correct defective suppression in autoimmune disease (assuming it is a causative factor) or to augment suppression in graft versus host disease or during organ transplantation, we still need to fully understand the biochemical nature of suppressor mechanisms. Similarly, in cancer, it is now widely accepted that reversal of Treg suppression would be highly desirable, yet which of the many purported pathways of suppression are operative in different tumors in different anatomic sites. Many of the concepts we have developed are based on *in vitro* studies, and it remains unclear if these concepts can readily be applied to Treg function *in vivo*. Our lack of a specific cell surface marker that readily allows us to identify and target Treg *in vivo*, particularly in man, remains a major stumbling block. Finally, I will review in some detail controversies regarding the origin of Treg, thymus versus periphery, and attempts to reverse Treg suppression by targeting antigens on their cell surface, particularly members of the TNF receptor superfamily. Hopefully, these areas of controversy will be resolved by in depth studies over the next few years and manipulation of Treg function will be placed on a more solid experimental footing.

**Keywords: T regulatory cells, tolerance mechanisms, Foxp3, suppression mechanisms, autoimmune diseases**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Wanjun Chen,*
*National Institutes of Health (NIH), United States*

***Reviewed by:***
*Jeffrey Bluestone,*
*University of California, San Francisco, United States*
*David A. Hafler,*
*Yale University, United States*

***Correspondence:**
*Ethan M. Shevach*
*eshevach@niaid.nih.gov*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *28 February 2018*
***Accepted:*** *27 April 2018*
***Published:*** *15 May 2018*

***Citation:***
*Shevach EM (2018) Foxp3$^+$ T Regulatory Cells: Still Many Unanswered Questions—A Perspective After 20 Years of Study. Front. Immunol. 9:1048. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01048*

## WILLIAM E. PAUL: IN MEMORIAM

I first met Bill Paul in 1971 at an extremely low point in my career. I was looking for a new supervisor for my postdoctoral training as I had just spent about 18 months working in a lab where I had accomplished absolutely nothing. Bill had just been appointed Chief of the Laboratory of Immunology, was quite understanding of my situation, and advised me to speak with Ira Green about potential opportunities in his lab. Ira took me on as postdoc and pointed me in the right direction. Bill also assumed a co-supervisory role particularly on projects that he and Ira had studied together for many years dealing with the function of immune response genes. I thrived in this environment and after only two full years as a postdoc was offered a tenured position in the Laboratory of Immunology where I have remained for the past 45 years. My lab and Bill's lab were immediately adjacent to each other on the 11th floor of the Clinical Center and we had numerous interactions on a daily basis. For

over 20 years we had joint data and journal clubs for our groups every Wednesday and Friday morning. One fringe benefit of these discussions was that my postdoctoral fellows benefited from Bill's wisdom and criticism. His comments were always delivered in a gentle fashion often pointing out major areas of deficiency or steps in the wrong direction. The fellows always accepted them and never felt threatened as they were always perceived as constructive. I am not certain my comments on his fellow's presentations were always similarly perceived! When we began our studies on T regulatory cells even I was somewhat leery as to how Bill would react to our attempts to redefine T suppression after its death in the 1980s. Bill was actually quite receptive of our approach and continued to encourage me to continue even after I received a negative review from our advisory committee. He was particularly proud to announce to the committee that I received the William Coley Award in 2004 for our studies on regulatory T cells in spite of their negative comments.

## INTRODUCTION

In 2002, I wrote a review entitled "$CD4^+CD25^+$ Suppressor T Cells: More Questions Than Answers (1)." Foxp3 had yet to be discovered as the marker for this lineage and the term "Regulatory" rather than "Suppressor," had not yet become the convention. Over the past 15 years, this field has seen tremendous growth and the therapeutic manipulation of T regulatory (Treg) function has reached the clinic. Certain aspects of the field that have received great attention and many of the questions I posed in 2002 have been answered. However, some questions remain unanswered and our lack of knowledge of these aspects of the field in my view has clearly hindered progress in the clinical application of Treg either to boost their function in autoimmunity or disable their function in malignancy. In this review, I will focus on several questions that I believe remain unanswered.

## ASSAYS OF Treg FUNCTION *IN VITRO*

My group (2) and the Sakaguchi group (3) described the first assays for the measurement of the suppressor function of $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells *in vitro*. Although this type of assay was rapidly adopted by almost all investigators in the field, a number of issues have emerged that render interpretation of the results of these experiments problematic. In general, these assays involve the measurement of the proliferation of mouse non-Treg cells (either $CD4^+$ or $CD8^+$) triggered by TCR signaling in the presence of a titration of highly purified Treg cells. In the original studies, soluble anti-CD3 stimulation was used to trigger the TCR and the assay was always performed in the presence of accessory cells (T-depleted spleen cells, or more recently dendritic cells) that were needed to cross-link the anti-CD3 antibody and provide co-stimulatory signals. The addition of anti-CD28 was not recommended, as it was more difficult to achieve significant suppression with greater levels of TCR stimulation. The basis for this recommendation was the observation that Treg primarily inhibited proliferation by blocking IL-2 production by the responder population and anti-CD28 enhances IL-2 production by prolonging IL-2 mRNA half-life. The initial studies attempting to adapt this assay for use with human Treg frequently incorporated anti-CD28 co-stimulation to achieve significant levels of stimulation. While suppression was observed under these culture conditions, higher numbers of Tregs were required to achieve significant suppression and ratios of 1:1 (Treg:responder) were frequently employed. However, assay conditions very similar to those used in the mouse can be used with human cells (4). Significant levels of stimulation in the absence of anti-CD28 with the most commonly used anti-CD3 antibodies (OKT3 and UCHT1) can readily be achieved when a population of $HLA\text{-}DR^+$ non-T cells are used as an accessory cell population.

A number of investigators questioned the use of the soluble anti-CD3 and accessory cell approach and claimed that the use of a defined number of anti-CD3 coated or anti-CD3 and anti-CD28 coated beads was a much more precise method for stimulating T cell activation. Although Tregs are capable of inhibiting responses induced by this activation protocol, suppression again almost always required 1:1 or at best 1:2 ratios of Treg to responder cells and no suppression was frequently seen at lower ratios of Treg to responder cells. A number of questions can be raised about the use of antibody bound to beads or anti-CD3 coated plates. T cell stimulation by antibody coupled to solid surfaces may result in a qualitatively distinct signal from stimulation induced by antigen presented on professional APC or even soluble anti-CD3 stimulation in the presence of APC. In our initial studies in the mouse on Treg suppression *in vitro* (2), we found that it was exceedingly difficult to suppress T cell stimulation induced by plate bound anti-CD3. Furthermore, this resistance to suppression was not overcome by using lower concentrations of anti-CD3 to coat the plate. Our interpretation of this result was that fewer T cells were triggered to proliferate at lower concentration of plate bound antibody, but that every T cell that bound to the solid phase stimulus still received a potent signal which was resistant to Treg-mediated suppression. This question has yet to be resolved and the use of a two cell assays versus a three cell assay remains controversial.

The second issue raised by these experiments is the cellular target of Treg-mediated suppression. One of the simplest explanations for our failure to achieve significant suppression with solid phase coupled stimuli is that the target of Treg-mediated suppression *in vitro* is not the responder T cell but the APC. A wide variety of cell types have been described as direct targets of Treg-mediated suppression (**Table 1**), yet after 20 years of study,

**TABLE 1** | Cellular targets for $Foxp3^+$ T regulatory-mediated suppression.

| |
|---|
| $CD4^+$, $CD8^+$ T cells |
| Dendritic cells |
| B cells |
| Macrophages |
| Osteoblasts |
| Mast cells |
| NK cells |
| NK T cells |
| Adipocytes |
| Endothelial cells |
| Fibroblasts |
| Muscle |
| Hair follicle stem cells |

it remains unclear whether the APC or the responder T cell or both are targeted by Tregs in the widely used *in vitro* suppression assay. While multiple mechanisms of Treg-mediated suppression have been proposed (see below), suppression of APC function or delivery of APC-derived co-stimulatory signals have achieved the greatest attention. If the APC is the primary target for Treg suppression *in vivo*, it would be ideal to employ an *in vitro* assay that would mimic the *in vivo* action of Treg.

## Treg DEFECTS IN AUTOIMMUNE DISEASE

Why is it important to have a reliable *in vitro* assay for Treg suppressor function? It has been proposed and in fact widely accepted that defects in Treg function play an important role in the pathogenesis of autoimmune disease in man (5). While some early studies claimed that patients with certain autoimmune diseases had a decreased percentage or even absolute number of Treg in their peripheral blood, the overwhelming consensus today is that patients with autoimmune diseases have normal numbers of Treg at least in their circulation. A defect in numbers in target organs remains possible, but difficult to assess in man. It therefore follows that Tregs from patients with autoimmune diseases must be functionally abnormal. The number of autoimmune diseases with purported defects in Treg function as detected *in vitro* has recently been summarized by Grant et al. (6). Defects in virtually all the common autoimmune diseases including SLE, MS, T1D, RA, autoimmune thyroid disease, psoriasis, IBD, primary biliary sclerosis, autoimmune hepatitis, and primary sclerosing cholangitis have been described. Indeed, it would be difficult to publish a paper claiming normal Treg function in any of these diseases. There are a number of reasons for defective Treg suppression *in vitro* in autoimmune disease:

1. Environmental—the production of pro-inflammatory cytokines by APC such as IL-6 (7) which can provide a potent co-stimulatory signal for T effector cell expansion and render the responder T cells resistance to suppression. IL-6 could also act on Treg cells and reverse their suppressive function or result in their conversion to Th17 cells.
2. T effector cell intrinsic resistance to suppression.
3. Treg intrinsic defects including defective generation, survival, stability, or altered TCR repertoire. Finally, specific defects in one of the proposed mechanisms of Treg-mediated suppression.

While dissection of which of these factors are operative in a given autoimmune disease is clearly doable in a well-characterized animal model, in human disease in the presence of normal numbers or percentages of Treg cells, one must rely on *in vitro* assays of suppressor function. The question to be addressed is whether *in vitro* suppression assays are capable of detecting major or even minor alterations in Treg function that mimic their defective function *in vivo*. The approach I have used to begin to address this question is to ask whether defects in Treg suppression *in vitro* can be detected with Treg cells derived from mice who develop autoimmune disease secondary to a deletion or mutation of a given gene specifically in Treg cells [Traf3 (8), CD28 (9), id2/id3 (10), ubc13 (11), Itch (12), NF-κB p65 (13), Helios (14), ThPoK/LRF (15), A384Tmutant of Foxp3 (16), and EZH2 (17)]. The thymic development of Treg is normal in all these strains and all have normal numbers of Treg cells; while all have moderate to severe autoimmune disease, but all have normal Treg suppressor function *in vitro*. Notably, when tested, Treg from many of these strains exhibit abnormal function *in vivo* in their capacity to suppress the adoptive transfer of IBD in immunodeficient mice following the transfer of naïve T cells. In a number of other studies of mouse strains with selective deletion of genes in Treg cells and resultant manifestation of severe autoimmunity [Bach2 (18), satb1 (19), IRF-4 and Blimp1 (20), and LKB1 (21)], the investigators have not even bothered to test Treg suppressor function *in vitro*.

What factors could account for the failure of *in vitro* suppression assays to detect defects in Treg suppressor function? The Foxp3$^+$ Treg population is heterogeneous and can be broadly subdivided into a naïve/quiescent/resting cell subpopulation and into a memory/effector/activated subpopulation. These two populations in the mouse can be distinguished by the differential expression of CD44 (22) or Ly-6C (23). The memory/effector subpopulation (CD44$^{hi}$, Ly-6C$^-$) appears to undergo increased TCR signals *in vivo* based on increased levels of CD5 expression and CD3ζ phosphorylation (23). Most importantly, the memory population contains a high percentage of cycling cells (~10%/day) based on Ki-67 staining (**Figure 1**). By contrast, when analyzed *in vitro*, Treg are characterized as anergic or non-responsive and fail to proliferate when stimulated with anti-CD3 alone, when stimulated with combinations or anti-CD3 and anti-CD28, or with high concentrations of IL-2 (2). The memory phenotype subpopulation manifests much higher suppressive activity *in vivo* (23). Furthermore, deletion of TCR expression from Treg results in a selective loss of the cycling MP Treg combined with a loss of Treg-mediated suppressor function *in vivo* (24). Thus, one major distinction between Treg function *in vitro* versus *in vivo* is the failure to see proliferating Treg under any culture conditions

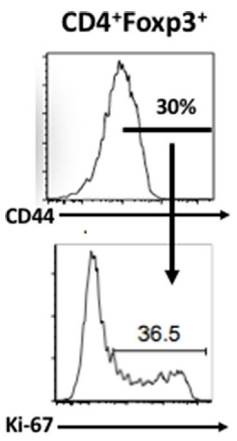



**FIGURE 1** | T regulatory Treg cells represent one of the most active cycling lymphocyte populations *in vivo*. After gating on Foxp3$^+$ T cells, we then gated on the activated/effector/memory subset as define by high levels of CD44 expression. The CD44$^{hi}$ population was then stained for Ki-67 expression. Ki-67 positivity reflects cell division over the previous 48-h period.

*in vitro*. It is quite possible that the activated/memory/effector Treg do not survive *in vitro* and their function is, therefore, never actually measured in standard *in vitro* assays. As the proliferating memory phenotype Treg are the major suppressive population *in vivo*, the relationship of what we observe in suppression assays *in vitro* to their physiologic suppressive function vivo remains unclear. While this conclusion is primarily based on studies with mouse Treg cells and human Treg cells may manifest different properties, I remain skeptical that we can use *in vitro* assays to define a defect in Treg suppressor function in autoimmune disease in man.

## MECHANISMS OF Treg-MEDIATED SUPPRESSION

One of the fundamental questions that one can raise regarding defects in Treg function is which mechanism of Treg-mediated suppression is actually defective? I have summarized (**Figure 2**) many of the proposed pathways by which Treg may manifest their suppressor effector function including release of soluble suppressor factors, cytolysis, disruption of metabolic pathways, and pathways used to selectively target DCs. The prevailing view in the field is that there is not one universal pathway by which Treg mediate suppression and that Treg have the luxury of picking from this large list of mechanisms to find one (or more) suitable for a particular situation or inflammatory niche. In fact, there are very few *in vivo* studies clearly supporting this hypothesis. One common mistake is that neutralization of a given pathway, for example, blocking the action of IL-10 (25) or TGF-beta with resultant loss of suppression, indicates that Treg are using only that pathway to mediate suppression. The alternative explanation is that the contribution of these suppressor cytokines is necessary, but not sufficient, for Treg-mediated suppression. Thus, in the xeno-graft versus host disease (GVHD) model (26) production of TGF-beta by Treg is required for prevention of disease, but Treg could also using other pathways at the same time. Indeed, Treg production of TGF-beta may only be required under "super-inflammatory" conditions such as xeno-GVHD, as mice with a selective deletion of TGF-beta in Treg do not exhibit an autoimmune phenotype (27). A similar scenario can be proposed for the requirement of IL-10 production for Treg-mediated protection from IBD, but not for the much less inflammatory autoimmune gastritis where IL-10-deficient Treg are fully protective (28).

The leading candidate for the most predominant suppressor mechanisms utilized by Treg is the downregulation of the expression of CD80/CD86 expression on DCs which is mediated

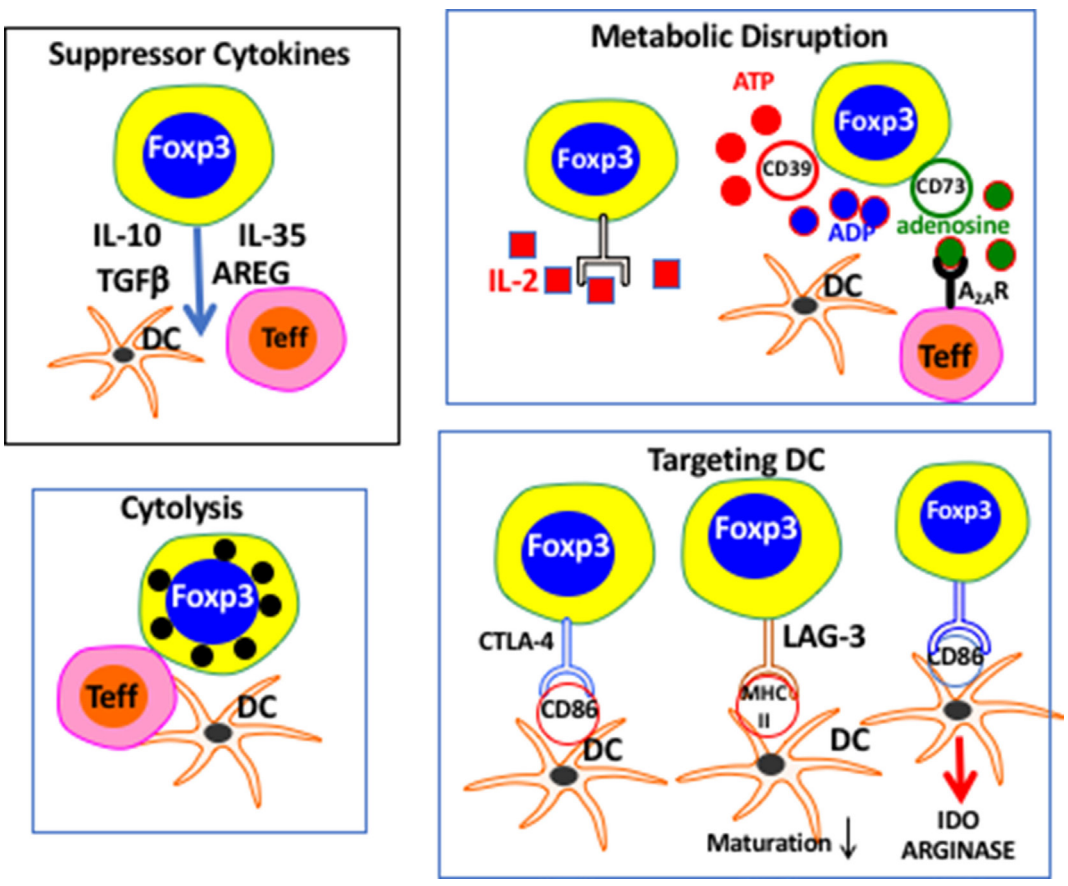



**FIGURE 2** | Proposed pathways of T regulatory (Treg)-mediated suppression. The pathways are roughly divided into different mechanistic categories. It remains unclear which or how many mechanisms are used by Treg under physiologic conditions *in vivo*.

by CTLA-4 expressed on Treg cells. It was first noted that Treg were the only lymphocyte population that expressed CTLA-4 constitutively and several early studies demonstrated that Treg suppression could be reversed *in vitro* (29) and *in vivo* (30) by anti-CTLA-4. This model received strong support for the studies of Wing et al. (31) which demonstrated that selective deletion of CTLA-4 expression from Treg resulted in the rapid development of autoimmune disease. Furthermore, Qureshi et al. (32) demonstrated that CTLA-4 was capable of selectively removing CD80/CD86 from the cell surface of DCs by a process of transendocytosis ultimately resulting in the degradation of CD80/CD86 within the Treg. Taken together these studies appear to offer a solid experimental foundation that this pathway is the major one utilized by Treg. However, several more recent studies suggest that the function of CTLA-4 in Treg is considerably more complex. First, it should be pointed out that in the studies of Qureshi et al. (32), CTLA-4 on activated conventional T cells could also mediate the transendocytosis of CD80/CD86. Thus, this pathway is not specific for Treg. Second, the recent studies of Paterson et al. (33) which demonstrated that specific deletion of CTLA-4 from the adult mouse Treg resulted in enhanced Treg proliferation *in vivo* and was accompanied by increased Treg suppressor function *in vivo*. Similarly, we have observed (34) that the homeostatic proliferation of Treg *in vivo* can be markedly enhanced by treatment of mice with anti-CTLA-4. The enhanced proliferation of Treg in this model was accompanied by enhanced proliferation of memory phenotype $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells consistent with a loss of Treg suppressor function. Thus, after almost 20 years of intensive study, the role of CTLA-4 in Treg function remains unclear.

The second pathway of Treg-mediated suppression that deserves further discussion is whether consumption of IL-2 by Treg plays any role in Treg-mediated suppression. When we first presented the results of our Treg suppression assays in one of our joint lab meetings some 20 years ago, Bill's first reaction was that they must be inhibiting by functioning as "IL-2 sinks" a concept originally proposed in the early 1980s (35). We always took Bill's advice seriously and were then obligated to rule out this mechanism. We demonstrated that Treg inhibited proliferation by blocking the induction of IL-2 mRNA production in the responder T cell (2) and this observation was confirmed by many groups (36). The one exception being the studies of Pandiyan et al. (37) who claimed that Treg consume IL-2 and inhibit the proliferation of $Foxp3^-$ T cells leading to Bim-mediated apoptosis. A number of observations have biased me against the concept of the "IL-2 sink" as an important pathway of Treg-mediated suppression: (A) It is widely assumed that because Treg express high levels of CD25 that they have high number of high affinity IL-2 receptors. In fact, no one has determined the number of high-affinity IL-2 receptors on Treg and it is likely that while they probably express in the range of 50,000 CD25 molecules that they express at least a log lower CD122 and CD132 molecules resulting in a level of expression of the high affinity IL-2R (the tri-molecular complex) similar to that seen on activated $Foxp3^-$ $CD4^+$ T cells. (B) The addition of exogenous IL-2 has no effect on Treg-mediated suppression of IL-2 production by $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^-$ T cells at the mRNA level (38). (C) In a trans-species model where human Treg can efficiently suppress mouse responder cells, the addition of a blocking anti-human CD25 had no effect on the suppressive function of the human Treg (4). (D) While IL-2 is critical for T cell proliferation and expansion *in vitro*, the expansion of $CD4^+Foxp3^-$ T cells *in vivo* in response to antigen stimulation occurs in the absence of IL-2 signaling, as antigen-specific T cells lacking CD25 expression expand as well as wild-type T cells following antigen recognition (28).

In addition to potentially functioning as an "IL-2 sink" for the inhibition of T effector proliferation, IL-2 may also play a critical role to support the maintenance of Foxp3 expression, Treg survival, and Treg proliferation by triggering the STAT5 pathway. However, it should be noted that the Treg subpopulation that appears to be responding to IL-2 homeostatically is the resting Treg population, not the activated cycling population suppressive population. In our studies, IL-2 played no role in Treg cycling *in vivo* (22). Chinen et al. (39) have attempted to resolve some of these issues by deleting expression of CD25 from Treg in combination with the expression of a constitutively active form of STAT5. The expression of the active form of STAT5 rescued mice from the autoimmune disease present in the CD25 deficient mice. These studies revealed that expression of CD25 on Treg was not needed for suppression of $CD4^+$ responder T cells, but IL-2 consumption by CD25 expressed on Treg played a major role in suppression of $CD8^+$ T cells. One explanation for this dichotomy is that $CD8^+$ T cells are more sensitive to IL-2 signaling than $CD4^+$ T cells. While these elegant genetic studies appeared to resolve the issue of IL-2 consumption at least for suppression of $CD4^+$ T cell responses, more recent studies have shown that Treg cells expressing phospho-STAT5 localize in clusters in lymph nodes with IL-2 producing $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^-$ T cells (40). This localized response of Treg to IL-2 signaling also appeared to enhance their suppressive function. Thus, while deprivation of $CD4^+$ effector T cells of IL-2 by Treg may not be play a role in suppression, the action of IL-2 locally produced by T effectors on Treg may be critical for their optimal suppressive activity presumably mediated by pathways other than IL-2 consumption. Indeed, we demonstrated over a decade ago that the initial production of IL-2 by responder T cells was required to activate the suppressor function of Treg which in turn suppressed the subsequent production of IL-2 by responder T cells (38).

## ANTIGEN-SPECIFIC SUPPRESSION VERSUS POLYCLONAL SUPPRESSION *IN VIVO* AND *IN VITRO*

One of the major conclusions drawn from studies of Treg suppressor function *in vitro* using both polyclonal Treg cells and antigen-specific Treg cells is that following stimulation *via* their TCR, the suppressor effector function of Treg is completely antigen non-specific. Thus, once activated by their cognate antigen, Treg specific for antigen A could suppress the proliferation of T effectors specific for antigen B (41). This concept is supported by studies which demonstrated that antigen-specific Treg cells are more potent inhibitors of disease than polyclonal Treg (42). However, our understanding of the mechanisms of

Treg-mediated suppression *in vivo* is in a less advanced stage that our understanding of Treg-mediated suppression *in vitro*. A number of fundamental questions need to be addressed including: (1) the site of suppression (target organ or lymphoid tissues), (2) do Tregs inhibit homing of effector cells to the target organ, (3) can polyclonal Treg migrate to the target organ, (4) does suppression *in vivo* require the continuous presence of the Treg, (5) is suppression reversible, or (6) has a permanent state of tolerance been induced. None of these questions has definitively been answered and solutions are needed for the development of rational Treg therapies. Most importantly, we need reductionist models *in vivo* that will allow each aspect of the activation of T effector cell response to be analyzed. The field appears to be satisfied with studies demonstrating defective Treg suppressive activity in the classic cell transfer model of induction of IBD using polyclonal Treg, as originally described by Powrie and collaborators (43). However, this model is very complex as disease may be mediated by different T effector subsets (Th1 or Th17), involves both anti-self and anti-non-self responses as contribution of the intestinal microbiome is critical. Very few studies have addressed how Treg with defects in transcription factor function or signaling pathways actually fail to mediate suppression *in vivo*.

## REVERSAL OF Treg-MEDIATED SUPPRESSION

I have already discussed the significance of neutralizing Treg suppression with antibodies to suppressor cytokines. An extension of this approach to dissecting mechanisms of Treg-mediated suppression has been to reverse suppression with antibodies to cell surface antigens expressed on Treg cells that play a role in the process of suppression. We (44) and others (45) first described that polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies to a member of tumor necrosis receptor superfamily, the GITR (TNFRSF18), could reverse Treg-mediated suppression *in vitro*. However, this conclusion was rapidly drawn into question as $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^-$ T cells can also express the GITR and more importantly expression of the GITR is rapidly upregulated on $Foxp3^-$ T cells following TCR activation. Indeed, when we cultured combinations of WT and $GITR^{-/-}$ Treg and effector T cells, we only observed reversal of suppression when the GITR was expressed on the responder T effector cells (46). Thus, engagement of the GITR on T effector cells by an agonistic antibody rendered the responder T cells resistant to suppression. It is highly likely that a similar induction of resistance to suppression in T effector cells is responsible for the purported reversal of Treg suppressor function (47) by agonistic antibodies to OX40 (CD137).

The most prominent member of the TNFRSF family that has been implicated in Treg function is TNF itself. Several studies with human T cells have reported that TNF could inhibit the function of Treg and that anti-TNF treatment of patients with RA resulted in restoration of defective Treg function when measured *in vitro* (48). However, TNF has also been demonstrated to have potent co-stimulatory function on T effector cells and it is likely that the TNF may have exerted its function on the T effectors rendering them resistant to suppression in a manner similar to the studies in the mouse with anti-GITR. Recent studies have failed to reproduce the deleterious effects of TNF on Treg function and have actually demonstrated that exposure of human Treg to TNF increased their expression of CD25 and Foxp3 (49).

It remains possible that future studies may identify cell surface antigens on Treg that are involved in Treg-mediated suppression. Hopefully, such studies will result in the development of agonistic antibodies that can either selectively expand Treg, enhance or alternatively reverse their suppressive function. While the studies discussed above were based on the enhanced expression of several members of this family on Treg (GITR, OX40, and TNFRII), the effects of these reagents *in vitro* and probably *in vivo* were mediated by their action as co-stimulatory molecules for T effector cells. Although this is a valuable lesson to have learned, it also has potentially clinical applications. In animal models, antibodies to the GITR have been shown to partially deplete Treg *in vivo* in the tumor microenvironment and to simultaneously provide co-stimulatory signals to $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T effector cells resulting in inhibition of tumor growth (50). The usefulness of such reagents in the clinic remains to be evaluated.

## tTreg, pTreg, iTreg, AND ex-Tregs

The concept that Treg cells could only be generated in the thymus was challenged by studies in the mid-2000s (51, 52) which demonstrated that Treg cells could be generated both *in vivo* (pTreg) and *in vitro* (iTreg) from peripheral $CD4^+$ $Foxp3^-$ T cells. TGF-beta plays a prominent role in the process, particularly *in vitro*. While there is little dispute about both of these phenomena, the significance, size, and function of the pTreg pool remains to be fully characterized. A significant impediment to progress has been a lack of a defined marker for thymus derived (tTreg). We have suggested that Helios is a useful marker of tTreg (53). Other groups have suggested that neuropilin-1 (Nrp1) is a more useful and more specific marker (54). There are important differences in the expression of these two antigens. First, Helios is a transcription factor thereby limiting its usefulness for isolation, although we now have generated a faithful Helios reporter mouse. Helios is expressed by 70–80% of Treg in peripheral lymphoid tissues and by a somewhat lower percentage (50–60%) of mucosal derived Treg. By contrast, Nrp1 is expressed by 85% of peripheral Treg. The mAb generated against mouse Helios cross-reacts with human Helios and reacts with 80% of Treg in human peripheral blood. Both Helios and Nrp1 can be expressed by conventional T cells in the mouse, although we have not been able to detect Helios expression in human non-Treg under any conditions *in vivo* or *in vitro* (55). The expression of Nrp1 by human Treg is unclear. One major deficiency of using Nrp1 as a marker of tTreg is that its expression is regulated by TGF-beta. Thus, pTreg generated in the central nervous system were shown to be suppressive, but uniformly expressed Nrp1; iTreg generated in culture in the presence of TGF-beta are uniformly $Nrp1^+$ (54). Furthermore, the percentage of $Nrp1^+$ Treg is greatly reduced in mice with a T cell-specific deletion of TGF-beta clearly demonstrating that the constitutive expression of Nrp1 is closely regulated by TGF-beta (unpublished observations).

For these reasons, we strongly favor the use of Helios as a definitive marker of tTreg. However, it is incumbent upon us to prove that this is the case. In order to study the differences between Helios$^+$ and Helios$^-$ Treg, we have generated a Helios-GFP/Foxp3-RFP double reporter mouse. The Helios$^+$ Treg population expressed a more activated phenotype and had slightly higher suppressive capability *in vitro*. Both subsets were equivalent in their ability to suppress IBD *in vivo* and both subsets expressed a highly demethylated TSDR, with slightly higher demethylation in the Helios$^+$ Treg subset. This result is consistent with the concept that pTreg generated *in vivo* are relatively stable (56). Upon transfer to normal mice, both Helios$^+$ and Helios$^-$ Treg cells maintained equal Foxp3 stability and Foxp3$^+$Helios$^+$ Treg maintained stable expression of Helios. Preliminary analysis of the TCR repertoire of both subsets by deep sequencing revealed little to no overlap of the two populations consistent with distinct origins of the subsets (unpublished observations). Taken together, our data indicate that Helios expression can differentiate two distinct populations of Treg with overlapping functions, most likely representing tTreg (Helios$^+$) and stable peripherally induced pTreg (Helios$^-$). However, considerable controversy still exists regarding the use of Helios as a marker for tTreg (57, 58) and caution should still be exerted when using this marker.

Several studies over the past 5 years have challenged the notion that Foxp3$^+$ Treg cell lineage is stable and have raised the possibility that Treg cells can lose Foxp3 expression particularly when present in an inflammatory milieu resulting in "reprogramming" of Treg to potentially pathogenic T effector cells (59). As Treg express an anti-self biased TCR repertoire, these re-programmed Treg would represent a potential potent population of T cells capable of inducing autoimmune disease. As complete deletion of Treg from adult mice results in exuberant inflammation and death in 10–15 days (60), the maintenance of Treg stability is critical to the survival of the host. For this reason, we favor the view that most tTreg are very stable and are unlikely to lose Foxp3 expression. Nevertheless, the studies of Treg instability are convincing and need to be addressed. One possibility is that the unstable population of Treg primarily develops from the pTreg population. pTregs represent logical candidates for instability even though most may have a demethylated TSDR. Alternatively, a minor population of pTreg may not be fully committed to the Treg lineage. The studies of Miyao et al. (61) clearly demonstrate the existence of a small population of Treg that can readily lose Foxp3 expression and can rapidly expand *in vivo* and thus appear to represent a large percentage of Treg in fate mapping studies. Other studies suggest that tTreg can also manifest Foxp3 instability (62). The recent demonstration (63) of a population of unstable and dysfunctional Treg in the tumor microenvironment that still maintain Foxp3 expression adds further complexity to our understanding of the role of "ex-Tregs." Studies in the future need to resolve the issue of tTreg versus pTreg and the role of Treg stability. It is unclear if the loss of Treg stability contributes to the pathogenesis of any human autoimmune diseases, but this is a difficult issue to address experimentally.

## THE FUTURE

Although many of the issues posed above have not yet been completely addressed, the use of Treg for cellular biotherapy has already reached the clinic in studies for the prevention of GVHD following stem cell transplantation (64) as well as autoimmune disease (65). The successful use of low-dose IL-2 treatment to expand Treg in two clinical trials (66, 67) has stimulated great interest. A recent perusal of ClinicalTrials.gov has revealed 181 proposed studies involving the use of Treg cells and a number of trials of low dose IL-2 treatment alone or in combination with Treg cellular therapy are planned. Of note, no studies are listed using specific pharmacologic manipulation of Treg function or using monoclonal antibodies to enhance or suppress Treg function. My own view is that the development of such reagents is required before we will have the necessary tools for the therapeutic manipulation of Treg cell function in man. As emphasized in this review, further studies of the biological properties of Treg, particularly the specific mechanisms of suppression utilized in given disease states, are needed as the foundation for the development of pharmacologic reagents.

In conclusion, I would like to thank Bill Paul for supporting my career for the past 40 years. He was always available for discussions and freely provided advice on an almost daily basis. I will miss him most during our weekly data clubs and journal clubs. He was a master at pointing out great science and terrific critique of marginal experiments.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

The author confirms being the sole contributor of this work and approved it for publication.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

ES is supported by the Division of Intramural Research of the National Institutes of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institute of Health. I would like to thank the many postdoctoral fellows and students who have contributed to the Treg project in my laboratory over the past 20 years.

## REFERENCES

1. Shevach EM. CD4$^+$ CD25$^+$ suppressor T cells: more questions than answers. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2002) 8:389–400. doi:10.1038/nri821
2. Thornton AM, Shevach EM. CD4$^+$CD25$^+$ immunoregulatory T cells suppress polyclonal T cell activation in vitro by inhibiting interleukin 2 production. *J Exp Med* (1998) 188:287–96. doi:10.1084/jem.188.2.287
3. Takahashi T, Kuniyasu Y, Toda M, Sakaguchi N, Itoh M, Iwata M, et al. Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by CD25$^+$CD4$^+$ naturally anergic and suppressive T cells: induction of autoimmune disease by breaking their anergic/suppressive state. *Int Immunol* (1998) 10:1969–80. doi:10.1093/intimm/10.12.1969
4. Tran DQ, Glass DD, Uzel G, Darnell DA, Spalding C, Holland SM, et al. Analysis of adhesion molecules, target cells, and role of IL-2 in human Foxp3$^+$ regulatory T cell suppressor function. *J Immunol* (2009) 182:2929–38. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0803827
5. Long SA, Buckner JH. CD4$^+$Foxp3$^+$ T regulatory cells in human autoimmunity: more than a numbers game. *J Immunol* (2011) 187:2016–66. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1003224

6. Grant CR, Liberal R, Mieli-Vergani G, Vergani D, Longhi MS. Regulatory T cells in autoimmune diseases: challenges, controversies and yet-unanswered questions. *Autoimmun Rev* (2015) 14:105–16. doi:10.1016/j.autrev.2015.05.007
7. Pasare C, Medzhitov R. Toll pathway-dependent blockade of $CD4^+CD25^+$ Foxp3+ T cell-mediated suppression by dendritic cells. *Science* (2003) 299:1033–6. doi:10.1126/science.1078231
8. Chang JH, Hu HB, Jin J, Puebla-Osorio N, Xiao YC, Gilbert BE, et al. TRAF3 regulates the effector function of regulatory T cells and humoral immune responses. *J Exp Med* (2014) 211:137–51. doi:10.1084/jem.20131019
9. Zhang R, Huynh A, Whitcher G, Chang J, Maltzman JS, Turka LA. An obligate cell-intrinsic function for CD28 in Tregs. *J Clin Invest* (2013) 123:580–93. doi:10.1172/JCI65013
10. Miyazaki M, Miyazaki K, Chen SW, Itoi M, Miller M, Lu LF, et al. Id2 and Id3 maintain the regulatory T cell pool to suppress inflammatory disease. *Nat Immunol* (2014) 15:767–76. doi:10.1038/ni.2928
11. Chang JH, Xiao YC, Hu HB, Jin J, Yu JY, Zhou X, et al. Ubc13 maintains the suppressive function of regulatory T cells and prevents their conversion into effector-like T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2012) 13:481–90. doi:10.1038/ni.2267
12. Layman AAK, Deng GP, O'Leary CE, Tadros S, Thomas RM, Dybas JM, et al. Ndfip1 restricts mTORC1 signaling and glycolysis in regulatory T cells to prevent autoinflammatory disease. *Nat Commun* (2017) 8:15677. doi:10.1038/ncomms15677
13. Oh H, Grinberg-Bleyer Y, Liao W, Maloney D, Wang PZ, Wu ZK, et al. An NF-kappa B transcription-factor-dependent lineage specific transcriptional program promotes regulatory T cell identity and function. *Immunity* (2017) 47:450–65. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2017.08.010
14. Sebastian M, Lopez-Ocasio M, Metidji A, Rieder SA, Shevach EM, Thornton AM. Helios controls a limited subset of regulatory T cell functions. *J Immunol* (2016) 196:144–55. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1501704
15. Carpenter AC, Wohlfert E, Chopp LB, Vacchio MS, Nie J, Zhao YM, et al. Control of regulatory T cell differentiation by the transcription factors Thpok and LRF. *J Immunol* (2017) 199:1716–28. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1700181
16. Hayatsu N, Miyao T, Tachibana M, Murakami R, Kimura A, Kato T, et al. Analyses of a mutant Foxp3 allele reveal BATF as a critical transcription factor in the differentiation and accumulation of tissue regulatory T cells. *Immunity* (2017) 47:268–83. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2017.07.008
17. Dupage M, Chopra G, Quiros J, Rosenthal WL, Morar MM, Holohan D, et al. The chromatin-modifying enzyme Ezh2 is critical for the maintenance of regulatory T cell identity after activation. *Immunity* (2015) 42:227–38. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2015.01.007
18. Kim EH, Gasper DJ, Lee SH, Plisch EH, Svaren J, Suresh J. Bach2 regulates homeostasis of $Foxp3^+$ regulatory T cells and protects against fatal lung disease in mice. *J Immunol* (2014) 192:985–95. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1302378
19. Kondo M, Tanaka Y, Kuwabara T, Naito T, Kohwi-Shigematsu T, Watanabe A. SATB1 plays a critical role in establishment of immune tolerance. *J Immunol* (2016) 196:563–72. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1600293
20. Cretney E, Xin AN, Shi W, Minnich M, Messon F, Miasari M, et al. The transcription factors Blimp-1 and IRF4 jointly control the differentiation and function of effector regulatory T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2011) 12:304–11. doi:10.1038/ni.2006
21. Yang K, Blanco DB, Neale G, Vogel P, Avila J, Clish CB, et al. Homeostatic control of metabolic and functional fitness of $T_{reg}$ cells by LKB1 signaling. *Nature* (2017) 548:602–6. doi:10.1038/nature23665
22. Smigiel KS, Richards E, Srivastava S, Thomas KR, Dudda JC, Klonowski KD, et al. CCR7 provides localized access to IL-2 and defines homeostatically distinct regulatory T cell subsets. *J Exp Med* (2014) 211:121–36. doi:10.1084/jem.20131142
23. Delpoux A, Yahonowsky P, Durand A, Charvet C, Valente M, Pommier A, et al. TCR signaling events are required for maintaining CD4 regulatory T cell numbers and suppressive capacities in the periphery. *J Immunol* (2014) 193:5914–23. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1400477
24. Levine AG, Arvey A, Jin W, Rudensky AY. Continuous requirement for the TCR in regulatory T cell function. *Nat Immunol* (2014) 15:1070–8. doi:10.1038/ni.3004
25. Belkaid Y, Piccirillo CA, Mendez S, Shevach EM, Sacks DL. $CD4^+CD25^+$ immunoregulatory T lymphocytes control *Leishmania major* persistence and the development of concomitant immunity. *Nature* (2002) 420:502–7. doi:10.1038/nature01152
26. Cuende J, Lienart S, Dedobbeleer O, van der Woning B, De Boeck G, Stockis J, et al. Monoclonal antibodies against GARP/TGF-beta 1 complexes inhibit the immunosuppressive activity of human regulatory T cells in vivo. *Sci Trans Med* (2015) 7:284ra56. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.aaa1983
27. Edwards JP, Hand TW, da Fonseca DM, Glass DD, Belkaid Y, Shevach EM. The GARP/latent TGF-beta1 complex on Treg cells modulates the induction of peripherally derived Treg cells during oral tolerance. *Eur J Immunol* (2016) 46:1480–9. doi:10.1002/eji.201546204
28. Shevach EM, McHugh RS, Piccirillo CA, Thornton AM. Control of T-cell activation by $CD4^+CD25^+$ suppressor T cells. *Immunol Rev* (2001) 182:58–67. doi:10.1034/j.1600-065X.2001.1820104.x
29. Takahashi T, Tagami T, Yamazaki S, Uede T, Shimizu J, Sakaguchi N, et al. Immunologic self-tolerance maintained by $CD25^+CD4^+$ regulatory T cells constitutively expressing cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192:303–9. doi:10.1084/jem.192.2.303
30. Read S, Malmstrom V, Powrie F. Cytotoxic T lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 plays an essential role in the function of $CD25^+CD4^+$ regulatory cells that control intestinal inflammation. *J Exp Med* (2000) 192:295–302. doi:10.1084/jem.192.2.295
31. Wing K, Onishi Y, Prieto-Martin P, Yamaguchi T, Miyara M, Fehervari Z, et al. CTLA-4 control of $Foxp3^+$ regulatory cell function. *Science* (2008) 322:271–5. doi:10.1126/science.1160062
32. Qureshi OS, Zheng Y, Nakamura K, Attridge C, Manzotti C, Schmidt EM, et al. Trans-endocytosis of CD80 and CD86: a molecular basis for the cell extrinsic function of CTLA-4. *Science* (2015) 332:600–3. doi:10.1126/science.1202947
33. Paterson AM, Lovitch SB, Sage PT, Juneja VR, Lee Y, Trombley JD, et al. Deletion of CTLA-4 on regulatory T cells during adulthood leads to resistance to autoimmunity. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212:1603–21. doi:10.1084/jem.20141030
34. Holt MP, Punkosdy GA, Glass DD, Shevach EM. TCR signaling and CD28/CTLA-4 signaling cooperatively modulate T regulatory cell homeostasis. *J Immunol* (2017) 198:1503–11. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601670
35. Palacio R, Moller G. T-cell growth factor abrogates concanavalin A-induced suppressor cell-function. *J Exp Med* (1981) 153:1360–5. doi:10.1084/jem.153.5.1360
36. Oberle N, Eberhardt N, Falk CS, Krammer PH, Suri-Payer E. Rapid suppression of cytokine transcription by $CD4^+Foxp3^+$ regulatory T cells: independence of IL-2 consumption, TGF-beta1 and various inhibitors of TCR signaling. *J Immunol* (2007) 179:3578–87. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.179.6.3578
37. Pandiyan P, Xheng L, Ishihara S, Read J, Lenardo MJ. $CD4^+CD25^+Foxp3^+$ regulatory T cells induce cytokine deprivation-mediated apoptosis of effector $CD4^+$ T cells. *Nat Immunol* (2007) 8:1353–62. doi:10.1038/ni1536
38. Thornton AM, Shevach EM. Suppressor effector function of $CD4^+CD25^+$ immunoregulatory T cells is antigen-nonspecific. *J Immunol* (2000) 164:183–90. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.164.1.183
39. Chinen T, Kannan AK, Levine AG, Fan X, Klein U, Zheng Y, et al. An essential role for the IL-2 receptor in $T_{reg}$ cell function. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:1322–33. doi:10.1038/ni.3540
40. Liu Z, Gerner MY, van Panhuys N, Levine AG, Rudensky AY, Germain RN. Immune homeostasis enforced by co-localized effector and regulatory T cells. *Nature* (2015) 528:225–30. doi:10.1038/nature16169
41. Thornton AM, Donovan EE, Piccirillo CA, Shevach EM. Cutting edge: IL-2 is critically required for the in vitro activation of $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cell suppressor function. *J Immunol* (2004) 172:6519–23. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.172.11.6519
42. Tang QZ, Henriksen KJ, Bi MY, Finger EB, Szot G, Ye JQ, et al. In vitro-expanded antigen-specific regulatory T cells suppress autoimmune diabetes. *J Exp Med* (2004) 199:1455–65. doi:10.1084/jem.20040139
43. Powrie F, Leach MW, Mauze A, Caddle LB, Coffman RL. Phenotypically distinct subsets of $CD4^+$ T-cells induce or protect from intestinal inflammation in C-B-17 SCID mice. *Int Immunol* (1993) 5:1461–71. doi:10.1093/intimm/5.11.1461
44. McHugh RS, Whitters MJ, Piccirillo CA, Young DA, Shevach EM, Collins M, et al. $CD4^+CD25^+$ immunoregulatory T cells: gene expression analysis reveals a functional role for the glucocorticoid-induced TNF receptor. *Immunity* (2002) 16:311–23. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00280-7
45. Shimizu J, Yamazaki S, Takahashi T, Ishida Y, Sakaguchi S. Stimulation of $CD25^+CD4^+$ regulatory T cells through GITR breaks immunological self-tolerance. *Nat Immunol* (2002) 3:135–42. doi:10.1038/ni759
46. Stephens GL, McHugh RS, Whitters MJ, Young DA, Luxemberg D, Caarreno BM, et al. Engagement of glucocorticoid-induced TNFR family-related receptor

on effector T cells by its ligand mediates resistance to suppression by $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells. *J Immunol* (2004) 173:5008–20. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.173.8.5008

47. Piconese S, Valzasina B, Colombo MP. OX40 triggering blocks suppression by regulatory T cells and facilitates tumor rejection. *J Exp Med* (2008) 205:825–39. doi:10.1084/jem.20071341
48. Ehrenstein MR, Evans JG, Singh A, Moore S, Warnes G, Isenberg DA, et al. Compromised function of regulatory T cells in rheumatoid arthritis and reversal by anti-TNFα therapy. *J Exp Med* (2004) 200:277–85. doi:10.1084/jem.20040165
49. Zaragoza B, Chen X, Oppenheim JJ, Baeyens A, Gregoiore S, Chader D, et al. Suppressive activity of human regulatory T cells is maintained in the presence of TNF. *Nat Med* (2016) 22:16–7. doi:10.1038/nm.4019
50. Mahne AE, Mauze S, Joyce-Shaikh B, Xia J, Bowman EP, Beebe AM, et al. Dual roles for regulatory T-cell depletion and costimulatory signaling in agonistic GITR targeting for tumor immunotherapy. *Cancer Res* (2017) 77:1108–18. doi:10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-16-0797
51. Apostolou I, von Boehmer H. In vivo instruction of suppressor commitment in naïve T cells. *J Exp Med* (2004) 199:1401–8. doi:10.1084/jem.20040249
52. Chen WJ, Ji W, Hargegen N, Lei K, Li L, Marinos N, et al. Conversion of peripheral $CD4^+CD25^-$ T cells to $CD4^+CD25^+$ regulatory T cells by TGF-β induction of transcription factor *Foxp3*. *J Exp Med* (2003) 165:1875–86. doi:10.1084/jem.20030152
53. Thornton AM, Korty PE, Tran DQ, Wohlfert EA, Murray PE, Belkaid Y, et al. Expression of Helios, an Ikaros transcription factor family member, differentiates thymic-derived from peripherally induced $Foxp3^+$ T regulatory cells. *J Immunol* (2010) 184:3433–41. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0904028
54. Weiss JM, Bilate AM, Gobert M, Ding Y, de Lafaille MAC, Parkhurst CN, et al. Neuropilin 1 is expressed on thymus-derived natural regulatory T cells, but not mucosa-generated induced $Foxp3^+$ Treg cells. *J Exp Med* (2012) 209:1723–42. doi:10.1084/jem.20120914
55. Kim YC, Bhairavabhola R, Yoon J, Golding A, Thornton AM, Tran DQ, et al. Oligodeoxynucleotides stabilize Helios-expressing $Foxp3^+$ human T regulatory cells during in vitro expansion. *Blood* (2012) 119:2810–8. doi:10.1182/blood-2011-09-377895
56. Polansky JK, Kretschmer K, Freyer J, Floess S, Garbe A, Baron U, et al. DNA methylation controls Foxp3 gene expression. *Eur J Immunol* (2008) 38:1654–63. doi:10.1002/eji.200838105
57. Gottschalk RA, Corse E, Allison JP. Expression of Helios in peripherally induced $Foxp3^+$ regulatory T cells. *J Immunol* (2011) 188:976–80. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1102964
58. Himmel ME, MacDonald KG, Garcia RV, Steiner TS, Levings MK. $Helios^+$ and $Helios^-$ cells coexist within the natural $FOXP3^+$ T regulatory cell subset. *J Immunol* (2013) 190:2001–8. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1201379
59. Zhou XY, Bailey-Bucktrout SL, Jeker LT, Penarada C, Martinez-Liordella M, Ashby M, et al. Instability of the transcription factor Foxp3 leads to the generation of pathogenic memory T cells in vitro. *Nat Immunol* (2009) 10:1000–7. doi:10.1038/ni.1774
60. Kim JM, Rasmussen JP, Rudensky AY. Regulatory T cells prevent catastrophic autoimmunity throughout the lifespan of mice. *Nat Immunol* (2007) 8:191–7. doi:10.1038/ni1428
61. Miyao T, Floess S, Setoguchi R, Luche H, Fehling HJ, Waldmann H, et al. Plasticity of $Foxp3^+$ T cells reflects promiscuous Foxp3 expression in conventional T cells but not reprogramming of regulatory T cells. *Immunity* (2012) 36:262–75. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2011.12.012
62. Zhang Z, Zhang W, Guo J, Gu Q, Zhu X, Zhou X. Activation and functional specialization of regulatory T cells lead to the generation of Foxp3 instability. *J Immunol* (2017) 198:2612–25. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1601409
63. Overacre-Delgoffe AE, Chikina M, Dadey RE, Yano H, Brunazzi EA, Shayan G, et al. Interferon-γ drives $T_{reg}$ fragility to promote anti-tumor immunity. *Cell* (2017) 169:1130–41. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2017.05.005
64. Brunstein CG, Miller JS, McKenna DH, Hippen KL, Defor TE, Sumstad D, et al. Umbilical cord blood-derived T regulatory cells to prevent GVHD: kinetics, toxicity profile, and clinical effect. *Blood* (2016) 127:1044–51. doi:10.1182/blood-2015-06-653667
65. Bluestone JA, Buckner JH, Fitch M, Gitelman SE, Gupta S, Hellerstein MK, et al. Type 1 diabetes immunotherapy using polyclonal regulatory T cells. *Sci Trans Med* (2015) 7:315ra189. doi:10.1126/scitranslmed.aad4134
66. Korath J, Matsuoka KI, Kim HT, McDonough SM, Bindra B, Alyea EP, et al. Interleukin-2 and regulatory T cells in graft-versus-host disease. *New Engl J Med* (2011) 365:2055–66. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1108188
67. Saadoun D, Rosenzwajg M, Joly F, Six A, Carrat F, Thibault V, et al. Regulatory T-cell responses to low-dose interleukin-2 in HCV-induced vasculitis. *New Engl J Med* (2011) 365:2067–77. doi:10.1056/NEJMoa1105143

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The author declares that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The handling Editor declared a shared affiliation, though no other collaboration, with the author.

frontiers in Immunology

MINI REVIEW
published: 09 April 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00715

# Posttranscriptional (Re)programming of Cell Fate: Examples in Stem Cells, Progenitor, and Differentiated Cells

*Chrysi Kanellopoulou* and Stefan A. Muljo**

*Laboratory of Immunology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States*

How a single genome can give rise to many different transcriptomes and thus all the different cell lineages in the human body is a fundamental question in biology. While signaling pathways, transcription factors, and chromatin architecture, to name a few determinants, have been established to play critical roles, recently, there is a growing appreciation of the roles of non-coding RNAs and RNA-binding proteins in controlling cell fates posttranscriptionally. Thus, it is vital that these emerging players are also integrated into models of gene regulatory networks that underlie programs of cellular differentiation. Sometimes, we can leverage knowledge about such posttranscriptional circuits to reprogram patterns of gene expression in meaningful ways. Here, we review three examples from our work.

**Keywords: posttranscriptional regulation, RNA-binding protein, microRNA, embryonic stem cell, Th17, fetal hematopoiesis, gene regulatory network, hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Yun-Cai Liu,*
*Tsinghua University, China*

***Reviewed by:***
*Vigo Heissmeyer,*
*Helmholtz Zentrum München – Deutsches Forschungszentrum für Gesundheit und Umwelt, Germany*
*Wen-Hsien Liu,*
*Xiamen University, China*

****Correspondence:***
*Chrysi Kanellopoulou*
*chrysi.kanellopoulou@nih.gov;*
*Stefan A. Muljo*
*stefan.muljo@nih.gov*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *23 January 2018*
***Accepted:*** *22 March 2018*
***Published:*** *09 April 2018*

***Citation:***
*Kanellopoulou C and Muljo SA (2018) Posttranscriptional (Re)programming of Cell Fate: Examples in Stem Cells, Progenitor, and Differentiated Cells. Front. Immunol. 9:715. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.00715*

## INTRODUCTION

The sequencing of the first human genome (1), in principle, provided us with a complete parts list and blueprint for building a human being. However, our work is far from done, and a quote from Richard Feynman applies here: "What I cannot create, I do not understand." This is a daunting challenge for biologists, since we know little about how all these parts fit and work together to make a functional human cell, the basic unit of life. Furthermore, it has been estimated that an average adult human being is composed of 30–37 trillion cells (2, 3). How a single-cell embryo can give rise to all these cells and ultimately a whole organism is still poorly understood.

The answer must be contained in the genome if we could fully decode it. First, the central dogma of molecular biology posits that DNA (the genome) is transcribed into RNA (the transcriptome) and then translated into protein (the proteome) (4). Thus, RNA has been considered mainly as a "messenger" to transmit information encoded in the genome to produce the proteome. However, even if we understood the function of all the proteins encoded by our DNA that would only account for ~1% of the information content of the genome (1). That leaves the bulk of the genome, presumably harboring the blueprint for life, that we are only beginning to understand. For example, a part of the blueprint that is best understood contains instructions for the transcriptional machinery to either switch genes on or off. Indeed, gene regulation at the DNA level within the cell's nucleus is an active and exciting field of research. However, it has come to light that RNA does not only serve as a template to encode protein, also known as messenger RNA (mRNA). It turns out that most of the genome (~75%) is transcribed, in other words, able to generate complementary RNA (5), but

these transcripts are not always translated giving birth to the field of "non-coding RNAs."[1] As such, the number of annotated non-coding RNAs rivals the number of protein-coding transcripts (6), and we will need to determine what functions these factors of emerging importance play. To draft an outline of a working roadmap for putting all these parts together, system biologists have begun mapping various types of networks to catalog as comprehensively as possible how diverse biomolecules interact with each other. We are doing our small part to begin integrating the roles of regulatory non-coding RNAs and associated RNA-binding proteins in this larger framework. We have noticed a recurring theme from our work (**Figure 1**).

## INDUCING PLURIPOTENCY BY POSTTRANSCRIPTIONAL REPROGRAMMING

If we knew the genetic programs underlying cell fate specification, it would be possible to instruct cells to perform desired biological functions at will. For example, Takahashi and Yamanaka employed four transcription factors to instruct mature somatic cells to de-differentiate back to an embryonic-like pluripotent stem cell state (7). Interestingly, two independent groups found that they could accomplish this feat in cellular reprogramming using a class of small (19–23 nucleotides long) non-coding RNAs called microRNAs (miRNAs) (8, 9). This represents one example of posttranscriptional reprogramming; however, the mechanisms of action are not well understood.

We have previously reported that ablation of Dicer, the RNAse III-containing enzyme required for miRNA processing impairs mouse embryonic stem cell (ESC) differentiation and self-renewal (12). Furthermore, Dicer is required for the generation of induced pluripotent stem cells (13). A reasonable candidate for mediating these activities is the miR-290 family (14), a miRNA cluster that is highly expressed in mouse ESCs and is downregulated during differentiation. Interestingly, the miR-290 locus has one of the top ranked super enhancers in ESCs (seventh out of 231), higher than the pluripotency genes encoding Oct-4 and Nanog (15). miRNAs target complementary mRNAs by base pairing, *via* their so called seed sequence, a six to eight nucleotide motif at their 5′ end (16). Members of miR-290 share the same seed sequence as the miR-302 family used in the two studies mentioned earlier and therefore are predicted to target the same mRNAs. We determined that expression of the Trithorax group protein Ash1l is posttranscriptionally repressed by these ESC-specific miRNAs (**Figure 1A**) (14). Ash1l is a methyltransferase which promotes tri-methylation of histone H3 at lysine 36 (H3K36me3), an epigenetic mark associated with ongoing gene transcription. One function of Ash1l is to antagonize Polycomb-mediated gene silencing (17). The polycomb repressive complex 2 (PRC2) catalyzes tri-methylation of H3K27, a histone mark associated with

[1]This popular term in an unfortunate misnomer because it suggests that these RNAs do not harbor genetic code. It would have been more accurate to call them untranslated RNAs rather than non-coding RNAs.

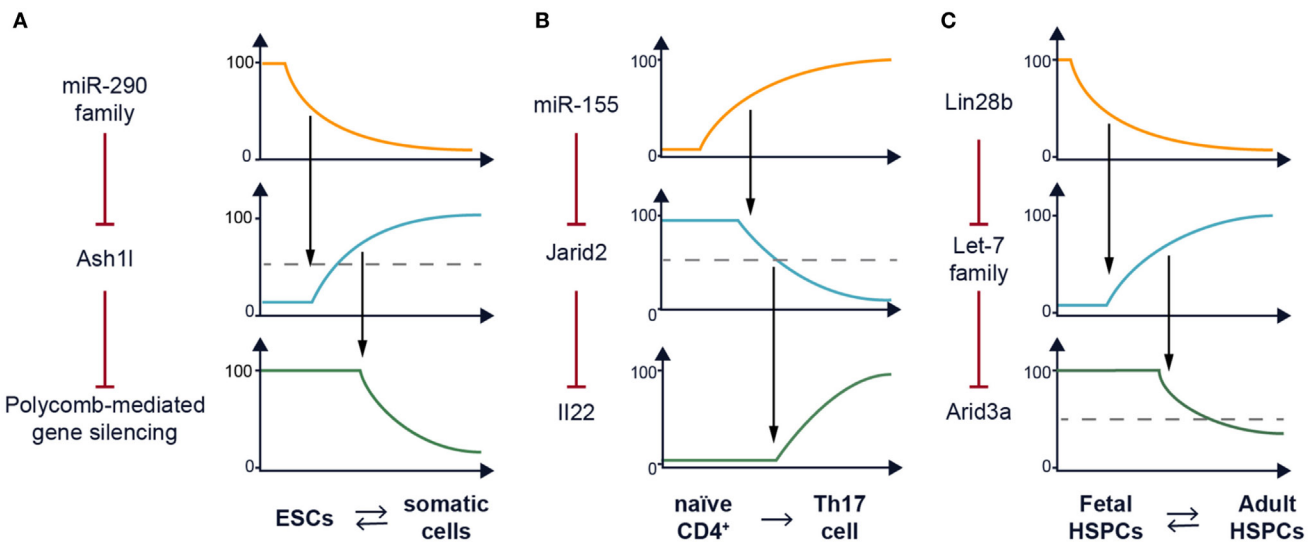



**FIGURE 1** | Recurrent network motif in posttranscriptional (re)programming. **(A)** The miR-290–Ash1l–polycomb repressive complex 2 (PRC2) axis plays a role in setting the chromatin landscape of embryonic stem cells (ESCs) to support the pluripotency gene expression program. A model of how the expression of the miR-290 family and Ash1l varies to impact activity of PRC2 is depicted along a time course as ESCs undergo differentiation. This process is reversible (7–9). **(B)** The miR-155–Jarid2 axis can also remodel the chromatin landscape by regulating PRC2 recruitment to support the Th17 gene expression program including transcription of the *Il22* cytokine gene among many others. A model of how the expression of miR-155 and Jarid2 varies to impact *Il22* transcription is depicted along a time course as naïve CD4+ T cells undergo Th17 differentiation. This process has not been shown to be reversible. **(C)** The Lin28b–let-7 axis mediates the fetal–adult hematopoietic switch. One downstream target of this pathway in B cell lineage progenitors is *Arid3a* messenger RNA which encodes a transcription factor (10). A model of how the expression of Lin28b and the let-7 family varies to impact *Arid3a* posttranscriptionally is depicted for hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells (HSPCs) during ontogeny. This process is reversible (11).

silencing. PRC2 has been shown to be essential for pluripotency maintenance and induction (18, 19). Indeed, we found that in the absence of miRNAs, the *Homeobox* (*Hox*) gene clusters, which are canonical targets of PRC2, have reduced H3K27me3 marks and PRC2 occupancy and are de-repressed. This defect in epigenetic silencing could be rescued by transfection of a single representative member of the miR-290 family (14, 20). Furthermore, this defect can also be rescued by Ash1l knockdown (14). A similar study, showing defective polycomb recruitment in the absence of miR-290, was independently performed by Graham et al. (20) further confirming the importance of this family of miRNAs in ESC pluripotency. In summary, a single miRNA family can reprogram the epigenetic landscape of a cell. By affecting the balance between H3K36me3 and H3K27me3, miR-290 can promote the pluripotent program of gene expression (**Figure 2**).

## REPROGRAMMING CHROMATIN IN Th17 CELLS

This general principle can be used in any cellular differentiation system. Indeed, we found a second similar example; although, it was not the original motivation of our work to demonstrate the generality of our idea. We screened for potentially interesting miRNAs in mouse T helper cell differentiation and found that miR-155 is highly expressed in Th17 cells compared with other subsets. Expression of miR-155 was induced upon T cell activation and was highly dependent on addition of IL-6 and IL-1β (21). Furthermore, we found that these two cytokines synergistically activated miR-155 expression in Th17 cells in a Stat3-dependent manner (21, 22), and later realized that the *Mir155* locus harbored a super enhancer (23). Our investigations further revealed that this miRNA also plays a role in programming the epigenetic landscape in Th17 cells (24). In the absence of miR-155, there is increased recruitment of PRC2 to thousands of locations in the genome, and enhanced tri-methylation of H3K27 at those sites. While Th17 cell differentiation still occurs in the absence of miR-155, we found significant defects in cytokine gene expression, a vital function of Th17 cells. In miR-155 knockout mice, we found $CD4^+ROR\gamma t^+$ Th17 cells *in vivo*, but they displayed a significant cell-intrinsic defect in IL-17 and IL-22 expression (24).

We determined that the root of the problem is de-repression of Jarid2, a target of miR-155 in Th17 cells (**Figure 1B**), and a key component of PRC2. It was recently found that Jarid2 is essential for recruitment of PRC2 to chromatin (25–29). Indeed, the defect in cytokine gene expression by Th17 cells can be rescued partially by deleting just one allele of Jarid2, thus reducing its expression by 50%. The partial rescue we observed with the compound deletion of miR-155 and Jarid2 highlights the fact that miRNAs target multiple transcripts and often it is hard to identify a single target that can restore the dysregulation of an miRNA deficiency. In that same experiment, we also observed genetic epistasis between miR-155 and Jarid2 with regards to homeostasis of $Foxp3^+$ T regulatory cells indicating that this regulatory circuit is used again in a different context. Thus, the concentration of Jarid2 can be used to modulate the global activity of polycomb-mediated gene silencing, and we have uncovered a situation in which miR-155 has co-opted this function as a rheostat.

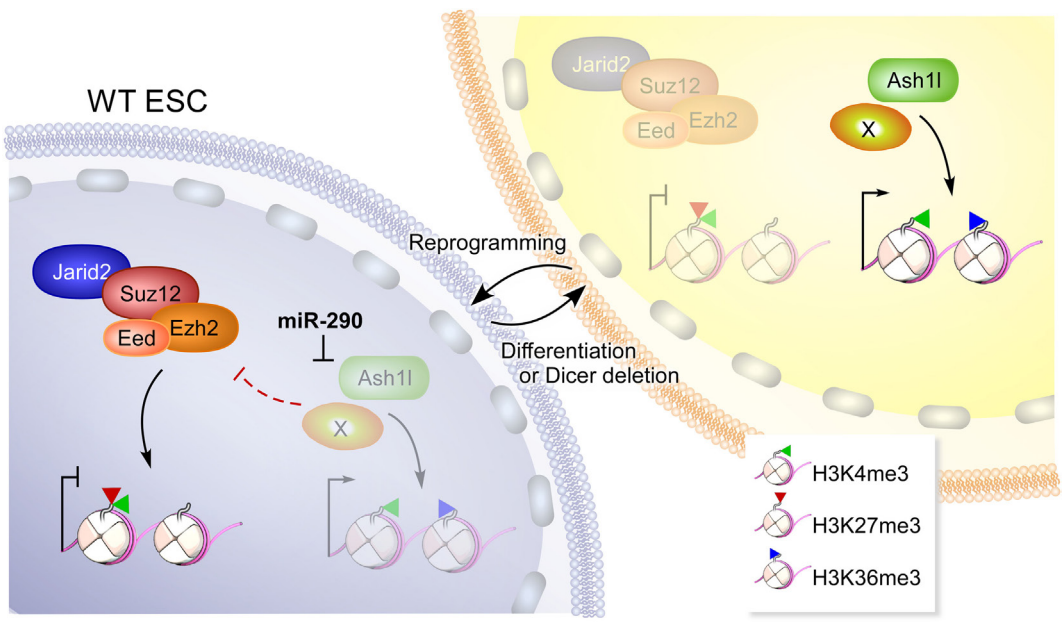



**FIGURE 2** | A model depicting how miR-290 reprograms the epigenome of embryonic stem cells (ESCs). In wild-type (WT) ESCs, high levels of miR-290 represses Ash1l and perhaps additional targets (depicted by "X") that can otherwise antagonize polycomb repressive complex 2 (PRC2) (containing Ezh2, Eed, Suz12, and Jarid2). PRC2 activity results in deposition of H3K27me3 marks on chromatin including bivalent domains that harbor H3K4me3 (20), a mark on active or poised promoters. Upon Dicer deletion or differentiation, miR-290 levels are reduced and can no longer repress Ash1l and additional targets. Unfettered, Ash1l activity results in increased H3K36me3 marks and antagonizes PRC2 (17). This figure is reproduced from Kanellopoulou et al. (14).

## Lin28b-MEDIATED REPROGRAMMING IN HEMATOPOIESIS

In a third project, we screened for miRNAs that distinguished progenitor B (pro-B) cells isolated from fetal liver versus adult bone marrow. The let-7 family of miRNAs is highly expressed in pro-B cells from adult bone marrow but not fetal liver (11). Since the different let-7 members are encoded by seven disparate genetic loci, it seems unlikely that this differential expression is regulated transcriptionally. Rather we postulated that there could be posttranscriptional regulation of the whole family. An RNA-binding protein, Lin28, had already been discovered to inhibit maturation of let-7 miRNAs (30), was a likely candidate (**Figure 1C**). In support of our hypothesis, we found that Lin28b, one of two paralogs, is highly expressed in fetal hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells (HSPCs) but not in their adult counterparts. Furthermore, enforced expression of Lin28 in adult HSPCs reprogrammed lymphocyte development to mimic fetal ontogeny. As evidence that we have uncovered a general molecular mechanism for fetal–adult hematopoietic switching, ectopic expression of LIN28B in adult erythroblasts is also sufficient to turn on fetal hemoglobin expression (31). This provides a novel avenue for the treatment of beta-thalassemia and sickle cell disease that may avoid the cytotoxic effects of hydroxyurea, currently the only clinically approved treatment for beta-globinopathies. Furthermore, we hope to inspire a new and better strategy to regenerate the hematopoietic and immune system. Specifically, Lin28b-reprogrammed HSPCs may be useful for transplantation in neonates or *in utero* if adult hematopoietic stem cells could be rejuvenated to become fetal again.

On a personal note, Bill Paul would frequently ask whether we had looked at embryonic-derived macrophages and whether their specification might also depend on Lin28b. Sadly, we failed to provide Bill with an answer before he passed away, but we are working hard to determine whether Lin28b also (re)programs myeloid lineages, in addition to lymphoid and erythroid differentiation in memory of his inquisitiveness.

## CONCLUSION

Overall, these studies support the idea that studying posttranscriptional regulatory networks will not only reveal interesting molecular mechanisms for controlling gene expression programs but can also provide novel therapeutic targets for reprogramming cell fates.

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

All authors listed have made a substantial, direct, and intellectual contribution to the work and approved it for publication.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Bill Paul for his leadership, mentorship, friendship and supporting these studies. Ryan Kissinger and Austin Athman (NIAID Visual and Medical Arts) illustrated **Figures 1** and **2**, respectively. This research was funded by the NIH Intramural Research Program of the NIAID.

## REFERENCES

1. International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium. Finishing the euchromatic sequence of the human genome. *Nature* (2004) 431:931–45. doi:10.1038/nature03001
2. Bianconi E, Piovesan A, Facchin F, Beraudi A, Casadei R, Frabetti F, et al. An estimation of the number of cells in the human body. *Ann Hum Biol* (2013) 40:463–71. doi:10.3109/03014460.2013.807878
3. Sender R, Fuchs S, Milo R. Revised estimates for the number of human and bacteria cells in the body. *PLoS Biol* (2016) 14:e1002533. doi:10.1371/journal.pbio.1002533
4. Crick F. Central dogma of molecular biology. *Nature* (1970) 227:561–3. doi:10.1038/227561a0
5. Djebali S, Davis CA, Merkel A, Dobin A, Lassmann T, Mortazavi A, et al. Landscape of transcription in human cells. *Nature* (2012) 489:101–8. doi:10.1038/nature11233
6. Derrien T, Johnson R, Bussotti G, Tanzer A, Djebali S, Tilgner H, et al. The GENCODE v7 catalog of human long noncoding RNAs: analysis of their gene structure, evolution, and expression. *Genome Res* (2012) 22:1775–89. doi:10.1101/gr.132159.111
7. Takahashi K, Yamanaka S. Induction of pluripotent stem cells from mouse embryonic and adult fibroblast cultures by defined factors. *Cell* (2006) 126:663–76. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2006.07.024
8. Anokye-Danso F, Trivedi CM, Juhr D, Gupta M, Cui Z, Tian Y, et al. Highly efficient miRNA-mediated reprogramming of mouse and human somatic cells to pluripotency. *Cell Stem Cell* (2011) 8:376–88. doi:10.1016/j.stem.2011.03.001
9. Miyoshi N, Ishii H, Nagano H, Haraguchi N, Dewi DL, Kano Y, et al. Reprogramming of mouse and human cells to pluripotency using mature microRNAs. *Cell Stem Cell* (2011) 8:633–8. doi:10.1016/j.stem.2011.05.001
10. Zhou Y, Li YS, Bandi SR, Tang L, Shinton SA, Hayakawa K, et al. Lin28b promotes fetal B lymphopoiesis through the transcription factor Arid3a. *J Exp Med* (2015) 212:569–80. doi:10.1084/jem.20141510
11. Yuan J, Nguyen CK, Liu X, Kanellopoulou C, Muljo SA. Lin28b reprograms adult bone marrow hematopoietic progenitors to mediate fetal-like lymphopoiesis. *Science* (2012) 335:1195–200. doi:10.1126/science.1216557
12. Kanellopoulou C, Muljo SA, Kung AL, Ganesan S, Drapkin R, Jenuwein T, et al. Dicer-deficient mouse embryonic stem cells are defective in differentiation and centromeric silencing. *Genes Dev* (2005) 19:489–501. doi:10.1101/gad.1248505
13. Kim BM, Thier MC, Oh S, Sherwood R, Kanellopoulou C, Edenhofer F, et al. MicroRNAs are indispensable for reprogramming mouse embryonic fibroblasts into induced stem cell-like cells. *PLoS One* (2012) 7:e39239. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0039239
14. Kanellopoulou C, Gilpatrick T, Kilaru G, Burr P, Nguyen CK, Morawski A, et al. Reprogramming of polycomb-mediated gene silencing in embryonic stem cells by the miR-290 family and the methyltransferase Ash1l. *Stem Cell Reports* (2015) 5:971–8. doi:10.1016/j.stemcr.2015.10.001
15. Whyte WA, Orlando DA, Hnisz D, Abraham BJ, Lin CY, Kagey MH, et al. Master transcription factors and mediator establish super-enhancers at key cell identity genes. *Cell* (2013) 153:307–19. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2013.03.035
16. Lewis BP, Shih IH, Jones-Rhoades MW, Bartel DP, Burge CB. Prediction of mammalian microRNA targets. *Cell* (2003) 115:787–98. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(03)01018-3
17. Miyazaki H, Higashimoto K, Yada Y, Endo TA, Sharif J, Komori T, et al. Ash1l methylates Lys36 of histone H3 independently of transcriptional elongation to counteract polycomb silencing. *PLoS Genet* (2013) 9:e1003897. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.1003897
18. Boyer LA, Plath K, Zeitlinger J, Brambrink T, Medeiros LA, Lee TI, et al. Polycomb complexes repress developmental regulators in murine embryonic stem cells. *Nature* (2006) 441:349–53. doi:10.1038/nature04733

19. Pereira CF, Piccolo FM, Tsubouchi T, Sauer S, Ryan NK, Bruno L, et al. ESCs require PRC2 to direct the successful reprogramming of differentiated cells toward pluripotency. *Cell Stem Cell* (2010) 6:547–56. doi:10.1016/j.stem.2010.04.013
20. Graham B, Marcais A, Dharmalingam G, Carroll T, Kanellopoulou C, Graumann J, et al. MicroRNAs of the miR-290-295 family maintain bivalency in mouse embryonic stem cells. *Stem Cell Reports* (2016) 6:635–42. doi:10.1016/j.stemcr.2016.03.005
21. Escobar T, Yu CR, Muljo SA, Egwuagu CE. STAT3 activates miR-155 in Th17 cells and acts in concert to promote experimental autoimmune uveitis. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* (2013) 54:4017–25. doi:10.1167/iovs.13-11937
22. Witte S, Muljo SA. Integrating non-coding RNAs in JAK-STAT regulatory networks. *JAKSTAT* (2014) 3:e28055. doi:10.4161/jkst.28055
23. Witte S, Bradley A, Enright AJ, Muljo SA. High-density P300 enhancers control cell state transitions. *BMC Genomics* (2015) 16:903. doi:10.1186/s12864-015-1905-6
24. Escobar TM, Kanellopoulou C, Kugler DG, Kilaru G, Nguyen CK, Nagarajan V, et al. miR-155 activates cytokine gene expression in Th17 cells by regulating the DNA-binding protein Jarid2 to relieve polycomb-mediated repression. *Immunity* (2014) 40:865–79. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2014.03.014
25. Peng JC, Valouev A, Swigut T, Zhang J, Zhao Y, Sidow A, et al. Jarid2/Jumonji coordinates control of PRC2 enzymatic activity and target gene occupancy in pluripotent cells. *Cell* (2009) 139:1290–302. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2009.12.002
26. Shen X, Kim W, Fujiwara Y, Simon MD, Liu Y, Mysliwiec MR, et al. Jumonji modulates polycomb activity and self-renewal versus differentiation of stem cells. *Cell* (2009) 139:1303–14. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2009.12.003
27. Pasini D, Cloos PA, Walfridsson J, Olsson L, Bukowski JP, Johansen JV, et al. JARID2 regulates binding of the polycomb repressive complex 2 to target genes in ES cells. *Nature* (2010) 464:306–10. doi:10.1038/nature08788
28. Li G, Margueron R, Ku M, Chambon P, Bernstein BE, Reinberg D. Jarid2 and PRC2, partners in regulating gene expression. *Genes Dev* (2010) 24:368–80. doi:10.1101/gad.1886410
29. Landeira D, Sauer S, Poot R, Dvorkina M, Mazzarella L, Jørgensen HF, et al. Jarid2 is a PRC2 component in embryonic stem cells required for multi-lineage differentiation and recruitment of PRC1 and RNA polymerase II to developmental regulators. *Nat Cell Biol* (2010) 12:618–24. doi:10.1038/ncb2065
30. Viswanathan SR, Daley GQ, Gregory RI. Selective blockade of microRNA processing by Lin28. *Science* (2008) 320:97–100. doi:10.1126/science.1154040
31. Lee YT, de Vasconcellos JF, Yuan J, Byrnes C, Noh SJ, Meier ER, et al. LIN28B-mediated expression of fetal hemoglobin and production of fetal-like erythrocytes from adult human erythroblasts ex vivo. *Blood* (2013) 122:1034–41. doi:10.1182/blood-2012-12-472308

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

frontiers in Immunology

REVIEW
published: 17 July 2018
doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01657

# The Role of Molecular Flexibility in Antigen Presentation and T Cell Receptor-Mediated Signaling

*Kannan Natarajan[1]*, Jiansheng Jiang[1], Nathan A. May[1], Michael G. Mage[1], Lisa F. Boyd[1], Andrew C. McShan[2], Nikolaos G. Sgourakis[2], Ad Bax[3] and David H. Margulies[1]**

[1] Molecular Biology Section, Laboratory of Immune System Biology, National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States, [2] Department of Chemistry and Biochemistry, University of California at Santa Cruz, Santa Cruz, CA, United States, [3] Laboratory of Chemical Physics, National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases, National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD, United States

Antigen presentation is a cellular process that involves a number of steps, beginning with the production of peptides by proteolysis or aberrant synthesis and the delivery of peptides to cellular compartments where they are loaded on MHC class I (MHC-I) or MHC class II (MHC-II) molecules. The selective loading and editing of high-affinity immunodominant antigens is orchestrated by molecular chaperones: tapasin/TAP-binding protein, related for MHC-I and HLA-DM for MHC-II. Once peptide/MHC (pMHC) complexes are assembled, following various steps of quality control, they are delivered to the cell surface, where they are available for identification by αβ receptors on $CD8^+$ or $CD4^+$ T lymphocytes. In addition, recognition of cell surface peptide/MHC-I complexes by natural killer cell receptors plays a regulatory role in some aspects of the innate immune response. Many of the components of the pathways of antigen processing and presentation and of T cell receptor (TCR)-mediated signaling have been studied extensively by biochemical, genetic, immunological, and structural approaches over the past several decades. Until recently, however, dynamic aspects of the interactions of peptide with MHC, MHC with molecular chaperones, or of pMHC with TCR have been difficult to address experimentally, although computational approaches such as molecular dynamics (MD) simulations have been illuminating. Studies exploiting X-ray crystallography, cryo-electron microscopy, and multidimensional nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy are beginning to reveal the importance of molecular flexibility as it pertains to peptide loading onto MHC molecules, the interactions between pMHC and TCR, and subsequent TCR-mediated signals. In addition, recent structural and dynamic insights into how molecular chaperones define peptide selection and fine-tune the MHC displayed antigen repertoire are discussed. Here, we offer a review of current knowledge that highlights experimental data obtained by X-ray crystallography and multidimensional NMR methodologies. Collectively, these findings strongly support a multifaceted role for protein plasticity and conformational dynamics throughout the antigen processing and presentation pathway in dictating antigen selection and recognition.

**Keywords: major histocompatibility complex, T cell receptor, tapasin, transporter associated with antigen presentation, TAP-binding protein, related, chaperone**

OPEN ACCESS

***Edited by:***
*Yun-Cai Liu,*
*Tsinghua University, China*

***Reviewed by:***
*Yan Shi,*
*Tsinghua University, China*
*Fernando A. Arosa,*
*Universidade da Beira Interior, Portugal*

****Correspondence:***
*Kannan Natarajan*
*knatarajan@niaid.nih.gov;*
*David H. Margulies*
*dhm@nih.gov*

***Specialty section:***
*This article was submitted to T Cell Biology, a section of the journal Frontiers in Immunology*

***Received:*** *09 March 2018*
***Accepted:*** *04 July 2018*
***Published:*** *17 July 2018*

***Citation:***
*Natarajan K, Jiang J, May NA, Mage MG, Boyd LF, McShan AC, Sgourakis NG, Bax A and Margulies DH (2018) The Role of Molecular Flexibility in Antigen Presentation and T Cell Receptor-Mediated Signaling. Front. Immunol. 9:1657. doi: 10.3389/fimmu.2018.01657*

## DEDICATION

In recognition of William E. Paul's personal encouragement to explore new approaches to address fundamental aspects of the immune response, we offer this review that reflects recent progress in studies of antigen presentation and T cell receptor-mediated signaling. Dr. Paul's commitment to rigorous analysis and quantitative experimentation continues to serve as a paradigm for our research.

## INTRODUCTION

Experimental approaches to solving fundamental problems in immunology range from the biological to the biophysical, exemplified by early observations concerning immunity to infection and chemical and biochemical studies of toxins, blood groups, haptens, and antibodies. Contemporary molecular biological and structural studies of antibodies, major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules, Fc receptors, and T cell receptors (TCRs), as well as many other immunologically relevant molecules, not only expand our understanding of the immune system but also have been instrumental in developing methodologies with broader application (1). Central to the immune response are the cellular pathways of antigen processing and presentation—the mechanisms by which peptides derived from foreign or self proteins are degraded into peptides of appropriate length and are then captured by MHC class I (MHC-I) or MHC class II (MHC-II) molecules which display these peptide fragments as peptide/MHC (pMHC) complexes at the surface of antigen-presenting cells (APC) (2, 3). Such pMHC complexes are then available for identification by T cells, which are subsequently activated to initiate various cellular programs. These may result in cytolysis of target cells (primarily by $CD8^+$, MHC-I-restricted T cells) or production of various cytokines (by either $CD8^+$ or by $CD4^+$, MHC-II-restricted T cells) that direct, coordinate, and induce further immunological responses such as antibody production by B cells or differentiation into memory T cells. Cell surface MHC-I molecules may also interact with various inhibitory, and in some cases activating, natural killer (NK) cell receptors, and thus contribute to a regulatory role in the NK arm of the innate immune response (4–6). Various genetic, molecular biological and structural approaches have examined peptide–protein and protein–protein interactions that are necessary to generate an immune response. Our primary goal in this review is to highlight the role of molecular flexibility in governing molecular interactions required for antigen processing, presentation, and recognition, as illustrated by the function of MHC molecules, their chaperones, and TCR in antigen presentation and recognition. Recent reviews have summarized aspects of this flexibility, largely based on computational approaches (7, 8). Our emphasis here will be on recent experimental observations based on X-ray crystallography and nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy (9–15).

Much of our current understanding of protein structure has been revealed by X-ray crystallography, a technique that is unrivaled in its ability to provide high resolution structural details (16–19). X-ray data often reveal regions of proteins that are found in poor electron density, or that exhibit high values of the crystallographic *B*- factor, indications of flexible or dynamic parts of the molecule (20). Computational molecular dynamics (MDs) and normal mode analysis, based on X-ray structures, provide predictive approaches to visualizing protein flexibility (7, 21, 22). However, the most informative experimental elucidation of dynamic regions of proteins comes from NMR spectroscopy. NMR analysis of proteins in solution provides information on conformational changes over time scales ranging from picoseconds to days, thus encompassing dynamics ranging from bond vibrations to side chain flips to large scale domain motions, and the residue-specific stability of H-bonds (23). NMR is also powerful because it can characterize sparsely populated (i.e., transient) conformational states that may be important for biological function (24). Contemporary protein-labeling and multidimensional NMR techniques permit examination of protein complexes as large as 1 MDa (25, 26). In addition, all atom MD simulations may complement the experimental NMR and contribute to elucidating such dynamic processes. The discussion below focuses on the dynamics of proteins involved in antigen presentation, largely based on experimental analyses.

In this review, we will explore the dynamics of pMHC with respect to three aspects of antigen presentation: (1) the formation of the tri-molecular complex consisting of peptide, and MHC [for MHC-I, peptide, MHC-I heavy chain, and the light chain, β2-microgolobulin ($\beta_2$m)] as inferred from numerous X-ray structures and recent NMR analyses; (2) the influence of the pMHC chaperones, tapasin and TAP-binding protein, related (TAPBPR) for MHC-I and HLA-DM (H2-DM in the mouse) for MHC-II; and (3) alterations of the conformational dynamics of the TCR upon pMHC interaction that reflect early steps in TCR-mediated signaling. Our focus is on MHC-I, but we will describe analogous steps in the MHC-II processing and presentation pathway as well. Our discussion of peptide, MHC-I, MHC-II, and TCR dynamics follows brief summaries of the major steps of MHC antigen processing and presentation.

## MAJOR STEPS IN MHC ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION: MHC-I

The cellular and molecular bases by which peptides are generated by the proteasome in the cytoplasm, transported *via* transporter associated with antigen presentation (TAP) to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER), where they are loaded onto nascent MHC-I, have been the focus of considerable attention for several decades, and a number of reviews address this process (2, 8, 27–31). Here, we summarize the process and the critical steps, with a focus on MHC-I, as shown schematically in **Figure 1**. MHC-II follows a similar but distinct process (32, 33).

The antigenic peptides bound by MHC-I in general derive from proteins located in the cytoplasm, proteins that are degraded by the proteasome following unfolding or misfolding and ubiquitination, or proteins that result from aberrancies in translation initiation, mRNA splicing, or alternate

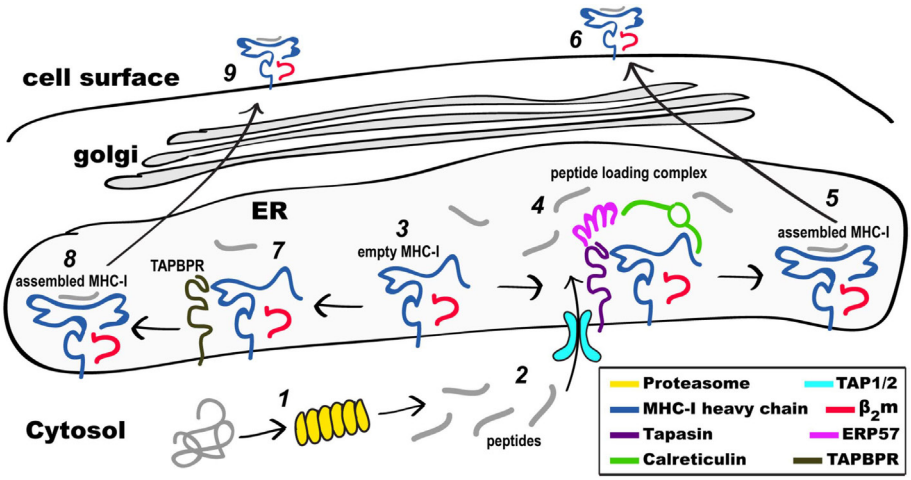



**FIGURE 1** | Schematic view of MHC class I (MHC-I) pathways of antigen processing and presentation. Proteins in the cytosol engage the proteasome (1) and the peptides generated (2) are transported through the TAP1/2 transporter to the endoplasmic reticulum (ER). Partially folded MHC-I/β2-microgolobulin ($\beta_2$m) complexes (3) are stabilized as part of the peptide loading complex (PLC) (4) where they may be retained in a peptide-receptive state. Once high affinity peptide is bound, the peptide/MHC-I (5) is released from the PLC and destined for the secretory pathway and the cell surface (6). Alternatively, partially folded MHC-I/$\beta_2$m complexes (3) are stabilized by interaction with TAP-binding protein, related (TAPBPR) (7), loaded with peptide, released from TAPBPR (8), and the assembled MHC-I proceeds to the cell surface (9). Not illustrated are the peptide trimming enzymes (ERAAP or ERAP1/2) or the quality control UGGT1 interaction as described in the text.

reading frames (34, 35). The sources of these peptides may be self-proteins, sometimes expressed at abnormal levels in cancer cells, or pathogen-derived products expressed following infection. These peptide products of the proteasome must then be transported to the site of MHC-I folding, assembly and maturation, the ER, a function provided by the heterodimeric transporter associated with antigen processing, TAP (29, 36). In the ER, peptides load onto MHC-I following motif rules during the folding process, are trimmed by aminopeptidases, and their binding is monitored by quality control mechanisms in the ER and Golgi. For MHC-I, limits on the preferred length of antigenic peptides are imposed by a binding cleft with closed ends, and peptides, usually of 8–12 amino acids in length, are generated by the progressive results of proteasome degradation, length limits for TAP transport, and amino-terminal trimming by endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase 1 (ERAP1).

MHC class I heavy chains, the "human leukocyte antigens," denoted HLA-A, -B, or -C in the human, H2 in the mouse, are ~40 kDa glycoproteins that exhibit the greatest genetic polymorphism known. Presently, some 13,000 HLA class I and almost 5,000 HLA class II alleles are recognized (https://www.ebi.ac.uk/ipd/imgt/hla/stats.html). The MHC-I heavy chain, a type I membrane glycoprotein, assembles with the monomorphic light chain, $\beta_2$m, and a peptide, usually of 8–12 amino acids in length, taken from the cell's ER peptide pool (**Figure 1**). Peptides are bound *via* anchor positions that engage pockets of the MHC, designated A–F (37). Any "single" MHC molecule, purified from a cellular source, can associate with an ensemble of hundreds or thousands of self-peptides (38). The first crystal structure of an HLA-A2 molecule was based on a heterogeneous peptide/HLA-2/$\beta_2$m preparation and thus electron density corresponding to the peptide was poorly defined (39). Numerous subsequent X-ray structures have been determined based on methods for producing homogeneous complexes employing various expression and purification strategies (40).

Intracellularly, the MHC-I protein is synthesized on membrane-bound ribosomes and delivered vectorially into the lumen of the ER, where initial folding, including formation of the intrachain disulfide bond of the membrane proximal α3 domain, along with assembly to the $\beta_2$m light chain, takes place. A molecular chaperone, calnexin (41, 42), stabilizes the partially folded regions of MHC-I until the heavy chain engages the peptide loading complex (PLC), which consists of the heterodimeric TAP1/2 peptide transporter (43), tapasin (44), a chaperone that stabilizes peptide receptive (PR) MHC-I, ERp57, a tapasin-associated oxidoreductase (45), and calreticulin (46). Peptides load onto PR MHC-I in the PLC, and trimming of their amino termini is accomplished by ER-associated amino peptidase [known as ERAAP in the mouse (47) or ERAP1/2 in the human (48)]. Recently, cryo-electron microscopic images of the full PLC purified from a human lymphoblastoid cell line have been obtained (49), revealing a multimolecular complex containing the two-pseudo-symmetric editing modules, centered around the TAP transporter, consistent with previous biochemically derived structural models (27, 50). Once high affinity peptide is loaded onto MHC-I, the pMHC/$\beta_2$m complex is released and then proceeds through the Golgi where quality control based on carbohydrate composition occurs (51, 52). The acquisition of high-affinity peptide by MHC-I is assured by the coordinated functions of the proteins of the PLC, in particular tapasin. In recent years, a tapasin homolog, TAPBPR, has been recognized as a molecule with similar function to the PLC, but that accomplishes its role independent of the PLC and its associated

components (53). Assembled, stable, peptide/MHC-I (pMHC-I) complexes are then displayed at the cell surface.

## MAJOR STEPS IN MHC ANTIGEN PROCESSING AND PRESENTATION: MHC-II

The folding, assembly and peptide-loading of MHC-II molecules, though similar in some respects to that of MHC-I, occurs in distinct cellular compartments and is focused on binding peptides generated not from an "inside-out" pathway like MHC-I, but rather from those produced from proteins that derive from the extracellular environment (2, 33). Thus, proteins taken up by endocytosis or phagocytosis enter the endocytic pathway where they are proteolyzed and denatured, and where they encounter MHC-II molecules, consisting of previously assembled complexes consisting of α and β chains bound to the Ii (invariant chain). Processing of Ii, release of the CLIP peptide derived from it, and concomitant interaction with HLA-DM, a peptide-exchange catalyst/chaperone, result in peptide-loaded (PL) MHC-II that then go to the cell surface for recognition by $CD4^+$ T cells (54–56). The role of HLA-DM in optimizing the class II peptide repertoire parallels the role of the PLC or TAPBPR in the MHC-I peptide loading pathway (57).

## PEPTIDE DYNAMICS

Dynamics of peptides bound to MHC molecules have been the focus of both experimental and computational studies that have been recently reviewed (58). Characterizing peptide conformational plasticity and dynamics within the MHC groove is of considerable interest because peptides: (1) influence MHC thermal and kinetic stability as well as the structural ensembles and free energy landscape of the assembled MHCs and (2) play a key role in recognition by TCR and NK receptors (NKR). These features of molecular flexibility of peptides are important for a proper immune response and impact MHC cell surface lifetime, receptor recognition and antigen immunogenicity. Exactly how peptide dynamics regulate antigen processing and presentation is an ongoing field of study.

Association of the TCR with pMHC molecules often induces localized conformational changes in the backbone and side chain of the bound peptide (59). It is hypothesized that if the peptide is presented by the MHC with a conformation and surface chemistry that is not optimized for TCR recognition, the pMHC will exhibit slow TCR binding, relative to a peptide presented in a more restricted, pre-optimized conformation. During this antigen recognition process, peptide motions impact the formation of complementarity pMHC/TCR interaction interfaces, in terms of both shape and chemical composition. The timescale of the peptide motions contributes to the affinity of pMHC/TCR recognition by imposing energetic and kinetic barriers for complex formation, and stability of the resulting complex. Initial insights into this phenomenon were obtained from a comparison of the X-ray conformations of the HTLV-1 derived $Tax_{11-19}$ peptide bound to HLA-A2 in the presence or absence of a high affinity TCR indicated an induced fit of the peptide of the pMHC complex when bound to the TCR (58). In these structures, the conformational change in $Tax_{11-19}$ upon TCR binding is highlighted by significant rearrangements of the backbone atoms of Pro6 and Val7. NMR analyses of the $^{15}N$- and $^{13}C$-labeled $Tax_{11-19}$ peptide bound to HLA-A2 revealed multiple resonances for Val7 of the peptide reflecting a slower than millisecond timescale of interconversion between alternate peptide conformations. In this example, the crystallographic suggestion of conformational plasticity of an MHC-I-bound peptide has been reinforced by the behavior in solution as detected by NMR.

Multiple peptide conformations have also been observed in the well characterized QL9/H2-$L^d$ model system, where NMR analyses revealed two conformations of the bound 9-mer QL9 peptide as indicated by the presence of two unique chemical shifts in slow-exchange for the amide resonance of Phe7 of the peptide in the MHC-bound state (60). Intriguingly, Phe7 was reported to remain conformationally mobile even when interfacing with the CDR3β loop of the cognate 2C TCR. Matching conformational dynamics between receptor and ligand has been proposed as a mechanism to enhance the thermodynamic stability of pMHC/TCR complexes (60). This may result from reducing the entropic penalty associated with restraining otherwise flexible surfaces and reflects the enhanced stability of what might otherwise be a weak TCR/pMHC complex.

An illustration of the dynamic nature of pMHC-II molecules was seen in the pigeon cytochrome *c* (PCC) 91–104 peptide/I-$E^k$ (pMHC-II) model system in which two distinct conformations of a bound $^{19}F$-labeled peptide were observed by NMR (61). The two peptide conformations corresponded to kinetically distinct species of PCC91–104/I-$E^k$ complexes identified by their fast and slow dissociation rates (62). Careful studies of MHC-II molecules binding peptides displayed in alternate registers reveal potential complexities that may result from the peptide binding groove being open at both ends (63). Conformational isomers of the same peptide presented by the same MHC-II molecules have been identified based on distinct T cell reactivities (64). Indeed, one study employing spin-labeled peptide and NMR analysis demonstrated that an MHC-II-restricted peptide can bind in either the canonical N to C (left to right) or flipped (right to left) conformation (65).

## "EMPTY" MHC-I MOLECULES

Peptides bound in the groove of MHC-I and MHC-II molecules serve two indispensable and interrelated functions: (1) to form part of a composite pMHC ligand recognized by T and NK cell receptors and (2) to structurally stabilize MHC molecules for long-lived display at the cell surface. However, under certain physiological conditions "empty" or peptide-free conformers of MHC-I occur at the cell surface as detected by specific monoclonal antibodies or by peptide binding assays. The LA45 monoclonal antibody reacts with a $\beta_2$m-free form of human HLA molecules on phytohemagglutinin-activated human mononuclear leukocytes and on transformed cell lines (66). Similarly, in the mouse, the 64-3-7 antibody recognizes peptide free forms of H2-$L^d$ in cellular lysates and at the cell surface (67). Peptide-binding

experiments indicate the presence of empty, peptide-receptive HLA-B27 molecules on the cell surface (68), perhaps contributing to the etiology of HLA-B27-associated arthritic disease. A functional role for empty MHC-I molecules at the cell surface in modulating immune responses was inferred from early studies (69–72). A recent report identified empty HLA-B*35:01 molecules on activated T cells and showed preferential binding of such alternatively conformed structures to CD8 resulting in enhanced T cell responses (73).

MHC class I molecules devoid of, or bearing low affinity, peptides fail to reach the cell surface efficiently at physiological temperature, but can be detected if the cells are incubated at room temperature (74). The distinct conformation of such molecules may be discerned by comparing the reactivity of monoclonal antibodies that detect peptide-independent and peptide-dependent epitopes (67, 75, 76). These "empty" MHC-I molecules result from genetic lesions in the peptide-loading steps of the antigen presentation pathway, specifically in major components of the PLC including TAP and tapasin (77, 78).

Some non-classical MHC-I-like molecules, such as human HLA-F can be expressed as either peptide-free (open-conformer) or PL forms. Such molecules may differentially interact with either activating or inhibitory NKR to innate immune responses (79–81). Understanding the structural contributions of peptide to fully loaded MHC-I and MHC-II molecules provides insight into the mechanisms involved in peptide loading and exchange. However, the instability of peptide-free molecules has precluded crystallographic studies of these molecules.

Nuclear magnetic resonance methods are especially well-suited to analyzing conformational dynamics in MHC-I molecules since these proteins are routinely prepared by bacterial expression thus permitting uniform labeling with the desired isotope (82). In addition, the heavy and light chains can be separately labeled, greatly improving spectral resolution. NMR analysis of MHC-II molecules has been hampered by the difficulty in producing these proteins by bacterial expression, although several groups have reported success in this area (55, 83).

The MD and structural features of peptide-free MHC molecules are of key importance for understanding the mechanism of peptide loading as peptide-free forms of MHC molecules are substrates for peptide loading and exchange by chaperones such as tapasin and TAPBPR for MHC-I and HLA-DM for MHC-II. However, it is challenging to produce peptide-free MHC-I molecules in amounts sufficient for detailed structural analyses and therefore information regarding their conformational dynamics has been largely obtained from MD stimulations [see, for example, Ref. (84, 85)]. An early biophysical and structural analysis of a peptide-free HLA-B*0702/$\beta_2$m heterodimer described an unstable, partially unfolded molecule in a molten globule state (86). More recently Kurimoto et al. (87) applied solution NMR techniques to peptide-free HLA-C*07:02/$\beta_2$m. NMR spectra obtained by selective labeling of methionine residues in the heavy chain revealed markedly attenuated intensities for residues in the peptide-binding domain suggestive of a partially folded molten globule form, whereas the α3 domain was properly conformed. These experiments highlight the role of the bound peptide in stabilizing MHC conformations for display at the cell surface to function as ligands for T cell and NK cell receptors.

## DYNAMICS OF pMHC-I

Although crystal structures of MHC-I molecules encompassing various allelomorphs and peptides show little gross variation, their analyses in solution by various biophysical methods and MD simulations indicate considerable differences in molecular flexibility at localized regions (7). Recent NMR analyses of pMHC-I complexes show heavy chain backbone as well as methyl side-chain dynamics revealing flexibility in exposed loops of the platform domain of the molecule (11).

The contribution of MHC-conformational dynamics to the relative dependence of MHC-I molecules on tapasin chaperone function for peptide loading has been addressed by comparative studies of HLA-B*44:02 and B*44:05 which differ only at position 116 (Asp for B*44:02 and Tyr for B*44:05) (88–90). These analyses suggested that HLA-B*44:05, which is tapasin-independent, preserves a peptide-free structure close to that of the peptide bound, even in the absence of tapasin.

A role for MHC-I conformational dynamics has been proposed to explain the differential disease susceptibility associated with two closely related HLA-B subtypes B*27:05 and B*27:09. Although the only amino acid sequence difference between the two subtypes is at position 116 in the floor of the peptide binding groove, which is Asp in B*27:05 and His in B*27:09, only B*27:05-expressing individuals are susceptible to ankylosing spondylitis (AS). Crystal structures of the two subtypes in complex with the same peptide are virtually identical. Using time-resolved fluorescence depolarization and MD simulations, Pohlmann et al. (91) showed that only peptide bound to the AS-associated subtype B*27:05 showed increased dynamics which is linked to the polymorphism at residue at 116. Thus, the increased dynamics is consistent with a molecule that has multiple conformational species that may aggregate either intra- or extracellularly contributing to various pathways to inflammatory disease.

Another point of difference between the B*27:05 and the B*27:09 subtypes is the dynamics at the $\beta_2$m-heavy chain interface revealed by NMR. Using isotopically labeled human $\beta_2$m, Beerbaum et al. (92, 93) compared the $\beta_2$m-heavy chain interface in the two closely related HLA-B subtypes, complexed with four different peptides, and found significant chemical shift differences in a $\beta_2$m loop that abuts the underside of the peptide binding groove and includes residues Asp53, Lys58, and Trp60. The most significant of these chemical shift differences is at Trp60 which shows subtype- and peptide-dependent structural variability. Conformational flexibility of $\beta_2$m at the interface with heavy chain, revealed by NMR, may thus influence peptide binding affinities and consequently MHC-I stability at the surface with important functional consequences for T cell and NK cell recognition. In addition, molecules that facilitate MHC-I peptide exchange and loading, such as tapasin and TAPBPR, may employ recognition of this $\beta_2$m-loop as a strategy to sense peptide occupancy, as discussed below.

Monoclonal antibodies that specifically recognize PR MHC-I molecules are valuable tools for identifying structural features

that correlate with the conformation of the PR state. Among the best studied examples is the 64-3-7 antibody which binds to immature, PR H2-$L^d$ but not to mature, PL H2-$L^d$ (94). The minimal epitope of 64-3-7 is a sequence of seven amino acids in the H2-$L^d$ α1 domain that adopts a $3_{10}$-helical conformation. Combining crystallographic, docking, and MD approaches, Mage et al. (95) showed that this $3_{10}$ helix moves in a hinge-like manner from an exposed and open position in the PR state to a closed position in PL molecules. The inward movement of the $3_{10}$ helix helps to form the A and B pockets that are crucial for stable peptide binding and subsequent release from tapasin in the PLC. It is noteworthy that the conformational dynamics of the $3_{10}$ helix occur at the opposite end of the groove from the site of tapasin binding—an illustration of the coordinated and dynamic changes that accompany peptide binding and chaperone release.

While computationally expensive, a wealth of information on the conformational flexibility of both peptide-bound and PR MHC molecules has been provided from all-atom MDs simulations in explicit solvent. In particular, in the absence of the peptide ligand, MHC-I molecules, such as HLA-A*02, HLA-B*44, HLA-B*27, H2-$D^d$, H2-$D^b$, and H2-$K^b$, exhibit increased mobility in the F-pocket region of the MHC, adjacent to the α2-1 helix (11, 84, 85, 96–99). Peptide-dependent dynamic coupling between the heavy chain groove and the α3/light chain interface has also been observed (100–102). Likewise, MD has uncovered similar conformational flexibility in the opposite end of peptide-deficient class II MHC molecules (HLA-DR1 and HLA-DR3) at the α51–59 and β58–69 regions (83, 103, 104). Finally, a putative role for N-linked glycosylation in modulating the local flexibility of the MHC groove has also been explored (105). Together, these studies show that polymorphisms within the MHC groove may dictate both ligand binding and overall allotype stability through alteration in dynamics, either in localized regions or globally. Taken together, these data indicate that modulation of MHC dynamics plays a defining role in peptide exchange, stability at the cell surface and co-receptor engagement where sparsely populated transient states may be involved (106).

## DYNAMICS OF PROTEINS OF THE ANTIGEN PRESENTATION PATHWAY

Newly synthesized MHC molecules are stabilized in a PR form in the PLC until loaded with high affinity peptide cargo. Following successful peptide loading, MHC-I molecules are released from the PLC and are transported through the Golgi to the cell surface. The PLC is a multimolecular, ER-membrane anchored assemblage consisting of the MHC-I/$\beta_2$m complex itself, the lectin calreticulin, the transporter TAP1/TAP2, the chaperone and peptide editor tapasin, and the disulfide isomerase ERp57 (see **Figure 1**). The molecular organization of this complex has been deduced from biochemical experiments (43, 44, 46), and X-ray structures of the individual proteins (107–111). Recently the structure of the PLC was visualized by cryo-EM (49) revealing an arrangement of the component proteins that is consistent with previous biochemically derived structural models (27, 104, 112), which indicate the association of a central TAP heterodimer with two peptide editing modules, each consisting of calreticulin, ERp57, tapasin and MHC-I. In addition, the cryo-EM images revealed intermediate states that lacked calreticulin and/or MHC-I, affirming the transient and dynamic nature of the molecular interactions within the PLC. A key component of the PLC is tapasin whose importance in selective loading of MHC-I with high affinity peptides is illustrated by the greatly reduced cell surface levels of MHC-I in tapasin-deficient cell lines (113, 114) and mutant mice (77). Binding to tapasin stabilizes MHC-I molecules that are peptide-free or suboptimally loaded (115) until an appropriate high affinity peptide is bound leading to tapasin dissociation from the complex.

Detailed mechanistic understanding of tapasin function in peptide loading is lacking because the structure of a PR MHC-I in complex with tapasin has proved elusive. Nevertheless, the structure of a tapasin–ERP57 complex combined with extensive mutagenesis data has revealed structural details of tapasin function (111). Tapasin is an L-shaped protein consisting of a membrane proximal Ig-domain and an N-terminal domain that is a fusion of a β-barrel and an Ig-domain. Differences in the orientation of the tapasin N- and C-terminal domains in the three copies in the asymmetric unit suggests interdomain flexibility is a structural feature of tapasin. The MHC-I interaction sites on tapasin, inferred from extensive mutagenesis data, reveal an evolutionarily conserved, extensive binding interface encompassing residues on both of the tapasin Ig domains. Combining MDs simulations of peptide-free MHC-I (84) and mutagenesis data identifying tapasin binding sites on MHC-I (116, 117), a structural model of the tapasin/MHC-I was proposed in which the primary focus of tapasin is the short helical segment of the MHC-I, α2-1, which is conformationally mobile and sensitive to groove occupancy (111).

More recently, mechanistic insights into MHC-I peptide loading and glimpses of the conformational dynamics involved have been obtained by crystal structures of the tapasin-like molecule, TAPBPR, in complex with PR forms of MHC-I (10, 12). Like tapasin, TAPBPR is widely expressed, interferon-γ inducible (118), and catalyzes the loading of high affinity peptides (119, 120). However, unlike tapasin, TAPBPR is not associated with the PLC (118) and TAPBPR-deficient cell lines display normal levels of MHC-I (119). Also, unlike tapasin, TAPBPR is not found only in the ER but also in the cis-Golgi (118). Although the role of TAPBPR in antigen presentation and its functional relationship to tapasin remain enigmatic, TAPBPR may function downstream of the PLC in conjunction with UDP-glucose:glycoprotein glucosyltransferase (UGGT1) (121), to provide additional peptide quality control.

The comparison of the three structures of H2-$D^d$: (1) occupied by a truncated, suboptimal peptide (pdb: 5WES); (2) peptide-free, stabilized by TAPBPR (pdb: 5WER); and (3) complexed with a high-affinity peptide (pdb: 3ECB) illustrates the conformational rearrangements that accompany the transition of MHC-I from a partially PL complex to a peptide-receptive and then to a PL state (10). In the TAPBPR-stabilized PR form, the MHC-I groove is widened in the region of the F pocket due to an ~3 Å displacement of the α2-1 helical segment. In addition,

β strands 5 and 8 that line the floor of the binding groove are displaced downward. The side chain of the conserved Tyr84 of MHC-I which in almost all pMHC-I structures coordinates both the C terminus of the peptide and Lys146 in the α2-1 helix is now flipped out of the groove to interact instead with Glu102 of TAPBPR (**Figures 2B,C**). Surprisingly, structural remodeling also occurs at the opposite end of the peptide binding groove as seen in the interaction between the side chains of Arg66 and Tyr159 which effectively close off this portion from peptide interaction. Extensive movements of the α3 domain and $\beta_2$m subunit also illustrate the differences between the PR and PL states. The 58–60 loop of $\beta_2$m which abuts the peptide binding platform from below and is conformationally dynamic and peptide-sensitive (92) forms key contacts to a hairpin loop of TAPBPR suggesting that peptide occupancy is sensed by TAPBPR through interaction with this $\beta_2$m loop. As modeled in the TAPBPR/H2-D$^b$ structure (12), peptide occupancy may also be sensed, and peptide loading facilitated, by a helix or loop of TAPBPR projecting into the groove near the F pocket. Finally, TAPBPR, like tapasin, has been suggested to stabilize the peptide-deficient MHC groove by dampening mobility of the α2-1 helix (122). Thus, as illustrated by both structures, coordinated and dynamic structural changes, stabilized transiently by TAPBPR interactions, occur during the critical step of MHC-I peptide loading.

A recent solution NMR study of the effects of the binding of TAPBPR to MHC-I (11) reveals stabilization of the dynamics of the empty MHC-I. On exposure to peptide, and with progressive peptide occupancy, the dynamics are further dampened, leading to an inverse relationship between MHC-I peptide occupancy and TAPBPR/MHC-I affinity. The NMR data reveal not only the interaction of conserved surfaces on the MHC-I heavy chain including the floor of the binding groove, the α2-1 helix, and the CD8 recognition loop of the α3 domain, but also effects on the $\alpha_1$ helix opposite the TAPBPR/tapasin binding site (and analogous to the HLA-DM binding site on MHC-II), all of which contribute to the widening of the binding groove in the chaperone-complexed but PR form of the MHC-I molecule. These results support a negative allostery release cycle as illustrated in **Figure 2**. In this mechanistic model, related in part to dynamics of the groove, the kinetic association rate of peptide binding to MHC-I is slow in the absence of a chaperone like tapasin or TAPBPR, and a peptide-receptive conformation is stabilized by the binding of the chaperone (**Figure 2A**). High affinity peptide binds rapidly to chaperone stabilized MHC-I, which ultimately releases the chaperone. A similar model is proposed for MHC-II binding to peptides, but in this case, the chaperone HLA-DM stabilizes the PR form of MHC-II by binding at the $3_{10}$ helix region (residues of the MHC-II β chain 80–93) (**Figures 2A,E,F**).

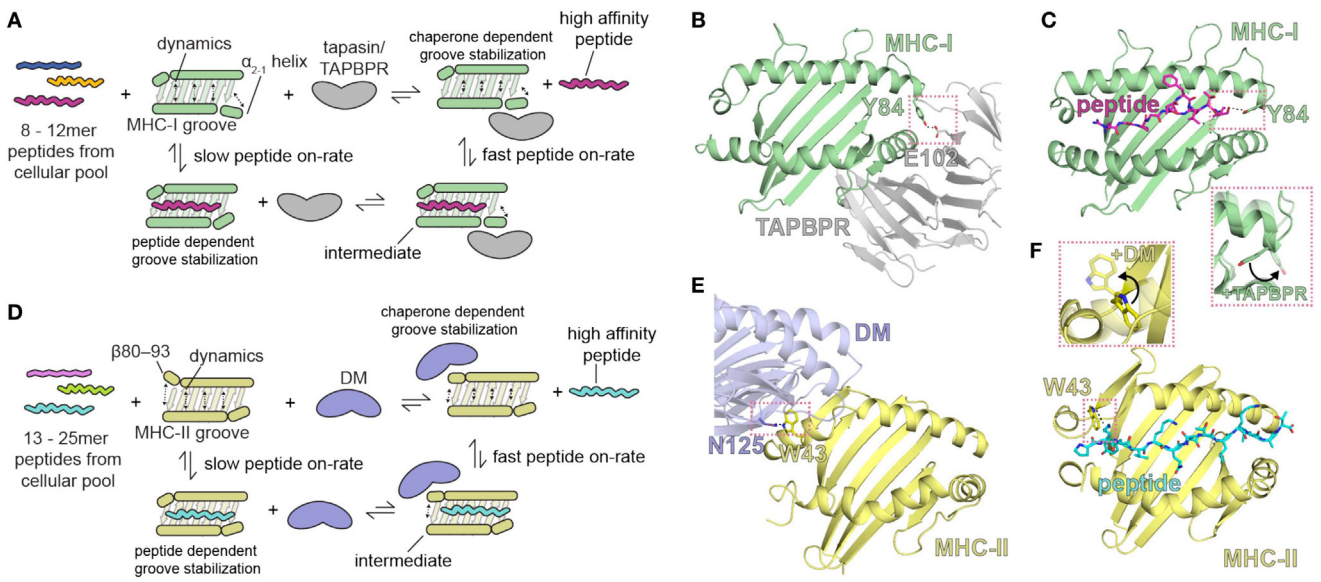



**FIGURE 2** | Summary of the role of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) groove structure and dynamics during peptide exchange and editing by the molecular chaperones tapasin or TAP-binding protein, related (TAPBPR). Schematic for class I **(A)** and class II **(D)** chaperone-assisted peptide exchange. Peptide exchange/editing occurs when peptides of 8–12 (class I) or 13–25 (class II) length are selected from the cellular pool in a manner highly dependent on the peptide sequence and the particular MHC allelomorph. This occurs either intrinsically (left) or is mediated by molecular chaperones (right) that increase the kinetic on-rate of peptides binding to the MHC groove through a stable intermediate complex. Conformational dynamics in localized regions of the MHC groove are stabilized by both the peptide and by molecular chaperones. The localized, dynamic regions including the α2-1 helix of MHC class I (MHC-I) and the β80-93 helix of MHC class II (MHC-II). **(B,E)** Structure of chaperone-bound MHC molecules with a focus on the MHC groove. Salmon dotted boxes highlight the conserved residues that are involved in chaperone-induced widening of the MHC groove (DM αN125 and MHC-II αW43; TAPBPR E102 and MHC-I Y84) relative to the peptide-bound state. **(C,F)** Structure of the peptide-bound (unchaperoned) MHC groove. Salmon dotted boxes highlight "flipping" of MHC-I Y84 and MHC-II W43 upon chaperone association, which in the absence of chaperones associate with the termini of the peptide. The chaperone-bound MHC states are shown as transparent in the inlays. PDB IDs are 5WER (H2-D$^d$/TAPBPR), 3ECB (P18/H2-D$^d$), 4FQX (HLA-DM/HLA-DR1), and 1DLH (Flu peptide/HLA-DR1).

A crucial step in the peptide-loading process is the trimming of peptides by the ERAP1 aminopeptidase (ERAAP in the mouse), the importance of which is underlined by the antigen presentation defect of ERAAP-deficient mice (47). Recent studies, exploiting both crystallography and MD simulations indicate the critical role of dynamic changes for the aminopeptidase activity of ERAP1 (123, 124).

## DYNAMIC ASPECTS OF T CELL RECOGNITION OF pMHC COMPLEXES

Once pMHC complexes have arrived at the surface of the APC, they are available for recognition by TCR or NKR. Most of our understanding of the molecular details by which TCR on the T cell or NKR on NK cells engage pMHC on APCs derives from crystallographic studies of TCR/pMHC (125) or NK/pMHC complexes (6). Pioneering efforts to explore dynamic aspects of the TCR/pMHC interaction used NMR chemical shift analysis to map the footprint of a pMHC-specific TCR onto its cognate MHC (126). These studies employed a truncated MHC-I molecule to identify chemical shift perturbations in solution that resulted from binding to a single chain TCR ligand (also ~25 kDa). The binding footprint obtained in solution in this manner was the same as that determined crystallographically for the same complex. In a complementary set of experiments, using NMR to examine residues of the same 2C TCR and of a labeled peptide in the pMHC complex, Hawse et al. (60) explored the dynamic changes that accompany the interaction of the pMHC with the TCR. They showed that structural fluctuations of the pMHC ligand matched similar fluctuations of the TCR, suggesting that TCR use these dynamic changes in solution to scan through different pMHC and to match those that have similar flexible modes.

## TCR CHANGES THAT ACCOMPANY pMHC INTERACTION AND COMMUNICATE SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION

In addition to studies of the pMHCpMHC interaction and TCR/pMHC interaction noted above, several groups have addressed the mechanism by which pMHC engagement by a TCR may contribute to signal transduction (**Figures 3A,B**). The TCR, in addition to consisting of αβ chains that recognize the pMHC, contains the ζζ homodimer, and the CD3γε and CD3δε heterodimers, as part of an eight-chain complex embedded in the T cell membrane. Cytoplasmic immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) extend from ζ, γ, δ, and ε and, when phosphorylated by the lymphocyte-specific protein tyrosine kinase

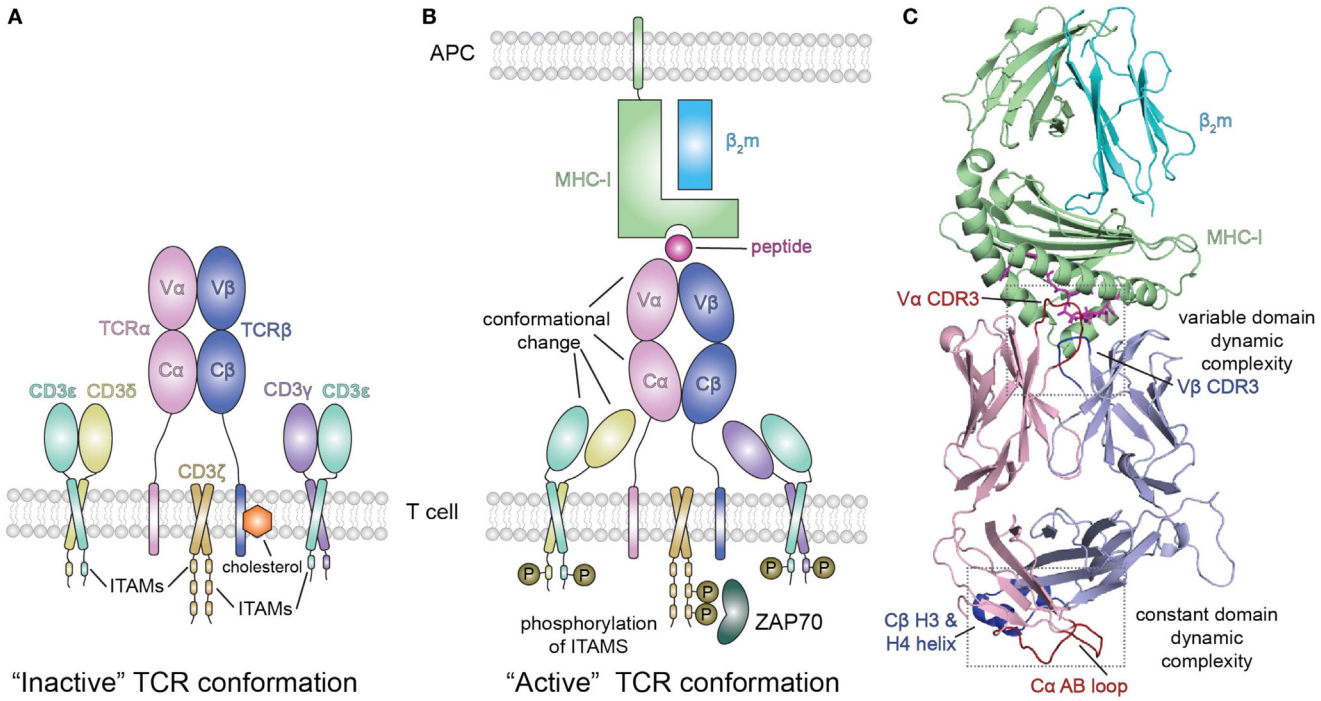



**FIGURE 3** | Peptide/MHC-I (pMHC-I) induced allosteric communication model for signaling of the TCR-CD3 complex. **(A)** In the absence of peptide–MHC-I ligand, cholesterol associates with the T cell receptor (TCR) β chain and maintains the TCR/CD3 complex in an "inactive" TCR conformation. The TCR αβ heterodimer is non-covalently associated with the CD3 γε and δε subunits as well as the ζζ homodimer. **(B)** Binding of pMHC-I molecules with the membrane distal variable domains (Vα, Vβ) of the αβ TCR receptor has been proposed to allosterically modulate the structure and dynamics of the membrane proximal constant domains (Cα, Cβ) which are sensed by the associated CD3 molecules resulting in an "active TCR." This pMHC-I/TCR mediated conformational change in CD3 allows for phosphorylation (P) of downstream immunoreceptor tyrosine-based activation motifs (ITAMs) that recruit proteins involved in signaling, such as ZAP70. Abbreviation: APC, antigen-presenting cell. **(C)** Structural view of the extracellular domain of the bound pMHC-I/TAP-binding protein, related complex (PDB ID 5IVX). Gray dotted boxes highlight regions of dynamic complexity that are proposed to be involved in the allosteric communication model.

(Lck), direct an activation cascade in the T cell. Aivazian and Stern (127) explored the lipid interaction of non-phosphorylated ζ chain and its mobilization from lipid vesicles when phosphorylated, suggesting that the availability of the ITAM for kinase activity was an early step in the extracellular binding of the eight chain TCR complex by a pMHC ligand. The structure of the cytoplasmic domain of the ζ chain has been explored in detergent micelles of LMPG and suggests that ITAM2 and ITAM3 interchange on the micro to millisecond timescale to regulate their accessibility for phosphorylation (128). Likewise, dynamic membrane associations that render the ITAM tyrosines inaccessible have been reported for the CD3ε cytoplasmic domain (129).

In efforts to explore the mechanism by which extracellular, cell-surface binding events convey conformational changes to cytoplasmic protein modules, three groups have explored changes in the CD3 (ζζ, γε, and δε) components of the TCR complex (13–15). He et al. (15) used an MHC-II-restricted αβ TCR isotopically labeled in the β chain to examine NMR chemical shift differences on exposure to γε and/or δε heterodimers. They observed small differences in a set of 9–11 solvent accessible Cβ residues consistent with a docking site requiring both γε and δε.

Using a different MHC-II-restricted TCR, others (14) labeled either the α or β chain and identified NMR spectroscopic changes in the constant regions consistent with δε docking on the Cα domain and γε on Cβ. These results were further supported by functional studies of mutagenized TCR in transfected T cells.

Extending this approach, Natarajan et al. (13) used a high affinity MHC-I restricted TCR to examine changes in the β chain TCR spectrum on pMHC binding. Remarkably, in addition to the dynamic changes of the interface residues of the TCR [the complementarity determining residues (CDRs)], these authors observed significant chemical shift changes in regions of the TCR remote from the pMHC interface, in particular near the Cβ H3 and H4 helices (**Figure 3C**). Confirmatory evidence was provided by site-directed mutagenesis and functional assays, consistent with an allosteric effect in the constant region resulting from pMHC-I engagement. The authors suggest that the allosteric transmission of conformational changes from the TCR CDRs in the variable domain to the Cβ distal sites occurs *via* the modulation of the variable/constant domain interface through the structural or dynamic rearrangement of the Vβ/Cβ linker regions.

## CONCLUSION

Biochemical evidence has long suggested that dynamic aspects of MHC molecules, the chaperones of the PLC, and the interactions with TCR might contribute to aspects of the functional molecular recognition steps throughout the entire MHC antigen presentation pathway. Only in the last few years have the combination of high resolution structural studies, computational MD, and multidimensional NMR been applied together to generate a mechanistic view of how conformational plasticity and MDs regulate multiple steps along the antigen processing and presentation pathway. It is now clear that molecular flexibility in peptide loading onto MHC, MHC/chaperone interaction, and pMHC interaction with TCR form a set of dynamic events contributing to their biological and potentially pathogenic role. A classical view of protein structure/function relationships ascribes function to the most stable (lowest energy) conformation. This understanding is being challenged by our appreciation that molecules that exhibit exceptional conformational diversity, known as intrinsically disordered proteins (IDPs) can represent a mixture of structured and unstructured regions or may even be entirely unstructured (130, 131). As a result, IDPs function by virtue of molecular associations that disregard traditional lock-and-key requirements and show flexibility in ligand binding. Studies of antigenic peptide dynamics, MHC-I and -II conformation changes, chaperone interactions, and pMHC-dependent TCR allostery now begin to reveal how dynamic or disordered regions of proteins contribute to their biological function. We expect that further studies of the molecular and cellular details of antigen processing, presentation and T cell signaling will shed light not only on this central aspect of the immune response, but also contribute to a more comprehensive understanding of how protein sequence, structure, and dynamics shape the biological function of macromolecules in general.

## A FINAL WORD

This review summarizes some of the enormous progress that the immunological community as a whole has made in addressing fundamental mechanisms of molecular recognition that initiate and propagate immune responses. Nevertheless, there remain complexities yet to be revealed as our understanding evolves from the specific to the general. Bill Paul had the unique ability to identify central problems whose solutions then would stimulate whole new areas of investigation. We trust that this review reflects in small part his continuing influence in encouraging us to study important questions and to seek definitive answers.

> "I believe that a leaf of grass is no less than the journey-work of the stars."*Leaves of Grass*, Walt Whitman

## AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

KN, JJ, NAM, MGM, LFB, ACM, NGS, AB, and DHM conceived and wrote various parts of the review according to their expertise. KN, ACM, NGS, AB, and DHM edited and assembled the various contributions to the final text.

## FUNDING

Supported by the Intramural Research Programs of the NIAID, NIH (to KN, JJ, NM, MM, LB, and DM) and of the NIDDK, NIH (to AB). Also, a K-22 Career Development and an R35 Outstanding Investigator Award to NGS through NIAID (AI2573-01) and NIGMS (1R35GM125034-01), respectively, and by the Office of the Director, NIH, under High End Instrumentation (HIE) Grant S10OD018455 which funded the 800 MHz NMR spectrometer at UCSC.

## REFERENCES


1. Greenberg S. History of immunology. In: Paul WE, editor. *Fundamental Immunology*. Philadelphia, Baltimore, New York: Wolters Kluwer Health/ Lippincott Williams & Wilkins (2013). p. 22–46.
2. Rock KL, Reits E, Neefjes J. Present yourself! By MHC class I and MHC class II molecules. *Trends Immunol* (2016) 37:724–37. doi:10.1016/j.it.2016.08.010
3. Germain RN, Margulies DH. The biochemistry and cell biology of antigen processing and presentation. *Annu Rev Immunol* (1993) 11:403–50. doi:10.1146/annurev.iy.11.040193.002155
4. Cooper MA, Colonna M, Yokoyama WM. Hidden talents of natural killers: NK cells in innate and adaptive immunity. *EMBO Rep* (2009) 10:1103–10. doi:10.1038/embor.2009.203
5. Li Y, Mariuzza RA. Structural basis for recognition of cellular and viral ligands by NK cell receptors. *Front Immunol* (2014) 5:123. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2014.00123
6. Natarajan K, Dimasi N, Wang J, Mariuzza RA, Margulies DH. Structure and function of natural killer cell receptors: multiple molecular solutions to self, nonself discrimination. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2002) 20:853–85. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.20.100301.064812
7. Wieczorek M, Abualrous ET, Sticht J, Alvaro-Benito M, Stolzenberg S, Noe F, et al. Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I and MHC class II proteins: conformational plasticity in antigen presentation. *Front Immunol* (2017) 8:292. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2017.00292
8. van Hateren A, Bailey A, Elliott T. Recent advances in major histocompatibility complex (MHC) class I antigen presentation: plastic MHC molecules and TAPBPR-mediated quality control. *F1000Res* (2017) 6:158. doi:10.12688/f1000research.10474.1
9. van Hateren A, Anderson M, Bailey A, Werner JM, Skipp P, Elliott T. Direct evidence for conformational dynamics in major histocompatibility complex class I molecules. *J Biol Chem* (2017) 292:20255–69. doi:10.1074/jbc.M117.809624
10. Jiang J, Natarajan K, Boyd LF, Morozov GI, Mage MG, Margulies DH. Crystal structure of a TAPBPR-MHC I complex reveals the mechanism of peptide editing in antigen presentation. *Science* (2017) 358:1064–8. doi:10.1126/science.aao5154
11. McShan AC, Natarajan K, Kumirov VK, Flores-Solis D, Jiang J, Badstübner M, et al. Peptide exchange on MHC-I by TAPBPR is driven by a negative allostery release cycle. *Nat Chem Biol* (2018) 14. doi:10.1038/s41589-018-0096-2
12. Thomas C, Tampe R. Structure of the TAPBPR-MHC I complex defines the mechanism of peptide loading and editing. *Science* (2017) 358:1060–4. doi:10.1126/science.aao6001
13. Natarajan K, McShan AC, Jiang J, Kumirov VK, Wang R, Zhao H, et al. An allosteric site in the T-cell receptor Cbeta domain plays a critical signalling role. *Nat Commun* (2017) 8:15260. doi:10.1038/ncomms15260
14. Natarajan A, Nadarajah V, Felsovalyi K, Wang W, Jeyachandran VR, Wasson RA, et al. Structural model of the extracellular assembly of the TCR-CD3 complex. *Cell Rep* (2016) 14:2833–45. doi:10.1016/j.celrep.2016.02.081
15. He Y, Rangarajan S, Kerzic M, Luo M, Chen Y, Wang Q, et al. Identification of the docking site for CD3 on the T cell receptor beta chain by solution NMR. *J Biol Chem* (2015) 290:19796–805. doi:10.1074/jbc.M115.663799
16. Chen Y, Shi Y, Cheng H, An YQ, Gao GF. Structural immunology and crystallography help immunologists see the immune system in action: how T and NK cells touch their ligands. *IUBMB Life* (2009) 61:579–90. doi:10.1002/iub.208
17. Dauter Z, Wlodawer A. Progress in protein crystallography. *Protein Pept Lett* (2016) 23:201–10. doi:10.2174/0929866523666160106153524
18. Rupp B. *Biomolecular Crystallography: Principles, Practice and Application to Structural Biology*. New York, NY: Garland Science (2009).
19. Shi Y. A glimpse of structural biology through X-ray crystallography. *Cell* (2014) 159:995–1014. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2014.10.051
20. Hartmann H, Parak F, Steigemann W, Petsko GA, Ponzi DR, Frauenfelder H. Conformational substates in a protein: structure and dynamics of metmyoglobin at 80 K. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (1982) 79:4967–71. doi:10.1073/pnas.79.16.4967
21. Boldon L, Laliberte F, Liu L. Review of the fundamental theories behind small angle X-ray scattering, molecular dynamics simulations, and relevant integrated application. *Nano Rev* (2015) 6:25661. doi:10.3402/nano.v6.25661
22. Paquet E, Viktor HL. Molecular dynamics, Monte Carlo simulations, and Langevin dynamics: a computational review. *Biomed Res Int* (2015) 2015:183918. doi:10.1155/2015/183918
23. Bahar I, Lezon TR, Bakan A, Shrivastava IH. Normal mode analysis of biomolecular structures: functional mechanisms of membrane proteins. *Chem Rev* (2010) 110:1463–97. doi:10.1021/cr900095e
24. Anthis NJ, Clore GM. Visualizing transient dark states by NMR spectroscopy. *Q Rev Biophys* (2015) 48:35–116. doi:10.1017/S0033583514000122
25. Ortega G, Pons M, Millet O. Protein functional dynamics in multiple timescales as studied by NMR spectroscopy. *Adv Protein Chem Struct Biol* (2013) 92:219–51. doi:10.1016/B978-0-12-411636-8.00006-7
26. Rosenzweig R, Kay LE. Bringing dynamic molecular machines into focus by methyl-TROSY NMR. *Annu Rev Biochem* (2014) 83:291–315. doi:10.1146/annurev-biochem-060713-035829
27. Blum JS, Wearsch PA, Cresswell P. Pathways of antigen processing. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2013) 31:443–73. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-032712-095910
28. Koch J, Tampe R. The macromolecular peptide-loading complex in MHC class I-dependent antigen presentation. *Cell Mol Life Sci* (2006) 63:653–62. doi:10.1007/s00018-005-5462-z
29. Procko E, Gaudet R. Antigen processing and presentation: TAPping into ABC transporters. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2009) 21:84–91. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2009.02.003
30. Sanderson F, Trowsdale J. Antigen presentation: kissing cousins exchange CLIP. *Curr Biol* (1995) 5:1372–6. doi:10.1016/S0960-9822(95)00274-0
31. Williams A, Peh CA, Elliott T. The cell biology of MHC class I antigen presentation. *Tissue Antigens* (2002) 59:3–17. doi:10.1034/j.1399-0039.2002.590103.x
32. Neefjes J, Jongsma ML, Paul P, Bakke O. Towards a systems understanding of MHC class I and MHC class II antigen presentation. *Nat Rev Immunol* (2011) 11:823–36. doi:10.1038/nri3084
33. van den Hoorn T, Paul P, Jongsma ML, Neefjes J. Routes to manipulate MHC class II antigen presentation. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2011) 23:88–95. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2010.11.002
34. Starck SR, Shastri N. Nowhere to hide: unconventional translation yields cryptic peptides for immune surveillance. *Immunol Rev* (2016) 272:8–16. doi:10.1111/imr.12434
35. Yewdell JW, Nicchitta CV. The DRiP hypothesis decennial: support, controversy, refinement and extension. *Trends Immunol* (2006) 27:368–73. doi:10.1016/j.it.2006.06.008
36. Scholz C, Tampe R. The intracellular antigen transport machinery TAP in adaptive immunity and virus escape mechanisms. *J Bioenerg Biomembr* (2005) 37:509–15. doi:10.1007/s10863-005-9500-1
37. Saper MA, Bjorkman PJ, Wiley DC. Refined structure of the human histocompatibility antigen HLA-A2 at 2.6 A resolution. *J Mol Biol* (1991) 219:277–319. doi:10.1016/0022-2836(91)90567-P
38. Falk K, Rotzschke O, Stevanovic S, Jung G, Rammensee HG. Allele-specific motifs revealed by sequencing of self-peptides eluted from MHC molecules. *Nature* (1991) 351:290–6. doi:10.1038/351290a0
39. Bjorkman PJ, Strominger JL, Wiley DC. Crystallization and X-ray diffraction studies on the histocompatibility antigens HLA-A2 and HLA-A28 from human cell membranes. *J Mol Biol* (1985) 186:205–10. doi:10.1016/0022-2836(85)90271-2
40. Adams EJ, Luoma AM. The adaptable major histocompatibility complex (MHC) fold: structure and function of nonclassical and MHC class I-like molecules. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2013) 31:529–61. doi:10.1146/annurev-immunol-032712-095912
41. Anderson KS, Cresswell P. A role for calnexin (IP90) in the assembly of class II MHC molecules. *EMBO J* (1994) 13:675–82.
42. Jackson MR, Cohen-Doyle MF, Peterson PA, Williams DB. Regulation of MHC class I transport by the molecular chaperone, calnexin (p88, IP90). *Science* (1994) 263:384–7. doi:10.1126/science.8278813
43. Ortmann B, Androlewicz MJ, Cresswell P. MHC class I/beta 2-microglobulin complexes associate with TAP transporters before peptide binding. *Nature* (1994) 368:864–7. doi:10.1038/368864a0
44. Ortmann B, Copeman J, Lehner PJ, Sadasivan B, Herberg JA, Grandea AG, et al. A critical role for tapasin in the assembly and function of multimeric MHC class I-TAP complexes. *Science* (1997) 277:1306–9. doi:10.1126/science.277.5330.1306

45. Peaper DR, Wearsch PA, Cresswell P. Tapasin and ERp57 form a stable disulfide-linked dimer within the MHC class I peptide-loading complex. *EMBO J* (2005) 24:3613–23. doi:10.1038/sj.emboj.7600814
46. Sadasivan B, Lehner PJ, Ortmann B, Spies T, Cresswell P. Roles for calreticulin and a novel glycoprotein, tapasin, in the interaction of MHC class I molecules with TAP. *Immunity* (1996) 5:103–14. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80487-2
47. Kanaseki T, Blanchard N, Hammer GE, Gonzalez F, Shastri N. ERAAP synergizes with MHC class I molecules to make the final cut in the antigenic peptide precursors in the endoplasmic reticulum. *Immunity* (2006) 25:795–806. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2006.09.012
48. York IA, Brehm MA, Zendzian S, Towne CF, Rock KL. Endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase 1 (ERAP1) trims MHC class I-presented peptides in vivo and plays an important role in immunodominance. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2006) 103:9202–7. doi:10.1073/pnas.0603095103
49. Blees A, Januliene D, Hofmann T, Koller N, Schmidt C, Trowitzsch S, et al. Structure of the human MHC-I peptide-loading complex. *Nature* (2017) 551:525–8. doi:10.1038/nature24627
50. Panter MS, Jain A, Leonhardt RM, Ha T, Cresswell P. Dynamics of major histocompatibility complex class I association with the human peptide-loading complex. *J Biol Chem* (2012) 287:31172–84. doi:10.1074/jbc.M112.387704
51. Zhang W, Wearsch PA, Zhu Y, Leonhardt RM, Cresswell P. A role for UDP-glucose glycoprotein glucosyltransferase in expression and quality control of MHC class I molecules. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) 108:4956–61. doi:10.1073/pnas.1102527108
52. Wearsch PA, Peaper DR, Cresswell P. Essential glycan-dependent interactions optimize MHC class I peptide loading. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) 108:4950–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.1102524108
53. Neerincx A, Boyle LH. Properties of the tapasin homologue TAPBPR. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2017) 46:97–102. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2017.04.008
54. Schulze MS, Wucherpfennig KW. The mechanism of HLA-DM induced peptide exchange in the MHC class II antigen presentation pathway. *Curr Opin Immunol* (2012) 24:105–11. doi:10.1016/j.coi.2011.11.004
55. Painter CA, Negroni MP, Kellersberger KA, Zavala-Ruiz Z, Evans JE, Stern LJ. Conformational lability in the class II MHC 310 helix and adjacent extended strand dictate HLA-DM susceptibility and peptide exchange. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2011) 108:19329–34. doi:10.1073/pnas.1108074108
56. Jensen PE, Weber DA, Thayer WP, Chen X, Dao CT. HLA-DM and the MHC class II antigen presentation pathway. *Immunol Res* (1999) 20:195–205. doi:10.1007/BF02790403
57. Sadegh-Nasseri S, Chen M, Narayan K, Bouvier M. The convergent roles of tapasin and HLA-DM in antigen presentation. *Trends Immunol* (2008) 29:141–7. doi:10.1016/j.it.2008.01.001
58. Ayres CM, Corcelli SA, Baker BM. Peptide and peptide-dependent motions in MHC proteins: immunological implications and biophysical underpinnings. *Front Immunol* (2017) 8:935. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2017.00935
59. Armstrong KM, Insaidoo FK, Baker BM. Thermodynamics of T-cell receptor-peptide/MHC interactions: progress and opportunities. *J Mol Recognit* (2008) 21:275–87. doi:10.1002/jmr.896
60. Hawse WF, De S, Greenwood AI, Nicholson LK, Zajicek J, Kovrigin EL, et al. TCR scanning of peptide/MHC through complementary matching of receptor and ligand molecular flexibility. *J Immunol* (2014) 192:2885–91. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1302953
61. Schmitt L, Boniface JJ, Davis MM, McConnell HM. Conformational isomers of a class II MHC-peptide complex in solution. *J Mol Biol* (1999) 286:207–18. doi:10.1006/jmbi.1998.2463
62. Schmitt L, Boniface JJ, Davis MM, McConnell HM. Kinetic isomers of a class II MHC-peptide complex. *Biochemistry* (1998) 37:17371–80. doi:10.1021/bi9815593
63. Landais E, Romagnoli PA, Corper AL, Shires J, Altman JD, Wilson IA, et al. New design of MHC class II tetramers to accommodate fundamental principles of antigen presentation. *J Immunol* (2009) 183:7949–57. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.0902493
64. Lovitch SB, Unanue ER. Conformational isomers of a peptide-class II major histocompatibility complex. *Immunol Rev* (2005) 207:293–313. doi:10.1111/j.0105-2896.2005.00298.x
65. Gunther S, Schlundt A, Sticht J, Roske Y, Heinemann U, Wiesmuller KH, et al. Bidirectional binding of invariant chain peptides to an MHC class II molecule. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2010) 107:22219–24. doi:10.1073/pnas.1014708107
66. Schnabl E, Stockinger H, Majdic O, Gaugitsch H, Lindley IJ, Maurer D, et al. Activated human T lymphocytes express MHC class I heavy chains not associated with beta 2-microglobulin. *J Exp Med* (1990) 171:1431–42. doi:10.1084/jem.171.5.1431
67. Smith JD, Lie WR, Gorka J, Kindle CS, Myers NB, Hansen TH. Disparate interaction of peptide ligand with nascent versus mature class I major histocompatibility complex molecules: comparisons of peptide binding to alternative forms of Ld in cell lysates and the cell surface. *J Exp Med* (1992) 175:191–202. doi:10.1084/jem.175.1.191
68. Benjamin RJ, Madrigal JA, Parham P. Peptide binding to empty HLA-B27 molecules of viable human cells. *Nature* (1991) 351:74–7. doi:10.1038/351074a0
69. Pickl WF, Holter W, Stockl J, Majdic O, Knapp W. Expression of beta 2-microglobulin-free HLA class I alpha-chains on activated T cells requires internalization of HLA class I heterodimers. *Immunology* (1996) 88:104–9. doi:10.1046/j.1365-2567.1996.d01-644.x
70. Santos SG, Powis SJ, Arosa FA. Misfolding of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules in activated T cells allows cis-interactions with receptors and signaling molecules and is associated with tyrosine phosphorylation. *J Biol Chem* (2004) 279:53062–70. doi:10.1074/jbc.M408794200
71. Blue ML, Craig KA, Anderson P, Branton KR Jr, Schlossman SF. Evidence for specific association between class I major histocompatibility antigens and the CD8 molecules of human suppressor/cytotoxic cells. *Cell* (1988) 54:413–21. doi:10.1016/0092-8674(88)90204-8
72. Demaria S, Bushkin Y. CD8 and beta 2-microglobulin-free MHC class I molecules in T cell immunoregulation. *Int J Clin Lab Res* (1993) 23:61–9. doi:10.1007/BF02592285
73. Geng J, Altman JD, Krishnakumar S, Raghavan M. Empty conformers of HLA-B preferentially bind CD8 and regulate CD8(+) T cell function. *Elife* (2018) 7. doi:10.7554/eLife.36341
74. Ljunggren HG, Stam NJ, Ohlen C, Neefjes JJ, Hoglund P, Heemels MT, et al. Empty MHC class I molecules come out in the cold. *Nature* (1990) 346:476–80. doi:10.1038/346476a0
75. Otten GR, Bikoff E, Ribaudo RK, Kozlowski S, Margulies DH, Germain RN. Peptide and beta 2-microglobulin regulation of cell surface MHC class I conformation and expression. *J Immunol* (1992) 148:3723–32.
76. Rehm A, Rohr A, Seitz C, Wonigeit K, Ziegler A, Uchanska-Ziegler B. Structurally diverse forms of HLA-B27 molecules are displayed in vivo in a cell type-dependent manner. *Hum Immunol* (2000) 61:408–18. doi:10.1016/S0198-8859(99)00176-7
77. Grandea AG III, Golovina TN, Hamilton SE, Sriram V, Spies T, Brutkiewicz RR, et al. Impaired assembly yet normal trafficking of MHC class I molecules in Tapasin mutant mice. *Immunity* (2000) 13:213–22. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)00021-2
78. Van Kaer L, Ashton-Rickardt PG, Ploegh HL, Tonegawa S. TAP1 mutant mice are deficient in antigen presentation, surface class I molecules, and CD4-8+ T cells. *Cell* (1992) 71:1205–14. doi:10.1016/S0092-8674(05)80068-6
79. Burian A, Wang KL, Finton KA, Lee N, Ishitani A, Strong RK, et al. HLA-F and MHC-I open conformers bind natural killer cell Ig-like receptor KIR3DS1. *PLoS One* (2016) 11:e0163297. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0163297
80. Garcia-Beltran WF, Holzemer A, Martrus G, Chung AW, Pacheco Y, Simoneau CR, et al. Open conformers of HLA-F are high-affinity ligands of the activating NK-cell receptor KIR3DS1. *Nat Immunol* (2016) 17:1067–74. doi:10.1038/ni.3513
81. Dulberger CL, McMurtrey CP, Holzemer A, Neu KE, Liu V, Steinbach AM, et al. Human leukocyte antigen F presents peptides and regulates immunity through interactions with NK cell receptors. *Immunity* (2017) 46:1018–29.e7. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2017.06.002
82. Cai M, Huang Y, Sakaguchi K, Clore GM, Gronenborn AM, Craigie R. An efficient and cost-effective isotope labeling protocol for proteins expressed in *Escherichia coli*. *J Biomol NMR* (1998) 11:97–102. doi:10.1023/A:1008222131470
83. Wieczorek M, Sticht J, Stolzenberg S, Gunther S, Wehmeyer C, El Habre Z, et al. MHC class II complexes sample intermediate states along the peptide exchange pathway. *Nat Commun* (2016) 7:13224. doi:10.1038/ncomms13224
84. Zacharias M, Springer S. Conformational flexibility of the MHC class I alpha1-alpha2 domain in peptide bound and free states: a molecular dynamics simulation study. *Biophys J* (2004) 87:2203–14. doi:10.1529/biophysj.104.044743

85. Narzi D, Becker CM, Fiorillo MT, Uchanska-Ziegler B, Ziegler A, Bockmann RA. Dynamical characterization of two differentially disease associated MHC class I proteins in complex with viral and self-peptides. *J Mol Biol* (2012) 415:429–42. doi:10.1016/j.jmb.2011.11.021
86. Bouvier M, Wiley DC. Structural characterization of a soluble and partially folded class I major histocompatibility heavy chain/beta 2m heterodimer. *Nat Struct Biol* (1998) 5:377–84. doi:10.1038/nsb0598-377
87. Kurimoto E, Kuroki K, Yamaguchi Y, Yagi-Utsumi M, Igaki T, Iguchi T, et al. Structural and functional mosaic nature of MHC class I molecules in their peptide-free form. *Mol Immunol* (2013) 55:393–9. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2013.03.014
88. Sieker F, Springer S, Zacharias M. Comparative molecular dynamics analysis of tapasin-dependent and -independent MHC class I alleles. *Protein Sci* (2007) 16:299–308. doi:10.1110/ps.062568407
89. Sieker F, Straatsma TP, Springer S, Zacharias M. Differential tapasin dependence of MHC class I molecules correlates with conformational changes upon peptide dissociation: a molecular dynamics simulation study. *Mol Immunol* (2008) 45:3714–22. doi:10.1016/j.molimm.2008.06.009
90. Williams AP, Peh CA, Purcell AW, McCluskey J, Elliott T. Optimization of the MHC class I peptide cargo is dependent on tapasin. *Immunity* (2002) 16:509–20. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(02)00304-7
91. Pohlmann T, Bockmann RA, Grubmuller H, Uchanska-Ziegler B, Ziegler A, Alexiev U. Differential peptide dynamics is linked to major histocompatibility complex polymorphism. *J Biol Chem* (2004) 279:28197–201. doi:10.1074/jbc.C400128200
92. Beerbaum M, Ballaschk M, Erdmann N, Schnick C, Diehl A, Uchanska-Ziegler B, et al. NMR spectroscopy reveals unexpected structural variation at the protein-protein interface in MHC class I molecules. *J Biomol NMR* (2013) 57:167–78. doi:10.1007/s10858-013-9777-z
93. Hee CS, Beerbaum M, Loll B, Ballaschk M, Schmieder P, Uchanska-Ziegler B, et al. Dynamics of free versus complexed beta2-microglobulin and the evolution of interfaces in MHC class I molecules. *Immunogenetics* (2013) 65:157–72. doi:10.1007/s00251-012-0667-4
94. Myers NB, Harris MR, Connolly JM, Lybarger L, Yu YY, Hansen TH. Kb, Kd, and Ld molecules share common tapasin dependencies as determined using a novel epitope tag. *J Immunol* (2000) 165:5656–63. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.165.10.5656
95. Mage MG, Dolan MA, Wang R, Boyd LF, Revilleza MJ, Robinson H, et al. The peptide-receptive transition state of MHC class I molecules: insight from structure and molecular dynamics. *J Immunol* (2012) 189:1391–9. doi:10.4049/jimmunol.1200831
96. Insaidoo FK, Zajicek J, Baker BM. A general and efficient approach for NMR studies of peptide dynamics in class I MHC peptide binding grooves. *Biochemistry* (2009) 48:9708–10. doi:10.1021/bi9008787
97. Garstka MA, Fritzsche S, Lenart I, Hein Z, Jankevicius G, Boyle LH, et al. Tapasin dependence of major histocompatibility complex class I molecules correlates with their conformational flexibility. *FASEB J* (2011) 25:3989–98. doi:10.1096/fj.11-190249
98. Abualrous ET, Saini SK, Ramnarayan VR, Ilca FT, Zacharias M, Springer S. The carboxy terminus of the ligand peptide determines the stability of the MHC class I molecule H-2Kb: a combined molecular dynamics and experimental study. *PLoS One* (2015) 10:e0135421. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0135421
99. Abualrous ET, Fritzsche S, Hein Z, Al-Balushi MS, Reinink P, Boyle LH, et al. F pocket flexibility influences the tapasin dependence of two differentially disease-associated MHC class I proteins. *Eur J Immunol* (2015) 45:1248–57. doi:10.1002/eji.201445307
100. Bailey A, van Hateren A, Elliott T, Werner JM. Two polymorphisms facilitate differences in plasticity between two chicken major histocompatibility complex class I proteins. *PLoS One* (2014) 9:e89657. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0089657
101. Hawse WF, Gloor BE, Ayres CM, Kho K, Nuter E, Baker BM. Peptide modulation of class I major histocompatibility complex protein molecular flexibility and the implications for immune recognition. *J Biol Chem* (2013) 288:24372–81. doi:10.1074/jbc.M113.490664
102. Bailey A, Dalchau N, Carter R, Emmott S, Phillips A, Werner JM, et al. Selector function of MHC I molecules is determined by protein plasticity. *Sci Rep* (2015) 5:14928. doi:10.1038/srep14928
103. Yaneva R, Springer S, Zacharias M. Flexibility of the MHC class II peptide binding cleft in the bound, partially filled, and empty states: a molecular dynamics simulation study. *Biopolymers* (2009) 91:14–27. doi:10.1002/bip.21078
104. Painter CA, Cruz A, Lopez GE, Stern LJ, Zavala-Ruiz Z. Model for the peptide-free conformation of class II MHC proteins. *PLoS One* (2008) 3:e2403. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0002403
105. Mandal TK, Mukhopadhyay C. Effect of glycosylation on structure and dynamics of MHC class I glycoprotein: a molecular dynamics study. *Biopolymers* (2001) 59:11–23. doi:10.1002/1097-0282(200107)59:1<11::AID-BIP1001>3.0.CO;2-W
106. Yanaka S, Ueno T, Shi Y, Qi J, Gao GF, Tsumoto K, et al. Peptide-dependent conformational fluctuation determines the stability of the human leukocyte antigen class I complex. *J Biol Chem* (2014) 289:24680–90. doi:10.1074/jbc.M114.566174
107. Kozlov G, Pocanschi CL, Rosenauer A, Bastos-Aristizabal S, Gorelik A, Williams DB, et al. Structural basis of carbohydrate recognition by calreticulin. *J Biol Chem* (2010) 285:38612–20. doi:10.1074/jbc.M110.168294
108. Ellgaard L, Riek R, Herrmann T, Guntert P, Braun D, Helenius A, et al. NMR structure of the calreticulin P-domain. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2001) 98:3133–8. doi:10.1073/pnas.051630098
109. Oancea G, O'Mara ML, Bennett WF, Tieleman DP, Abele R, Tampe R. Structural arrangement of the transmission interface in the antigen ABC transport complex TAP. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2009) 106:5551–6. doi:10.1073/pnas.0811260106
110. Oldham ML, Grigorieff N, Chen J. Structure of the transporter associated with antigen processing trapped by herpes simplex virus. *Elife* (2016) 5:e21829. doi:10.7554/eLife.21829
111. Dong G, Wearsch PA, Peaper DR, Cresswell P, Reinisch KM. Insights into MHC class I peptide loading from the structure of the tapasin-ERp57 thiol oxidoreductase heterodimer. *Immunity* (2009) 30:21–32. doi:10.1016/j.immuni.2008.10.018
112. Hulpke S, Tampe R. The MHC I loading complex: a multitasking machinery in adaptive immunity. *Trends Biochem Sci* (2013) 38:412–20. doi:10.1016/j.tibs.2013.06.003
113. Copeman J, Bangia N, Cross JC, Cresswell P. Elucidation of the genetic basis of the antigen presentation defects in the mutant cell line0.220 reveals polymorphism and alternative splicing of the tapasin gene. *Eur J Immunol* (1998) 28:3783–91. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1521-4141(199811)28:11<3783::AID-IMMU3783>3.0.CO;2-9
114. Lehner PJ, Surman MJ, Cresswell P. Soluble tapasin restores MHC class I expression and function in the tapasin-negative cell line0.220. *Immunity* (1998) 8:221–31. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80474-4
115. Chen M, Bouvier M. Analysis of interactions in a tapasin/class I complex provides a mechanism for peptide selection. *EMBO J* (2007) 26:1681–90. doi:10.1038/sj.emboj.7601624
116. Yu YY, Turnquist HR, Myers NB, Balendiran GK, Hansen TH, Solheim JC. An extensive region of an MHC class I alpha 2 domain loop influences interaction with the assembly complex. *J Immunol* (1999) 163:4427–33.
117. Peace-Brewer AL, Tussey LG, Matsui M, Li G, Quinn DG, Frelinger JA. A point mutation in HLA-A*0201 results in failure to bind the TAP complex and to present virus-derived peptides to CTL. *Immunity* (1996) 4:505–14. doi:10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80416-1
118. Boyle LH, Hermann C, Boname JM, Porter KM, Patel PA, Burr ML, et al. Tapasin-related protein TAPBPR is an additional component of the MHC class I presentation pathway. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2013) 110:3465–70. doi:10.1073/pnas.1222342110
119. Hermann C, van Hateren A, Trautwein N, Neerincx A, Duriez PJ, Stevanovic S, et al. TAPBPR alters MHC class I peptide presentation by functioning as a peptide exchange catalyst. *Elife* (2015) 4:e09617. doi:10.7554/eLife.09617
120. Morozov GI, Zhao H, Mage MG, Boyd LF, Jiang J, Dolan MA, et al. Interaction of TAPBPR, a tapasin homolog, with MHC-I molecules promotes peptide editing. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2016) 113:E1006–15. doi:10.1073/pnas.1519894113
121. Neerincx A, Hermann C, Antrobus R, van Hateren A, Cao H, Trautwein N, et al. TAPBPR bridges UDP-glucose:glycoprotein glucosyltransferase 1 onto MHC class I to provide quality control in the antigen presentation pathway. *Elife* (2017) 6:e23049. doi:10.7554/eLife.23049

122. Fisette O, Wingbermuhle S, Tampe R, Schafer LV. Molecular mechanism of peptide editing in the tapasin-MHC I complex. *Sci Rep* (2016) 6:19085. doi:10.1038/srep19085
123. Papakyriakou A, Stratikos E. The role of conformational dynamics in antigen trimming by intracellular aminopeptidases. *Front Immunol* (2017) 8:946. doi:10.3389/fimmu.2017.00946
124. Stamogiannos A, Maben Z, Papakyriakou A, Mpakali A, Kokkala P, Georgiadis D, et al. Critical role of interdomain interactions in the conformational change and catalytic mechanism of endoplasmic reticulum aminopeptidase 1. *Biochemistry* (2017) 56:1546–58. doi:10.1021/acs.biochem.6b01170
125. Marrack P, Scott-Browne JP, Dai S, Gapin L, Kappler JW. Evolutionarily conserved amino acids that control TCR-MHC interaction. *Annu Rev Immunol* (2008) 26:171–203. doi:10.1146/annurev.immunol.26.021607.090421
126. Varani L, Bankovich AJ, Liu CW, Colf LA, Jones LL, Kranz DM, et al. Solution mapping of T cell receptor docking footprints on peptide-MHC. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* (2007) 104:13080–5. doi:10.1073/pnas.0703702104
127. Aivazian D, Stern LJ. Phosphorylation of T cell receptor zeta is regulated by a lipid dependent folding transition. *Nat Struct Biol* (2000) 7:1023–6. doi:10.1038/80930
128. Duchardt E, Sigalov AB, Aivazian D, Stern LJ, Schwalbe H. Structure induction of the T-cell receptor zeta-chain upon lipid binding investigated by NMR spectroscopy. *Chembiochem* (2007) 8:820–7. doi:10.1002/cbic.200600413
129. Xu C, Gagnon E, Call ME, Schnell JR, Schwieters CD, Carman CV, et al. Regulation of T cell receptor activation by dynamic membrane binding of the CD3epsilon cytoplasmic tyrosine-based motif. *Cell* (2008) 135:702–13. doi:10.1016/j.cell.2008.09.044
130. Tompa P. The interplay between structure and function in intrinsically unstructured proteins. *FEBS Lett* (2005) 579:3346–54. doi:10.1016/j.febslet.2005.03.072
131. van der Lee R, Buljan M, Lang B, Weatheritt RJ, Daughdrill GW, Dunker AK, et al. Classification of intrinsically disordered regions and proteins. *Chem Rev* (2014) 114:6589–631. doi:10.1021/cr400525m

**Conflict of Interest Statement:** The authors declare that the research was conducted in the absence of any commercial or financial relationships that could be construed as a potential conflict of interest.

The reviewer YS and handling Editor declared their shared affiliation.

# Advantages of publishing in Frontiers

**OPEN ACCESS**
Articles are free to read for greatest visibility and readership

**FAST PUBLICATION**
Around 90 days from submission to decision

**HIGH QUALITY PEER-REVIEW**
Rigorous, collaborative, and constructive peer-review

**TRANSPARENT PEER-REVIEW**
Editors and reviewers acknowledged by name on published articles

**Frontiers**
Avenue du Tribunal-Fédéral 34
1005 Lausanne | Switzerland

**Visit us:** www.frontiersin.org
**Contact us:** info@frontiersin.org | +41 21 510 17 00

**REPRODUCIBILITY OF RESEARCH**
Support open data and methods to enhance research reproducibility

**DIGITAL PUBLISHING**
Articles designed for optimal readership across devices

**FOLLOW US**
@frontiersin

**IMPACT METRICS**
Advanced article metrics track visibility across digital media

**EXTENSIVE PROMOTION**
Marketing and promotion of impactful research

**LOOP RESEARCH NETWORK**
Our network increases your article's readership